



Repair Manual Arteon 2018 ➤

Body Interior

Edition 03.2018





List of Workshop Manual Repair Groups

Repair Group

00 - General, Technical Data

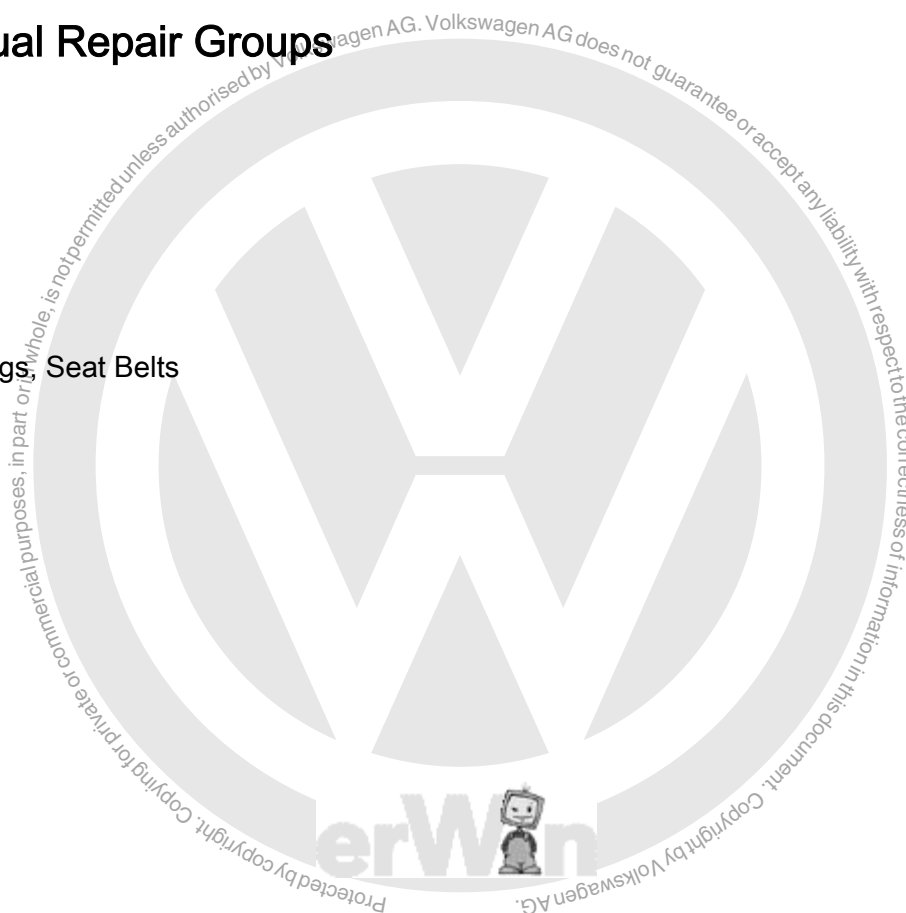
68 - Interior Equipment

69 - Passenger Protection, Airbags, Seat Belts

70 - Interior Trim

72 - Seat Frames

74 - Seat Upholstery, Covers



Technical information should always be available to the foremen and mechanics, because their careful and constant adherence to the instructions is essential to ensure vehicle road-worthiness and safety. In addition, the normal basic safety precautions for working on motor vehicles must, as a matter of course, be observed.



Contents

00 - General, Technical Data	1
1 Safety Precautions	1
1.1 Safety Precautions when Working on Vehicles with Start/Stop System	2
1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components	3
1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing (Pyrotechnic Components)	4
1.4 Additional Thorax Airbag Safety Precautions	5
1.5 Additional Head Curtain Airbag Safety Precautions	6
1.6 Front Thorax Airbag Crash Sensors (Pressure Sensors) Safety Precautions	6
1.7 Restraint System Pyrotechnic, Electric and Mechanical Components, Replacing After a Collision	7
1.8 Airbag Fasteners, Checking After Collision	9
1.9 Accident without Airbag Deployment	9
1.10 Seat Belts, Checking	9
1.11 Seat Belt Webbing, Checking	10
1.12 Automatic Belt Retractor (Locking Function), Checking	11
1.13 Seat Belt Latch, Visually Inspecting	11
1.14 Seat Belt Latch, Function Test	11
1.15 Seat Belt Relays and Belt Tongue, Checking	12
1.16 Fasteners and Mounting Points, Checking After a Collision	12
1.17 Seat Belt for Child Seat, Checking Child Seat Restraint Function, Market-Specific, Not for Driver Seat Belt	12
1.18 Child Seat Anchors, Checking After Collision	13
2 Repair Information	14
2.1 Contact Corrosion	14
2.2 Line Routing and Securing	14
68 - Interior Equipment	15
1 Storage Compartments and Covers	15
1.1 Component Location Overview - Storage Compartment and Covers	15
1.2 Overview - Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover	17
1.3 Overview - Steering Column Trim Panel	18
1.4 Overview - Glove Compartment	19
1.5 Overview - Headliner Compartment	20
1.6 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover, Removing and Installing	20
1.7 Upper Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	21
1.8 Lower Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	22
1.9 Glove Compartment Handle, Removing and Installing	24
1.10 Glove Compartment Lid Service Position	25
1.11 Glove Compartment Lid Damping Element, Removing and Installing	26
1.12 Glove Compartment, Removing and Installing	26
1.13 Glove Compartment Lid, Removing and Installing	28
1.14 Headliner Storage Compartment, Removing and Installing	28
2 Extra Equipment	30
2.1 Overview - Sun Visors	30
2.2 Sun Visor, Removing and Installing	31
2.3 Sun Visor Center Support, Removing and Installing	32
2.4 Roof Grab Handle, Removing and Installing	33
2.5 Roof Grab Handle Bracket, Removing and Installing	36
3 Center Console	37
3.1 Front Ashtray, Removing and Installing	37
3.2 Center Console Rear Trim, Removing and Installing	37
3.3 Front Footwell Center Console Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	38



3.4	Display Control Head Trim, Removing and Installing	40
3.5	Front Center Console Storage Compartment, Removing and Installing	40
3.6	Center Console Insert, Removing and Installing	40
3.7	Center Console, Removing and Installing	44
3.8	Center Console Bracket, Removing and Installing	48
4	Front Center Armrest	50
4.1	Front Center Armrest, Removing and Installing	50
5	Interior Rearview Mirror	51
5.1	Overview - Interior Rearview Mirror	51
5.2	Interior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing	55
6	Special Tools	64
69	Passenger Protection, Airbags, Seat Belts	66
1	Seat Belts	66
1.1	Component Location Overview - Seat Belts and Mounting Points	66
1.2	Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt	69
1.3	Overview - Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt	71
1.4	Overview - Rear Center Three-Point Seat Belt	72
1.5	Overview - Front Seat Belt Latch	73
1.6	Overview - Rear Seat Belt Latch	74
1.7	Front Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing	75
1.8	Rear Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing	77
1.9	Front Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing	80
1.10	Rear Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing	80
1.11	Front Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing	81
1.12	Outer Rear Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing	81
1.13	Seat Belt Height Adjuster, Removing and Installing	82
1.14	Front Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing	84
1.15	Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing	85
2	Child Seat Anchors	86
2.1	Overview - Rear Child Seat Anchors	86
2.2	Rear Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing	87
3	Airbag System	89
3.1	Component Location Overview - Airbag System	89
4	Airbag Control Module	91
4.1	Overview - Airbag Control Module	91
4.2	Airbag Control Module J234 , Removing and Installing	91
5	Battery Interrupt Igniter	95
5.1	Overview - Battery Interrupt Igniter	95
5.2	Battery Interrupt Igniter, Removing and Installing	95
6	Driver Side Airbag	99
6.1	Overview - Driver Side Airbag	99
6.2	Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing	100
6.3	Airbag Connector, Replacing	104
7	Front Passenger Airbag	106
7.1	Overview - Front Passenger Airbag	106
7.2	Front Passenger Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing	107
7.3	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation Key Switch, Removing and Installing	109
7.4	Front Passenger Airbag -Disabled- Indicator Lamp K145 , Removing and Installing	110
8	Thorax Airbags	111
8.1	Overview - Front Thorax Airbag	111
8.2	Overview - Rear Thorax Airbag	112
8.3	Front Thorax Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing	113
8.4	Rear Thorax Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing	115



9	Head Curtain Airbags	117
9.1	Overview - Head Curtain Airbag	117
9.2	Head Curtain Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing	117
10	Knee Airbags	122
10.1	Overview - Knee Airbag	122
10.2	Knee Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing	123
11	Airbag Crash Sensors	126
11.1	Component Location Overview - Airbag Crash Sensors	126
11.2	Front Airbag Crash Sensor G190 , Removing and Installing	127
11.3	Driver Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G179 / Front Passenger Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G180 , Removing and Installing	130
11.4	Driver Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G256 / Passenger Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G257 , Removing and Installing	133
12	Seat Belt Fastening Detection	135
12.1	Passenger Seat Occupant Detection Sensor G128 , Removing and Installing	135
13	Pedestrian Protection	136
13.1	Overview - Pedestrian Protection	136
13.2	Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor, Removing and Installing	138
13.3	Pedestrian Protection Trigger 1 G598 / Pedestrian Protection Trigger 2 G599 , Removing and Installing	139
13.4	Pressure Hose Sensor for Front Pedestrian Protection G579 , Removing and Installing	142
14	Special Tools	144
70 - Interior Trim		146
1	Front Door Trim Panels	146
1.1	Overview - Front Door Trim Panel	146
1.2	Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing	147
1.3	Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	149
1.4	Front Armrest, Removing and Installing	153
2	Rear Door Trim Panels	155
2.1	Overview - Rear Door Trim Panel	155
2.2	Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing	156
2.3	Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	157
2.4	Rear Armrest, Removing and Installing	161
3	Instrument Panel	164
3.1	Overview - Instrument Panel	164
3.2	Overview - Windshield Projection Cover and Trim (Head Up Display)	166
3.3	Instrument Panel Side Cover, Removing and Installing	166
3.4	Instrument Panel Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing	167
3.5	Radio/Navigation System Frame, Removing and Installing	168
3.6	Instrument Cluster Trim, Removing and Installing	169
3.7	Instrument Panel, Removing and Installing	170
3.8	Outer Instrument Panel Vent, Removing and Installing	179
3.9	Windshield Projection (Head-Up Display) Trim, Removing and Installing	181
3.10	Windshield Projection (Head-Up Display) Cover, Removing and Installing	181
4	Instrument Panel Crossmember	183
4.1	Overview - Instrument Panel Crossmember	183
4.2	Instrument Panel Crossmember, Removing and Installing	183
4.3	Crash Bolster, Removing and Installing	187
5	Vehicle Interior Trim Panels	189
5.1	Component Location Overview - Vehicle Interior Trim Panels	189
5.2	Overview - Sill Panel	191
5.3	Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel	192
5.4	Overview - B-Pillar Trim Panel	194
5.5	Overview - C-Pillar Trim Panel	196



5.6	Overview - Wheel Housing Trim Panel	196
5.7	Overview - Footrest and Carpet	198
5.8	Sill Panel, Removing and Installing	199
5.9	A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing	200
5.10	A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	201
5.11	B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	207
5.12	C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	209
5.13	Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	210
5.14	Footrest, Removing and Installing	212
5.15	Carpet, Removing and Installing	214
6	Luggage Compartment Trim Panels	216
6.1	Component Location Overview - Luggage Compartment Trim Panels	216
6.2	Overview - Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel	217
6.3	Overview - Luggage Compartment Floor	218
6.4	Overview - Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel	219
6.5	Overview - Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel	220
6.6	Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	220
6.7	Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	222
6.8	Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	223
6.9	Lock Carrier Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	225
6.10	Tie Down, Removing and Installing	225
7	Roof Trim Panels	227
7.1	Overview - Headliner	227
7.2	Headliner, Removing and Installing	227
7.3	Roof Reinforcement, Attaching to Body	231
8	Special Tools	234
72 - Seat Frames		237
1	Overview - Seat Versions	237
1.1	Component Location Overview - Seat Versions	237
1.2	Front Seat, Mounting on Fixture for Seat Repair	238
2	Front Seats	240
2.1	Component Location Overview - Electric and Electronic Components	241
2.2	Overview - Front Seat	246
2.3	Overview - Front Backrest	250
2.4	Overview - Seat Pan	253
2.5	Overview - Seat Height Adjustment	259
2.6	Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster	261
2.7	Overview - Seat Depth Adjuster	263
2.8	Overview - Fire Extinguisher	264
2.9	Front Seat, Removing and Installing	264
2.10	Airbag Adapter, Connecting and Disconnecting	271
2.11	Tunnel-Side Seat Trim, Removing and Installing	272
2.12	Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing	273
2.13	Seat Trim Panel Bracket, Removing and Installing	275
2.14	Manual Lumbar Support, Removing and Installing	275
2.15	Seat Depth Adjuster, Removing and Installing	277
2.16	Seat Height Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing	280
2.17	Seat Height Adjuster, Removing and Installing	281
2.18	Seat Pan Lower Frame with Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V28 / V31, Removing and Installing	282
2.19	Lumbar Support Adjusting Mechanism, Removing and Installing	283
2.20	Front Backrest, Removing and Installing	283
2.21	Headrest, Removing and Installing	285
2.22	Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing	286



2.23	Driver and Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E176 / E177 , Removing and Installing	287
2.24	Lumbar Support Adjustment Motors V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 , Removing and Installing	288
2.25	Driver/Front Passenger Seat Adjustment Control Head E470 / E471 , Removing and Installing	288
2.26	Massage Function Control Module J740 , Removing and Installing	289
2.27	Memory Seat/Steering Column Adjustment Control Module J136 , Removing and Installing	289
2.28	Backrest Kick and Puncture Protection, Removing and Installing	289
2.29	Backrest Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing	290
3	Rear Seats	291
3.1	Overview - Bench Seat/Single Seats	291
3.2	Overview - Locking Mechanism	292
3.3	Overview - Rear Seat Backrest	294
3.4	Overview - Center Armrest	295
3.5	Overview - Side Cushion	296
3.6	Bench Seat/Single Seat, Removing and Installing	296
3.7	Headrest, Removing and Installing	298
3.8	Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing	298
3.9	Rear Seat Backrest, Removing and Installing	299
3.10	Locking Mechanism Trim, Removing and Installing	300
3.11	Rear Seat Backrest Locking Mechanism, Removing and Installing	301
3.12	Pass-Through Cover Frame, Removing and Installing	301
3.13	Pass-Through Door, Removing and Installing	302
3.14	Center Armrest, Removing and Installing	303
3.15	Side Cushion, Removing and Installing	303
4	Special Tools	304
74	Seat Upholstery, Covers	307
1	Front Seat Covers and Cushions	307
1.1	Overview - Seat Pan Cover and Cushion	307
1.2	Overview - Backrest Cover and Cushion	310
1.3	Overview - Seat Heating Element	311
1.4	Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing	311
1.5	Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing	313
1.6	Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating	318
1.7	Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating	320
1.8	Driver and Front Passenger Seat Heating Element Z6 / Z8 , Removing and Installing	324
1.9	Driver/Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element Z7 / Z9 , Removing and Installing	325
2	Rear Seat Covers and Cushions	326
2.1	Overview - Bench Seat Cover and Cushion	326
2.2	Overview - Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion	328
2.3	Overview - Seat Heating Element	328
2.4	Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing	329
2.5	Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing	330
2.6	Center Cushion, Removing and Installing, Backrest with Pass-Through	332
2.7	Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Separating	332
2.8	Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating	333
2.9	Seat Heating Element, Removing and Installing	334
2.10	Backrest Heating Element, Removing and Installing	334
3	Special Tools	335
4	Revision History	336





00 – General, Technical Data

1 Safety Precautions

(Edition 03.2018)





⇒ ["1.1 Safety Precautions when Working on Vehicles with Start/Stop System", page 2](#)

⇒ ["1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3](#)

⇒ ["1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing \(Pyrotechnic Components\)", page 4](#)

⇒ ["1.4 Additional Thorax Airbag Safety Precautions", page 5](#)

⇒ ["1.5 Additional Head Curtain Airbag Safety Precautions", page 6](#)

⇒ ["1.6 Front Thorax Airbag Crash Sensors \(Pressure Sensors\) Safety Precautions", page 6](#)

⇒ ["1.7 Restraint System Pyrotechnic, Electric and Mechanical Components, Replacing After a Collision", page 7](#)

⇒ ["1.8 Airbag Fasteners, Checking After Collision", page 9](#)

⇒ ["1.9 Accident without Airbag Deployment", page 9](#)

⇒ ["1.10 Seat Belts, Checking", page 9](#)

⇒ ["1.11 Seat Belt Webbing, Checking", page 10](#)

⇒ ["1.12 Automatic Belt Retractor \(Locking Function\), Checking", page 11](#)

⇒ ["1.13 Seat Belt Latch, Visually Inspecting", page 11](#)

⇒ ["1.14 Seat Belt Latch, Function Test", page 11](#)

⇒ ["1.15 Seat Belt Relays and Belt Tongue, Checking", page 12](#)

⇒ ["1.16 Fasteners and Mounting Points, Checking After a Collision", page 12](#)

⇒ ["1.17 Seat Belt for Child Seat, Checking Child Seat Restraint Function, Market-Specific, Not for Driver Seat Belt", page 12](#)

⇒ ["1.18 Child Seat Anchors, Checking After Collision", page 13](#)

1.1 Safety Precautions when Working on Vehicles with Start/Stop System

Pay attention to the following when working on a vehicle with Stop/Start:



WARNING

There is a risk of injury if the engine starts automatically in vehicles with the Start/Stop System.

- ◆ *For vehicles with an activated Start/Stop System (indicated by a message in the instrument cluster), the engine may start automatically if needed.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the Start/Stop System is disabled when working on the vehicle (turn off ignition, if needed, turn the ignition back on).*



1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components



Note

Pyrotechnic components include:

- ◆ Airbag units
- ◆ Belt tensioners
- ◆ Seat belt force limiter (depending on vehicle equipment)
- ◆ Battery cut-out elements (depending on vehicle equipment)

General

- ◆ Testing, assembly, and repair work may only be performed by qualified personnel.
- ◆ There is no change interval for airbag units.
- ◆ Never test with a test light, volt meter or ohm meter.
- ◆ The pyrotechnic components may be checked only when they are installed and with a vehicle diagnostic tester approved by the manufacturer.
- ◆ When working on pyrotechnic components and on the Airbag Control Module - J234- , the battery ground cable must be disconnected when the ignition is switched ON. Then cover the negative terminal.
- ◆ Wait for 10 seconds after disconnecting the battery.
- ◆ The ignition must be SWITCHED ON when connecting the battery. Nobody should be inside the vehicle when doing this.
- ◆ If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.
- ◆ Follow the steps after connecting the battery. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- ◆ The technician must discharge static electricity before handling pyrotechnic components for the restraint system, for example, before disconnecting the connector. Touching grounded metal parts will discharge the static electricity, for example by touching the door striker.
- ◆ Wash hands after touching ignited restraint system pyrotechnic components.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components may not be opened nor repaired; only use new parts (risk of injury).
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components that have fallen onto a hard surface or show signs of damage must not be installed in the vehicle.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components should be installed immediately upon removal from shipping package.
- ◆ If the procedure must be stopped for awhile, put the pyrotechnic component back into its shipping package.
- ◆ It is not permitted to leave a pyrotechnic component out unattended.



- ◆ When connecting the restraint system pyrotechnic components, only the person performing the work should be in the vehicle.
- ◆ Do not use any grease, cleaning solutions or similar substance on pyrotechnic components.
- ◆ Replace the airbag unit if any contaminants such as oil, grease, paint, dye or solvents have penetrated the fabric.
- ◆ Pyrotechnic components must not be exposed to temperatures over 100 °C (212 °F), even for a short time.

Special Information Regarding Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

- ◆ Store the driver and front passenger airbag units in the uninstalled state so that the cushioned side faces upward.

When replacing airbag units, the following sequence must be followed exactly:

- 1 - Remove the old airbag unit and store with the cushion side facing up.
- 2 - Remove the new airbag unit from the shipping packaging and store it with the cushion side facing up.
- 3 - Place the old airbag unit in the shipping packaging immediately.
- 4 - Install the new airbag unit in the vehicle.

Special Information Regarding Belt Tensioners

- ◆ Use extreme care when removing and installing belt tensioner units. Improper handling of belt tensioner units is very dangerous and could result in serious personal injury.
- ◆ Replace belt tensioner units that are mechanically damaged (dents, cracks).
- ◆ The open end of the belt tensioner should never be pointed at anyone.
- ◆ When connecting a belt tensioner, all mechanical parts, including those in the three-point seat belt, must be secured correctly. If it is not possible to connect the belt tensioner because of insufficient space, the seat belt webbing must be rolled up completely prior to connection. In this case there is no increased safety risk, if all other safety instructions are followed. This particularly includes the notes regarding the disconnection of the battery and the static discharging of the technician prior to connecting the belt tensioner.
- ◆ Even after a crash, it is possible that the belt tensioner ignited, but the seat belt force limiter did NOT. Treat these components as if they had not ignited.

1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing (Pyrotechnic Components)

- ◆ Storage must conform to national legislation.
- ◆ Transport must conform to national and international guidelines, whereby packaging, identification and shipping documents are regulated to the greatest detail.
- ◆ Undeployed pyrotechnic components must be disposed of in an orderly manner in their original packaging, that conforms to national legislation. Contact the importer for questions.



- ◆ Only pyrotechnic components, which have been ignited completely, may be disposed in industrial waste.



WARNING

- ◆ *This does not apply to belt tensioners that function according to the Wankel pretensioner principle. These are to be treated like undeployed pyrotechnic components (such as airbags, seat belts, pyrotechnic battery cut-out elements).*
- ◆ *Background: Workshop equipment cannot determine if belt tensioners have deployed all pyrotechnic materials according to the Wankel pretensioner principle.*

1.4 Additional Thorax Airbag Safety Precautions



WARNING

Seat covers or protective covers that are not approved specially for use on Volkswagen seats with thorax airbags must not be used.

Do not cut the backrest cushion in thorax airbag area.

The seam in thorax airbag area must run straight when installing.

All upholstery clips must be replaced (metal and plastic clips).

During installation, all upholstery clips must be placed in the same place they were when they were removed.

If the cover is damaged (with rips, burned holes, etc.) in thorax airbag region, it must be replaced for safety reasons so that airbag deploys correctly.

Do not repair the backrest cover in the thorax airbag area (because of special materials and strictly defined seams).

Replace the backrest cushion if the thorax airbag deploys.

All damaged parts must be replaced after a collision. If no airbag unit damage is detected, the airbag unit can still be used.

If thorax airbag units are replaced, the new thorax airbag number sticker should be removed and placed over the old sticker on the seat pan.

Do not poke the cover with an upholstery needle or other sharp objects near the airbag, the Front Passenger Seat Occupant Sensor - G128- or the passenger occupant detection system mat in the cover.



1.5 Additional Head Curtain Airbag Safety Precautions



Caution

Visually inspect the trim panels for damage before every installation.

Always replace damaged pillar trim panels, never repair.

Make sure the trim panels are secure when installing.

Always replace the entire module when making repairs behind the head curtain airbag.

Handle head curtain airbag modules with great care when removing and installing them to prevent causing any damage.

Place any removed head curtain airbag modules back in their shipping packaging or on a clean and even surface with a cloth underneath.

After servicing the body near the head curtain airbag, check the body for welding beads, deformation and chafe marks (compare with opposite side of vehicle).

As long as the gas generator is NOT attached, hold it securely when transporting, removing, installing, etc.

Never rotate, coil, knot, throw, slide, push, hang, squeeze, press, pinch or clamp the head curtain airbag module.

They may be folded as long as this does not damage them, especially the protective cover.

1.6 Front Thorax Airbag Crash Sensors (Pressure Sensors) Safety Precautions

The thorax airbag crash sensors react to changes in pressure and therefore must be handled very carefully. Note the following points:



Caution

- ◆ *Always note the correct installation position and only install in the component location intended in the door.*
- ◆ *Protect the crash sensor from bumps and impacts. Do not use a crash sensor if it has fallen on the floor. When doing body work on the door, the crash sensor should be removed.*
- ◆ *The crash sensor is calibrated to the volume of air inside the door. If the door is deformed resulting in a reduced air space inside the door, the function of the crash sensor will be impaired.*
- ◆ *Avoid contaminating the crash sensor. Do not use compressed air in the area surrounding the crash sensor. Protect crash sensor from filings or shavings (for example, when installing door speakers later). Do not use cavity sealant or spray lubricant near the crash sensor.*
- ◆ *Protect against heat and cold. Avoid heating, for example when painting or doing other body work. Crash sensors should not be subjected to temperatures below -40 °C (-40 °F) (for example, in non-climate-controlled airplane cargo holds).*
- ◆ *Protect the crash sensor from moisture when storing or installing it.*

For proper crash sensor function, it must be ensured that the door is sealed properly after assembly. Note the following points:

- ◆ *All components (for example, cover, speaker, door trim panel) must be installed correctly.*
- ◆ *The door trim panel clips seal the system. If necessary, replace the clips.*

1.7 Restraint System Pyrotechnic, Electric and Mechanical Components, Replacing After a Collision

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle Diagnostic Tester

The Airbag Control Module must be Replaced:

- ◆ If the display "Control module faulty" appears after checking the DTC memory
- ◆ after three side/ driver/ front passenger airbag or belt tensioner deployments
- ◆ if housing is damaged
- ◆ if there is deformation on the tunnel within a 200 mm radius around the control module

Always replace the following:

- ◆ All deployed airbag units

Also with Front Passenger Airbag Deployment:

- ◆ Instrument Panel
- ◆ Deformed supports of the front passenger airbag unit (cannot be reformed).



- ◆ All front airbag sensors on the front end
- ◆ Remaining transverse acceleration sensors if the mounting points are deformed in the sensor area

Also with Driver Airbag Deployment:

- ◆ Return spring with slip ring
- ◆ All front airbag sensors on the front end
- ◆ Remaining transverse acceleration sensors if the mounting points are deformed in the sensor area

Also with Thorax Airbag Deployment:

- ◆ Pressure sensors on the deployed side
- ◆ Transverse acceleration sensors on the deployed side
- ◆ Cover
- ◆ Cushion
- ◆ With a folding rear seat backrest: side cushion (if equipped)
- ◆ Remaining transverse acceleration sensors if the mounting points are deformed in the sensor area

Also:

- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with deployed belt tensioners
- ◆ All automatic belt retractors with deployed seat belt force limiters (depending on vehicle equipment)
- ◆ Seat belt latches for all automatic belt retractors with deployed seat belt tensioners with the belt on
- ◆ Seat belt height adjuster (manual and power) for all automatic belt retractors with deployed seat belt tensioners with the belt on
- Connect the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester if there is a chance the belt tensioner and/or seat belt force limiter deployed.
- In »Guided Fault Finding« under "15 - Airbag", check whether there is a crash entry in the airbag control module.
- Check if the "Resistance too large" error is also stored for the belt tensioner and/or belt force limiter. Deployed belt tensioners and/or belt force limiters must fulfill both conditions. "Requirement: the airbag control module was not replaced yet".



Note

- ◆ *The "Resistance too high" error may also be stored if there is an open circuit. Then there is normally no crash entry.*
- ◆ *Depending on the crash, the belt tensioner may have deployed while the belt force limiter did »NOT«. Follow the disposal information for pyrotechnic components. Refer to*
⇒ "1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing (Pyrotechnic Components)", page 4.
- ◆ *Also check the seat belts. Refer to*
⇒ "1.10 Seat Belts, Checking", page 9.
- If parts of the seat belt system are removed due to an accident, replace the belt system bolts.
- If needed (visual inspection), the following must also be replaced: all faulty components.



- After replacing the airbag units or the control module, affix stickers (only tear-off strips) to the registration card and return the registration card to the relevant distribution center or to the Importer for registration.

1.8 Airbag Fasteners, Checking After Collision

All damaged fastening elements must always be replaced. Reshaping the components or »making them fit« is not permitted.

The following components must be checked after every airbag deployment.

With a Front Passenger Airbag Deployment:

- ◆ Instrument panel crossmember; front passenger airbag supports and passenger airbag unit must be installed free of tension. Otherwise the crossmember is to be replaced.
- ◆ Check the glove compartment for damage. Replace the glove compartment if damaged.

With a Driver Airbag Deployment:

- ◆ Steering wheel: Remove the steering wheel and place it with the steering wheel rim on a flat surface. The entire steering wheel rim must rest on the surface. Otherwise the steering wheel should be replaced.
- ◆ Check steering wheel for smoke residue. If smoke residue is present, replace the steering wheel.

1.9 Accident without Airbag Deployment

- ◆ If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- does not indicate a malfunction, then it is not necessary to replace the pyrotechnic components. Seat belts must be checked separately.

1.10 Seat Belts, Checking



WARNING

The seat belt system must be inspected systematically after every accident. If damage is determined at any inspection point, the customer must be informed that it is necessary to replace the seat belt.

Inspection Points

- ◆ Check the seat belt webbing. Refer to ["1.11 Seat Belt Webbing, Checking", page 10](#).
- ◆ Check the automatic belt retractor (locking function). Refer to ["1.12 Automatic Belt Retractor \(Locking Function\), Checking", page 11](#).
- ◆ Visual inspection of the seat belt latch. Refer to ["1.13 Seat Belt Latch, Visually Inspecting", page 11](#).
- ◆ Belt latch function test. Refer to ["1.14 Seat Belt Latch, Function Test", page 11](#).
- ◆ Check the seat belt relays and belt tongue. Refer to ["1.15 Seat Belt Relays and Belt Tongue, Checking", page 12](#).
- ◆ Check the fasteners and mounting points. Refer to ["1.16 Fasteners and Mounting Points, Checking After a Collision", page 12](#).



- ◆ Check the child seat restraint function for additional child seats (not for the driver safety belt). Refer to [⇒ "1.17 Seat Belt for Child Seat, Checking Child Seat Restraint Function, Market-Specific, Not for Driver Seat Belt", page 12](#) for market-specific versions.



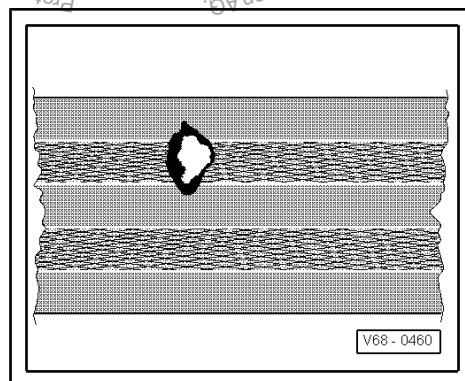
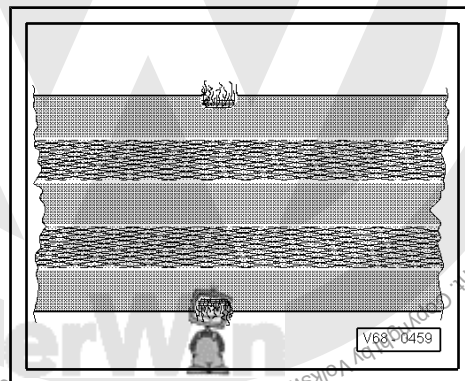
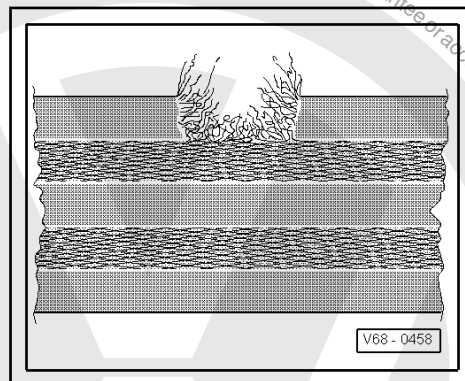
Caution

If customer refuses to have a damaged seat belt replaced, an appropriate note should be made in the maintenance schedule booklet.

1.11 Seat Belt Webbing, Checking

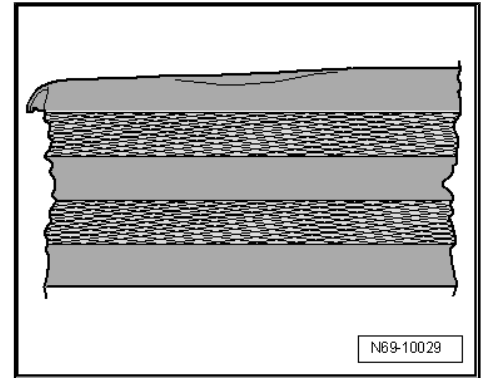
Procedure

- Pull the belt completely out of the automatic belt retractor or lap belt adjustment tongue.
- Check the seat belt webbing for contamination, wash with mild soapy water if necessary. Refer to the Owner's Manual.





- If one of the types of damage (1 and 2) shown in the following is detected on a vehicle which has been in an accident, the entire seat belt must be replaced with the belt latch.
- If damage under points 1, 2, 3 and/or 4 is detected on a vehicle not involved in an accident, then only the damaged seat belt needs to be replaced.
- 1 - Seat belt webbing cut, torn or frayed.
- 2 - Webbing loops on seat belt edge torn.
- 3 - Burn marks from cigarettes or similar.
- 4 - One side of belt edge deformed or area of belt edge is wavy.



1.12 Automatic Belt Retractor (Locking Function), Checking

The automatic belt retractor has two locking functions.

- ◆ The first locking function is initiated by the belt being jerked out of the automatic belt retractor (belt extraction acceleration).

Test 1

- Pull the seat belt webbing out of the automatic belt retractor with a firm jerk.
- No locking effect - replace the entire seat belt with seat belt latch.
- If malfunctions are experienced when pulling out or retracting belt, first check whether position of the automatic belt retractor has been altered.
- The second locking function is initiated by change in vehicle velocity (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Test 2



WARNING

For safety reasons, road test should be carried out on traffic-free stretch to ensure that other drivers/pedestrians etc. are not endangered.

- Fasten the seat belt.
- Accelerate the vehicle to 20 km/h (32 mph) and then perform a hard braking maneuver with the foot brake.
- Replace the entire seat belt with the seat belt latch if the seat belt is not locked by locking mechanism during the braking procedure.

1.13 Seat Belt Latch, Visually Inspecting

- Inspect the seat belt latch for the formation of cracks and fracturing.
- If damaged, replace the entire seat belt with seat belt latch.

1.14 Seat Belt Latch, Function Test

Seat Belt Latch, Checking

- Insert the belt tongue into the seat belt latch until it clicks into place. Check whether the locking mechanism is properly engaged by giving the seat belt webbing a firm jerk.



- Replace the entire seat belt with the seat belt latch if the belt tongue fails even once to engage properly in the seat belt latch during at least five tests.

Release, Checking

- Press the seat belt latch to release the seat belt. With the seat belt relaxed, the lock tongue must spring out of seat belt latch without assistance.
- Perform the test at least five times. Replace the entire seat belt with the seat belt latch if the belt tongue fails to spring out even once.



WARNING

Under no circumstances may grease be used to eliminate noise or stiffness at seat belt latch buttons.

1.15 Seat Belt Relays and Belt Tongue, Checking

The plastic-covered guides show fine parallel grooves after straining of the belt system (belt was fastened during accident). (Wear from frequent belt use can be identified by smooth signs of wear that are free of scoring.)

- Check plastic for deformation, rupture and the formation of cracks.
- For groove build-up and/or damage, replace the entire seat belt with the seat belt latch.

1.16 Fasteners and Mounting Points, Checking After a Collision

- ◆ Seat belt latch tongue deformed (fully extended).
- ◆ Height adjustment not functional.
- ◆ Mounting points (seat, pillar, vehicle floor) distorted or threads damaged.
- If damage is found on the components, replace the entire seat belt with the seat belt latch.
- If parts of the seat belt system are removed due to an accident, replace the belt system bolts.
- Replace the mounting points.



Note

If damage is discovered that did not result from an accident, for example wear, replace only the particular part which is damaged.

1.17 Seat Belt for Child Seat, Checking Child Seat Restraint Function, Market-Specific, Not for Driver Seat Belt

To check the function, the entire belt system must be installed, including the side trim panel

Hold Function, Switching On

- ◆ Pull out the seat belt all the way.



Proper Function

- ◆ The belt must retract with a chattering sound.
- ◆ If the retracting process is stopped, the belt cannot be pulled out anymore.

Switching Off

- ◆ Belt retraction to about 100 mm remaining.
- ◆ Hold function must switch off with a remainder of 100 mm, at the latest. The belt functions normally again.

If the seat belt for the child seat restraint function does not work, replace the seat belt

1.18 Child Seat Anchors, Checking After Collision

Inspection Points

- ◆ Child seat anchors must be checked for damage or deformation after a collision.
- ◆ Child seat anchors welded or bolted into the body or the seat or backrest must not be repaired or straightened.
- ◆ Child seat anchors bolted into the body, seat or backrest must be replaced if damaged or deformed.
- ◆ Child seat anchors bolts should be replaced if bracket is damaged.





2 Repair Information

⇒ ["2.1 Contact Corrosion", page 14](#)

⇒ ["2.2 Line Routing and Securing", page 14](#)

2.1 Contact Corrosion

Contact corrosion can occur if incorrect fasteners (bolts, nuts, washers, etc.) are used.

For this reason, only fasteners with a special surface coating are installed.

In addition, rubber or plastic parts and adhesive are made of materials that do not conduct electricity.

Use new parts if necessary. Refer to the Parts Catalog.



Note

- ◆ *We recommend only using original replacement parts. They have been tested and are compatible with aluminum.*
- ◆ *The use of VW accessories is recommended.*
- ◆ *Contact corrosion damage is not covered under warranty!*

2.2 Line Routing and Securing

If loosening or removing and installing hydraulic lines, pneumatic lines or wires, draw sketches or take pictures. This ensures installation is the same as the original.



68 – Interior Equipment

1 Storage Compartments and Covers

⇒ [“1.1 Component Location Overview - Storage Compartment and Covers”, page 15](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover”, page 17](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Overview - Steering Column Trim Panel”, page 18](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Overview - Glove Compartment”, page 19](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Overview - Headliner Compartment”, page 20](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 20](#)

⇒ [“1.7 Upper Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 21](#)

⇒ [“1.8 Lower Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 22](#)

⇒ [“1.9 Glove Compartment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 24](#)

⇒ [“1.10 Glove Compartment Lid Service Position”, page 25](#)

⇒ [“1.11 Glove Compartment Lid Damping Element, Removing and Installing”, page 26](#)

⇒ [“1.12 Glove Compartment, Removing and Installing”, page 26](#)

⇒ [“1.13 Glove Compartment Lid, Removing and Installing”, page 28](#)

⇒ [“1.14 Headliner Storage Compartment, Removing and Installing”, page 28](#)

1.1 Component Location Overview - Storage Compartment and Covers



1 - Instrument Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“3.1 Overview - Instrument Panel”](#),
page 164 .

2 - Glove Compartment

- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“1.4 Overview - Glove Compartment”](#),
page 19 .

3 - Center Console

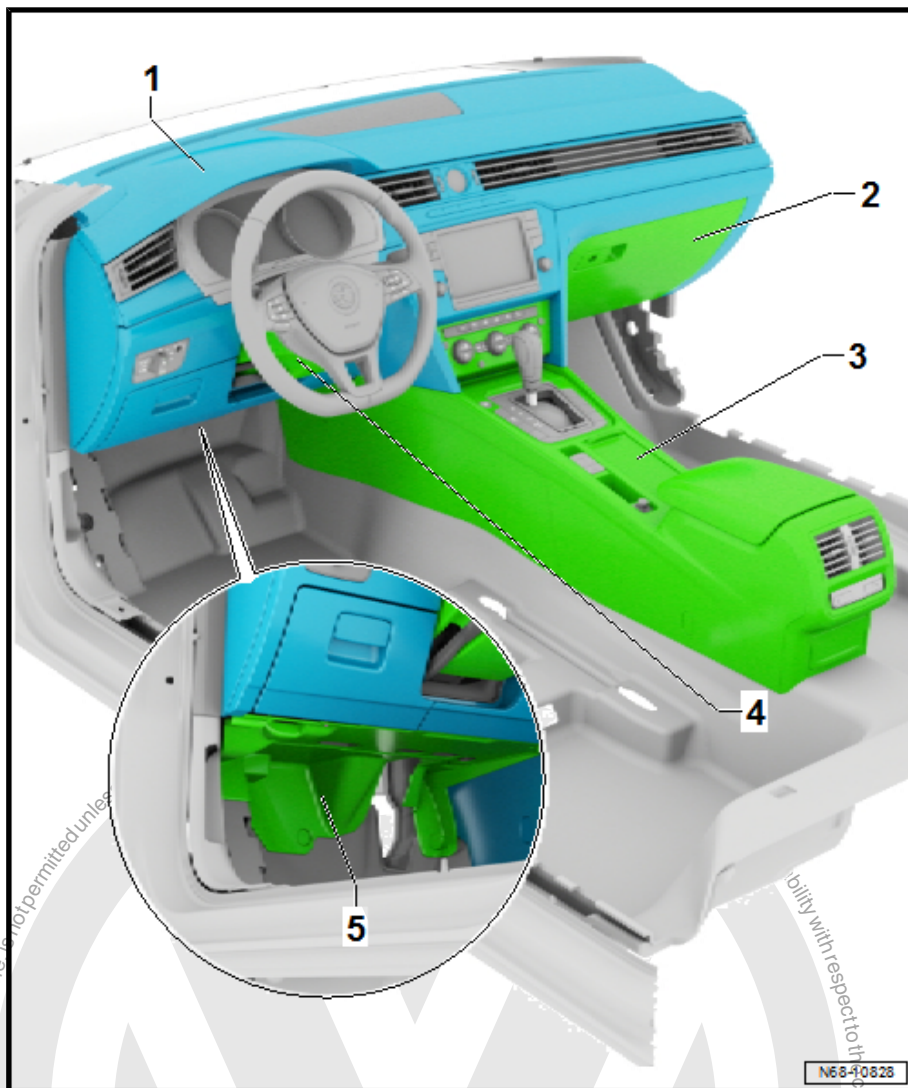
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“3.7 Center Console, Removing and Installing”](#), page 44 .

4 - Steering Column Trim Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“1.3 Overview - Steering Column Trim Panel”](#),
page 18 .
- ❑ Upper Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.7 Upper Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”](#),
page 21 .
- ❑ Lower Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.8 Lower Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”](#),
page 22 .

5 - Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover

- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover”](#), page 17 .





1.2 Overview - Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover

1 - Screw

- 1.5 Nm

2 - Clips

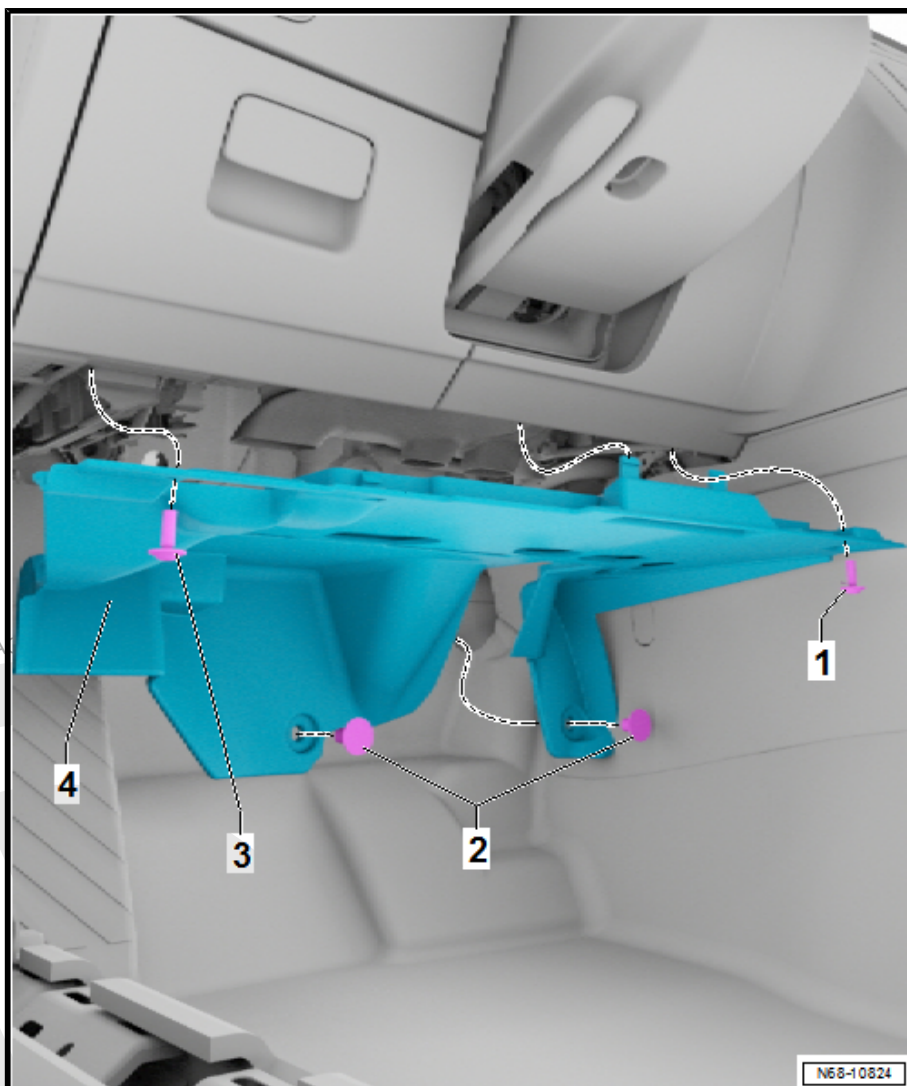
- Quantity: 2

3 - Screw

- 1.5 Nm

4 - Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover

- Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.6 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover, Removing and Installing", page 20](#).





1.3 Overview - Steering Column Trim Panel

1 - Instrument Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“3.1 Overview - Instrument Panel”](#),
page 164 .

2 - Upper Steering Column Trim Panel Gap Cover

- ❑ Clipped with the upper steering column trim panel

3 - Upper Steering Column Trim Panel

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.7 Upper Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”](#),
page 21 .
- ❑ Press on until it engages audibly.

4 - Screw

- ❑ 2.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2

5 - Screw

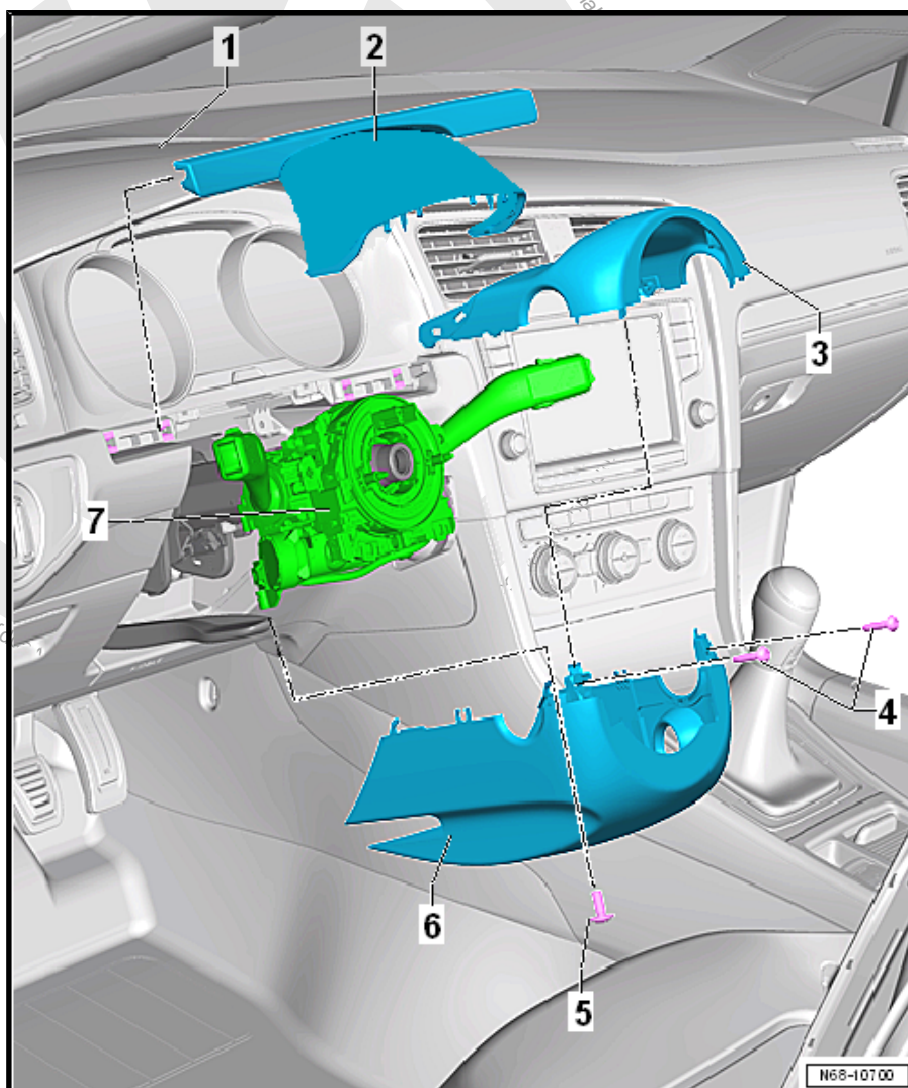
- ❑ 2.5 Nm

6 - Lower Steering Column Trim Panel

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.8 Lower Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”](#),
page 22 .

7 - Steering Column Switch Module

- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Steering Column Switch Module; Overview - Steering Column Switch Module .





1.4 Overview - Glove Compartment

1 - Glove Compartment

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.12 Glove Compartment, Removing and Installing", page 26](#).

2 - Damping Element

- ❑ For the glove compartment lid
- ❑ With Glove Compartment Lamp Switch - E26-
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.11 Glove Compartment Lid Damping Element, Removing and Installing", page 26](#).

3 - Screws

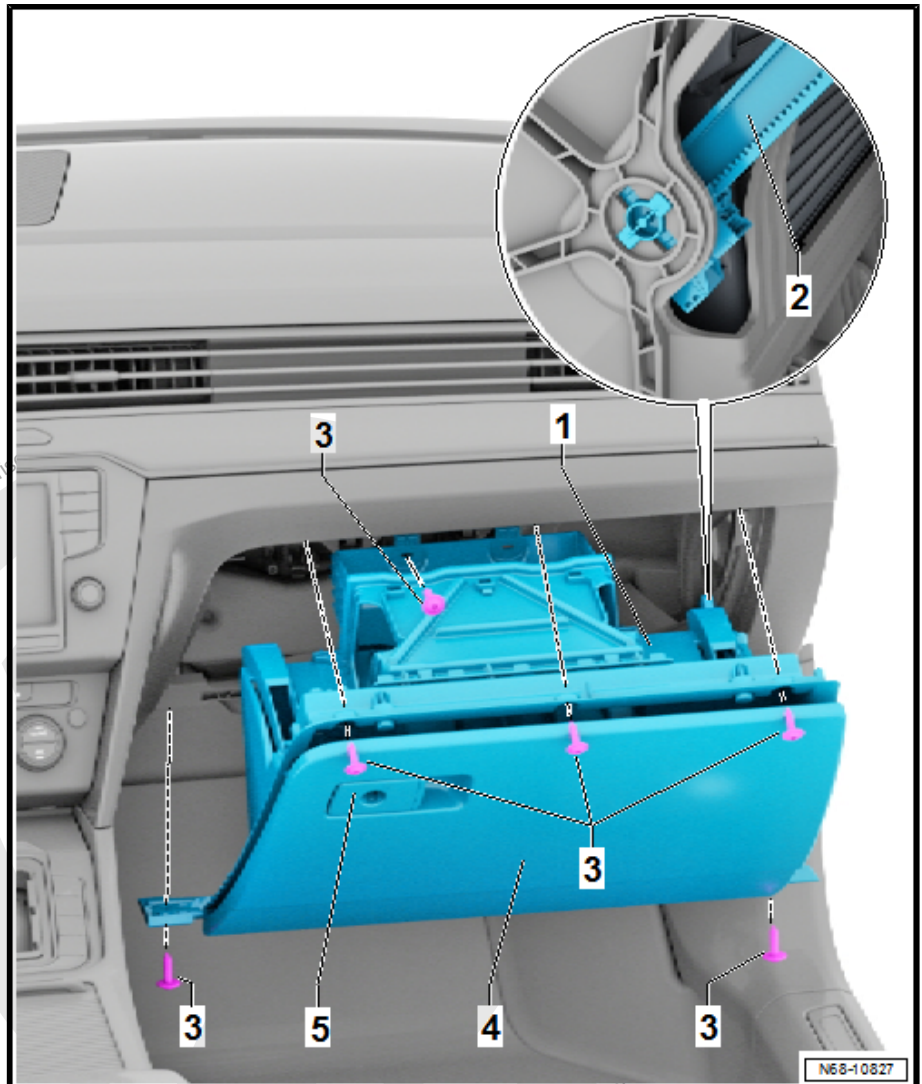
- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 6

4 - Glove Compartment Lid

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.13 Glove Compartment Lid, Removing and Installing", page 28](#).

5 - Glove Compartment Handle

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.9 Glove Compartment Handle, Removing and Installing", page 24](#).





1.5 Overview - Headliner Compartment

1 - Storage Compartment

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.14 Headliner Storage Compartment, Removing and Installing"](#),
[page 28](#) .

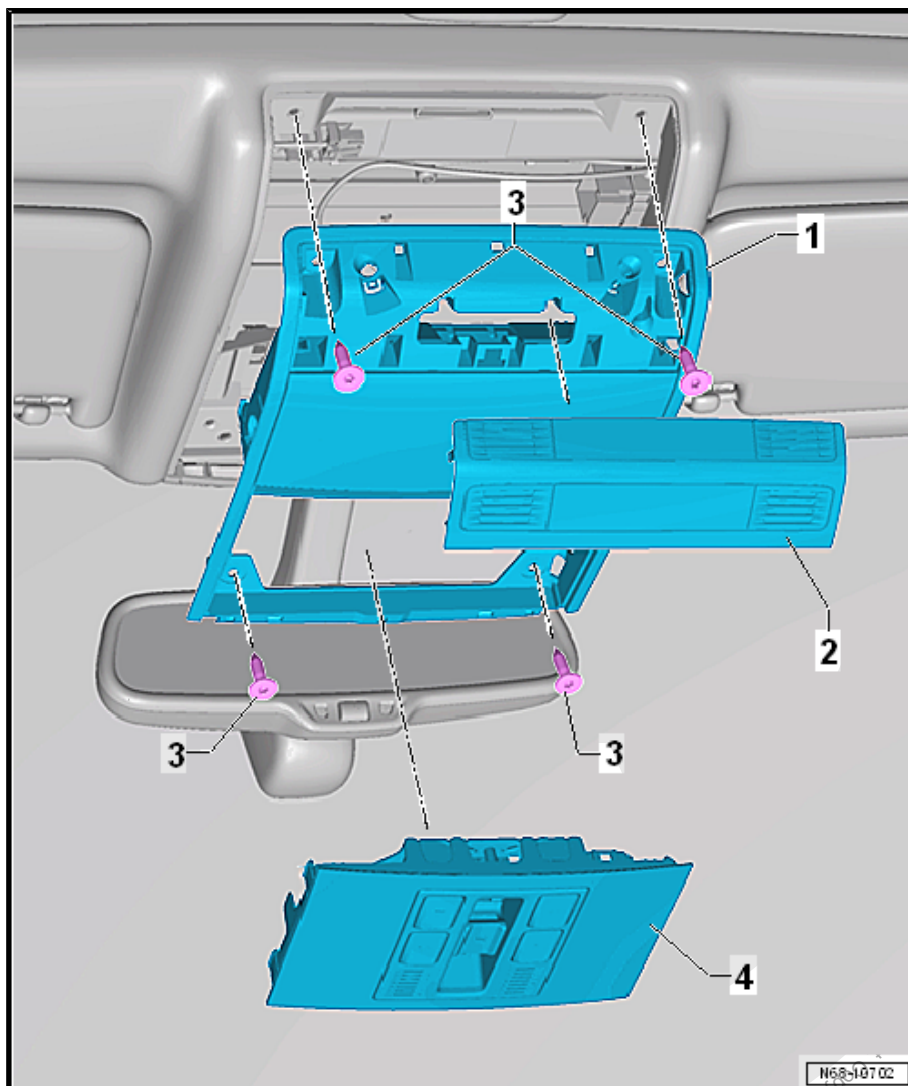
2 - Cover

3 - Screw

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 4

4 - Front Interior Lamp - WX1-

- ❑ Component location overview. Refer to ⇒
Electrical Equipment;
Rep. Gr. 96 ; Lamps;
Component Location
Overview - Roof Trim
Panel Lamps .



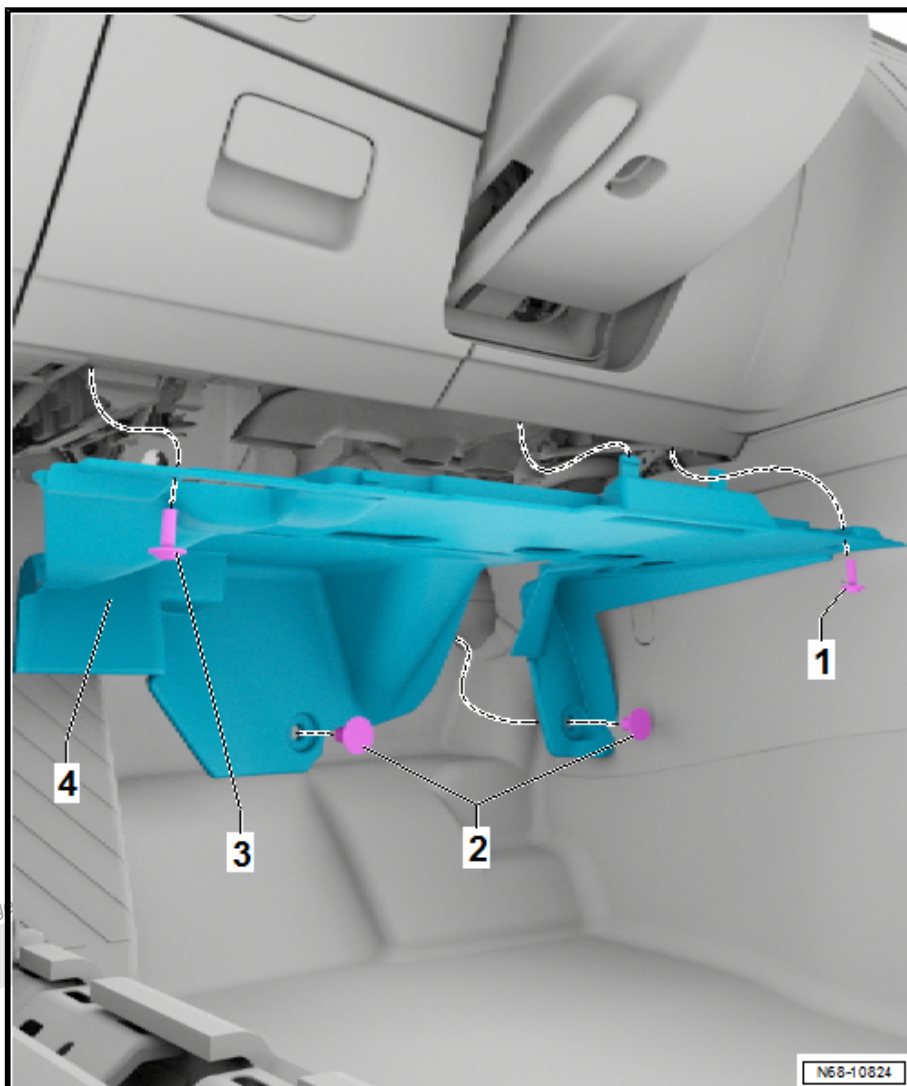
1.6 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

- Switch off the ignition.
- Remove the screw -1-.
- Remove the two clips -2-.
- Remove the screw -3-.
- Remove the driver side instrument panel cover -4- from the instrument panel.
- Disconnect the footwell lamp connector.



Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ["1.2 Overview - Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover", page 17](#)

1.7 Upper Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Removing

- Release the steering wheel adjustment lever.



- Pull out the steering wheel completely, push it downward and lock it.
- Loosen the instrument cluster gap cover off the mounts on the instrument cluster using the -3409- -A arrows-.
- Loosen the upper steering column trim panel -1- off the lower steering column trim panel mounts -arrow B and arrow C-. To do so, turn the steering wheel accordingly.
- Disengage the upper steering column trim panel from the lower steering column trim panel and remove it together with the instrument cluster gap cover.

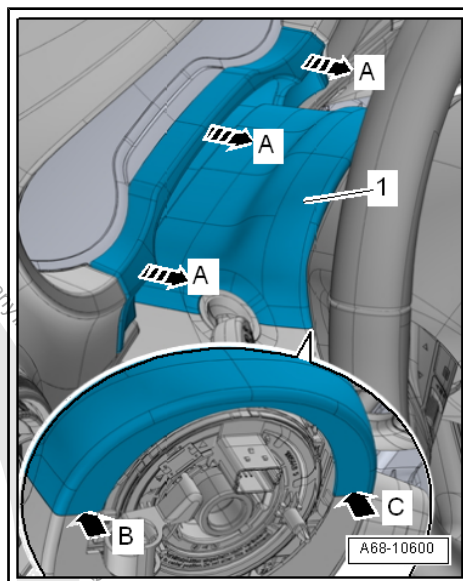
Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.



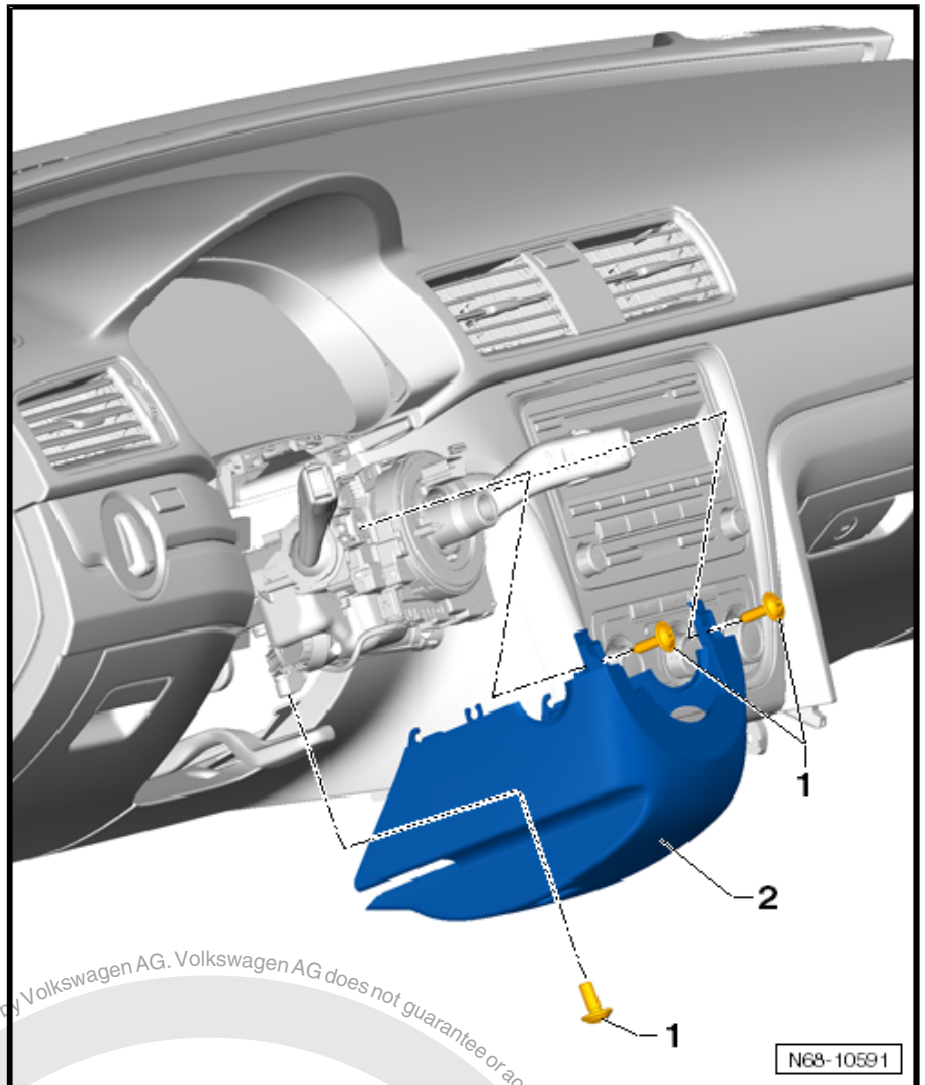
1.8 Lower Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

- Remove the upper steering column trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "1.7 Upper Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 21](#).
- If necessary, remove the ignition key.



- Remove the screws -1- from the lower steering column trim panel. To do so, turn the steering wheel accordingly.
- Remove the lower steering column trim panel -2- from the steering column.
- For vehicles with a keyless locking and starting system, disconnect the connector for the Anti-Theft Immobilizer Reader Coil - D2- .

Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ [“1.3 Overview - Steering Column Trim Panel”, page 18](#)





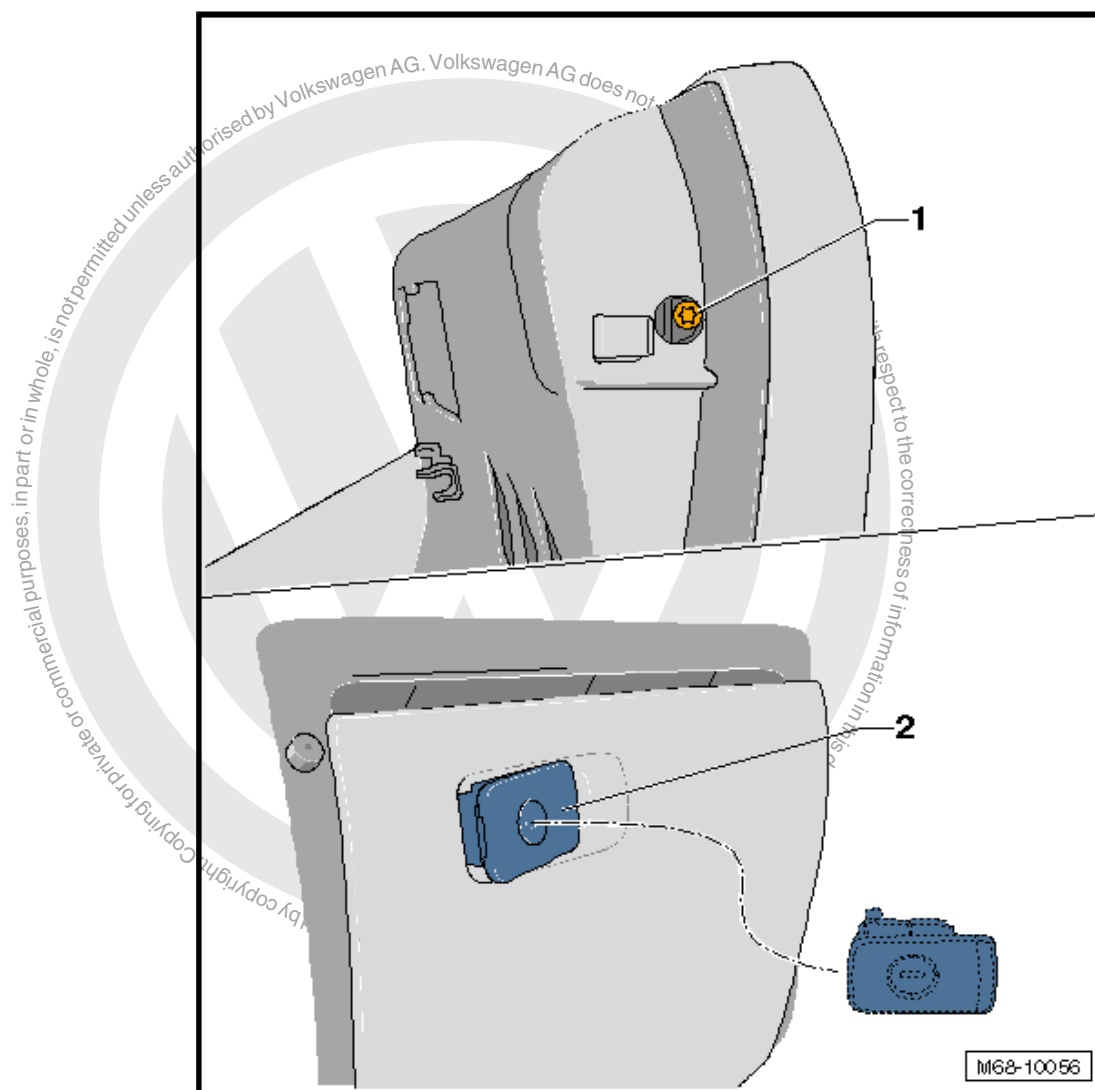
1.9 Glove Compartment Handle, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

- Open the glove compartment.
- Remove the bolt -1- and the unlock button -2- from the glove compartment lid.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Release button to glove compartment lid	1.5 Nm



1.10 Glove Compartment Lid Service Position

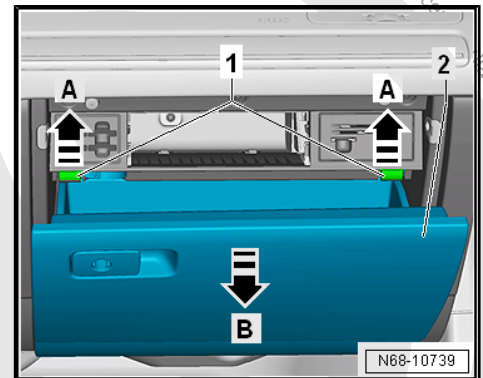
Moving into Service Position

- Glove compartment lid -2- is open.
- Push the stops -1- for the glove compartment lid -2- upward -A arrows-.
- Carefully open the glove compartment lid -2- approximately 5 cm -arrow B-.



Caution

Do not exceed the 5 cm, otherwise the brake component shaft can be removed from the damper.

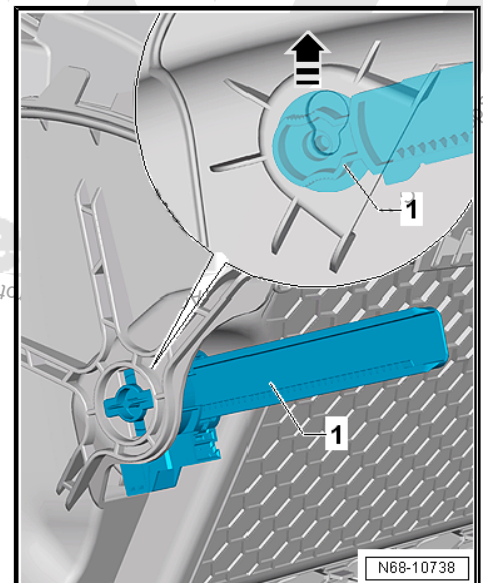


- Move/release the steering rack -1- in direction of the -arrow- and remove it from the glove compartment lid.



Caution

If when "moving into service position" the shaft -1- is removed from the damper, guide it carefully back in the damper.



Note

If when "moving to service position" the damping element falls out of the damper, insert back into the damper and at the same time pay attention to the correct installation position.

Service Position, Resetting

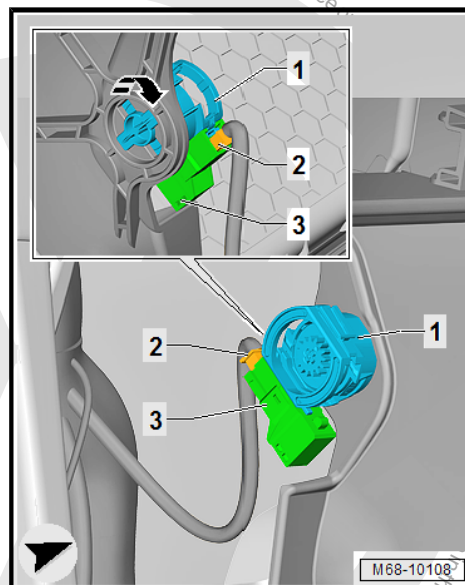
- Slowly close the glove compartment lid.
- Close the glove compartment lid further and lock behind the end stops.



1.11 Glove Compartment Lid Damping Element, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Move the glove compartment lid into the service position. Refer to [⇒ "1.10 Glove Compartment Lid Service Position", page 25](#).
- Disconnect the connector -2- from the Glove Compartment Lamp Switch - E26- -3-.
- Turn the damper -1- 90° ($\frac{1}{4}$ turn) -arrow- and remove it from the glove compartment.



- Move/release the steering rack -1- in the direction of the -arrow- and remove it from the glove compartment lid -2-.

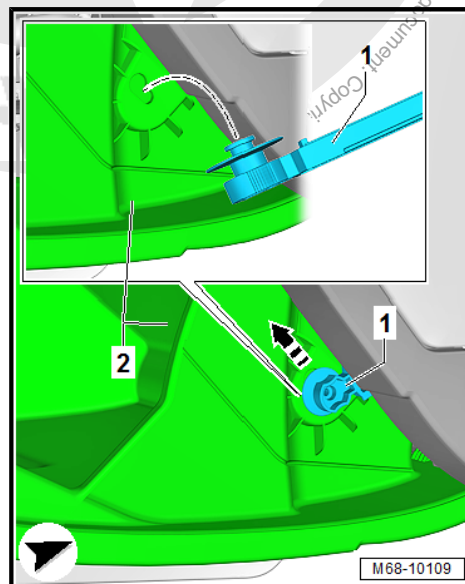
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



1.12 Glove Compartment, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

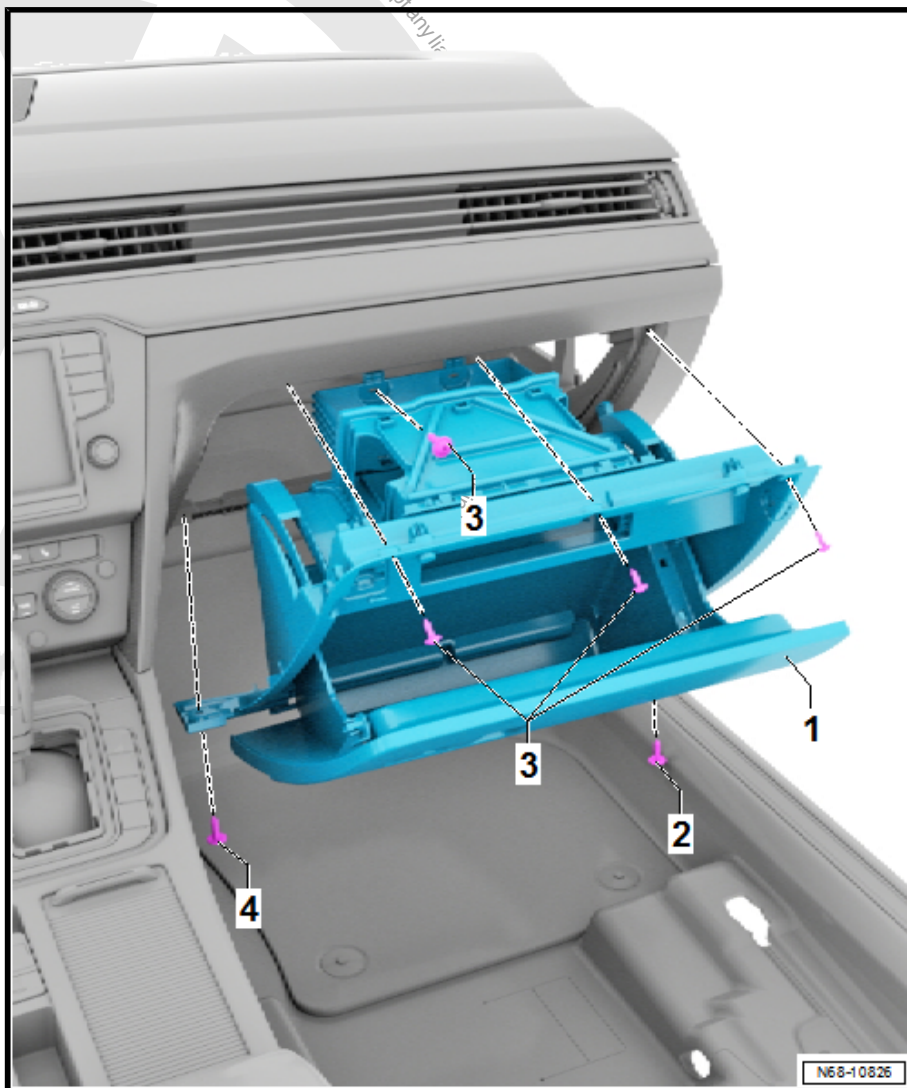
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

- If equipped, remove the Information Electronics Control Module 1 - J794-. Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Infotainment System; Information Electronics Control Module 1 - J794- , Removing and Installing .
- Remove the bolts -2 and 4- in the footwell.
- Open the glove compartment lid -1- and remove the four bolts -3-.



- Unclip the glove compartment from the instrument panel and remove it just far enough until the hose for the glove compartment cooling is accessible.
- Remove the glove compartment cooling hose from the glove compartment.
- Disconnect any connectors from the glove compartment, free up the wiring guides and remove the glove compartment.



Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“1.4 Overview - Glove Compartment”, page 19](#)



1.13 Glove Compartment Lid, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Remove the glove compartment. Refer to [⇒ “1.12 Glove Compartment, Removing and Installing”, page 26](#).
- Place the glove compartment on a soft surface.
- Move the glove compartment lid into the service position. Refer to [⇒ “1.10 Glove Compartment Lid Service Position”, page 25](#).
- Drive out the left and right hinge pins -1- with a punch in the direction of the -arrow B-.
- Remove the glove compartment lid from the glove compartment.

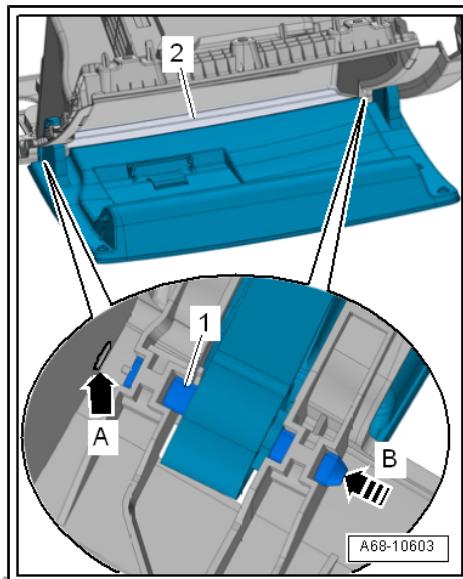
Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

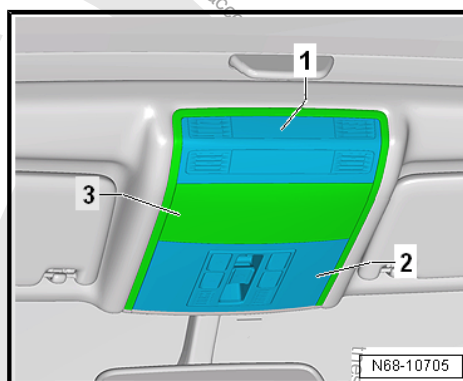
Install in reverse order of removal.



1.14 Headliner Storage Compartment, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Switch off the ignition.
- Unclip the cover -1- from the headliner storage compartment -3- and remove it.
- Remove the Front Interior Lamp - WX1- -2-. Refer to [⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Lamps; Component Location Overview - Roof Trim Panel Lamps](#).
- If necessary, remove the covers for the interior rearview mirror. Refer to [⇒ “5.1 Overview - Interior Rearview Mirror”, page 51](#).





- Remove the bolts -1-.
- Remove the headliner storage compartment -2- from the reinforcement frame in the headliner -3-.

Installing



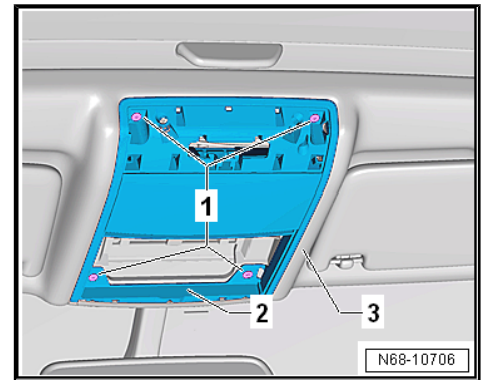
Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["1.5 Overview - Headliner Compartment", page 20](#)





2 Extra Equipment

⇒ [“2.1 Overview - Sun Visors”, page 30](#)

⇒ [“2.2 Sun Visor, Removing and Installing”, page 31](#)

⇒ [“2.3 Sun Visor Center Support, Removing and Installing”, page 32](#)

⇒ [“2.4 Roof Grab Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 33](#)

⇒ [“2.5 Roof Grab Handle Bracket, Removing and Installing”, page 36](#)

2.1 Overview - Sun Visors



Note

The overview illustration shows the driver side. The illustration for the front passenger side is similar.

1 - Sun Visor

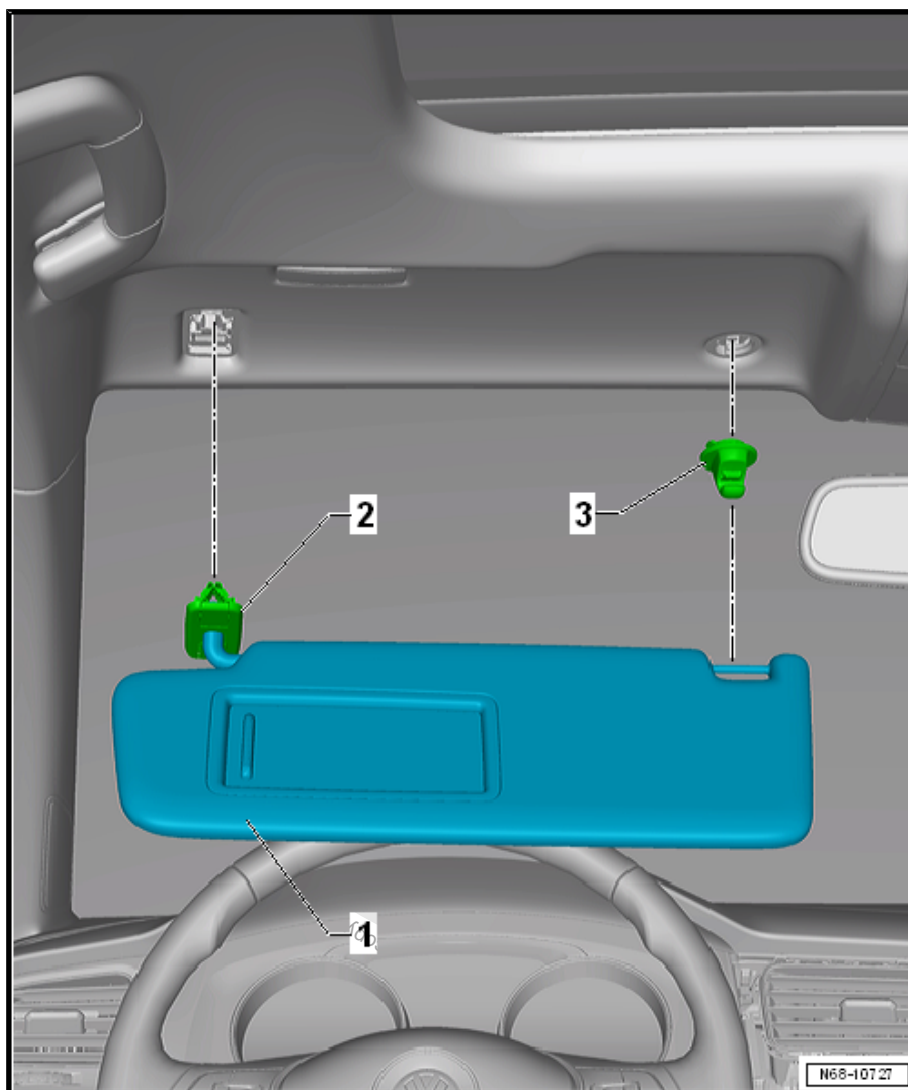
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.2 Sun Visor, Removing and Installing”, page 31](#).

2 - Sun Visor Mount

- ❑ Cannot be removed from the sun visor

3 - Center Bracket

- ❑ For the sun visor
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.3 Sun Visor Center Support, Removing and Installing”, page 32](#).



any liability with respect to the correctness of information in this document



2.2 Sun Visor, Removing and Installing



Note

The removal and installation of the driver side sun visor is described. The removal and installation for the front passenger side is the same.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release Pliers - VAS6427-

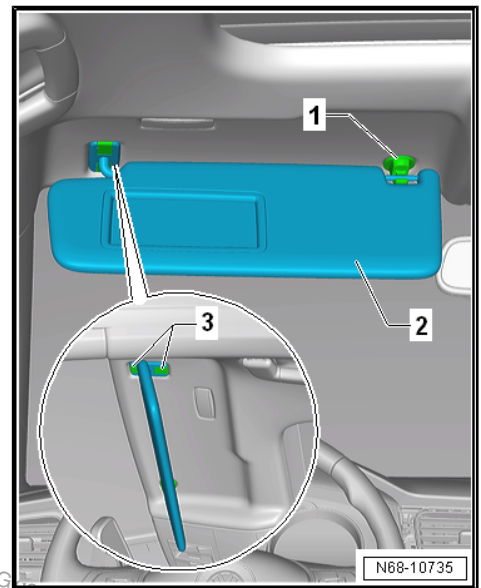
Removing

- Pivot the sun visor forward.
- Disengage the sun visor -2- at the center support -1-.
- Open the caps -3- in the sun visor mount.



Note

For the following steps, make sure that the -VAS6427- are positioned in the center of the retainers.





- Using the -VAS6427-, loosen the front clamp -3- in the sun visor mount -1- from the body mount.
- Keep tension on the sun visor to prevent the retainer from unintentionally locking again.
- Using the -VAS6427-, loosen the rear clamp -3- in the sun visor mount -1- from the body mount.
- Carefully remove the sun visor -2- with the sun visor mount -3- downward from the body mount. Remove the transportation safeguard.
- Pull the wiring harness bonded to the headliner forward. Disconnect the connector and remove the sun visor.



Note

If the wiring harness is torn off when »pulling forward«, lower the headliner. To service the wiring harness, use the -VAS1978 B-.

Installing

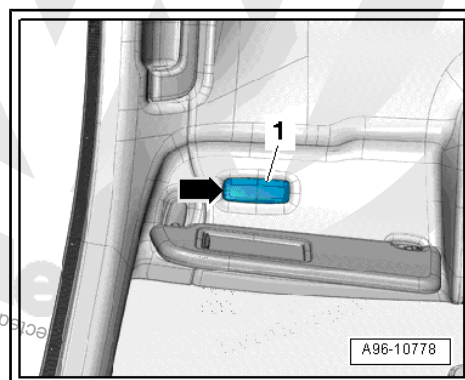
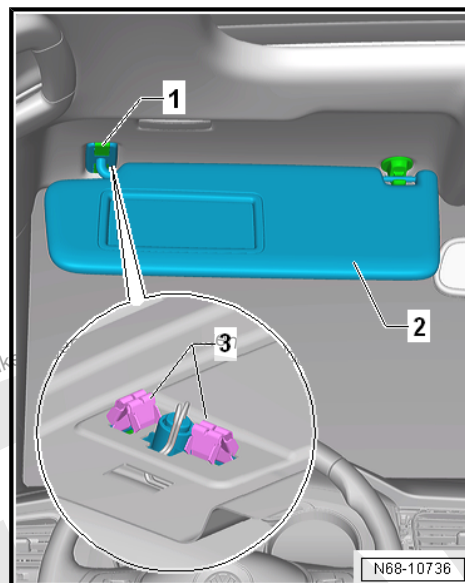


Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

- Tape around the connector with a layer of foam tape.
- Using a flat-head screwdriver, carefully pry out the vanity mirror lighting -1- at the opening -arrow-.
- Disconnect the connector.
- Reach into the vanity mirror lighting opening with one finger. Slightly pull the headliner downward.
- Slide the connector approximately 6 cm toward the rear between the headliner and the roof crossmember.
- Engage the front retainer in the sun visor mount into the body mount.
- Engage the rear clamp in the sun visor mount into the body mount.
- Make sure both clamps are completely engaged in the vehicle body.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.



2.3 Sun Visor Center Support, Removing and Installing



Note

The removal and installation of the driver side sun visor center support is described. The removal and installation for the front passenger side is the same.

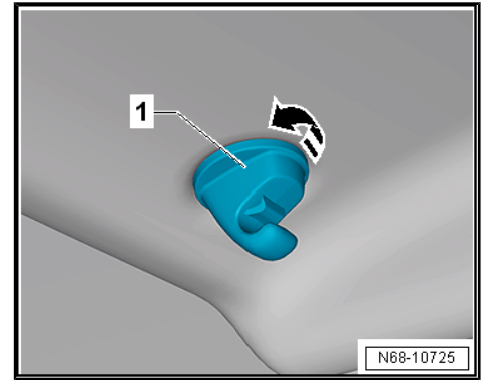


Removing

- Disengage the sun visor at the sun visor center support and fold to the side.
- Turn the sun visor center support -1- approximately 90° (1/4 of a turn) counter-clockwise -arrow-.
- Remove the sun visor center support -1- downward.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



2.4 Roof Grab Handle, Removing and Installing

⇒ [“2.4.2 Roof Grab Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 34](#)

⇒ [“2.4.1 Overview - Roof Grab Handle”, page 33](#)

2.4.1 Overview - Roof Grab Handle



Note

The overview illustration shows the left front roof grab handle. The illustration for the remaining roof grab handles is similar.



1 - Roof Grab Handle Bracket

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.5 Roof Grab Handle Bracket, Removing and Installing", page 36](#).

2 - Spacer

- ❑ Clipped to the roof grab handle
- ❑ Before reinstalling, ensure the correct installation position, and correct if necessary.
- ❑ Removing the spacer is not permitted

3 - Headliner

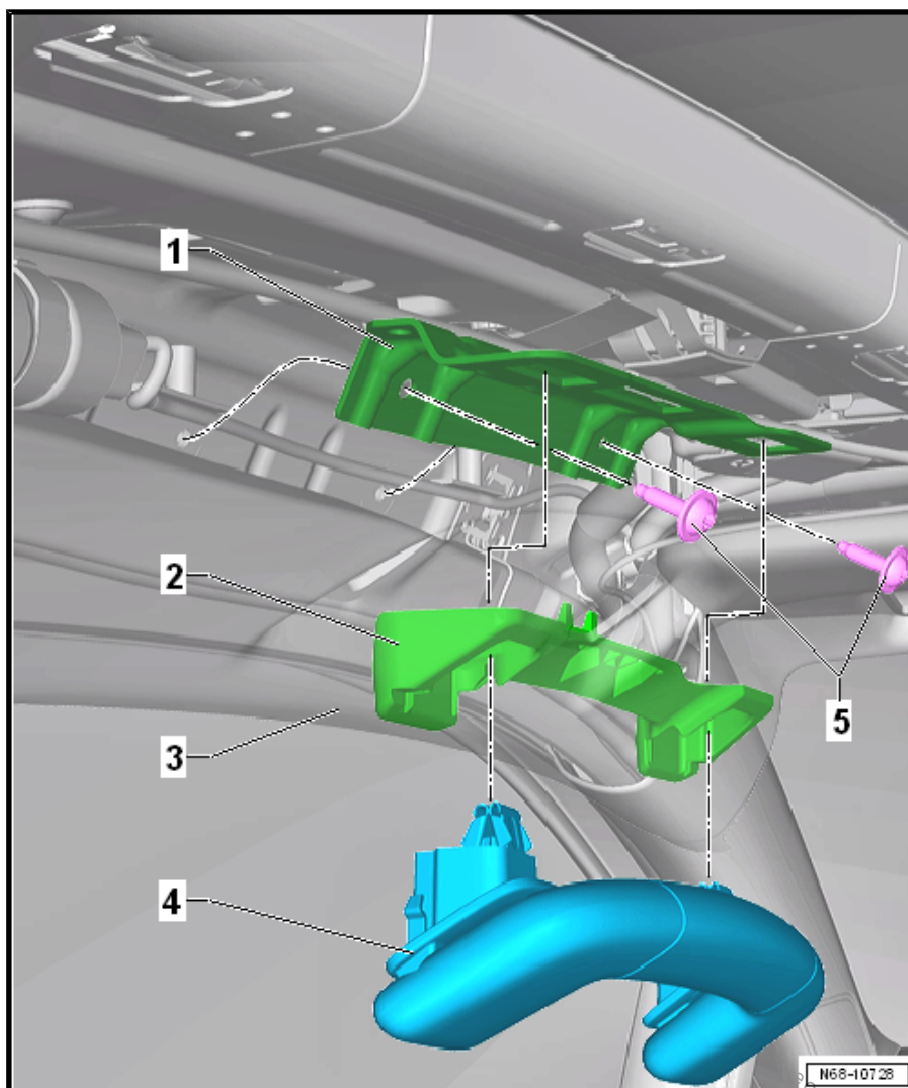
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["7.2 Headliner, Removing and Installing", page 227](#).

4 - Roof Grab Handle

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.4 Roof Grab Handle, Removing and Installing", page 33](#).

5 - Screw

- ❑ 4.5 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2



2.4.2 Roof Grab Handle, Removing and Installing



Note

The removal and installation for the left front roof grab handle is described. The removal and installation of the other roof grab handles is similar.

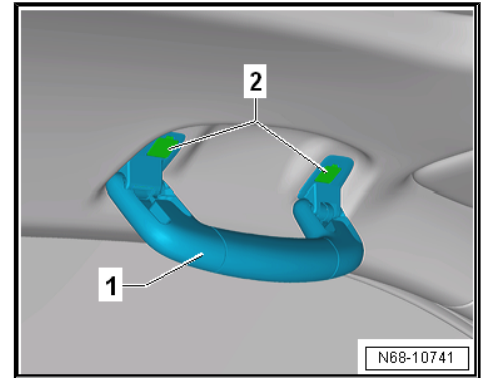
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release Tool - T10517-

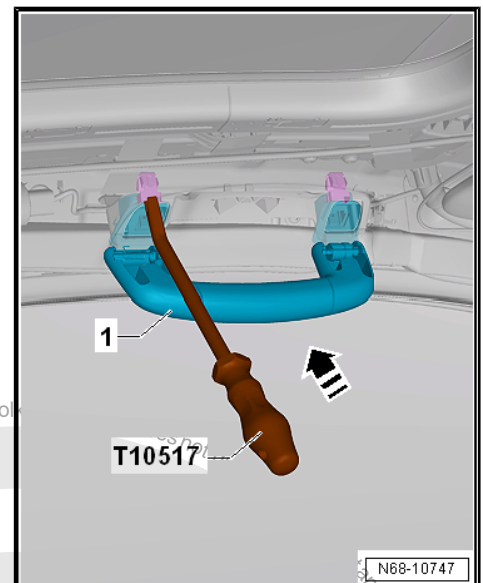


Removing

- Fold the roof grab handle -1- down and remove the caps -2-.



- Fold the roof grab handle -1- downward and push the -T10517- all the way into the left retainer -arrow-.
- Carefully pull on the roof grab handle -1- near the left retainer.
- Unclip the right clip as described.

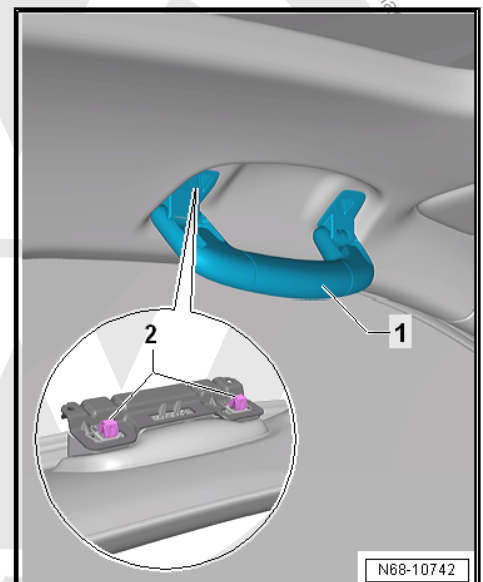


- The retainers -2- of the roof grab handle -1- are thus loosened from the mounts in the roof grab handle bracket.



Note

- ◆ The next step is only required if the roof grab handle is to be removed.
- ◆ To remove the headliner, the roof grab handle only needs to be loosened from the body mounts.





- Loosen the side retaining tab -2- on both sides.
- Remove the roof grab handle -1- downward from the spacer -3-.

Installing

A spacer is installed under the roof grab handle, between the headliner and the bracket. Before installing, check the installation position of the spacer and correct it if necessary. Removing the spacer is not permitted.

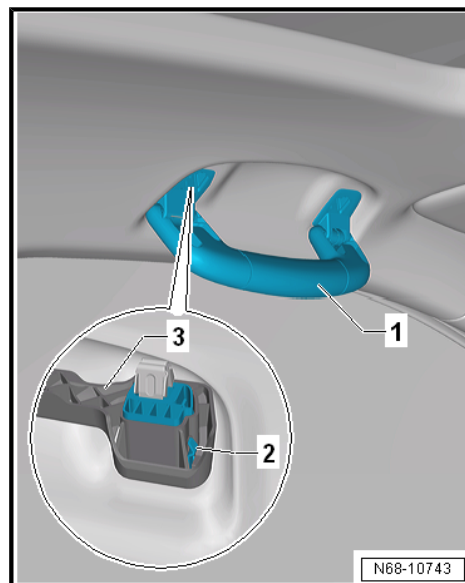


Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Make sure both retainers are completely engaged in the roof grab handle bracket.



2.5 Roof Grab Handle Bracket, Removing and Installing



Note

The removal and installation for the left front roof grab handle bracket is described. The removal and installation of the other roof grab handle brackets is similar.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

- Remove the headliner. Refer to [⇒ "7.2 Headliner, Removing and Installing", page 227](#).
- If equipped, unclip the wiring guide -1- from the roof grab handle bracket -3-.
- Remove the screws -2- and remove the roof grab handle bracket -3-.

Installing



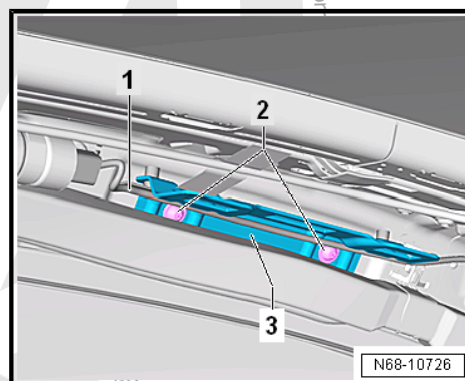
Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to [⇒ "2.4.1 Overview - Roof Grab Handle", page 33](#)





3 Center Console

⇒ [“3.1 Front Ashtray, Removing and Installing”, page 37](#)

⇒ [“3.2 Center Console Rear Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 37](#)

⇒ [“3.3 Front Footwell Center Console Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 38](#)

⇒ [“3.4 Display Control Head Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 40](#)

⇒ [“3.5 Front Center Console Storage Compartment, Removing and Installing”, page 40](#)

⇒ [“3.6 Center Console Insert, Removing and Installing”, page 40](#)

⇒ [“3.7 Center Console, Removing and Installing”, page 44](#)

⇒ [“3.8 Center Console Bracket, Removing and Installing”, page 48](#)

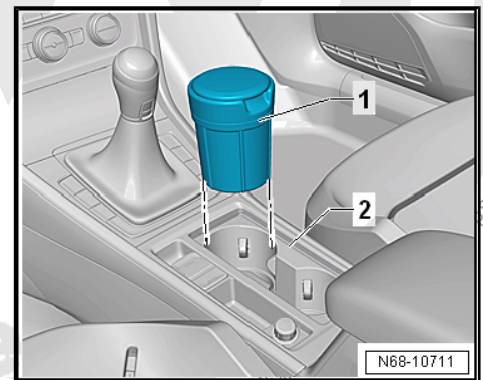
3.1 Front Ashtray, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Remove the front ashtray -1- upward from the center console -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



3.2 Center Console Rear Trim, Removing and Installing

If damaged, it is possible to replace the “rear center console vent” installed in the center console rear trim separately. Refer to [“3.2.1 Rear Center Console Vent, Removing and Installing”, page 38](#).

For the “vent” allocation, refer to the Parts Catalog, “illustration 819-031”.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Backrest Panel Tool - 3370-

Removing

- Move the front seats all the way forward.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Slide the armrest on the center armrest forward.



- Remove the rear trim -1- at the lower end toward the rear from the center console -2- using the -3370- .
- Pull the rear trim -1- upward off of the center console -2- -arrow- and remove it.
- Disconnect the connector.

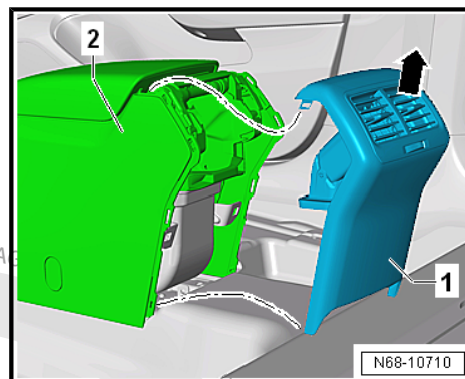
Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.



3.2.1 Rear Center Console Vent, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Remove the center console rear trim. Refer to [⇒ "3.2 Center Console Rear Trim, Removing and Installing", page 37](#) .
- At the bottom of the rear vent, remove the corresponding screw on the right and left sides.
- Remove the rear vent from the center console rear trim.

Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Two screws	1.5 Nm

3.3 Front Footwell Center Console Trim Panel, Removing and Installing



Note

Removing and installing the front driver footwell center console trim panel is described for a LHD vehicle. Removing and installing for other versions is the same.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

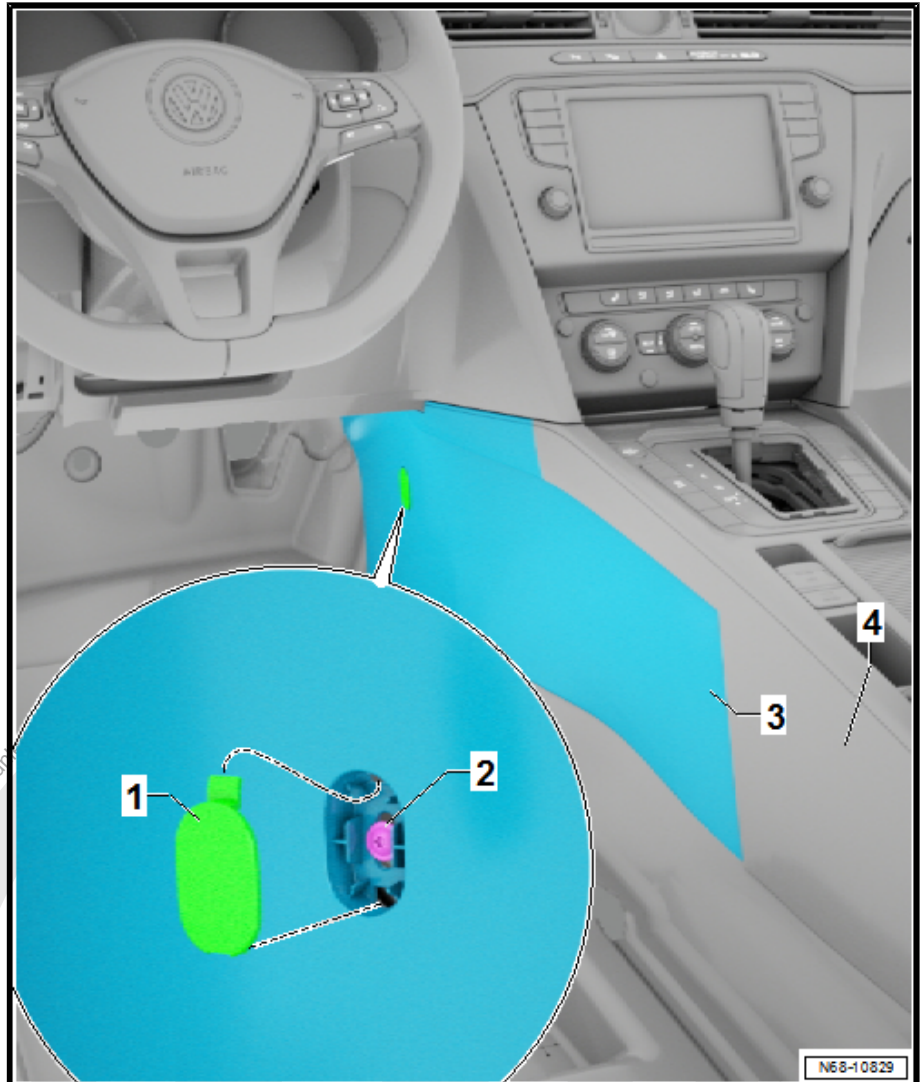
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

- Remove the cap -1- from the front footwell center console trim panel -3-.
- Remove the screw -2-.



- Unclip the front footwell center console trim panel -3- in the direction of seat from the mounts in the upper center area.
- Pull the front footwell center console trim panel -3- out of the remaining mounts in the center console -4- and remove it.



Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Screws	1.5 Nm



3.4 Display Control Head Trim, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ T-Handle Hook - 3438-

Removing

- Remove the radio/navigation system frame. Refer to [⇒ “3.5 Radio/Navigation System Frame, Removing and Installing”, page 168](#).
- Engage the -3438- at the left lower end of the trim -arrow-.
- Carefully unclip the trim -1- from the instrument panel installation opening using the -3438-.

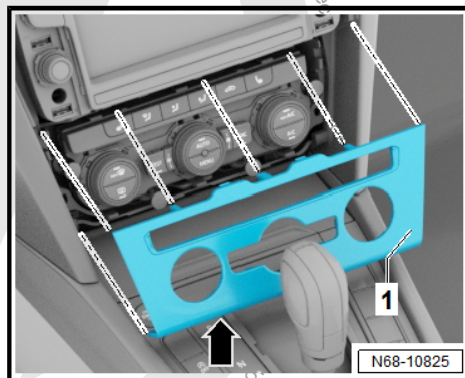
Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.



3.5 Front Center Console Storage Compartment, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Remove the center console insert. Refer to [⇒ “3.6 Center Console Insert, Removing and Installing”, page 40](#).
- Unclip the front storage compartment -1- from the center console insert -2-.

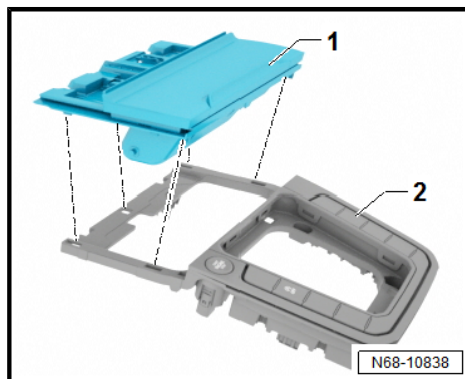
Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.



3.6 Center Console Insert, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-
- ◆ Hose Clip Pliers - VAG1275A-
- ◆ Backrest Panel Tool - 3370-

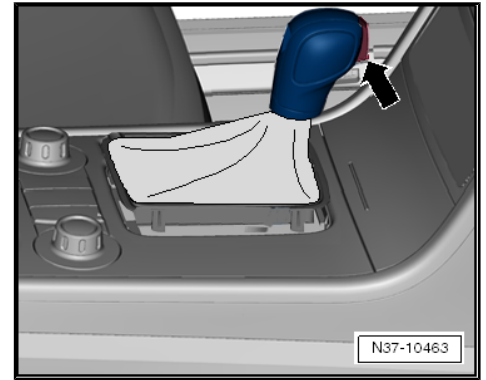
Removing

- For vehicles with a DSG transmission, move the selector lever to “D”.

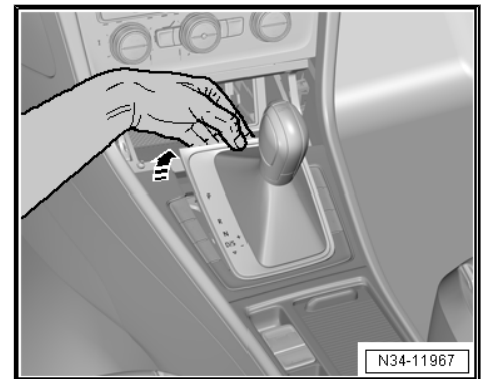


The button -arrow- does not need to be pulled out by hand. When removing the handle, the button automatically engages in the installation position.

- Open the storage compartment or ashtray lid.



- Use one hand to reach under the shift cover and unclip the cover by pulling upward -arrow-.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Disconnect the connector.
- Fold the shift lever boot upward over the gearshift knob.

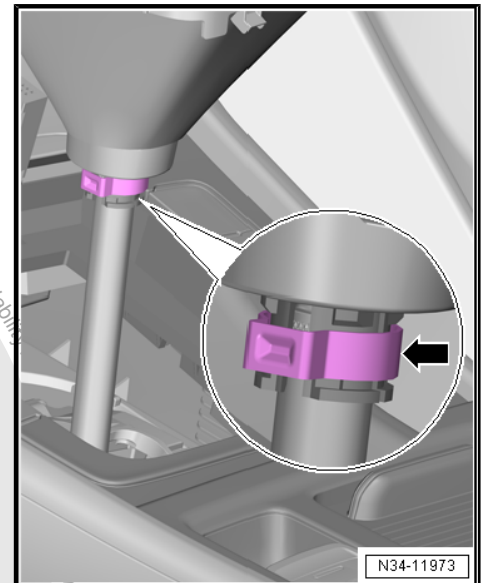


- Cut the clamp -arrow- under the boot with a side cutter.
- Remove the handle upward without pressing the button.



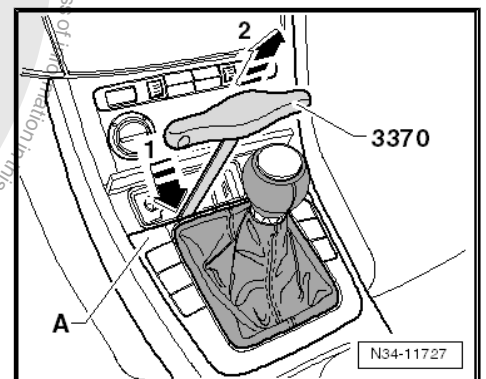
Note

Do not press the button after removing, otherwise the handle can no longer be installed.



For vehicles with a manual transmission, open the storage compartment or ashtray.

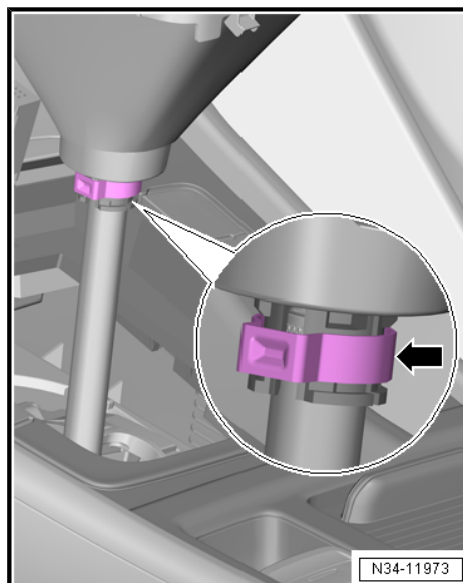
- Insert the -3370- under the boot plastic frame as shown until it stops -arrow 1-.
- Remove the boot with the plastic frame from the center console frame -A- -arrow 2-.
- Fold the shift lever boot upward over the gearshift knob.



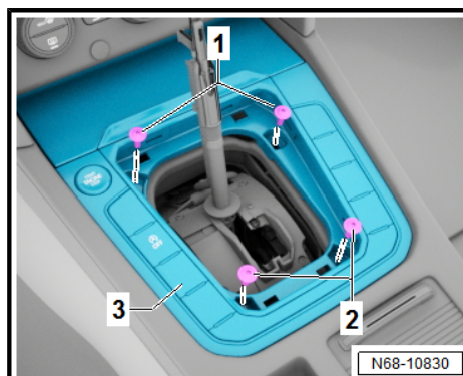


- Open the clamp -arrow- and remove the gearshift knob together with the shift lever boot.

Continuation for All:



- Remove each of the two sets of screws -1 and 2- from the center console insert -3-.



- Carefully lift the center console insert -1- and disconnect the connectors.
- Carefully remove the center console insert -1- from the center console -2-.

Installing

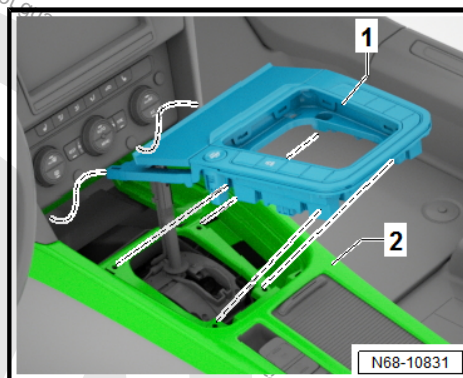


Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

- For vehicles with a manual transmission, push the gearshift knob with the shift lever boot all the way onto the gearshift lever.



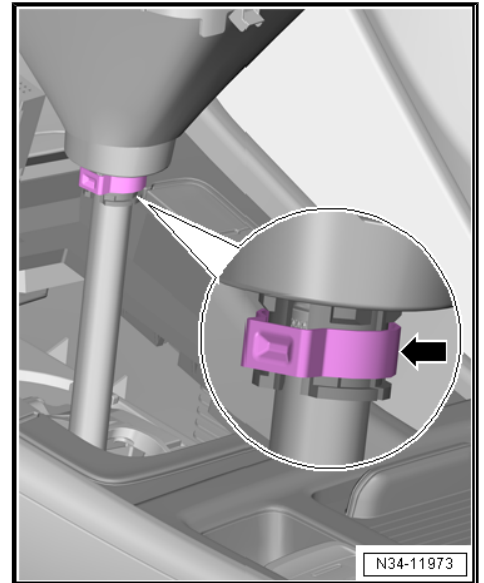


- Secure the gearshift knob on the selector lever with the clamp -arrow-. To do so, use the -VAG1275 A- .

i Note

For the “clamp” allocation, refer to the Parts Catalog.

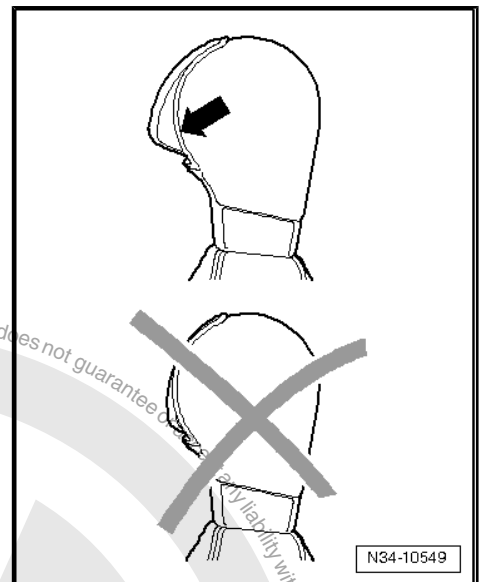
- For vehicles with a DSG transmission, move the selector lever to “D”.



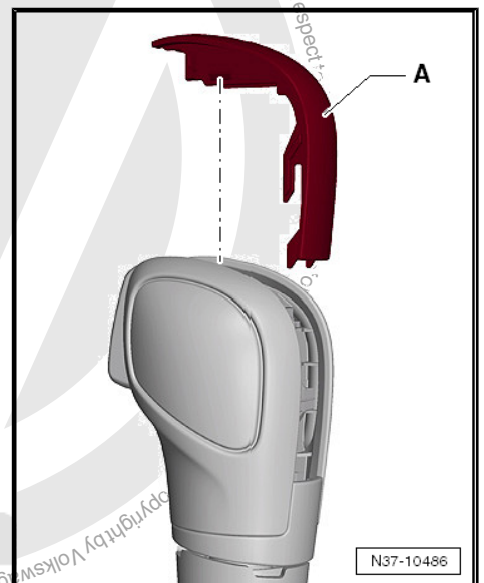
i Note

It is possible for the button to be pressed into the handle. Never install a handle with the button pressed in.

If the button was accidentally pressed, it can be brought back to its installation position.



- Carefully unclip the handle trim -A- upward.



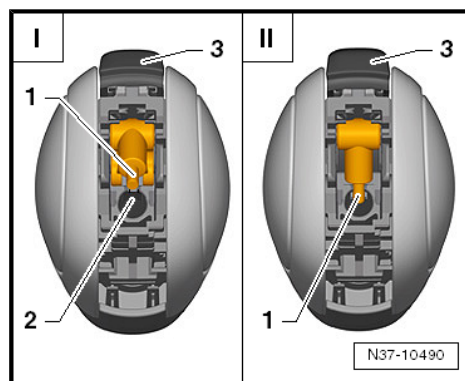


- Push the small lever -1- into the groove -2- with a screwdriver. This pushes the button -3- into the installation position.
- I- Button that is pressed in
- II- Button in its installation position



Note

- ◆ Push the lever into the groove and no further.
- ◆ Install the handle trim on the shift mechanism after installing the handle. This way it can be checked if the small lever engages into the pull rod when pressing the button.



Note

If installed incorrectly, the button will remain stuck in the handle after pressing it. If this happens, remove the handle again and bring the button back into its installation position. Then re-install the handle.

- Slide on the handle with the new clamp -arrow- until it stops. The clamp is not yet fastened.



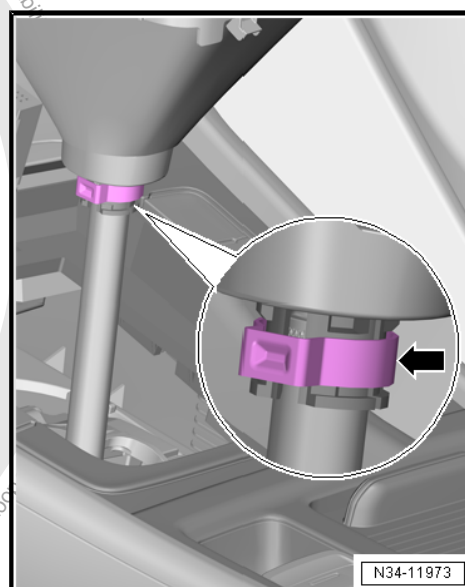
Note

For the "clamp" allocation, refer to the Parts Catalog.

- Press the button after installing.
- If the button returns to its starting position after being pressed, the clamp can be fastened using the -VAG1275A-.
- Connect the connector.
- Install the cover.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Screws	1.5 Nm



3.7 Center Console, Removing and Installing

⇒ "3.7.1 Center Console, Removing and Installing", page 44

3.7.1 Center Console, Removing and Installing

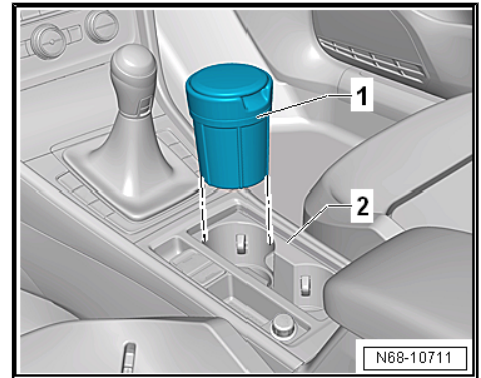
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

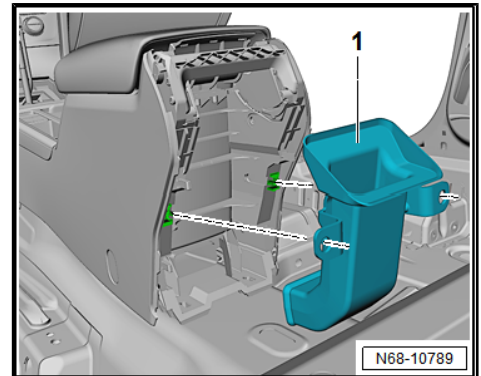


Removing

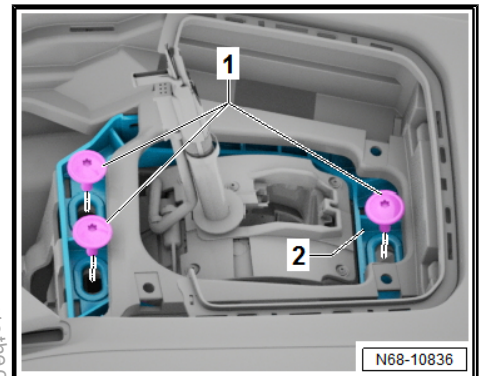
- Remove the front ashtray -1- upward from the center console -2-.
- Remove the center console rear trim. Refer to [⇒ "3.2 Center Console Rear Trim, Removing and Installing", page 37](#).
- For vehicles with Climatronic, disconnect the connector to the temperature sensor in the air duct -1-.



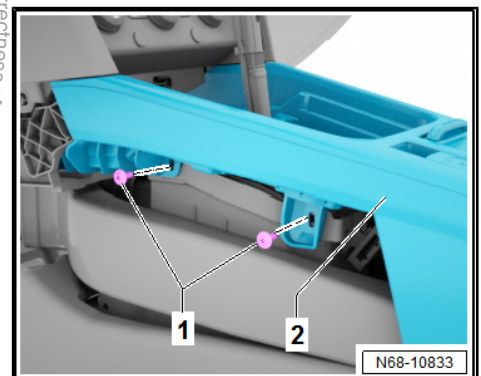
- Remove the air duct -1-.
- Remove the left and right front footwell center console trim panels. Refer to [⇒ "3.3 Front Footwell Center Console Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 38](#).
- Remove the center console insert. Refer to [⇒ "3.6 Center Console Insert, Removing and Installing", page 40](#).



- Remove the three bolts -1- for the retaining bracket -2-.

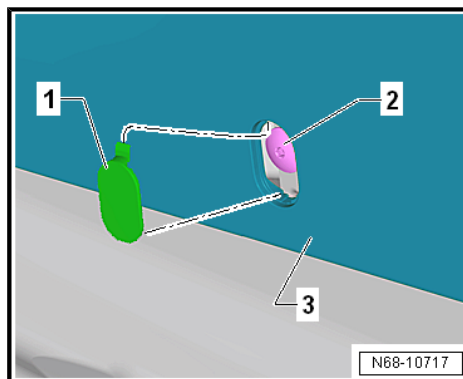


- Remove the two screws -1- for the center console -2- on both sides.
- Position both front seats all the way forward and up.

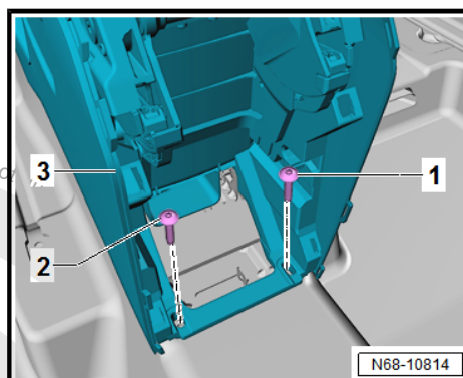




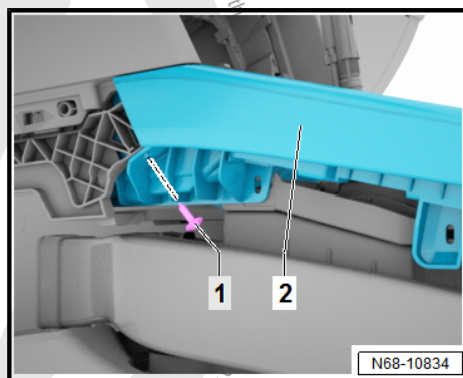
- Remove the left and right cap -1- from the center console -3-.
- Remove the bolt -2- for the center console -3- on the left and right sides.



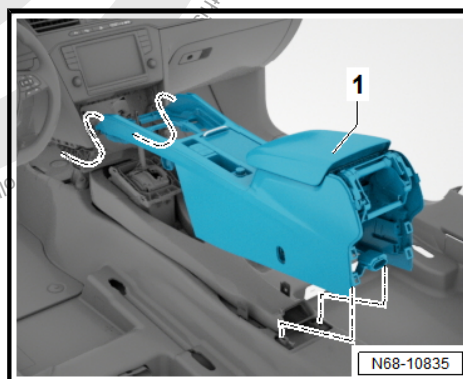
- Remove the screws -1 and 2- for the center console -3-.
- Move both front seats toward the rear.



- Remove the screw -1- for the center console -2- on both sides.
- Disconnect the connectors according to the vehicle equipment.



- Lift the center console -1- at the rear and remove it from the instrument panel toward the rear.
- Carefully remove the center console -1- over the gearshift level or selector lever.



Installing



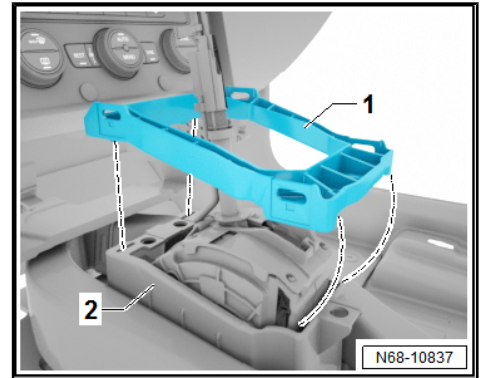
Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

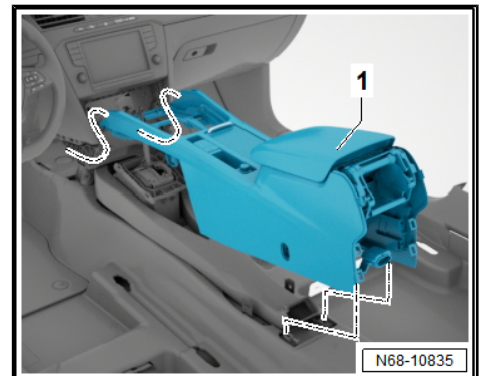
- Vehicles with an automatic transmission or DSG transmission: selector lever in "D/S"
- Vehicles with manual transmission: 4th gear engaged



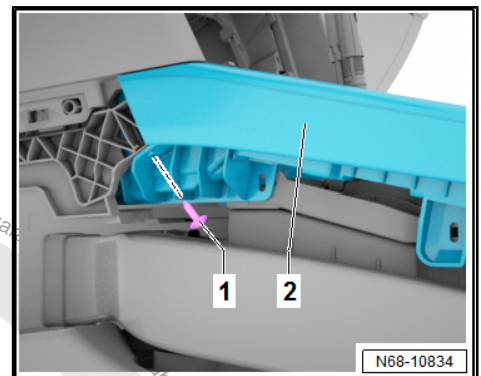
- Insert the left and right front sides of the retaining bracket -1- into the corresponding openings in the shifting mechanism insulation -2-.
- Engage the back of the retaining bracket -1- onto the shifting mechanism insulation -2-.



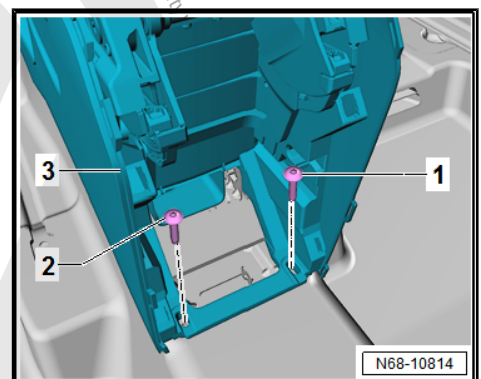
- Carefully insert the center console -1- and pre-engage it in the instrument panel.
- Connect the connectors according to the vehicle equipment.



- Fasten the both sides of the center console -2- on the instrument panel using the screw -1-.

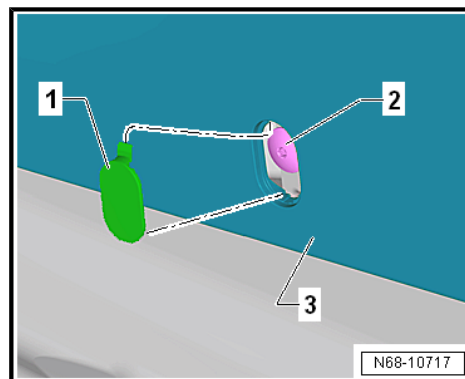


- Fasten the rear end of the center console -3- with the bolts -1- and -2-.
- Position both front seats all the way forward and up.

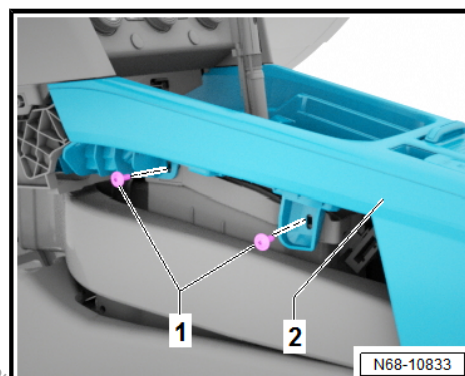




- Use the bolt -2- to fasten the center console -3- on the left and right side.
- Install the cap -1- on the left and right side of the center console -3-.
- Move both front seats as far back as possible.



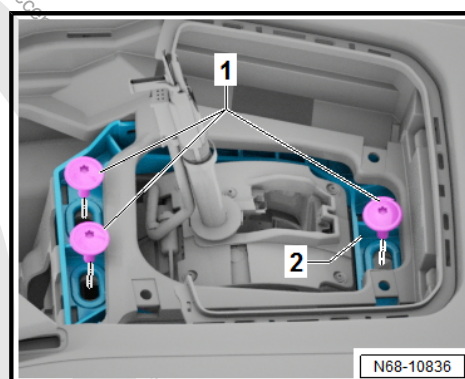
- Use the two screws -1- to fasten the center console -2- on both sides.



- Fasten the retaining bracket -2- with the three bolts -1-.
- Further installation is the reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Center console to instrument panel (quantity: 2)	1.5 Nm
Rear bolts (quantity: 2)	8 Nm
Rear side bolts (quantity: 2)	8 Nm
Shift mechanism side screws (quantity: 4)	1.5 Nm
Retaining bracket bolts near shift mechanism (quantity: 3)	8 Nm



3.8 Center Console Bracket, Removing and Installing

⇒ **“3.8.1 Center Console Bracket, Securing Bracket and Shifting Mechanism Insulation, Removing and Installing”, page 48**

3.8.1 Center Console Bracket, Securing Bracket and Shifting Mechanism Insulation, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Removing Front Bracket



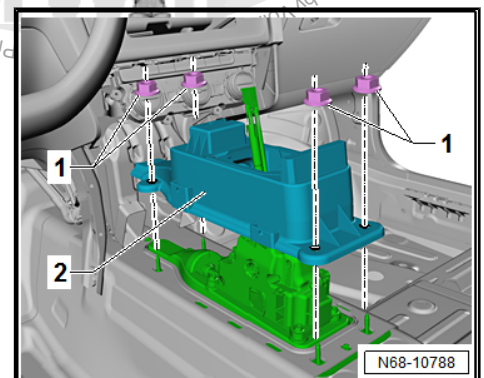
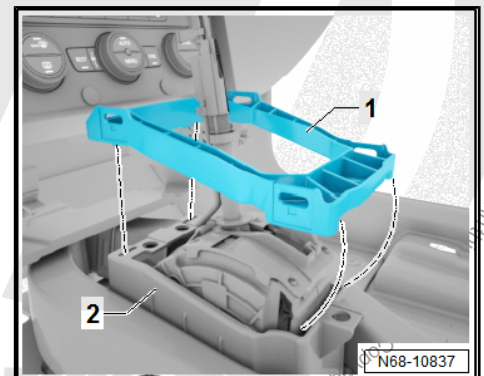
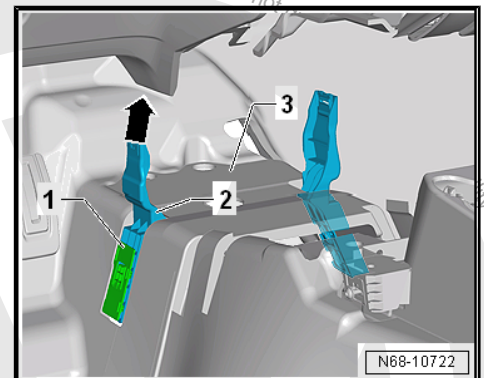
Note

The removal and installation for the front bracket on the driver side is described. The removal and installation for the front passenger side is the same.

- Remove the footwell center console trim panel on the driver side. Refer to
⇒ [“3.3 Front Footwell Center Console Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 38](#) .
- Loosen the cover -1- on the front bracket -2- and remove it.
- Remove the front bracket -2- upward from the tunnel -3-.

Securing Bracket and Shifting Mechanism Insulation

- Remove the center console. Refer to
⇒ [“3.7 Center Console, Removing and Installing”, page 44](#) .
- Unclip the back of the retaining bracket -1- from the shifting mechanism insulation -2- and lift upward.
- Remove the front of the retaining bracket -1- from the corresponding openings in the shifting mechanism insulation -2-.
- Remove the air duct for the rear center console vent. Refer to
⇒ Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning; Rep. Gr. 87 ; Air Routing; Overview - Air Routing and Air Distribution in Vehicle Interior .
- Remove the four nuts -1-.
- Remove the shifting mechanism insulation -2-.



Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Nuts	8 Nm



4 Front Center Armrest

⇒ "4.1 Front Center Armrest, Removing and Installing",
page 50

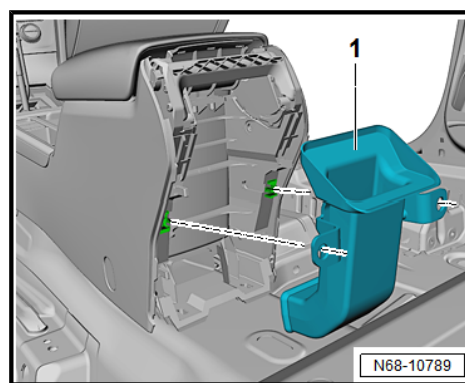
4.1 Front Center Armrest, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- Front seats in the forwardmost seat position

Removing

- Remove the center console rear trim. Refer to
⇒ "3.2 Center Console Rear Trim, Removing and Installing",
page 37 .
- For vehicles with Climatronic, disconnect the connector to the
temperature sensor in the air duct -1-.
- Remove the air duct -1-.



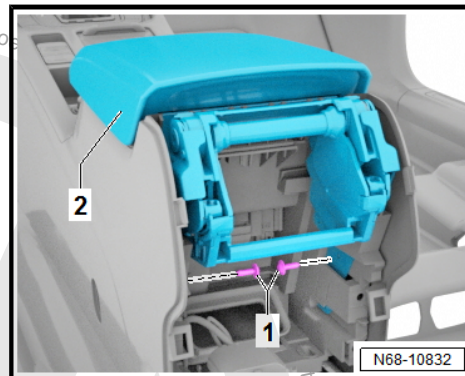
- Remove the two screws -1- for the center armrest -2-.
- Under the two screws -1-, press the respective tab outward
using the -3409- .
- Remove the center armrest upward from the center console.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Bolts	1.5 Nm





5 Interior Rearview Mirror

⇒ ["5.1 Overview - Interior Rearview Mirror", page 51](#)

⇒ ["5.2 Interior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing", page 55](#)

5.1 Overview - Interior Rearview Mirror

⇒ ["5.1.1 Overview - Manual Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror", page 51](#)

⇒ ["5.1.2 Overview - Manual Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Humidity Sensor G355 ", page 52](#)

⇒ ["5.1.3 Overview - Automatic Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Rain/Light Recognition Sensor G397 ", page 52](#)

⇒ ["5.1.4 Overview - Interior Rearview Mirror with Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera R242 ", page 54](#)

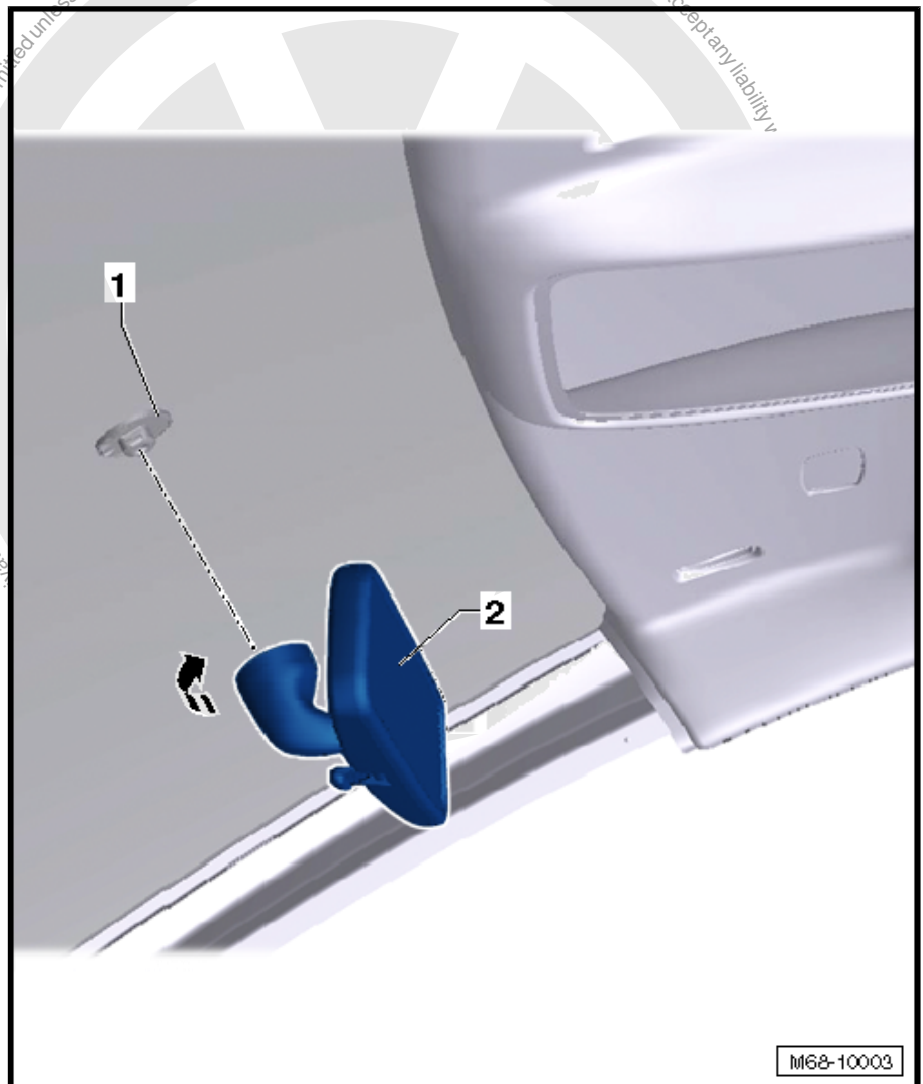
5.1.1 Overview - Manual Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror

1 - Retaining Plate

- ☐ For the interior rearview mirror
- ☐ Bonded to the windshield
- ☐ A detached retaining plate can be bonded to the windshield again
- ☐ Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation of materials for bonding the retaining plate

2 - Interior Rearview Mirror

- ☐ Manual dimming
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.2 Interior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing", page 55](#)



M68-10003



5.1.2 Overview - Manual Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Humidity Sensor - G355-

1 - Cable Guide Cover

2 - Interior Rearview Mirror

- ❑ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "5.2.2 Manual Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Humidity Sensor G355, Removing and Installing", page 56](#).

3 - Front Cover

- ❑ For the mirror base

4 - Spring Clip

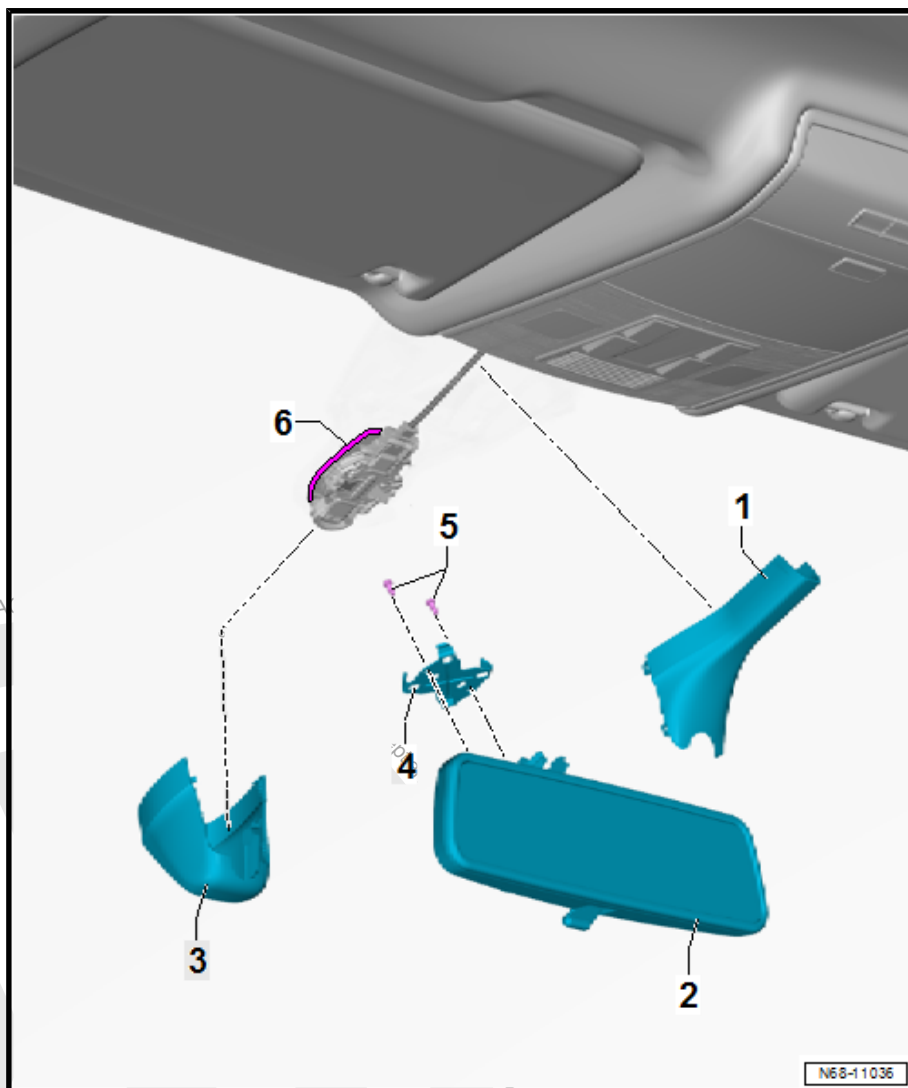
- ❑ After removing the interior rearview mirror replace the spring clip
- ❑ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

5 - Bolts

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ 1.5 Nm

6 - Retaining Plate

- ❑ For the interior rearview mirror
- ❑ Bonded to the windshield
- ❑ A detached retaining plate can be bonded to the windshield again
- ❑ Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation of materials for bonding the retaining plate.



5.1.3 Overview - Automatic Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Rain/Light Recognition Sensor - G397-

Optional with the high beam assist equipment



1 - Cable Guide Cover

2 - Interior Rearview Mirror

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.2.3 Automatic Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Rain/Light Recognition Sensor G397, Removing and Installing", page 58](#).

3 - Front Cover

- ☐ For the mirror base

4 - Spring Clip

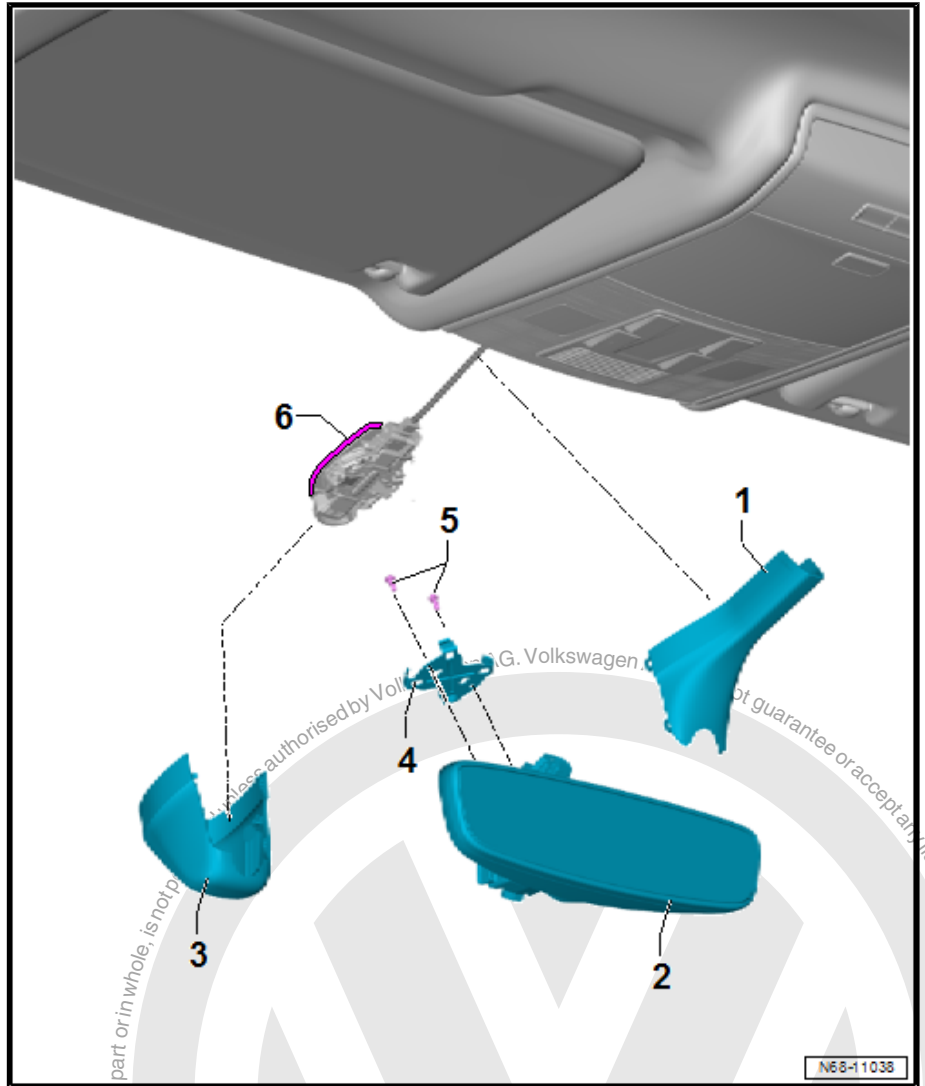
- ☐ After removing the interior rearview mirror replace the spring clip
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

5 - Bolts

- ☐ 1.5 Nm
- ☐ Quantity: 2

6 - Retaining Plate

- ☐ For the interior rearview mirror
- ☐ Bonded to the windshield
- ☐ A detached retaining plate can be bonded to the windshield again
- ☐ Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation of materials for bonding the retaining plate.





5.1.4 Overview - Interior Rearview Mirror with Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera - R242-

1 - Front Camera Cover

2 - Right Front Cover

- For the mirror base

3 - Interior Rearview Mirror with Spring Clip

- Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["5.2.4 Interior Rearview Mirror with Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera R242, Removing and Installing", page 60](#).

4 - Spring Clip

- After removing the interior rearview mirror replace the spring clip
- Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

5 - Bolts

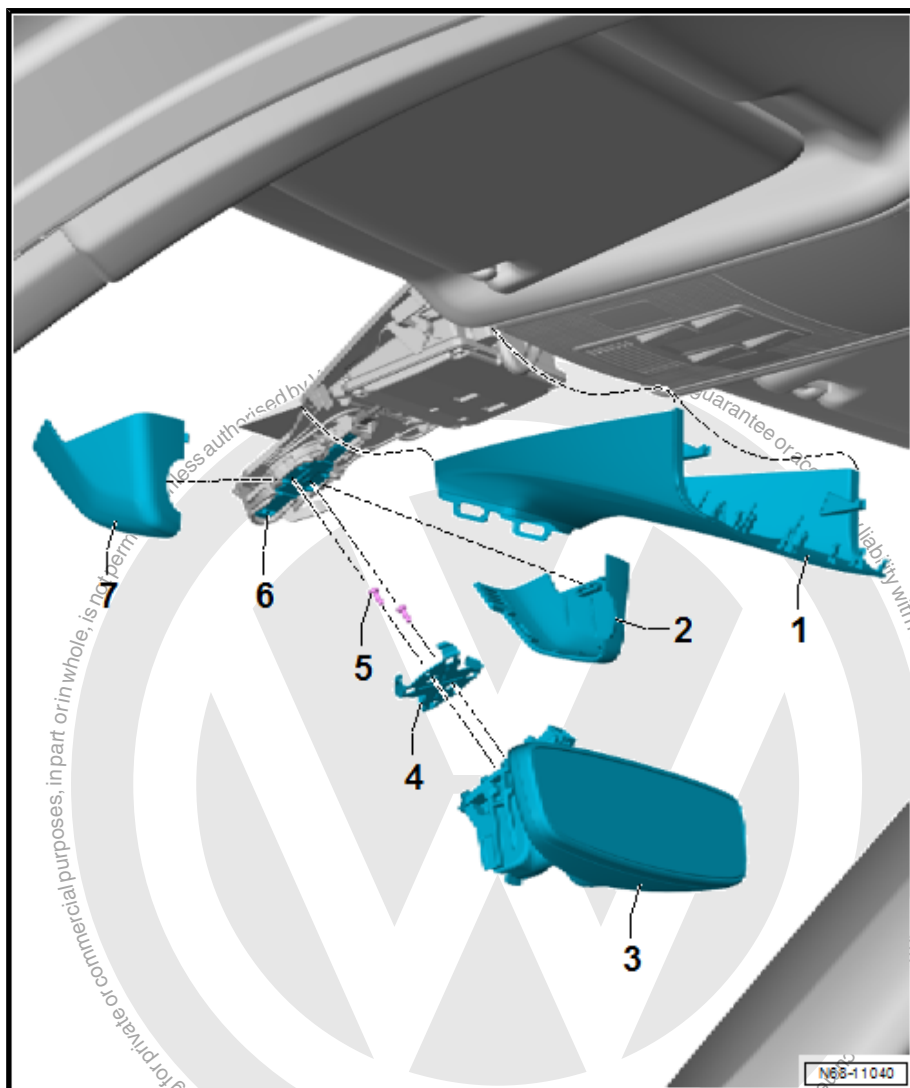
- 1.5 Nm
- Quantity: 2

6 - Rain/Light Recognition Sensor - G397-

- Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 92 ; Windshield Wiper System; Rain/Light Recognition Sensor, Removing and Installing .

7 - Left Front Cover

- For the mirror base





5.2 Interior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing

⇒ [“5.2.1 Manual Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing”, page 55](#)

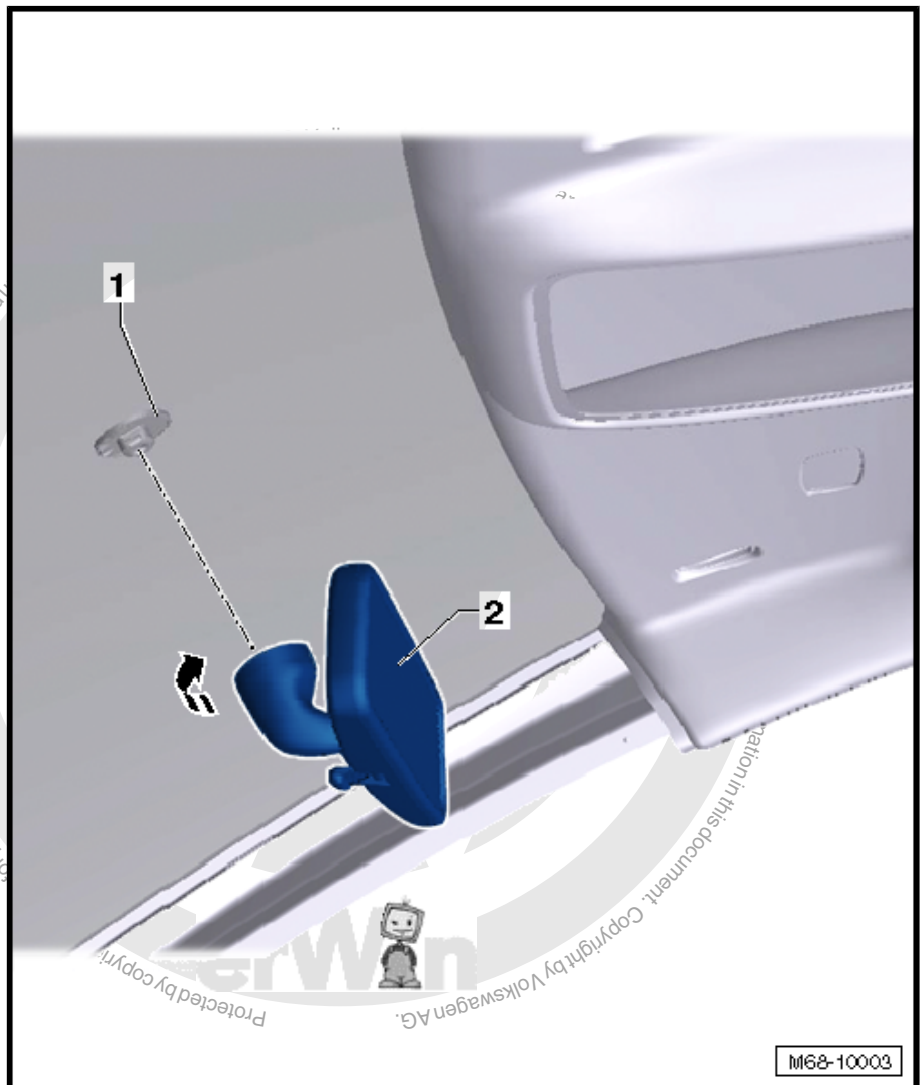
⇒ [“5.2.2 Manual Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Humidity Sensor G355 , Removing and Installing”, page 56](#)

⇒ [“5.2.3 Automatic Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Rain/Light Recognition Sensor G397 , Removing and Installing”, page 58](#)

⇒ [“5.2.4 Interior Rearview Mirror with Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera R242 , Removing and Installing”, page 60](#)

5.2.1 Manual Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, Removing and Installing

Removing



- Turn the interior rearview mirror -2- 90° ($\frac{1}{4}$ rotation) counter-clockwise -arrow-.
- Remove the interior rearview mirror -2- from the bonded base plate -1-.



Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Install in reverse order of removal.

5.2.2 Manual Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Humidity Sensor - G355- , Removing and Installing

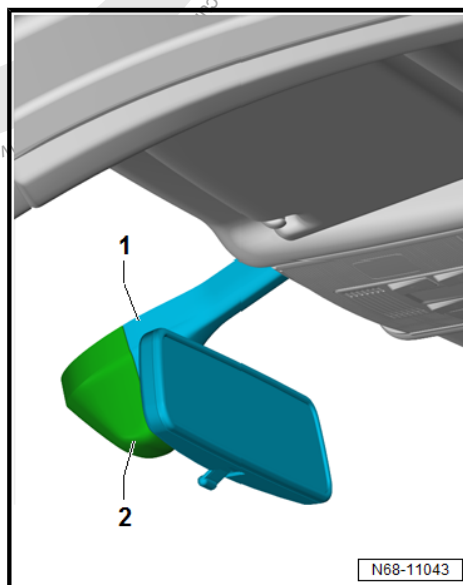


Note

- ◆ *After removing the interior rearview mirror replace the spring clip. Refer to Parts Catalog.*
- ◆ *Pay attention to the same method of delivery of the components.*

Removing

- Switch off the ignition.
- Push the cap, wiring guide -1- on the side in the transition area to the cap -2- lightly inward and carefully push in the direction of the headliner.
- Remove the cable guide cap -1-.
- Bend the cap -2- on the sides slightly outward and remove downward from the mirror base.



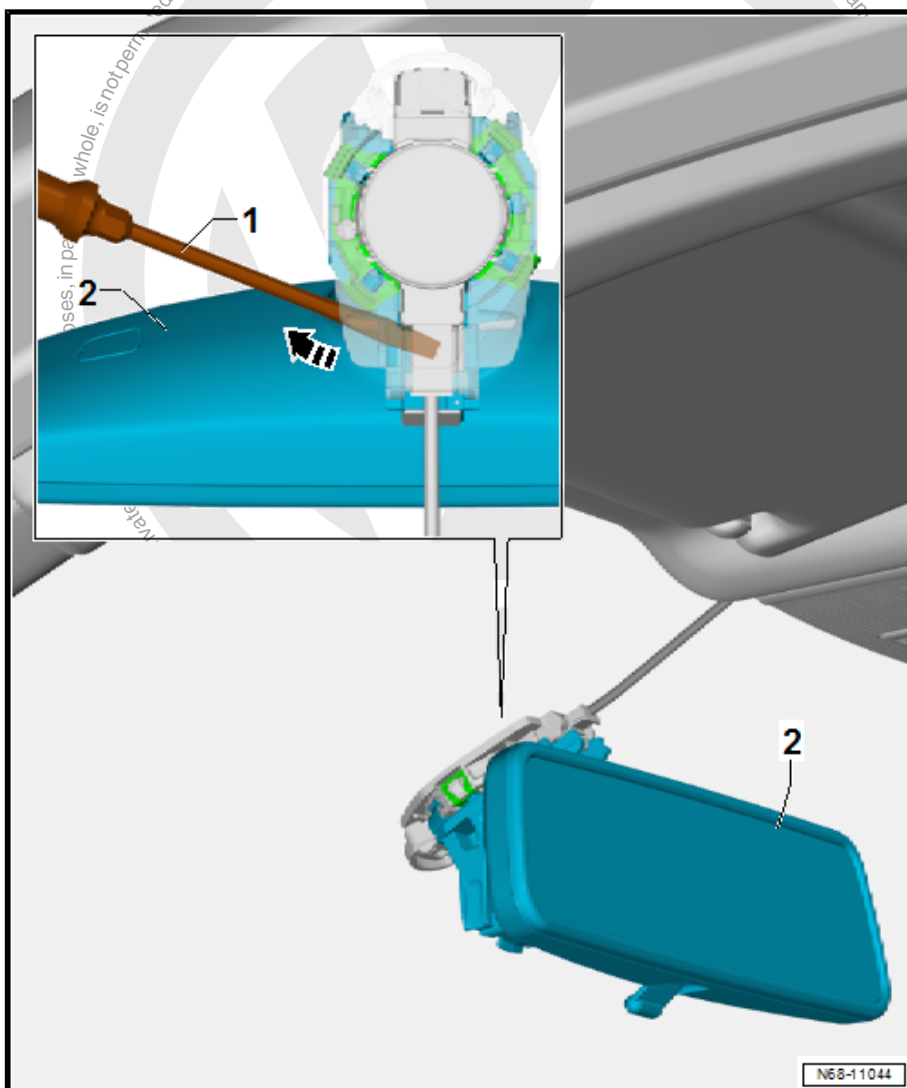
- Guide the screwdriver -1- or a pin punch of approximately 4.5 mm diameter in the gap -arrow-.



Caution

On the following steps pay attention that the screwdriver/pin punch is inserted while turning, but is not used as a lever.

- Turn the interior rearview mirror -2- on the mirror base approximately 20° counter-clockwise -arrow-.
- Remove the interior rearview mirror -2- downward.



Installing



Note

- ◆ After removing the interior rearview mirror replace the spring clip. Refer to Parts Catalog.
 - ◆ Pay attention to the same method of delivery of the components.
- Remove the two bolts -1-.



- Replace the spring clip -2- on the interior rearview mirror -3- with a new part.
- Place the interior rearview mirror turned 20° counter-clockwise on the baseplate.



Note

Make sure the mirror is positioned parallel to the baseplate.

- Turn the mirror clockwise until it audibly engages into the baseplate.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.

Installation notes, for example tightening specifications, replacing components. Refer to

⇒ ["5.1.2 Overview - Manual Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Humidity Sensor G355", page 52](#).

5.2.3 Automatic Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Rain/Light Recognition Sensor - G397- , Removing and Installing

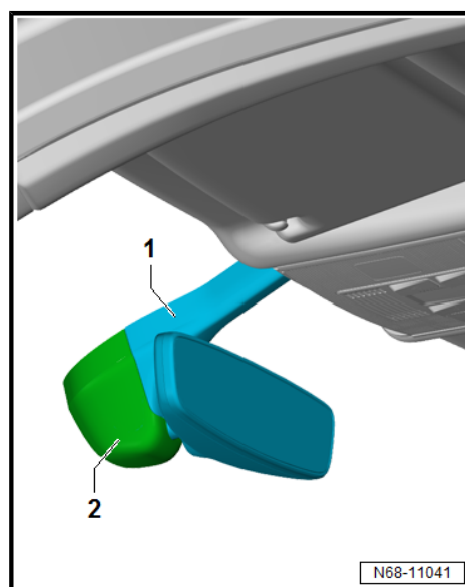
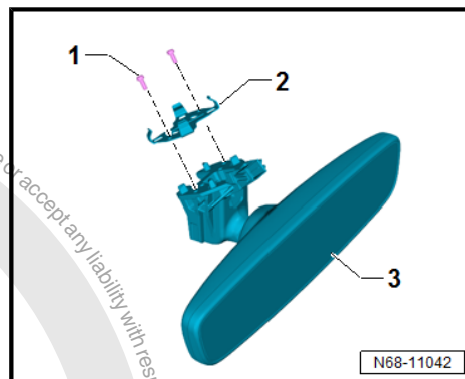


Note

- ◆ After removing the interior rearview mirror replace the spring clip. Refer to *Parts Catalog*.
- ◆ Pay attention to the same method of delivery of the components.

Removing

- Switch off the ignition.
- Push the cap, wiring guide -1- on the side in the transition area to the cap -2- lightly inward and carefully push in the direction of the headliner.
- Remove the cable guide cap -1-.
- Bend the cap -2- on the sides slightly outward and remove downward from the mirror base.



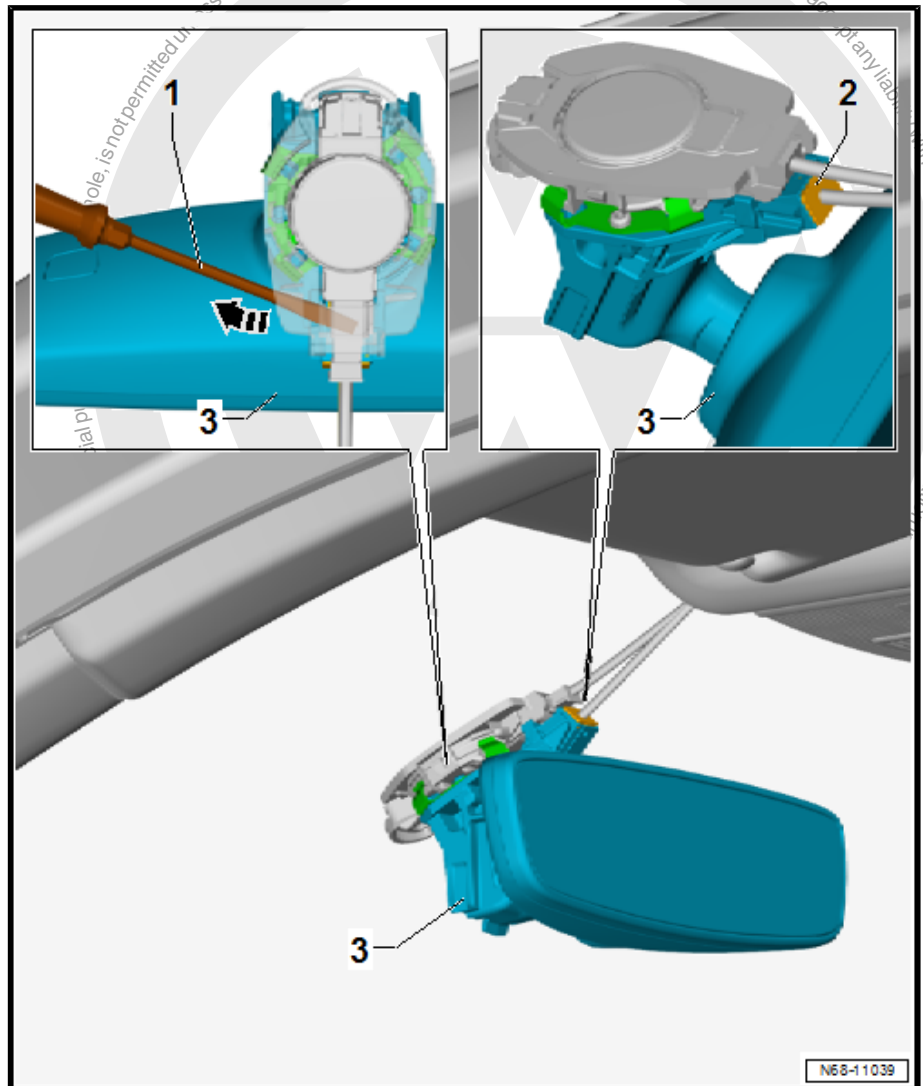
- Release and disconnect the interior rearview mirror in the connector -2-
- Guide the screwdriver -1- or a pin punch of approximately 4.5 mm diameter in the gap.



Caution

On the following steps pay attention that the screwdriver/pin punch is inserted while turning, but is not used as a lever.

- Turn the interior rearview mirror -3- on the mirror base approximately 20° counter-clockwise -arrow-.
- Remove the interior rearview mirror -3- downward.



Installing



Note

- ◆ After removing the interior rearview mirror replace the spring clip. Refer to Parts Catalog.
- ◆ Pay attention to the same method of delivery of the components.
- Remove the two bolts -1-.



- Replace the spring clip -2- on the interior rearview mirror -3- with a new part.
- Place the interior rearview mirror turned 20° counter-clockwise on the baseplate.



Note

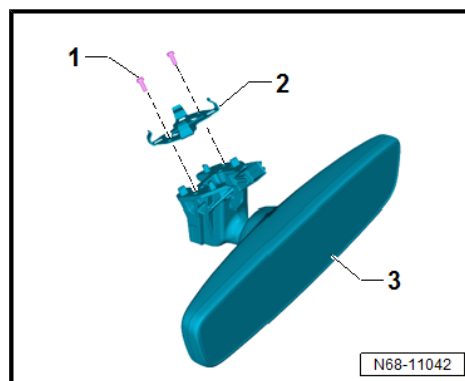
Make sure the mirror is positioned parallel to the baseplate.

- Turn the mirror clockwise until it audibly engages into the baseplate.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.

Installation notes, for example tightening specifications, replacing components. Refer to

⇒ ["5.1.3 Overview - Automatic Dimming Interior Rearview Mirror, with Rain/Light Recognition Sensor G397", page 52](#) .



5.2.4 Interior Rearview Mirror with Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera - R242- , Removing and Installing



Note

- ◆ After removing the interior rearview mirror replace the spring clip. Refer to Parts Catalog.
- ◆ Pay attention to the same method of delivery of the components.

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-
- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-
- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Removing

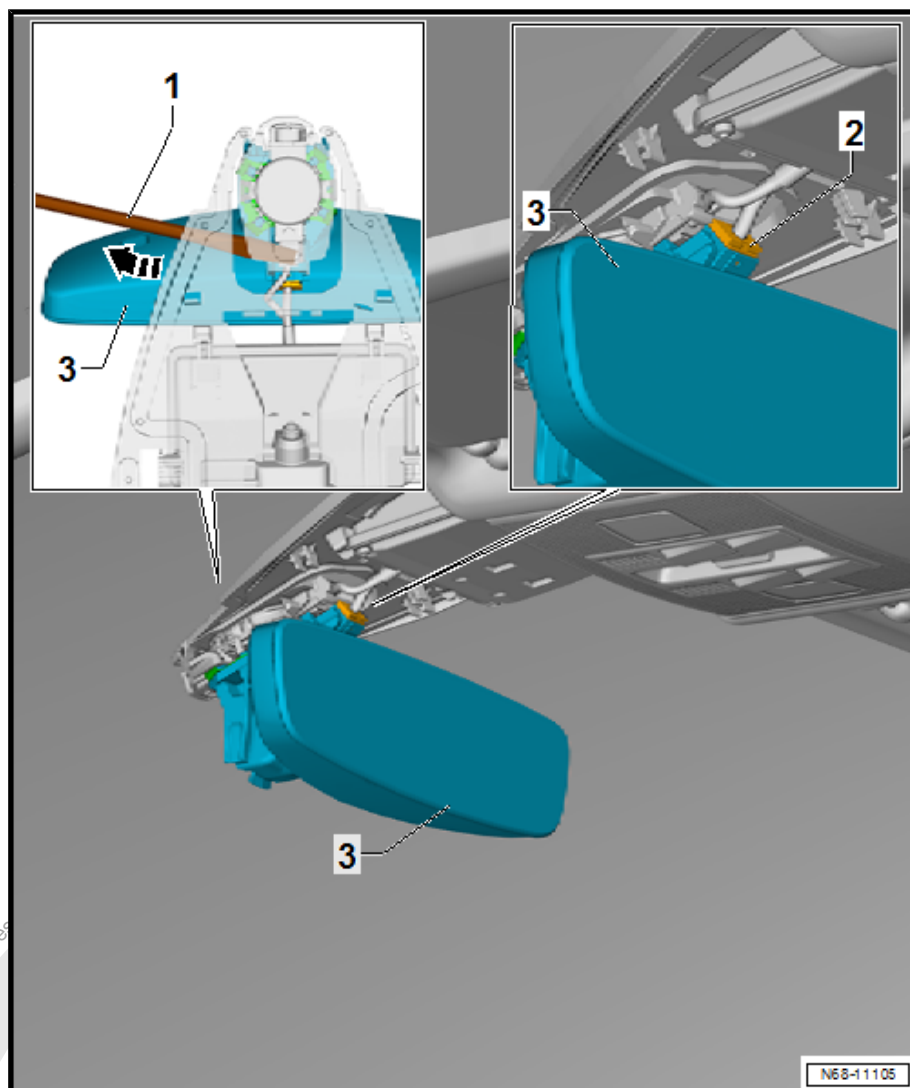
- Switch off the ignition.
- Using the - T10383/1- -1- unclip the cover for the front camera -2- from the retainer in the front area of the roof console.
- Using the wedge -1- push the cover of the front camera -2- slightly downward carefully.
- A gap will be built between the installed mirror covers -3 and 4- and -4-, -arrow A and arrow B-.
- Using the -3409- push the locking tab -C- of the left mirror cover -3-.
- First remove the right mirror cover -4-.
- Then remove the left mirror cover -3-.
- Remove the cover from the front camera -2-.



- 

On the following steps pay attention that the screwdriver/pin punch is inserted while turning, but is not used as a lever.

- 



Installing



Note

- ◆ After removing the interior rearview mirror replace the spring clip. Refer to Parts Catalog.
- ◆ Pay attention to the same method of delivery of the components.
- Remove the two bolts 1-.



- Replace the spring clip -2- on the interior rearview mirror -3- with a new part.
- Place the interior rearview mirror turned 20° counter-clockwise on the baseplate.



Note

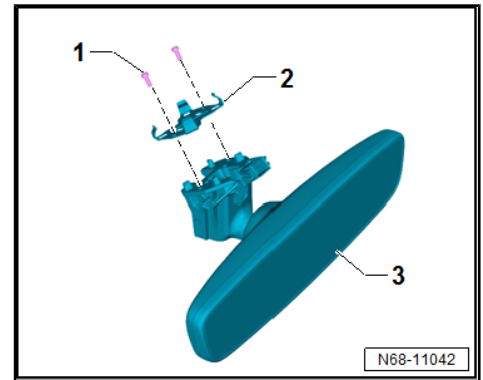
Make sure the mirror is positioned parallel to the baseplate.

- Turn the mirror clockwise until it audibly engages into the baseplate.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.

Installation notes, for example tightening specifications, replacing components. Refer to

⇒ ["5.1.4 Overview - Interior Rearview Mirror with Driver Assistance Systems Front Camera R242", page 54](#) .

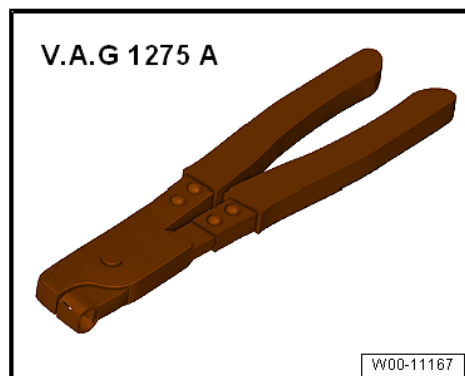




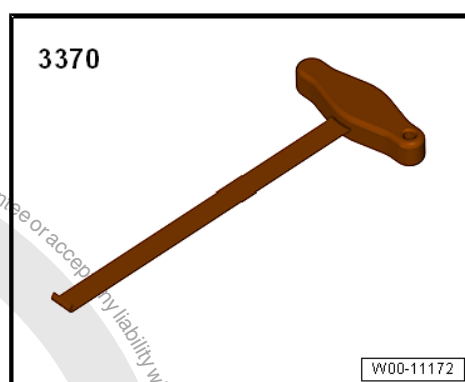
6 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

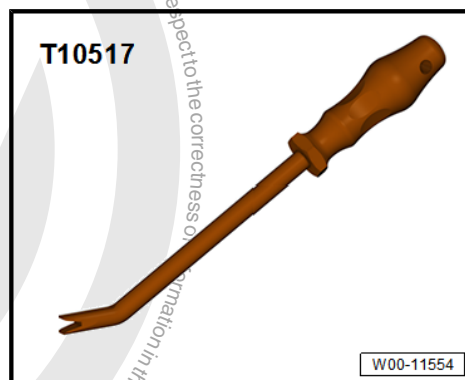
- ◆ Hose Clip Pliers - VAG1275A-



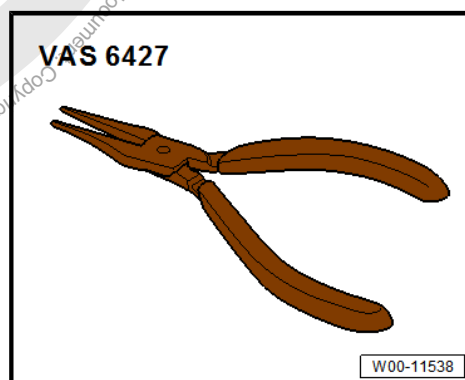
- ◆ Backrest Panel Tool - 3370-



- ◆ Release Tool - T10517-



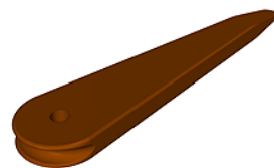
- ◆ Release Pliers - VAS6427-





◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

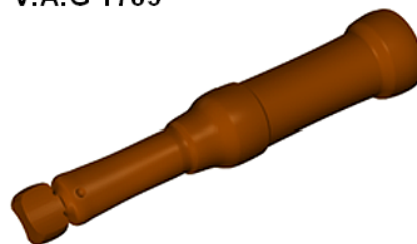
3409



W00-11118

◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

V.A.G 1783



W00-11189





69 – Passenger Protection, Airbags, Seat Belts

1 Seat Belts

⇒ [“1.1 Component Location Overview - Seat Belts and Mounting Points”, page 66](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt”, page 69](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Overview - Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt”, page 71](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Overview - Rear Center Three-Point Seat Belt”, page 72](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Overview - Front Seat Belt Latch”, page 73](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Overview - Rear Seat Belt Latch”, page 74](#)

⇒ [“1.7 Front Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing”, page 75](#)

⇒ [“1.8 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing”, page 77](#)

⇒ [“1.9 Front Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 80](#)

⇒ [“1.10 Rear Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 80](#)

⇒ [“1.11 Front Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing”, page 81](#)

⇒ [“1.12 Outer Rear Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing”, page 81](#)

⇒ [“1.13 Seat Belt Height Adjuster, Removing and Installing”, page 82](#)

⇒ [“1.14 Front Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 84](#)

⇒ [“1.15 Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 85](#)

1.1 Component Location Overview - Seat Belts and Mounting Points

⇒ [“1.1.1 Component Location Overview - Seat Belts and Mounting Points”, page 66](#)

1.1.1 Component Location Overview - Seat Belts and Mounting Points



1 - Outer Rear Belt End Fitting

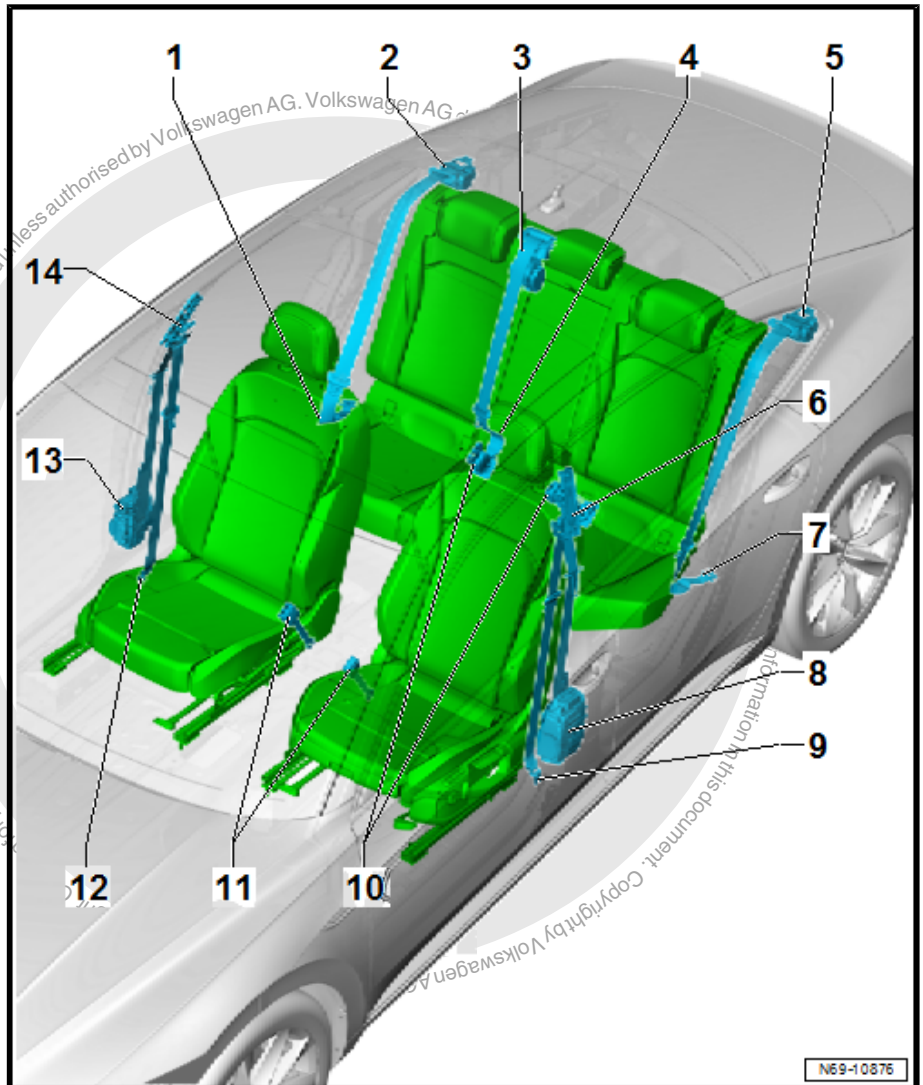
- ☐ Overview. Refer to
⇒ ["1.3 Overview - Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt", page 71](#) .
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.12 Outer Rear Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing", page 81](#) .

2 - Automatic Belt Retractor

- ☐ For outer rear three-point seat belt
- ☐ Overview. Refer to
⇒ ["1.3 Overview - Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt", page 71](#) .
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.8 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing", page 77](#) .

3 - Automatic Belt Retractor

- ☐ For the rear three-point seat belt in the center
- ☐ Overview. Refer to
⇒ ["1.4 Overview - Rear Center Three-Point Seat Belt", page 72](#) .
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.8.2 Rear Three Point Seat Belt in Center, Removing and Installing", page 79](#) .



4 - Center Rear Belt End Fitting

- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["1.4 Overview - Rear Center Three-Point Seat Belt", page 72](#) .
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["1.15 Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing", page 85](#) .

5 - Automatic Belt Retractor

- ☐ For outer rear three-point seat belt
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["1.3 Overview - Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt", page 71](#) .
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.8 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing", page 77](#) .

6 - Seat Belt Height Adjuster

- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt", page 69](#) .
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.13 Seat Belt Height Adjuster, Removing and Installing", page 82](#) .

7 - Outer Rear Belt End Fitting

- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["1.3 Overview - Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt", page 71](#) .
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.12 Outer Rear Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing", page 81](#) .

8 - Front Three-Point Seat Belt

- ☐ With Driver Seat Belt Tensioner Igniter 1 - N153- and Left Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J854-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt", page 69](#) .



- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.7 Front Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing”, page 75](#) .

9 - Front Belt End Fitting

- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt”, page 69](#) .
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“1.11 Front Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing”, page 81](#) .

10 - Rear Seat Belt Latch

- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“1.6 Overview - Rear Seat Belt Latch”, page 74](#) .
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“1.15 Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 85](#) .

11 - Front Seat Belt Latches

- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“1.5 Overview - Front Seat Belt Latch”, page 73](#) .
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“1.14 Front Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 84](#) .

12 - Front Belt End Fitting

- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt”, page 69](#) .
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“1.11 Front Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing”, page 81](#) .

13 - Front Three-Point Seat Belt

- ❑ With Front Passenger Seat Belt Tensioner Igniter 1 - N154- and Right Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J855-
- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt”, page 69](#) .
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.7 Front Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing”, page 75](#) .

14 - Seat Belt Height Adjuster

- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt”, page 69](#) .
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.13 Seat Belt Height Adjuster, Removing and Installing”, page 82](#) .



1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt

⇒ ["1.2.1 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt", page 69](#)

⇒ ["1.2.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt, Market-Specific", page 70](#)

1.2.1 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt

1 - Bolt

- ☐ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.
- ☐ 40 Nm

2 - Belt End Fitting

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.11 Front Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing", page 81](#).

3 - Expanding Rivet

- ☐ Vehicles with reversible belt tensioner only

4 - Front Seat Belt Guide

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.9 Front Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing", page 80](#).
- ☐ When installing, pay attention to the correct installation position

5 - Bolt

- ☐ 40 Nm
- ☐ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

6 - Bolt

- ☐ 20 Nm
- ☐ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

7 - Seat Belt Guide

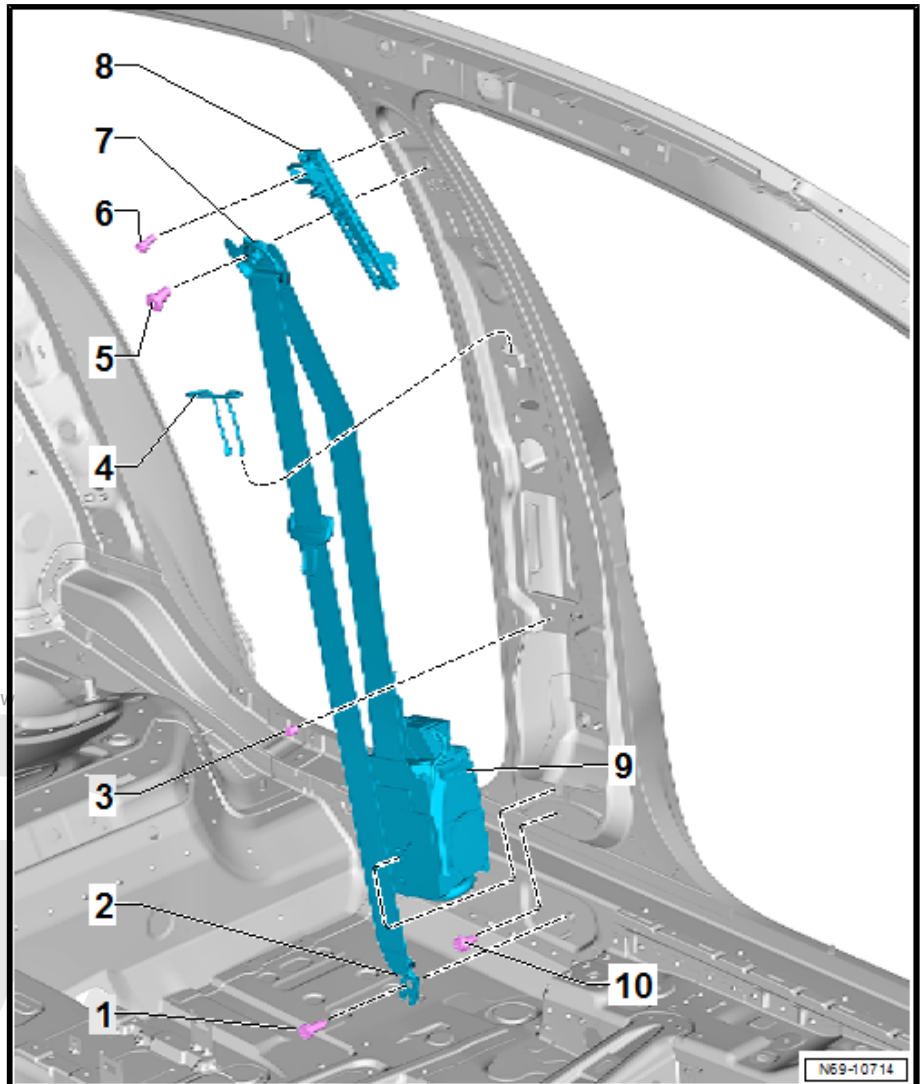
- ☐ Must swing into vertical position or carrier direction by itself after tightening the screw.

8 - Seat Belt Height Adjuster

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.13 Seat Belt Height Adjuster, Removing and Installing", page 82](#).
- ☐ Always replace if the belt tensioner has deployed when the belt is buckled

9 - Automatic Belt Retractor

- ☐ Driver side: with Driver Seat Belt Tensioner Igniter 1 - N153- and Left Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J854-
- ☐ Front passenger side: with Front Passenger Seat Belt Tensioner Igniter 1 - N154- and Right Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J855-





- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.7 Front Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing", page 75](#).
- ❑ For vehicles with Left Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J854- or Right Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J855-, the components must be adapted to the Airbag Control Module - J234- after replacing the seat belt. Refer to Guided Fault Finding. If the Guided Fault Finding has already started, update the test plan "15 - Airbag".

10 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm
- ❑ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

1.2.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt, Market-Specific

1 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm
- ❑ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

2 - Belt End Fitting

3 - Front Seat Belt Guide

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.9 Front Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing", page 80](#).
- ❑ When installing, pay attention to the correct installation position

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm
- ❑ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

5 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

6 - Seat Belt Guide

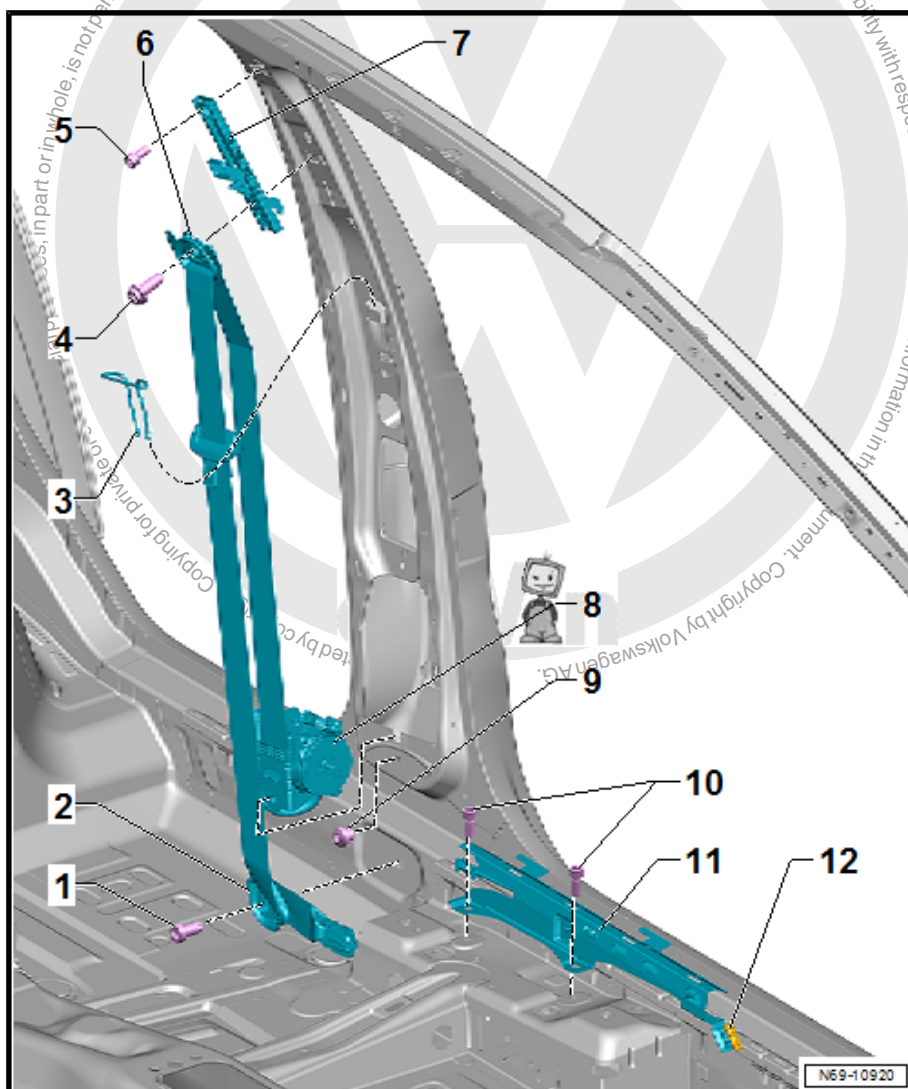
- ❑ Must swing into vertical position or carrier direction by itself after tightening the screw.

7 - Seat Belt Height Adjuster

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.13 Seat Belt Height Adjuster, Removing and Installing", page 82](#).
- ❑ Always replace if the belt tensioner has deployed when the belt is buckled

8 - Automatic Belt Retractor

- ❑ Driver side: with Driver Seat Belt Tensioner Igniter 1 - N153- and Left Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J854-
- ❑ Front passenger side: with Front Passenger Seat Belt Tensioner Igniter 1 - N154- and Right Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J855-





- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.7 Front Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing", page 75](#).
- ☐ For vehicles with Left Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J854- or Right Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J855-, the components must be adapted to the Airbag Control Module - J234- after replacing the seat belt. Refer to Guided Fault Finding. If the Guided Fault Finding has already started, update the test plan "15 - Airbag".

9 - Bolt

- ☐ 40 Nm
- ☐ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 20 Nm
- ☐ Quantity: 2
- ☐ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

11 - Seat Belt Tensioner

12 - Connector

1.3 Overview - Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt

1 - Seat Belt Guide

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.10 Rear Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing", page 80](#).

2 - Bolt

- ☐ 40 Nm
- ☐ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

3 - Automatic Belt Retractor

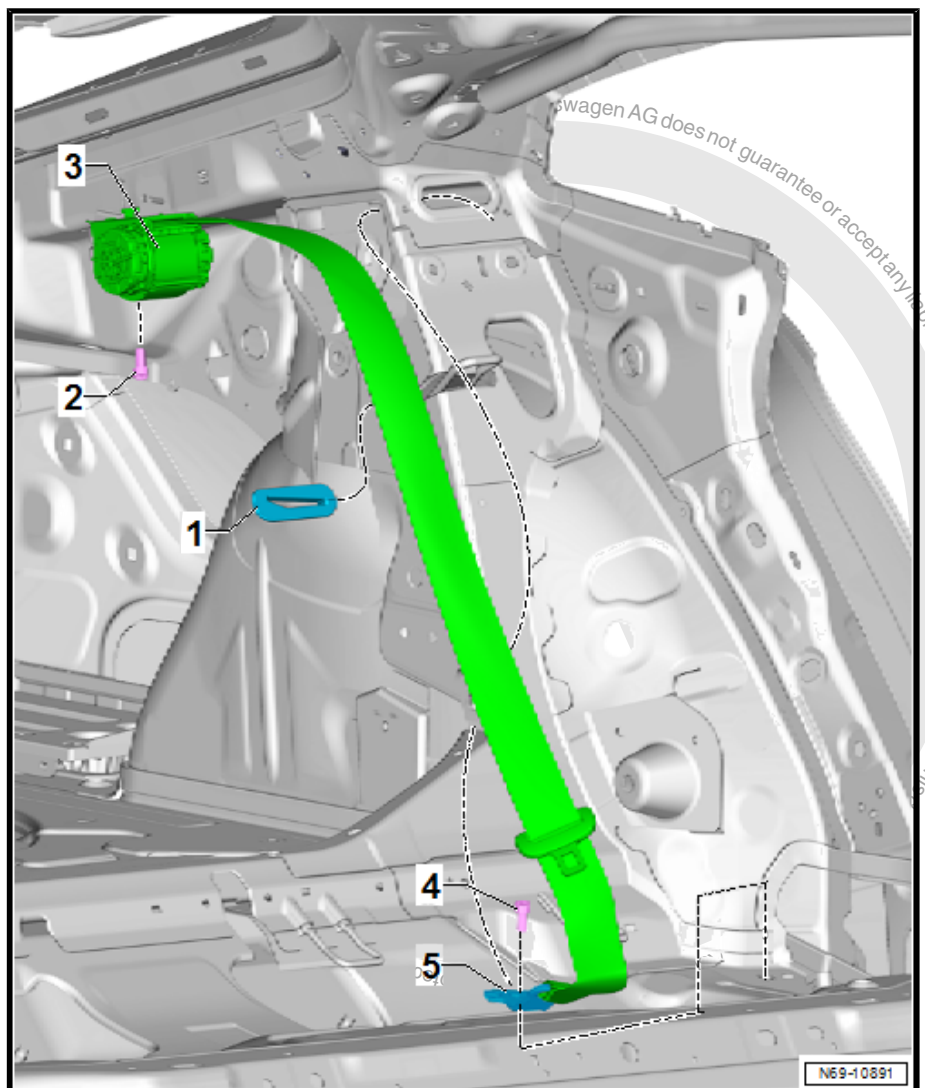
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.8 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing", page 77](#).

4 - Bolt

- ☐ 40 Nm
- ☐ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

5 - Outer Rear Belt End Fitting

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.12 Outer Rear Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing", page 81](#).





1.4 Overview - Rear Center Three-Point Seat Belt

1 - Seat Belt Latch

- ❑ With Passenger Side Rear Seat Belt Switch - E259-
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["1.15 Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing", page 85](#).
- ❑ Always replace if the belt tensioner has deployed when the belt is buckled
- ❑ Must lie on stop when tightening the nut.

2 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening specification: 40 Nm

3 - Nut

- ❑ Tightening specification: 40 Nm
- ❑ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

4 - Automatic Belt Retractor

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["1.8.2 Rear Three Point Seat Belt in Center, Removing and Installing", page 79](#).

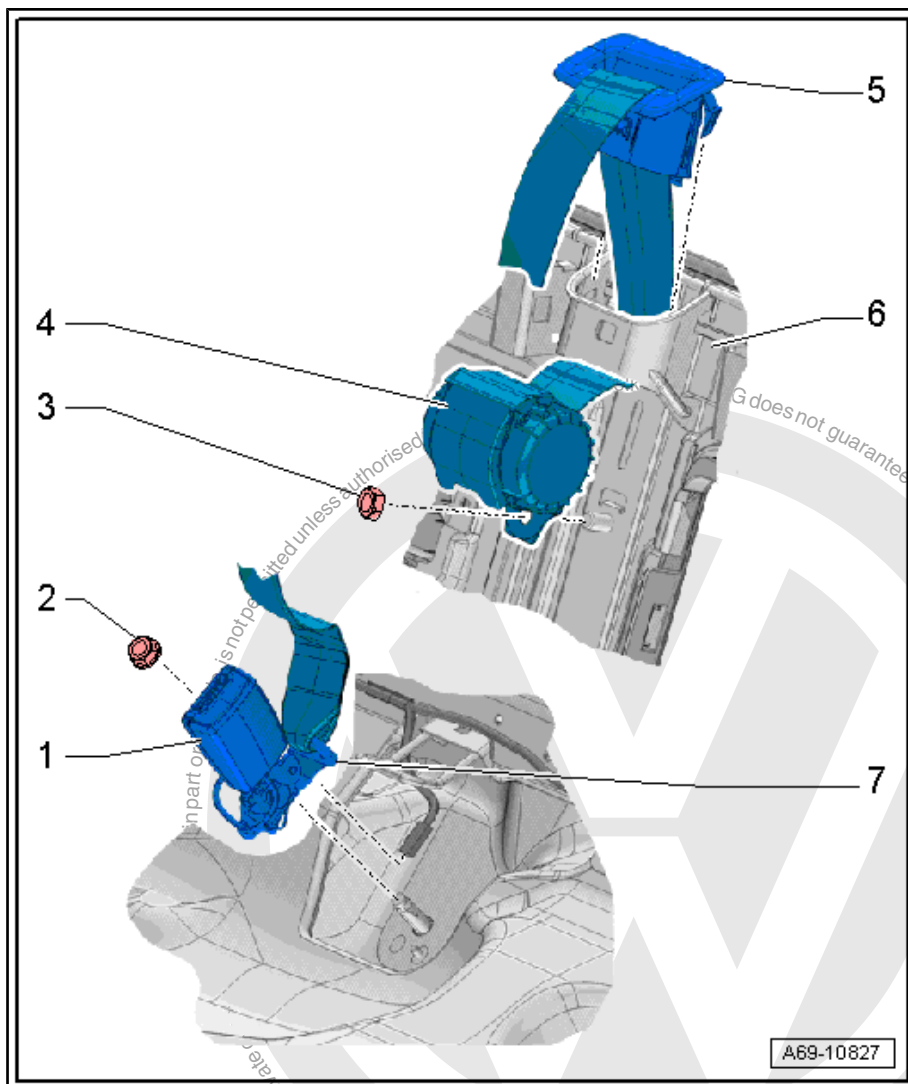
5 - Rear Center Seat Belt Guide

- ❑ Replace the entire seat belt guide if damaged
- ❑ To remove, press the two side tabs inward and remove the seat belt guide
- ❑ When installing, press on until it engages audibly.

6 - Right 2/3 Rear Seat Backrest

7 - Center Rear Belt End Fitting

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["1.15 Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing", page 85](#).





1.5 Overview - Front Seat Belt Latch

1 - Front Seat Belt Latch

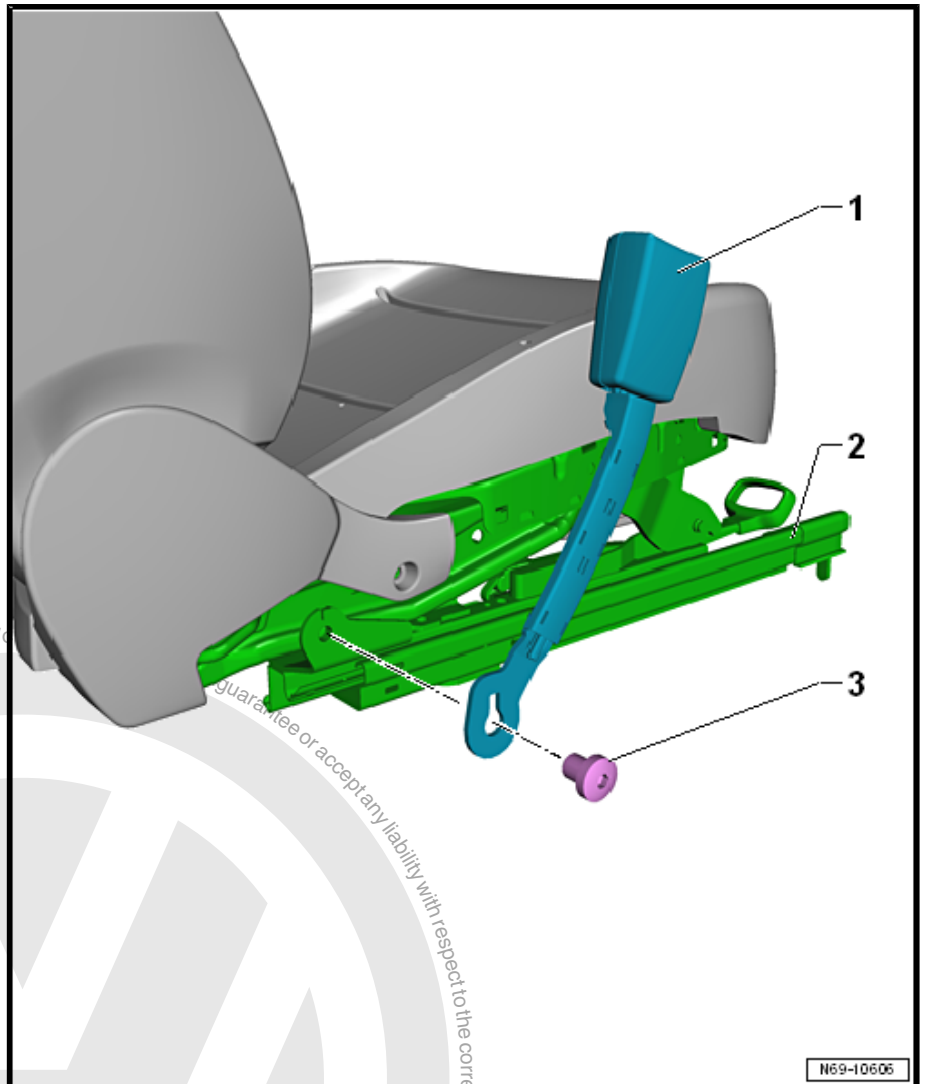
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.14 Front Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing", page 84](#).

2 - Front Seat

- ❑ Driver side: with Driver Seat Belt Switch - E24-
- ❑ Front passenger side: with Front Passenger Seat Belt Switch - E25-
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing", page 264](#).
- ❑ Always replace if the belt tensioner has deployed when the belt is buckled

3 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm
- ❑ Replace every time it is loosened





1.6 Overview - Rear Seat Belt Latch

1 - Left Dual Seat Belt Latch

- ☐ With Driver Side Rear Seat Belt Switch - E258-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["1.15 Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing", page 85](#) .
- ☐ Always replace if the belt tensioner has deployed when the belt is buckled
- ☐ When tightening push the belt latch assembly against the stop.
- ☐ Must make contact with the stop.

2 - Center Seat Belt Latch

- ☐ With Center Rear Seat Belt Switch - E609-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["1.15 Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing", page 85](#) .
- ☐ Always replace if the belt tensioner has deployed when the belt is buckled
- ☐ When tightening push the belt latch assembly against the stop.
- ☐ Must make contact with the stop.

3 - Right Seat Belt Latch with Rear Center Belt End Fitting

- ☐ With Passenger Side Rear Seat Belt Switch - E259-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["1.15 Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing", page 85](#) .
- ☐ Always replace if the belt tensioner has deployed when the belt is buckled
- ☐ Must lie on stop when tightening the nut.

4 - Nut

- ☐ 40 Nm
- ☐ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

5 - Connector

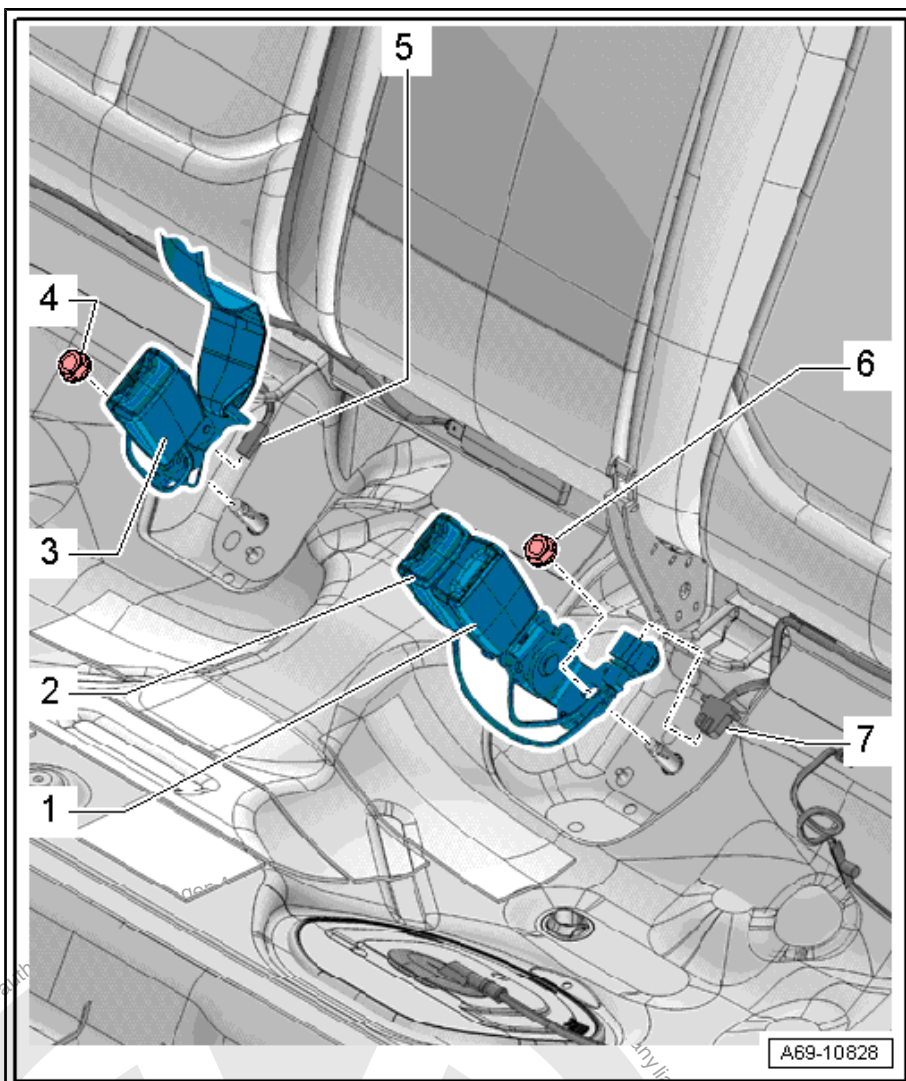
- ☐ For Passenger Side Rear Seat Belt Switch - E259-

6 - Nut

- ☐ 40 Nm
- ☐ Replace the bolt if it was removed because of an accident when the seat belt was buckled.

7 - Connector

- ☐ For Driver Side Rear Seat Belt Switch - E258- and Center Rear Seat Belt Switch - E609- .





1.7 Front Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

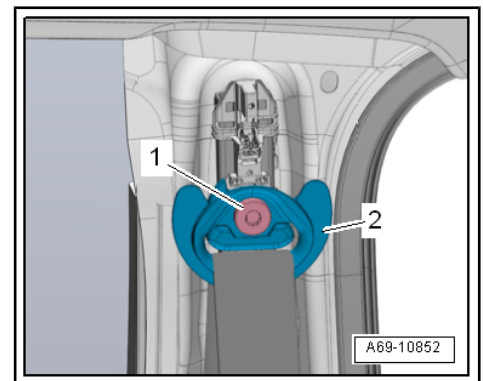
- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3** .
- ◆ **Observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing (Pyrotechnic Components)", page 4** .

- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- Remove the B-pillar lower trim panel. Refer to ⇒ **"5.11 B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 207** .
- Remove the front belt end fitting. Refer to ⇒ **"1.11 Front Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing", page 81** .
- Remove the front seat belt guide. Refer to ⇒ **"1.9 Front Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing", page 80** .
- Remove the bolt -1-.
- Remove the seat belt relay -2- with the seat belt webbing.



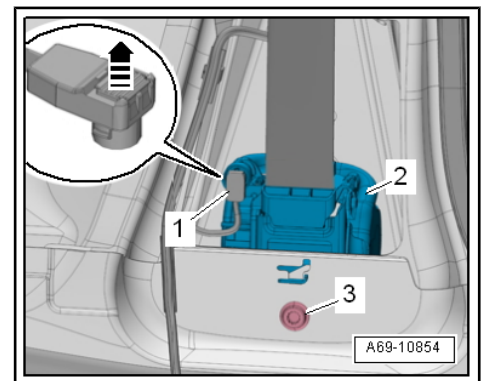
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.



Vehicles without Reversible Belt Tensioner

- Release the connector lock with a small screw driver -arrow- and remove the connector for the seat belt tensioner igniter 1 -item 1-.
- Remove the bolt -3- and the automatic belt retractor -2- from the mount.





Vehicles with Reversible Belt Tensioner

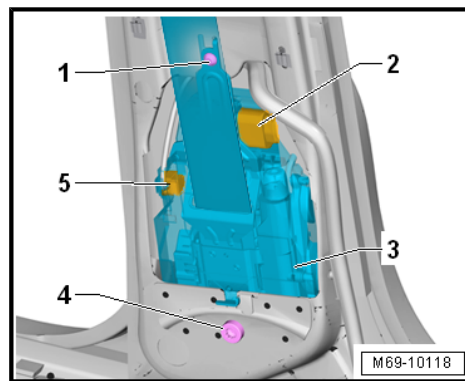
- Release and disconnect the connectors -2 and 5-.
- Remove the expanding rivet -1-.
- Remove the bolt -4- and remove the automatic belt retractor -3- from the mount.

Installing



WARNING

- ♦ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3.
- ♦ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.**



Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

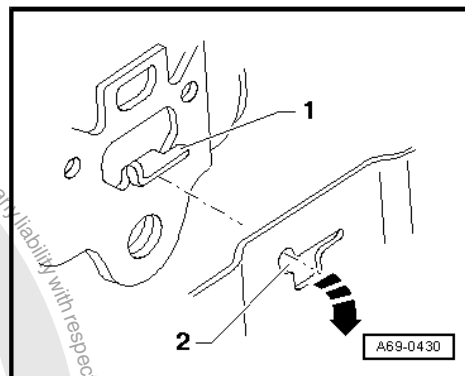
- If parts of the seat belt system are removed due to an accident, replace the belt system bolts.



Note

Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.

- Insert the automatic belt retractor with the anti-twist mechanism -1- in the mount -2- arrow- and tighten the bolt.



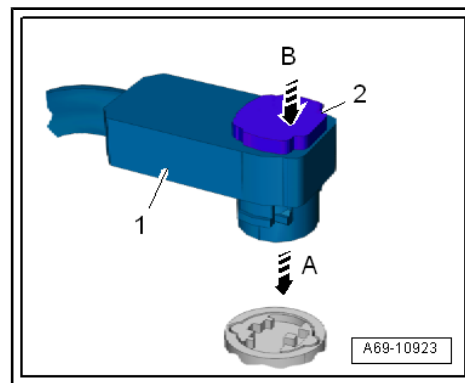


- Attach the connector -1- to the igniter -arrow A-.
- Push in the connector lock -2- -arrow B-. While doing so, the connector is pushed all the way into the igniter and locks into place at the same time.



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.



- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ ⇒ ["1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt", page 69](#)

For vehicles with Left Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J854- or Right Front Seat Belt Tensioner Control Module - J855- , the components must be adapted to the Airbag Control Module - J234- after replacing the seat belt. Refer to Guided Fault Finding. If the Guided Fault Finding has already started, update the test plan "15 - Airbag".

1.8 Rear Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing

⇒ ["1.8.1 Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing", page 77](#)

⇒ ["1.8.2 Rear Three Point Seat Belt in Center, Removing and Installing", page 79](#)

1.8.1 Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt, Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to*
⇒ ["1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3](#) .
- ◆ *Observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnical components. Refer to*
⇒ ["1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing \(Pyrotechnic Components\)", page 4](#) .



- On vehicles with a seat belt tensioner, disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is switched on. Refer to ➔ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- Remove the outer rear belt end fitting. Refer to ➔ [“1.12 Outer Rear Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing”, page 81](#) .
- Remove the rear seat belt guide. Refer to ➔ [“1.10 Rear Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 80](#) .



WARNING

Risk of injury due to involuntary deployment.

- ◆ ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must “discharge static electricity”. For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.***

- For vehicles with seat belt tensioners, disconnect the wiring harness.
- Remove the bolt 1-.
- Remove the automatic belt retractor -2- from the mount.
- Thread the belt end fitting with the seat belt webbing through the mounting bracket of the automatic belt retractor.

Installing

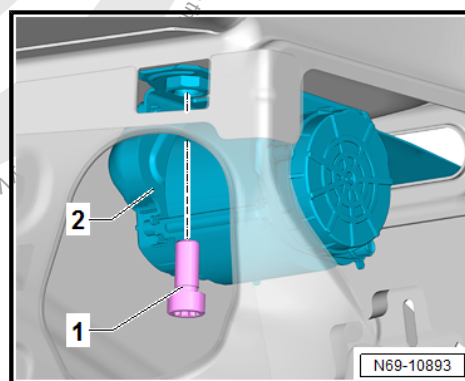
Vehicles with Seat Belt Tensioner



WARNING

- ◆ ***Risk of injury due to involuntary deployment.***
- ◆ ***Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ➔ [“1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components”, page 3](#) .***
- ◆ ***Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must “discharge static electricity”. For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.***

- If parts of the seat belt system are removed due to an accident, replace the belt system bolts.





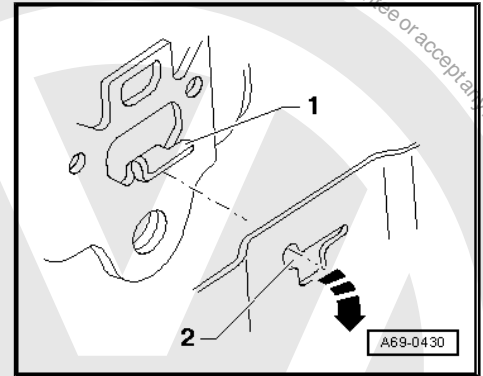
- Insert the automatic belt retractor with the anti-twist mechanism -1- in the mount -2- -arrow- and tighten the bolt.



WARNING

Repairing pyrotechnic components (for example the airbag and seat belt tensioner) incorrectly increases the risk of injuries due to unintentional deployments when the battery is connected.

- ◆ **The ignition must be on when connecting the battery.**
- ◆ **Make sure that no one is inside the vehicle at the time when the battery is connected.**



- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting



Note

Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.

Further installation is performed in reverse order of removal, while noting the following:



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["1.3 Overview - Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt", page 71](#)

1.8.2 Rear Three Point Seat Belt in Center, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Remove the backrest cover and backrest cushion from the rear seat backrest. Refer to
⇒ ["2.5 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 330](#) .



- Remove the nut -1-.
- Disengage the three-point seat belt -2- and remove it.
- Thread out the belt -3-.

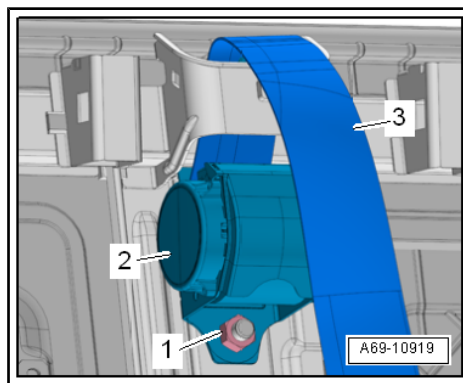
Installing

- If parts of the seat belt system are removed due to an accident, replace the belt system nuts.
- Insert the three-point seat belt with the anti-twist mechanism in the mount and tighten the nut.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ♦ Refer to
⇒ [“1.4 Overview - Rear Center Three-Point Seat Belt”, page 72](#)



1.9 Front Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Remove the B-pillar upper trim panel. Refer to
⇒ [“5.11 B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 207](#).
- Push together the bracket on the seat belt guide -1- -a arrows-.
- At the same time disengage the seat belt guide -1- downward from the body -arrow b-.
- Remove the seat belt guide -1- upward with the bracket pushed together -arrow c-.
- Thread the seat belt webbing out and remove the seat belt guide -1-.

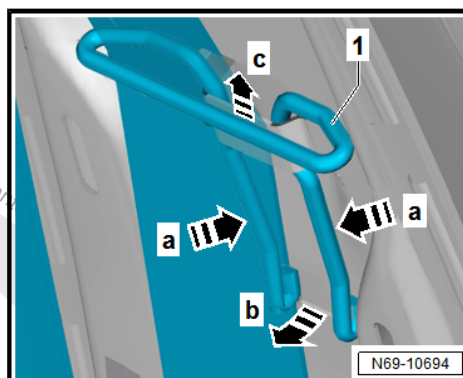
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

When installing, note the correct installation position of the seat belt guide.



1.10 Rear Seat Belt Guide, Removing and Installing

Removing

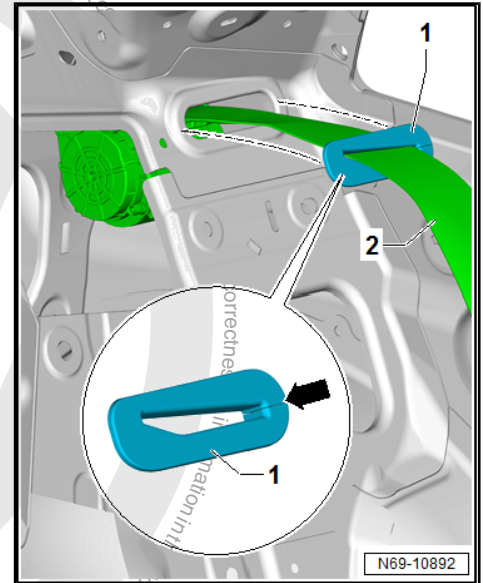
- Remove the luggage compartment side trim panel. Refer to
⇒ [“6.8 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223](#).



- Use a screwdriver to release the seat belt guide retainers -1-.
- Unclip the seat belt guide -1- in the direction of travel.
- Open the side hinge -arrow- and pull the seat belt webbing out of the seat belt guide -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



1.11 Front Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing

Removing

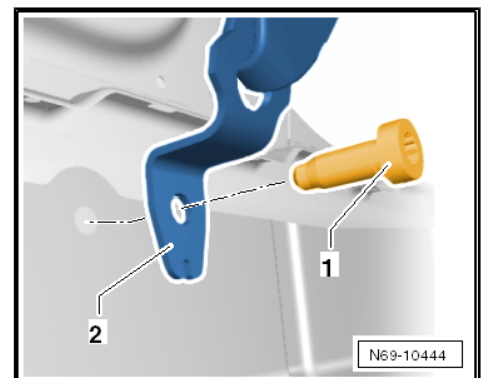
- Front seat positioned all the forward and raised all the way up.
- Fold the service door in the sill panel strip near the belt end fitting toward the inside.
- Remove the bolt -1- and detach the belt end fitting -2- from the body.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt", page 69](#)



1.12 Outer Rear Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Remove the wheel housing trim panel. Refer to
⇒ ["5.13 Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 210](#).



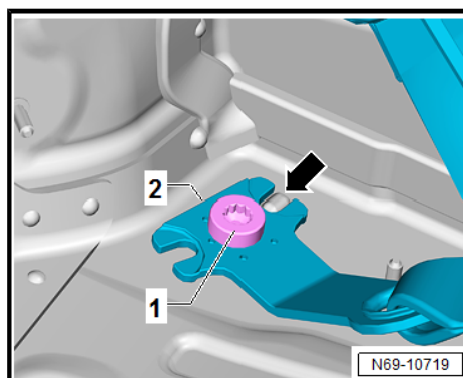
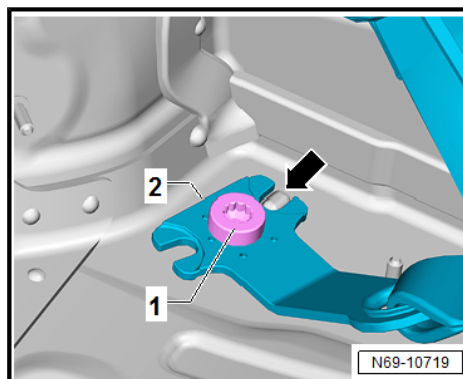
- Remove the bolt -1- and loosen the belt end fitting -2- from the body.

Installing

- The anti-twist mechanism -arrow- on the floor panel must rest in the belt end fitting opening -2-.
- Tighten the belt end fitting -2- with the bolt -1-.
- Remove the wheel housing trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "5.13 Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 210](#).

Tightening Specifications

- ♦ Refer to [⇒ "1.3 Overview - Outer Rear Three-Point Seat Belt", page 71](#)



1.13 Seat Belt Height Adjuster, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Press the seat belt height adjustment button and move the slider for seat belt height adjustment into the lowest position.
- Detach the B-pillar upper trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "5.11 B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 207](#).
- Set aside the B-pillar trim with the seat belt webbing still threaded through it.



- Remove the bolt -4-.
- Remove the seat belt relay -1- with the seat belt webbing.
- Remove the bolt -3-.
- Remove the seat belt height adjuster -2- upward from the B-pillar.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- If parts of the seat belt system are removed due to an accident, replace the belt system bolts.



Note

- ◆ Replacement seat belt height adjusters are delivered with the slider in the lowest position (installation position).
- ◆ If removed seat belt height adjusters are reinstalled, these should be placed in the lowest position (installation position).

- Engage the seat belt height adjuster -2- into the B-pillar.
- Tighten the bolt -3-.
- Install the seat belt height adjuster -1- and tighten the bolt -4-.



Note

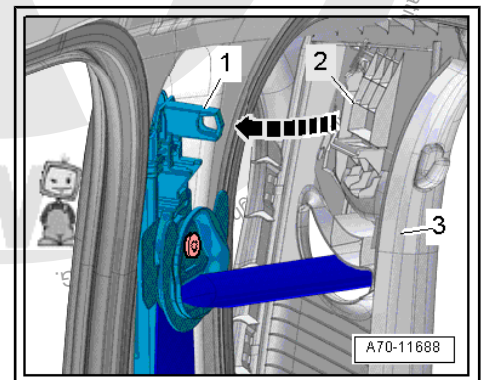
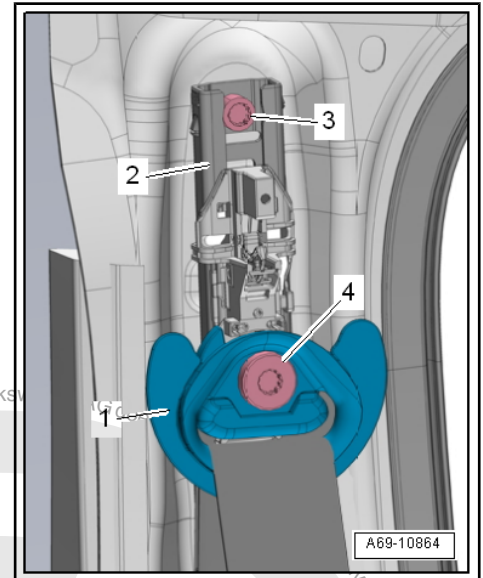
The seat belt height adjuster button must not be pressed when assembling the B-pillar trim panel.

- First, insert the B-pillar trim panel -3- upward into the mount on the roof.
- The mount -2- for the sliding piece of the B-pillar trim must engage in the retaining pin -1- on the seat belt height adjuster -arrow-.
- Seat belt height adjuster replacement part: after installing the B-pillar trim panel, push the slider all the way up with force.
- This unlocks the seat belt height adjuster assembly anchorage.
- When performing the function test, the following conditions must be fulfilled:
 - The seat belt height adjuster must audibly engage in each of the three possible positions (and also in the highest position).
 - Belt height adjuster button must return to upper position by itself after being pressed.
 - The seat belt relay must swing into the vertical position or towards the carrier by itself after tightening the screw.

If any of the listed conditions are not met, then the belt height adjuster assembly must be checked. Replace the belt height adjuster if necessary.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["1.2 Overview - Front Three-Point Seat Belt", page 69](#)

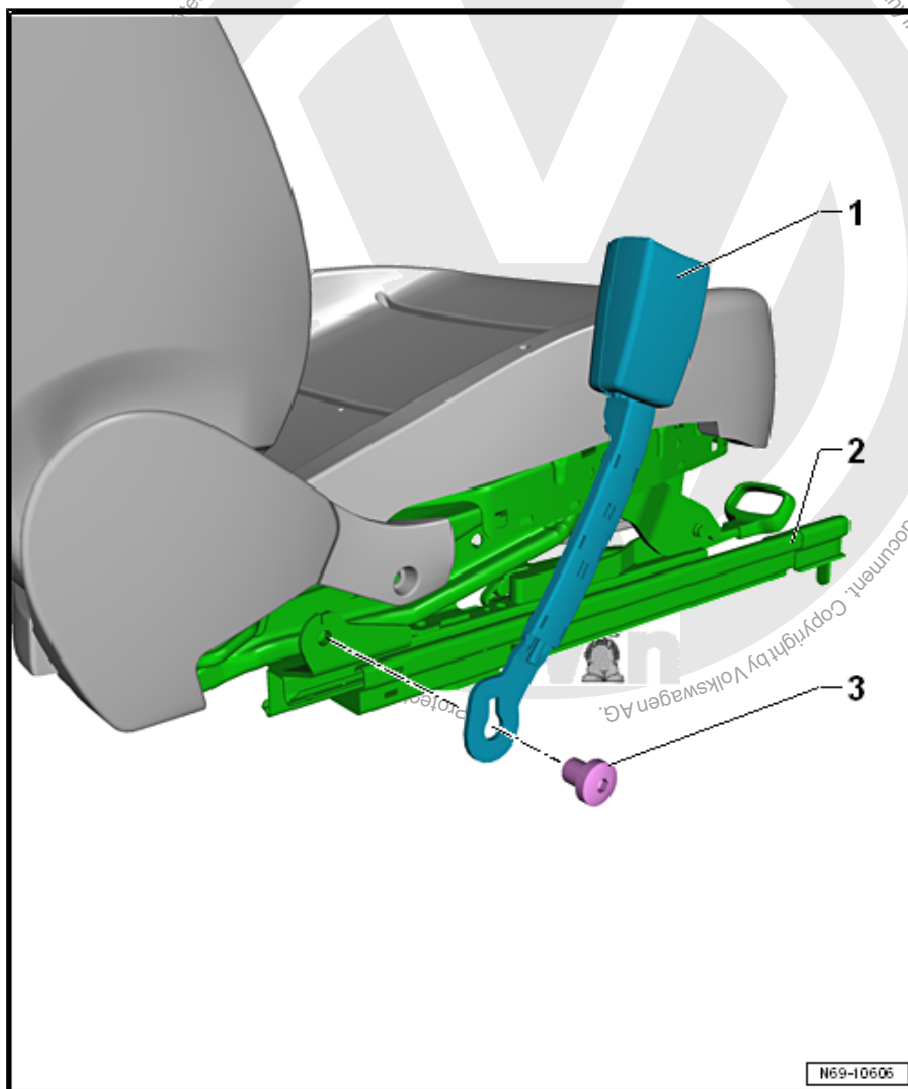




1.14 Front Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Remove the front seat. Refer to
⇒ [“2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing”, page 264](#).



- Disconnect the seat belt latch connector from the connector station underneath the seat frame.
- Loosen the wire from the seat frame.
- Remove the bolt -3- and then remove the seat belt latch -1- from the seat -2-.

Installing

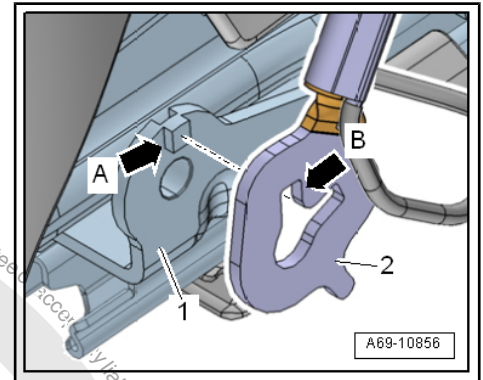
Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



- Position the seat belt latch -2- so that the cut-out -arrow B- lines up with the tab -arrow A- on the seat pan -1-.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“1.5 Overview - Front Seat Belt Latch”, page 73](#)



1.15 Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Remove the bench seat / bucket seats. Refer to ⇒ [“3.6 Bench Seat/Single Seat, Removing and Installing”, page 296](#).

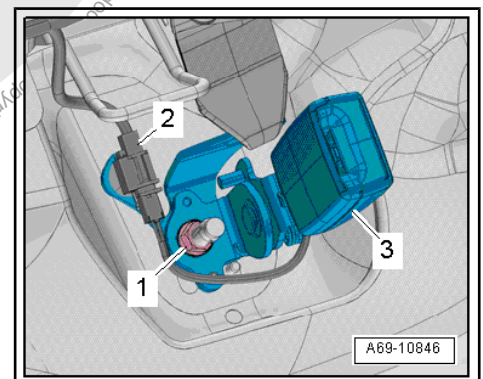
Right: seat belt latch with belt end fitting



Note

The seat belt latch with belt end fitting is a component of the rear center seat belt.

- Disconnect the seat belt switch connector -2-.
- Remove the nut -1-.
- Remove the seat belt latch -3- with the belt end fitting.



Left: Dual Seat Belt Latch

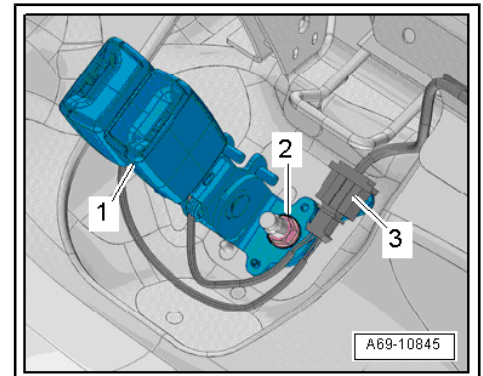
- Disconnect the seat belt switch connector -3-.
- Remove the nut -2-.
- Remove the dual seat belt latch -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“1.6 Overview - Rear Seat Belt Latch”, page 74](#)



2 Child Seat Anchors

⇒ **“2.1 Overview - Rear Child Seat Anchors”, page 86**

⇒ “2.2 Rear Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing”, page 87

⇒ “2.2.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing”, page 88

2.1 Overview - Rear Child Seat Anchors

1 - "Child Seat Anchor Top Tether"

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Welded to the backrest frame

2 - Rear Seat Backrest

3 - Cover

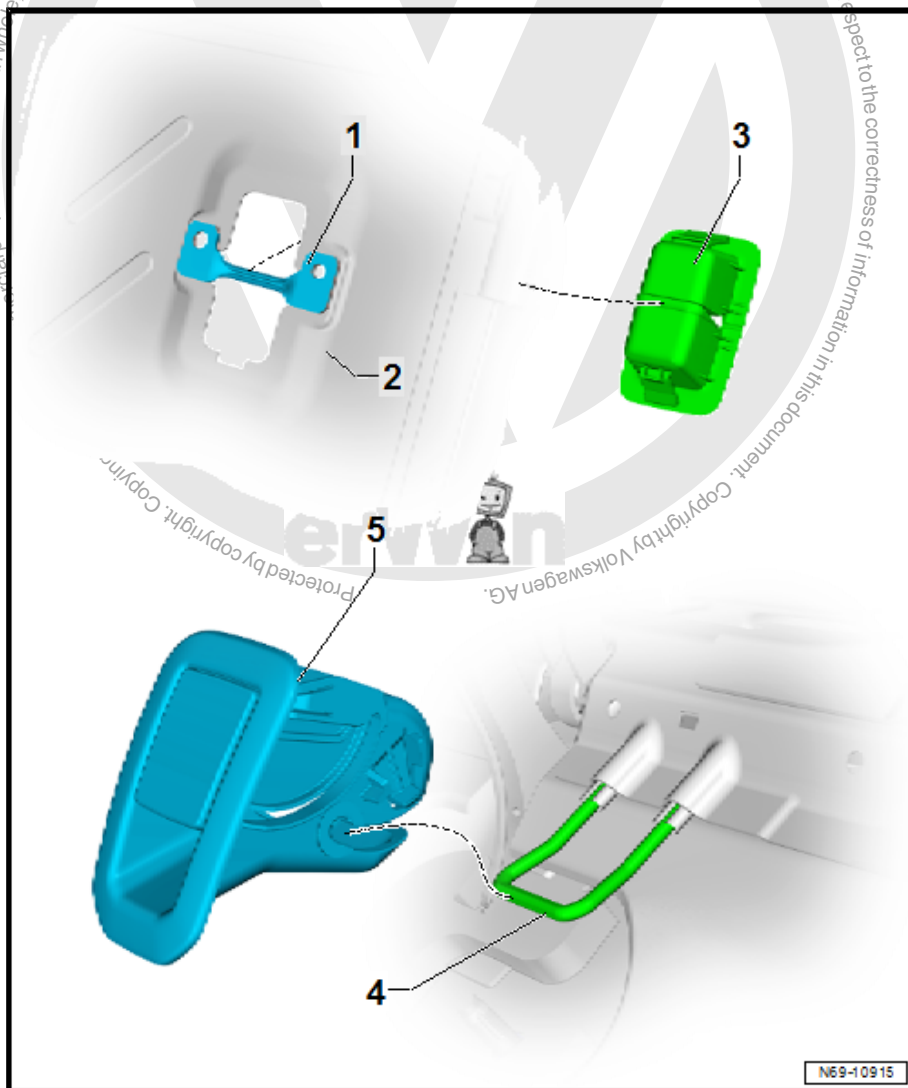
- ❑ For “Top Tether child seat anchor”
- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ “2.2.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing”, page 88 .
- ❑ Engage in the anchor and press on it until it engages audibly
- ❑ Can only be pushed in one position in the rear seat backrest

4 - "LATCH Child Seat Anchor"

- ❑ Quantity: 4
- ❑ Welded to the underbody

5 - "LATCH Trim"

- ❑ For the “LATCH child seat anchor”
- ❑ Quantity: 4
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.2.1 LATCH Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing”, page 87](#)
- ❑ Dual clips





2.2 Rear Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing

⇒ [“2.2.1 LATCH Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing”, page 87](#)

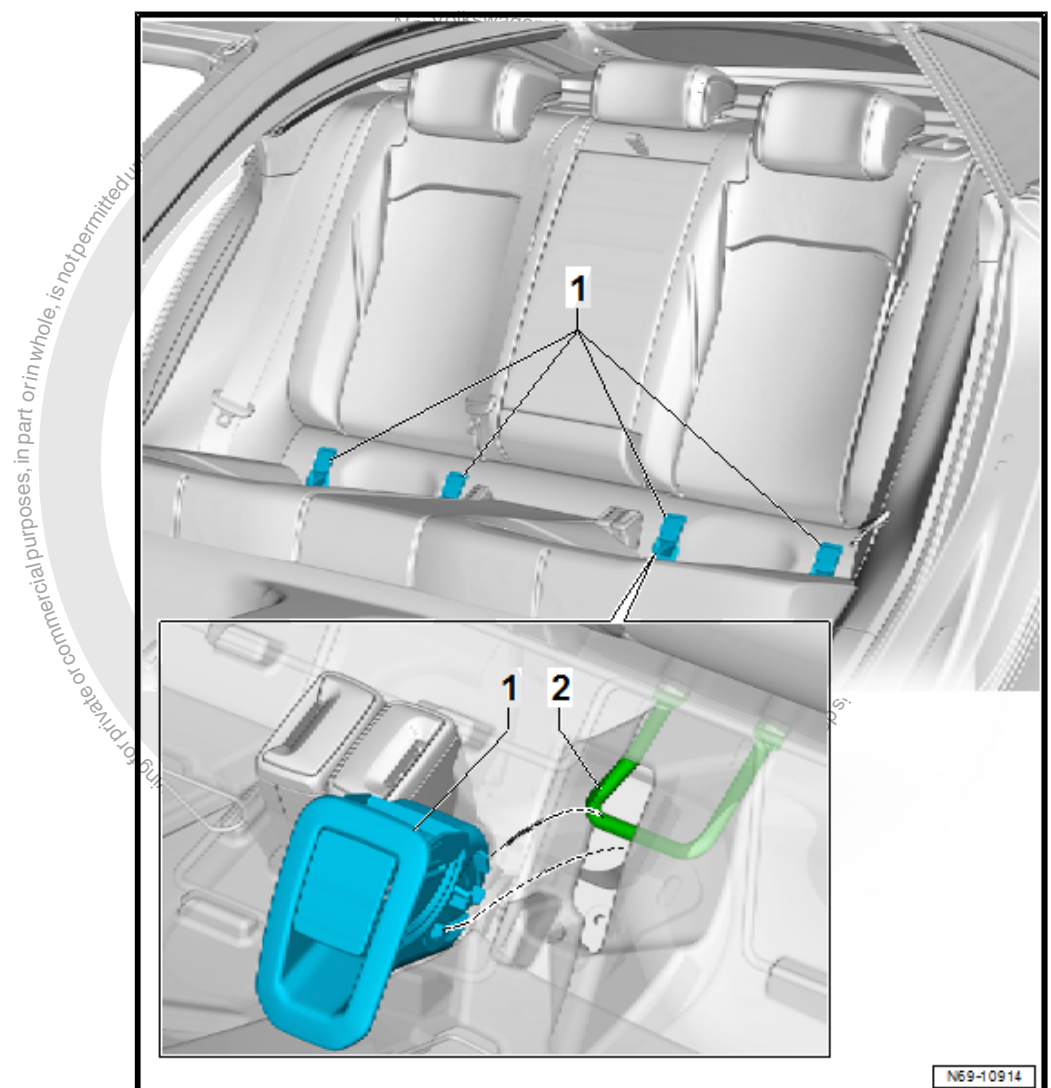
⇒ [“2.2.2 Top Tether Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing”, page 88](#)

⇒ [“2.2.3 Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing, Market-Specific Version”, page 88](#)

2.2.1 “LATCH Child Seat Anchor”, Removing and Installing

It is only possible to remove the “LATCH trim”.

Removing



- Reach with one hand above and one below the frame for the “LATCH trim” -1-.
- Unclip the “LATCH trim” -1- in the direction of travel from the “LATCH bracket” -2-.
- The removal of the remaining “LATCH trims” is done the same.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

Before installing, check the "ISOFIX trim" for damage and replace if necessary.

Note the double clip when installing the "LATCH trims".

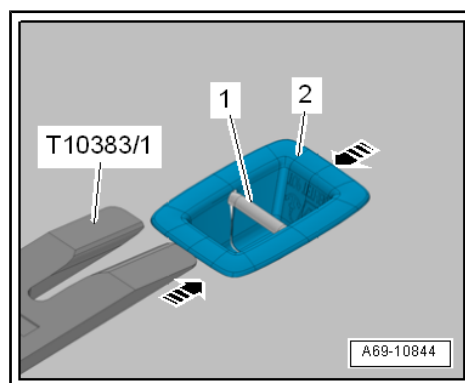
2.2.2 "Top Tether Child Seat Anchor", Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-

Removing

- Fold the rear seat backrest forward.
- Release the retaining tabs using the -T10383/1- -arrows-.
- Pry the Top Tether child seat anchor cover -2- off upward from the rear seat backrest.
- Carefully pull off the cover for the Top Tether child seat anchor from the anchor -1- and remove it.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.2.3 Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing, Market-Specific Version

Removing

- Unclip the trim -1- upward.
- Remove the bolt -2-.
- Remove the anchor -3- and washer -4-.

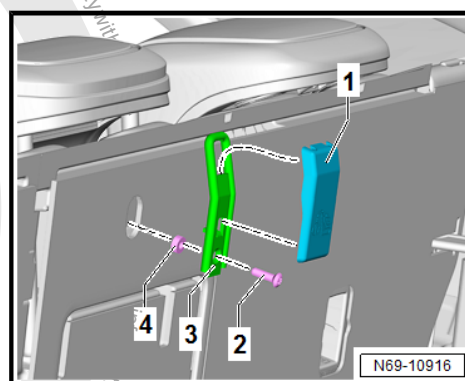
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

Check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Bolt to backrest	8.0 Nm



3 Airbag System

⇒ ["3.1 Component Location Overview - Airbag System", page 89](#)

3.1 Component Location Overview - Airbag System

⇒ ["3.1.1 Component Location Overview - Airbag System", page 89](#)

3.1.1 Component Location Overview - Airbag System

1 - Airbag Control Module - J234-

- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["4.1 Overview - Airbag Control Module", page 91](#).

2 - Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75-

- ☐ Integrated in the instrument cluster.
- ☐ Cannot be replaced separately
- ☐ Instrument Cluster, Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 90 ; Instrument Cluster; Overview - Instrument Cluster.

3 - Front Passenger Airbag - Disabled- Indicator Lamp - K145-

- ☐ Cannot be replaced separately
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Controls; Component Location Overview - Controls in Instrument Panel.

4 - Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation Key Switch - E224-

- ☐ Not for North American Market

5 - Front Passenger Airbag

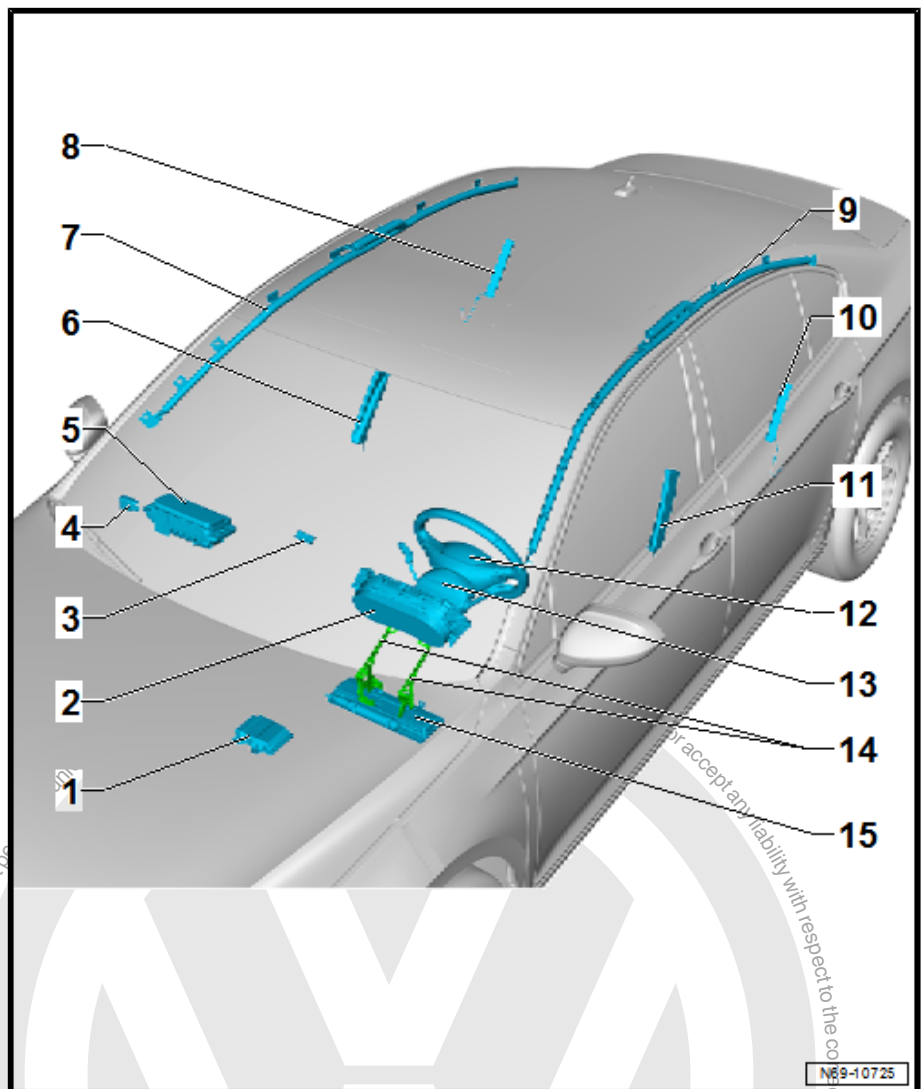
- ☐ With Front Passenger Airbag Igniter 1 - N131-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["7.1 Overview - Front Passenger Airbag", page 106](#).

6 - Front Passenger Front Thorax Airbag

- ☐ With Front Passenger Thorax Airbag Igniter - N200-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["8.1 Overview - Front Thorax Airbag", page 111](#).

7 - Front Passenger Head Curtain Airbag

- ☐ With Front Passenger Head Curtain Airbag Igniter - N252-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["9.1 Overview - Head Curtain Airbag", page 117](#).





8 - Rear Thorax Airbag on Front Passenger Side

- ☐ With Passenger Side Rear Thorax Airbag Igniter - N202-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["8.2 Overview - Rear Thorax Airbag", page 112](#) .

9 - Driver Head Curtain Airbag

- ☐ With Driver Head Curtain Airbag Igniter - N251-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["9.1 Overview - Head Curtain Airbag", page 117](#) .

10 - Rear Thorax Airbag on Driver Side

- ☐ With Driver Side Rear Thorax Airbag Igniter - N201-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["8.2 Overview - Rear Thorax Airbag", page 112](#) .

11 - Front Thorax Airbag on Driver Side

- ☐ With Driver Thorax Airbag Igniter - N199-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["8.1 Overview - Front Thorax Airbag", page 111](#) .

12 - Driver Side Airbag

- ☐ With Driver Airbag Igniter - N95-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["6.1 Overview - Driver Side Airbag", page 99](#) .

13 - Steering Column Electronics Control Module - J527-

- ☐ With Airbag Spiral Spring/Return Spring with Slip Ring - F138-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Steering Column Switch Module; Overview - Steering Column Switch Module .

14 - Driver Side Knee Airbag Bracket

- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 48 ; Steering Column; Overview - Steering Column .

15 - Driver Side Knee Airbag

- ☐ With Driver Knee Airbag Igniter - N295-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["10.1 Overview - Knee Airbag", page 122](#) .



4 Airbag Control Module

⇒ ["4.1 Overview - Airbag Control Module", page 91](#)

⇒ ["4.2 Airbag Control Module J234-, Removing and Installing", page 91](#)

4.1 Overview - Airbag Control Module

1 - Airbag Control Module - J234-

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["4.2 Airbag Control Module J234-, Removing and Installing", page 91](#).
- ☐ The control module is grounded via the housing with the body.

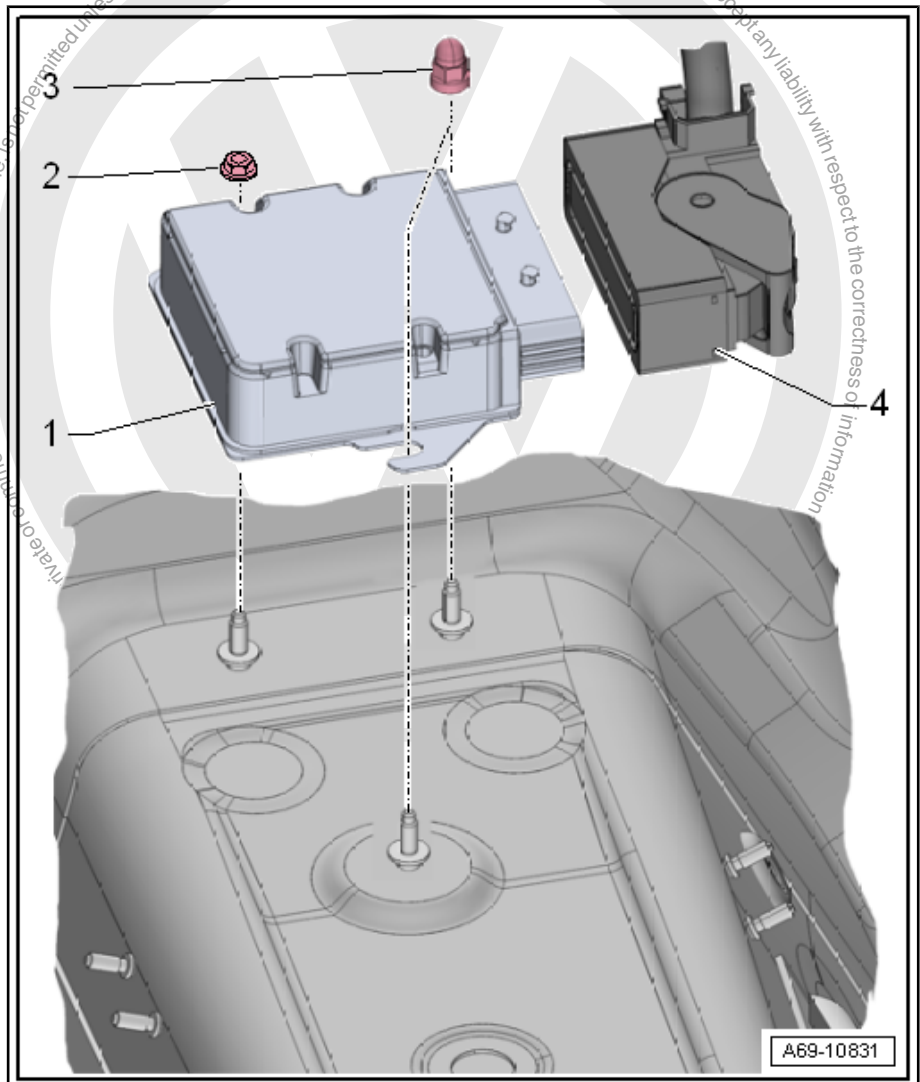
2 - Nut

- ☐ 9 Nm
- ☐ Nut and ground pin serve as a ground connection for the control module
- ☐ The threads must be free of paint and dirt

3 - Nut

- ☐ 9 Nm
- ☐ Quantity: 2
- ☐ Nut and ground pin serve as a ground connection for the control module
- ☐ The threads must be free of paint and dirt

4 - Connector



4.2 Airbag Control Module - J234-, Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to
⇒ ["1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3](#).



- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ [Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting](#) .
- Remove the footwell center console trim panel. Refer to ⇒ ["3.3 Front Footwell Center Console Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 38](#) .
- Remove the front bracket for the driver and front passenger side center console. Refer to ⇒ ["3.8 Center Console Bracket, Removing and Installing", page 48](#) .



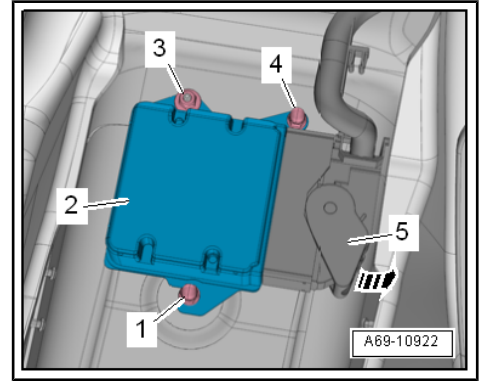
- Remove the nut -3- in the front of the driver footwell.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.

- Disconnect the connector in the front passenger footwell, by releasing the connector safety catch and opening the locking clip -5- on the connector -arrow-.
- Remove the nuts -1 and 4-.
- Carefully lift the airbag control module -2- from the threaded pins and remove it toward the passenger side.



Note

For reasons of clarity, the instrument panel and heater and A/C unit are not shown.

Installing



WARNING

- ♦ *Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3.*
- ♦ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.*

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.



Note

- ◆ *If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after installing, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.*
- ◆ *The Airbag Control Module -J234- must be coded after replacing it using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.*

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ ["4.1 Overview - Airbag Control Module", page 91](#)





5 Battery Interrupt Igniter

⇒ ["5.1 Overview - Battery Interrupt Igniter", page 95](#)

⇒ ["5.2 Battery Interrupt Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 95](#)

5.1 Overview - Battery Interrupt Igniter

1 - Connector

- ☐ For the Battery Interrupt Igniter - N253-
- ☐ Releasing and removing. Refer to [⇒ page 97](#).

2 - Nuts

- ☐ 15 Nm

3 - Battery Interrupt Igniter - N253-

- ☐ Available only together with -item 4-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "5.2 Battery Interrupt Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 95](#).

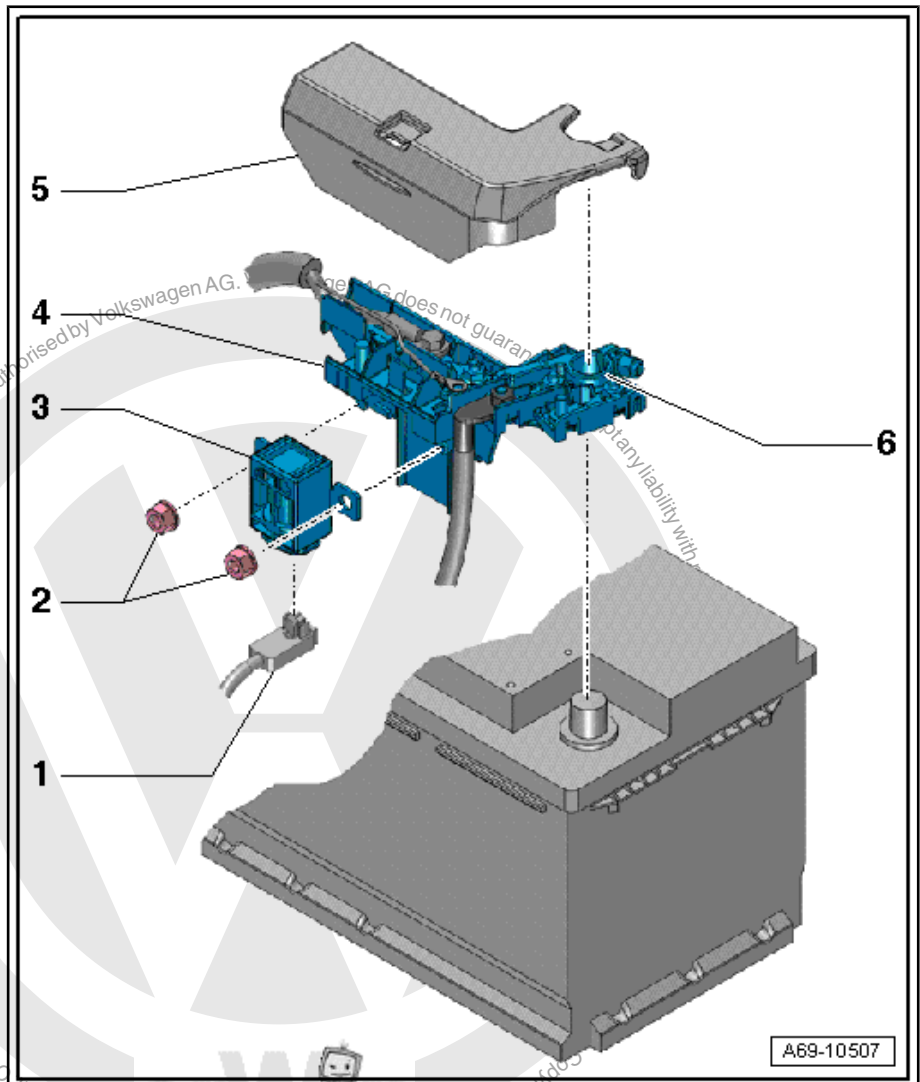
4 - Fuse Panel A - SA-

5 - Cover

- ☐ For the Fuse Panel A - SA-

6 - Positive Terminal Clamp

- ☐ Tightening specification. Refer to [⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Overview - Battery](#).



5.2 Battery Interrupt Igniter, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Vehicle Diagnostic Tester



Removing



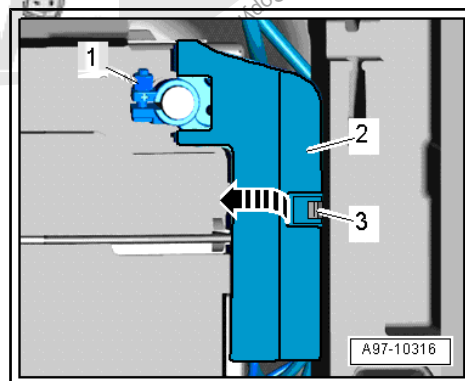
WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3.**
- ◆ **Observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing (Pyrotechnic Components)", page 4.**



Note

- ◆ *If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- turns on after a collision, check whether crash data is stored using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester. If this is the case, check if the fault »Resistance too high« is stored in the DTC memory for the Battery Interrupt Igniter - N253-. If this is the case, the Battery Interrupt Igniter - N253- must be replaced.*
- ◆ *The Battery Interrupt Igniter - N253- interrupts the electrical circuit each time an airbag is deployed. The Battery Interrupt Igniter - N253- must be replaced after a deployment.*
- ◆ *The Battery Interrupt Igniter - N253- is only available as a replacement part with the Fuse Panel A - SA-.*
- ◆ *When just replacing the Battery Interrupt Igniter - N253-, remove it from the replacement part and install it in Fuse Panel A - SA- as follows.*
- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27; Battery; Disconnecting and Connecting.
- Loosen the nut -1- several turns and remove the battery positive cable terminal clamp with the Fuse Panel A - SA- from the battery terminal.
- Remove the Fuse Panel A - SA- upward.
- Release the spring -3- and open the flap -2- over Fuse Panel A - SA- upward -arrow-.





WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.

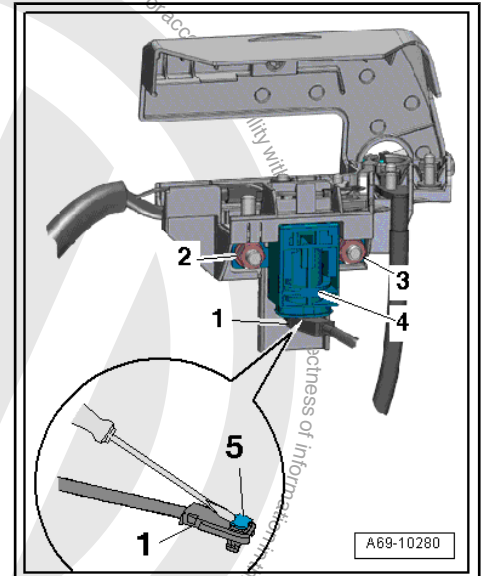
- Remove the nuts -2 and 3-.
- Remove the battery interrupt igniter -4-.
- To do this, open the connector lock -5- using a small screwdriver and disconnect the connector -1-.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.*



Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Make sure the connectors are installed all the way and engage audibly.



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.

- Check and erase the airbag control module DTC memory because faults can be stored from when the connectors are disconnected. Use the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.



Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“5.1 Overview - Battery Interrupt Igniter”, page 95](#)





6 Driver Side Airbag

⇒ ["6.1 Overview - Driver Side Airbag", page 99](#)

⇒ ["6.2 Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 100](#)

⇒ ["6.3 Airbag Connector, Replacing", page 104](#)

6.1 Overview - Driver Side Airbag

1 - Locking Bracket

- ☐ Use a screwdriver or a similar tool to unlock
- ☐ Maximum total length of the tool: 100 mm

2 - Steering Column Electronics Control Module - J527-

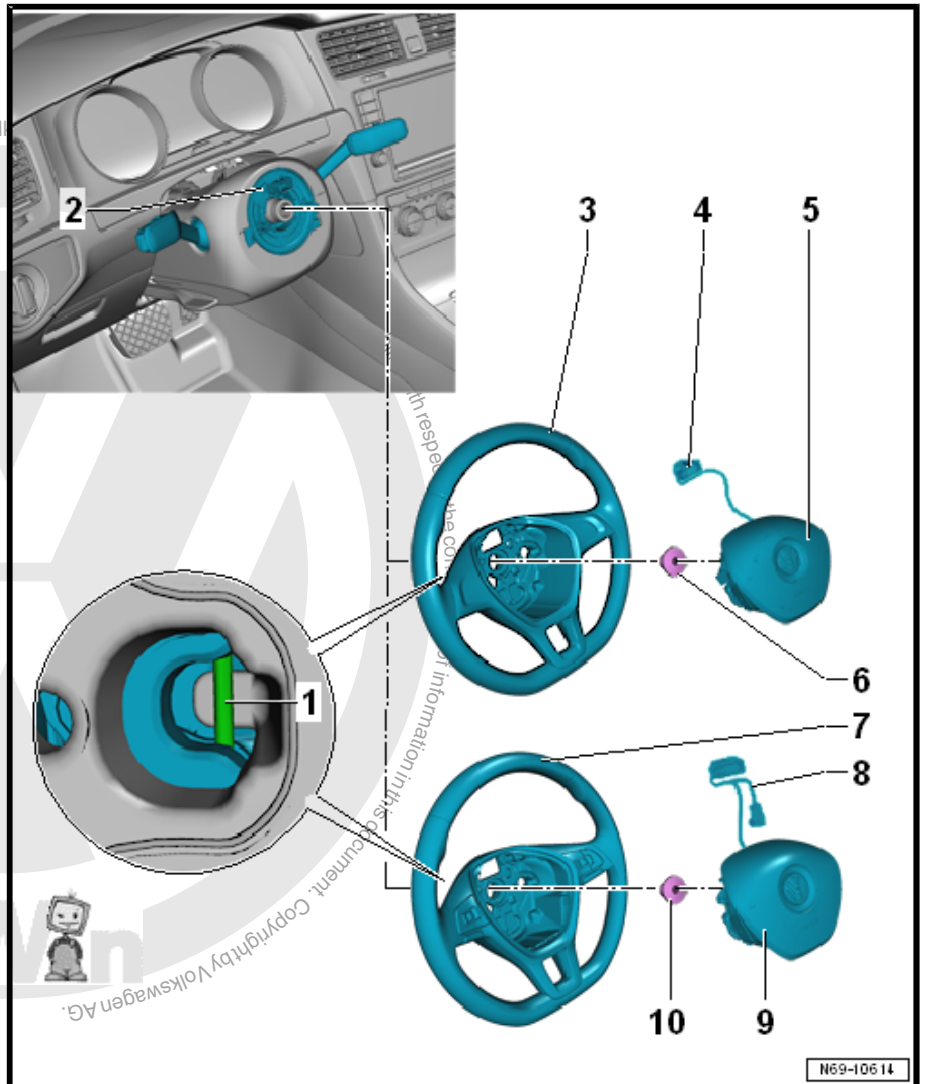
- ☐ With Airbag Spiral Spring/Return Spring with Slip Ring - F138-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Steering Column Switch Module; Overview - Steering Column Switch Module .

3 - Steering Wheel without Multifunction

- ☐ Equipped on some models
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 48 ; Steering Wheel; Overview - Steering Wheel .

4 - Wiring Harness without Multifunction

- ☐ For Driver Airbag Igniter N95-
- ☐ Replacing. Refer to ⇒ ["6.3 Airbag Connector, Replacing", page 104](#) .
- ☐ Press in to secure in the pockets on the steering wheel.



5 - Driver Side Airbag

- ☐ With Driver Airbag Igniter - N95-



WARNING

Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3](#) .



- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“6.2 Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing”, page 100](#) .

6 - Bolt

- ☐ Tightening specification. Refer to ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 48 ; Steering Wheel; Overview - Steering Wheel .

7 - Steering Wheel with Multifunction


- ☐ Equipped on some models
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 48 ; Steering Wheel; Overview - Steering Wheel .

8 - Wiring Harness with Multifunction

- ☐ For Driver Airbag Igniter - N95-
- ☐ Replacing. Refer to ⇒ [“6.3 Airbag Connector, Replacing”, page 104](#) .
- ☐ Press in to secure in the pockets on the steering wheel.

9 - Driver Side Airbag

- ☐ With Driver Airbag Igniter - N95-



WARNING

Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components”, page 3](#) .


- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“6.2 Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing”, page 100](#) .

10 - Bolt

- ☐ Tightening specification. Refer to ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 48 ; Steering Wheel; Overview - Steering Wheel .

6.2 Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components”, page 3](#) .*
- ◆ *Observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing \(Pyrotechnic Components\)”, page 4](#) .*

- Position the steering wheel as far back and down as possible.
- Use the full adjustment range of the steering column adjuster.
- Remove the upper steering column trim panel. Refer to ⇒ [“1.7 Upper Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 21](#) .
- Turn the steering wheel so the opening on the rear side of it faces upward.



- Release the locking bracket -1- for the driver side airbag -2- -arrows-.
- Use a screwdriver or a similar tool with a maximum total length of 100 mm to do this.



Note

Wires can be damaged with a flat-head screwdriver.

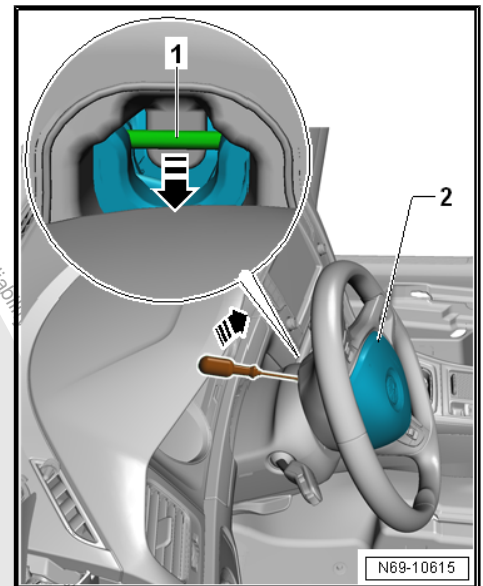
- Turn the steering wheel 180° and repeat the procedure on the opposite side.
- Bring the steering wheel back into the center (wheels are straight).

Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.





- Remove the driver side airbag -3- from the steering wheel slightly.
- Pull out the connector lock -2- -arrow- and press it down, disconnect the connector -1-.
- Vehicles with multifunction steering wheel: disconnect the connector.



WARNING

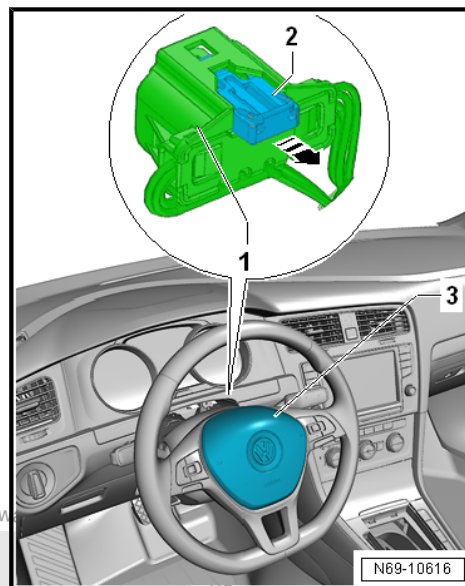
Lay the airbag unit so that the padding faces upward.

Installing



WARNING

- ♦ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ ***"1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3.***
- ♦ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.**

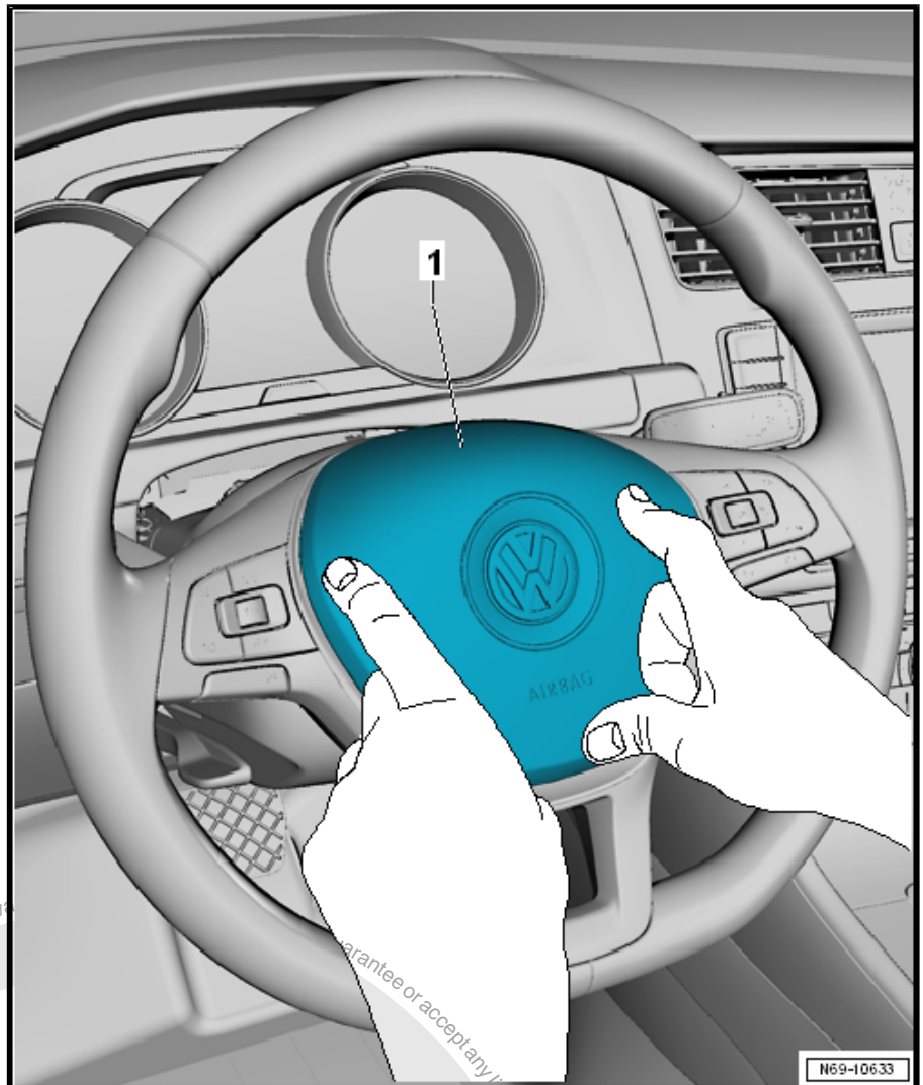


Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

- ♦ *Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.*
- ♦ *Make sure the wires are not pinched.*
- Connect the connector.
- Press in the connector to secure it in the pockets on the steering wheel.



- Position the driver side airbag -1- in the steering wheel and press on the edge with both hands until it locks into place.



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.



- Check and erase the airbag control module DTC memory because faults can be stored from when the connectors are disconnected. Use the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

Tightening Specifications

- ♦ Refer to ⇒ [“6.1 Overview - Driver Side Airbag”, page 99](#)

6.3 Airbag Connector, Replacing

Removing



WARNING

Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components”, page 3](#).

- Remove the driver side airbag. Refer to ⇒ [“6.2 Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing”, page 100](#).

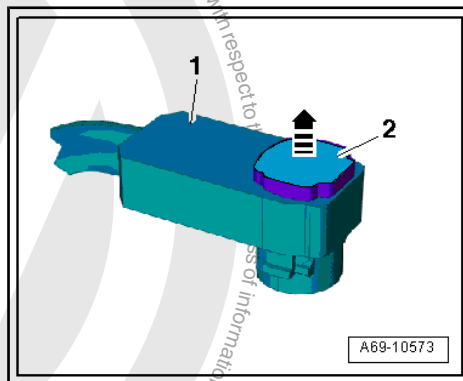
Equipment Levels: Steering Wheel without Multifunction



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must “discharge static electricity”. For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.

- Release the connector lock -2- using a small screwdriver -arrow- and remove the connector -1- from the Driver Airbag Igniter - N95-.



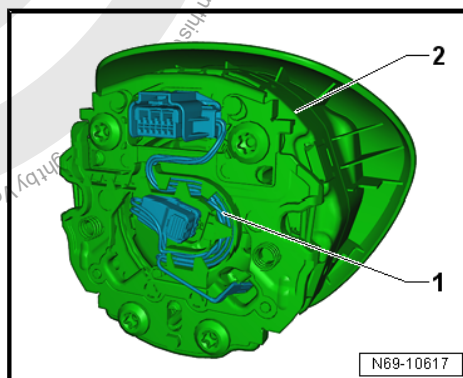
- Disconnect the connectors from the wiring harness -1-.
- Disengage the wiring harness at the brackets and remove from the driver side airbag -2-.

Equipment levels: steering wheel with multifunction



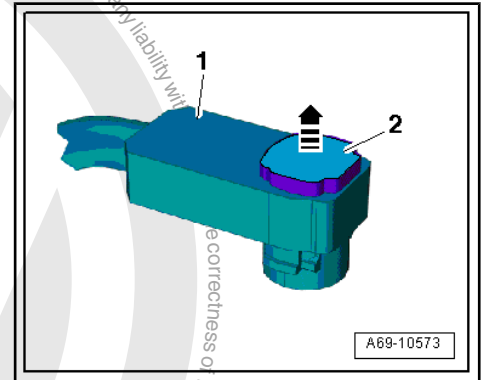
WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must “discharge static electricity”. For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.





- Release the connector lock -2- using a small screwdriver -arrow- and remove the connector -1- from the Driver Airbag Igniter - N95-.



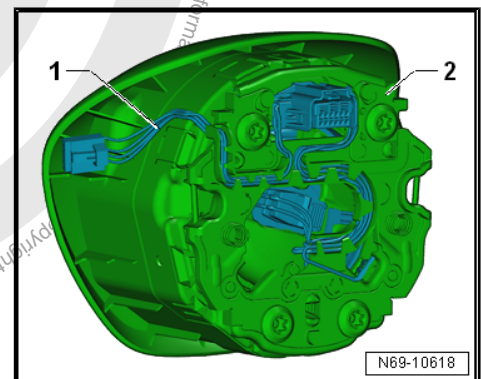
- Disconnect the connectors from the wiring harness -1-.
- Disengage the wiring harness at the brackets and remove from the driver side airbag -2-.

Installing

⚠ WARNING

◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ “1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components”, page 3 .

◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must “discharge static electricity”. For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.**

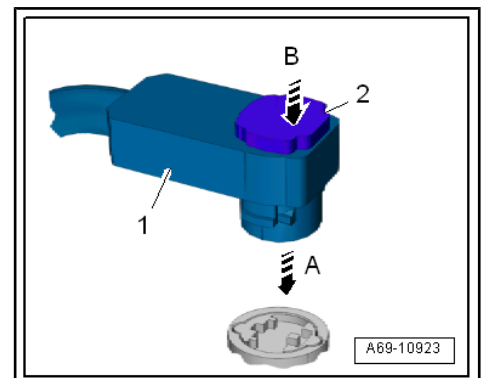


- Connect the connector -1- to the airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in the connector lock -2- -arrow B-. While doing this, the connector is pushed into the airbag igniter and locks into place.

Further installation is performed in reverse order of removal, while noting the following:

i Note

Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.



Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ “6.1 Overview - Driver Side Airbag”, page 99



7 Front Passenger Airbag

⇒ [“7.1 Overview - Front Passenger Airbag”, page 106](#)

⇒ [“7.2 Front Passenger Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing”, page 107](#)

⇒ [“7.4 Front Passenger Airbag -Disabled- Indicator Lamp K145, Removing and Installing”, page 110](#)

7.1 Overview - Front Passenger Airbag

1 - Connector

- ❑ For Front Passenger Airbag Igniter 1 - N131-

2 - Bolts

- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Replace or before installing clean with Locking Fluid. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

3 - Instrument Panel

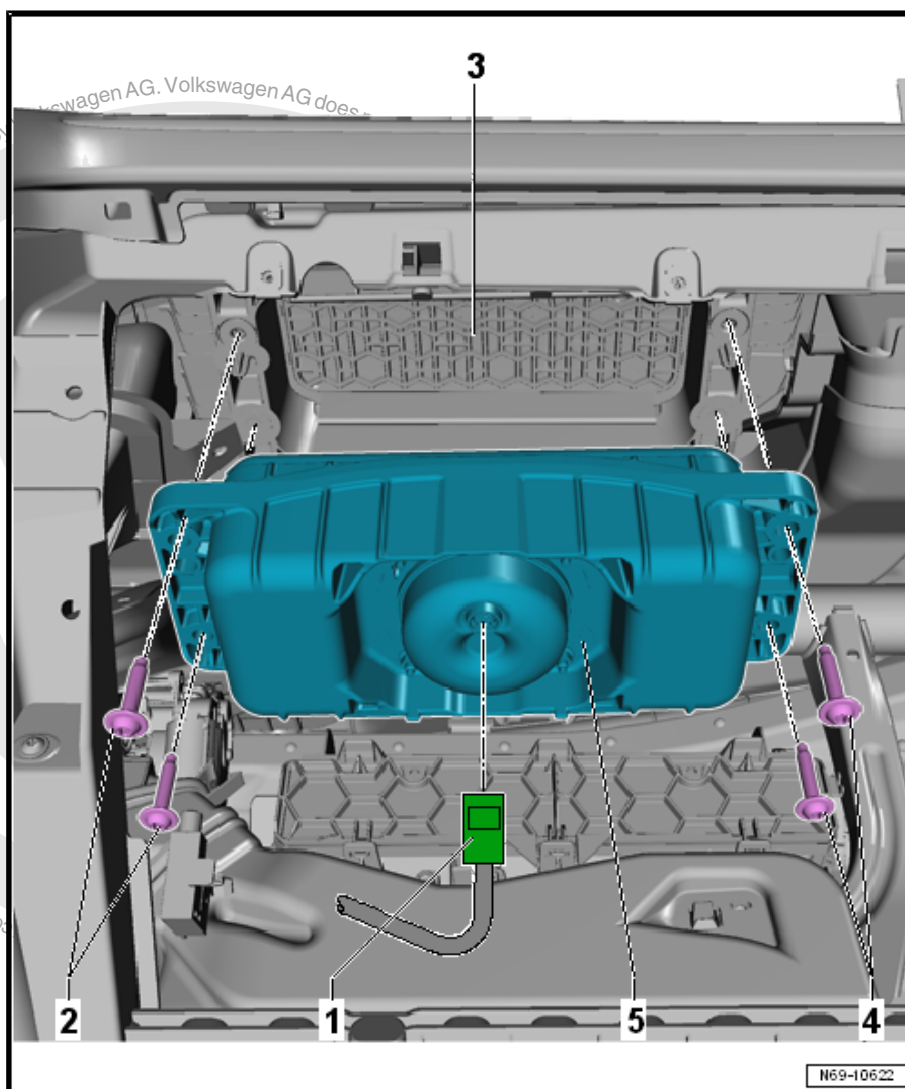
- ❑ Replace the instrument panel after an airbag has deployed. Refer to ⇒ [“3.7 Instrument Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 170](#).

4 - Bolts

- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Replace or before installing clean with Locking Fluid. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the allocation.

5 - Front Passenger Airbag

- ❑ With Front Passenger Airbag Igniter 1 - N131-



WARNING

Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components”, page 3](#).

Observe the allocation of the airbag unit for the instrument panel. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“7.2 Front Passenger Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing”, page 107](#).



7.2 Front Passenger Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ *Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to*
⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3 .
- ◆ *Observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnical components. Refer to*
⇒ "1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing (Pyrotechnic Components)", page 4 .
- ◆ *Observe the allocation of the airbag unit for the instrument panel. Refer to the ⇒ Electronic Parts Catalog (ETKA) .*

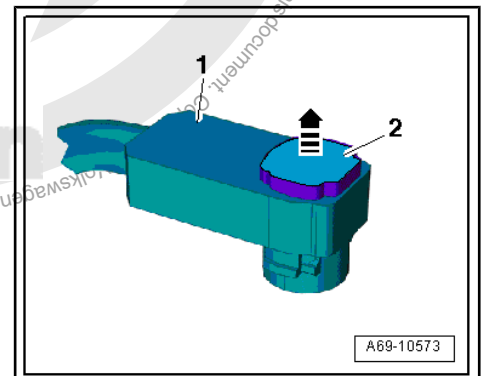
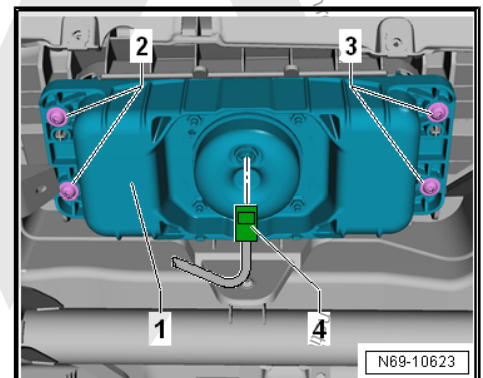
- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- Remove the glove compartment. Refer to ⇒ "1.12 Glove Compartment, Removing and Installing", page 26 .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.

- Disconnect the connector -4- from the Front Passenger Airbag Igniter 1 - N131- .
- To do so, release the connector lock -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and disconnect the connector -1-.





- Remove the bolts -2 and 3-.
- Remove the front passenger airbag -1- downward.



WARNING

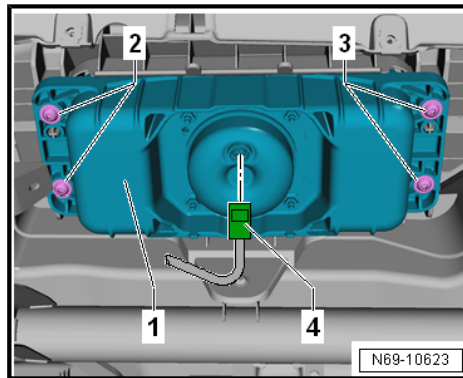
Lay the airbag so that the collision cushion faces upward.

Installing



Note

Before installing the bolts, the bolt and nut threads in the instrument panel must be cleaned.



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3 .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.**
- ◆ **Observe the airbag allocation for the instrument panel. Refer to the Parts Catalog.**

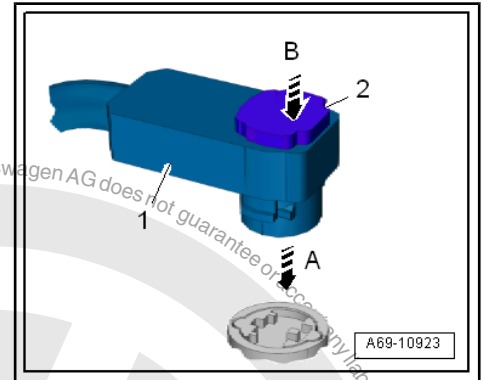


- Connect the connector -1- to the airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in the connector lock -2- -arrow B-. While doing this, the connector is pushed into the airbag igniter and locks into place.

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

Note

- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure the wires are not pinched.*



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.

Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after installing, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ ["7.1 Overview - Front Passenger Airbag", page 106](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ ["3.1 Overview - Instrument Panel", page 164](#)

7.3 Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation Key Switch, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Switch off the ignition.



- Remove the instrument panel side cover. Refer to ⇒ ["3.3 Instrument Panel Side Cover, Removing and Installing", page 166](#).
- Press the catch -1- in the direction of the arrow- until the connector disengages.
- Disconnect the connector -2-.
- Release the springs -3- and -5-.
- Push the Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation Key Switch - E224- -item 4- out of the key switch housing.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

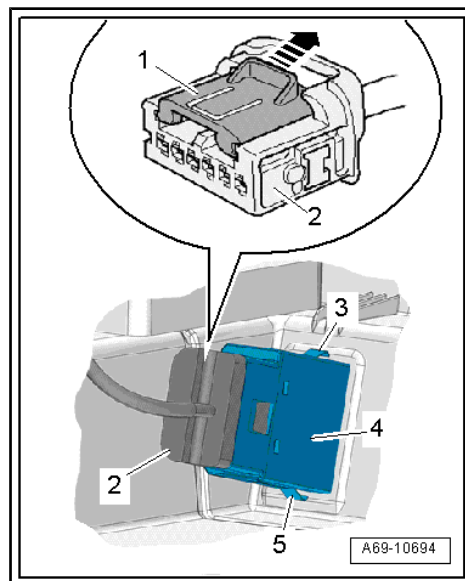


Note

- ♦ *Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.*
- ♦ *Make sure the wires are not pinched.*
- Make sure the Front Passenger Airbag Deactivation Key Switch - E224- engages audibly into the housing.

Tightening Specifications

- ♦ ⇒ ["1.4 Overview - Glove Compartment", page 19](#)



7.4 Front Passenger Airbag -Disabled- Indicator Lamp - K145- Removing and Installing



Note

The Front Passenger Airbag -Disabled- Indicator Lamp - K145- is integrated in the Switch Module in Instrument Panel, Center - EX22- and cannot be replaced separately if faulty.

- To remove and install the Switch Module in Instrument Panel, Center - EX22- , refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Controls; Component Location Overview - Instrument Panel Controls.



8 Thorax Airbags

⇒ ["8.1 Overview - Front Thorax Airbag", page 111](#)

⇒ ["8.2 Overview - Rear Thorax Airbag", page 112](#)

⇒ ["8.3 Front Thorax Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 113](#)

⇒ ["8.4 Rear Thorax Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 115](#)

8.1 Overview - Front Thorax Airbag

1 - Backrest Frame

2 - Hook

- ☐ For securing the thorax airbag to the backrest frame

3 - Front Thorax Airbag

- ☒ Driver side: with Driver Thorax Airbag Igniter - N199-
- ☐ Front passenger side: with Front Passenger Thorax Airbag Igniter - N200-



WARNING

Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ ["1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3](#).

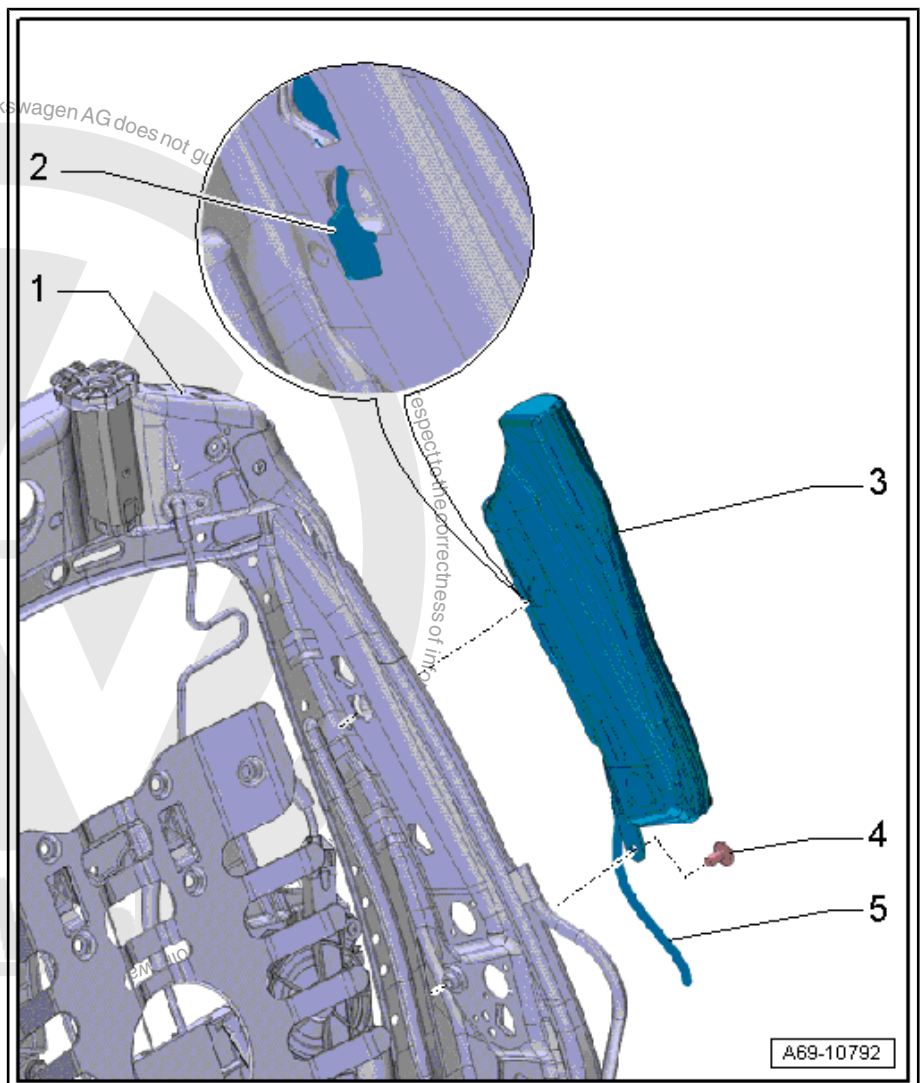
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["8.3 Front Thorax Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 113](#).

4 - Bolt

- ☐ 8 Nm
- ☐ Replace after removing.

5 - Wire

- ☐ From Driver Thorax Airbag Igniter - N199- / Front Passenger Thorax Airbag Igniter - N200-





8.2 Overview - Rear Thorax Airbag

1 - Seat Bolster

2 - Washer

- ❑ Quantity: 2

3 - Nut

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ 6 Nm

4 - Rear Thorax Airbag

- ❑ Driver side: with Driver Side Rear Thorax Airbag Igniter - N201-
- ❑ Passenger side: with Passenger Side Rear Thorax Airbag Igniter - N202-
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "8.4 Rear Thorax Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 115.

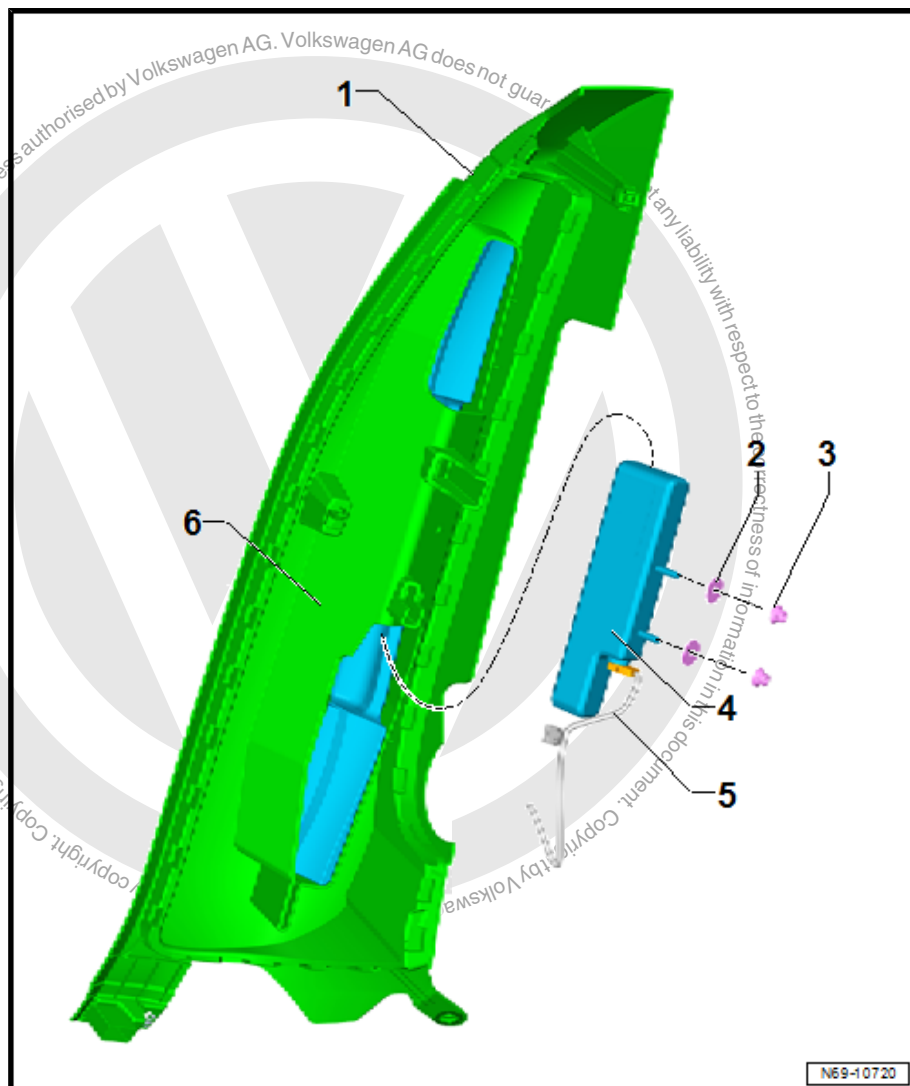
5 - Wire

- ❑ From Driver Side Rear Thorax Airbag Igniter N201- / Passenger Side Rear Thorax Airbag Igniter - N202-



WARNING

*Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to
⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3.*



6 - Airbag Compartment



8.3 Front Thorax Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3 .
- ◆ **Observe the additional safety precautions for the thorax airbag. Refer to**
⇒ "1.4 Additional Thorax Airbag Safety Precautions", page 5 .
- ◆ **Observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ "1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing (Pyrotechnic Components)", page 4 .

- Remove the front seat. Refer to
⇒ **"2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing", page 264 .**
- Remove the front backrest. Refer to
⇒ **"2.20 Front Backrest, Removing and Installing", page 283 .**
- Remove the cover and the backrest cushion. Refer to
⇒ **"1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 313 .**



- Remove the bolt -2-.
- Slide the thorax airbag -1- upward and remove it from the backrest frame.
- Carefully loosen the wiring bracket of the thorax airbag wiring harness -3- from the backrest.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



WARNING

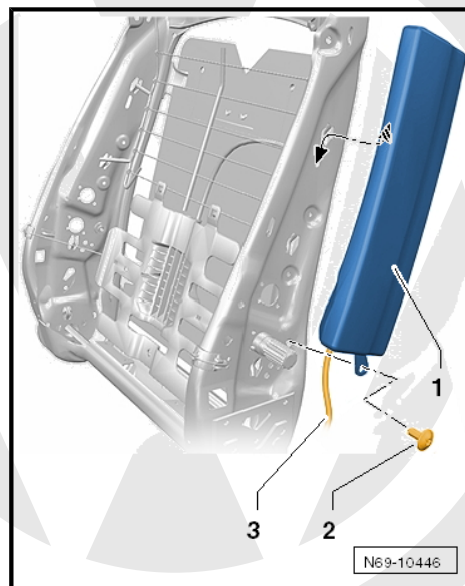
The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after installing, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ ["8.1 Overview - Front Thorax Airbag", page 111](#)



8.4 Rear Thorax Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3**
- ◆ **Observe the additional safety precautions for the thorax airbag. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.4 Additional Thorax Airbag Safety Precautions", page 5**.
- ◆ **Observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing (Pyrotechnic Components)", page 4**.

- Remove the side cushion. Refer to
⇒ **"3.15 Side Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 303**.



- Remove the two nuts -2-.
- Loosen the clip -1- from the seat bolster.
- Remove the thorax airbag -3- from the airbag compartment -4- and disconnect the connector.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.

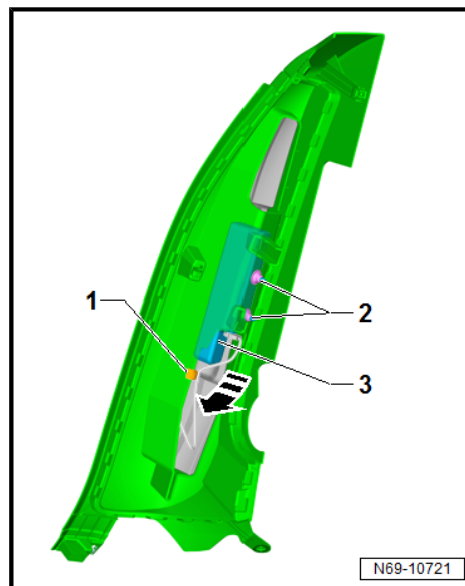


Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after installing, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ ["8.2 Overview - Rear Thorax Airbag", page 112](#)





9 Head Curtain Airbags

⇒ ["9.1 Overview - Head Curtain Airbag", page 117](#)

⇒ ["9.2 Head Curtain Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 117](#)

9.1 Overview - Head Curtain Airbag

1 - Clip

- ☐ Quantity: 8

2 - Head Curtain Airbag

- ☐ Driver side: with Driver Head Curtain Airbag Igniter - N251-
- ☐ Front passenger side: with Front Passenger Head Curtain Airbag Igniter - N252-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["9.2 Head Curtain Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 117](#).



WARNING

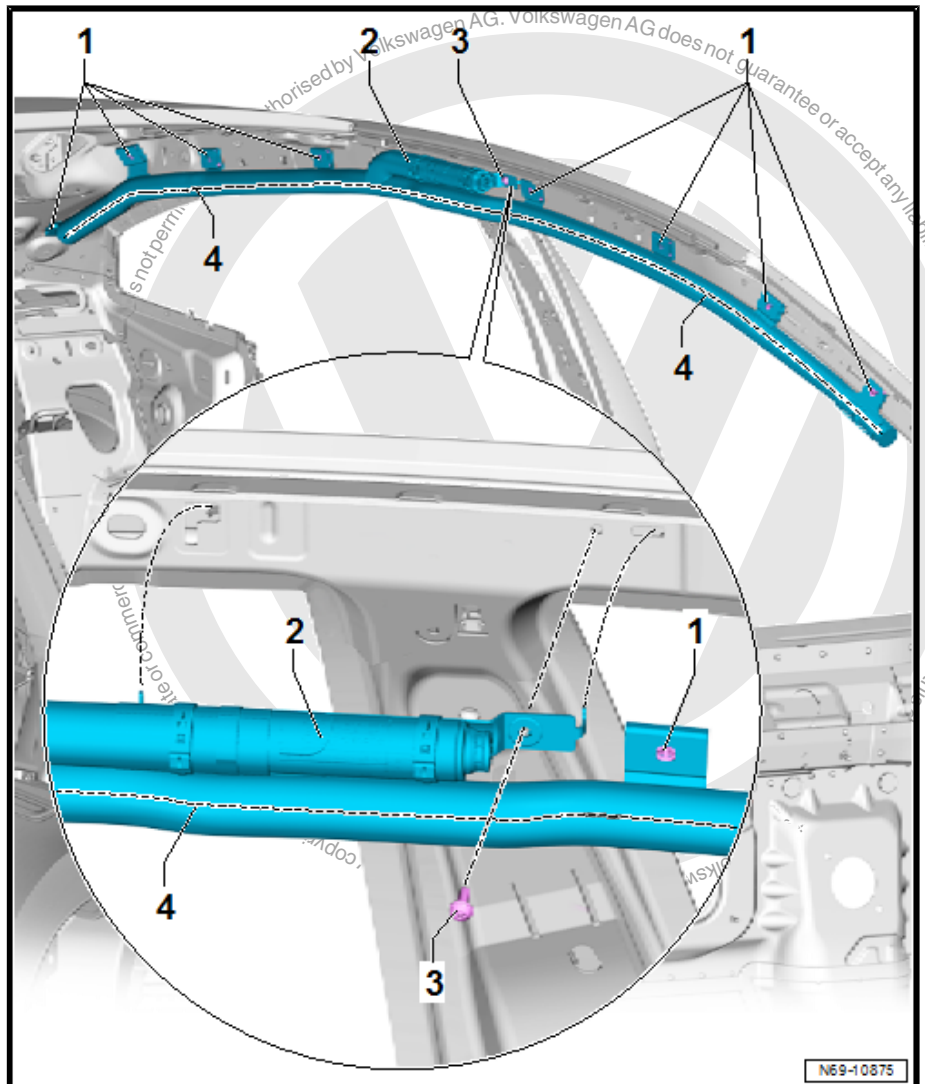
Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to
⇒ ["1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3](#).

3 - Screw

- ☐ 4 Nm
- ☐ Replace after removing.

4 - Anti-Rotation Protection Line

- ☐ Serves as anti-twist mechanism
- ☐ must be visible after assembly.



9.2 Head Curtain Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Release Pliers - VAS6427-
- ◆ Release Tool - T10517-
- ◆ Release Tool Set - Extraction Tool 17 - VAS1978/17- from the Release Tool Set - VAS1978/35-
- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-
- ◆ Pry Lever - 80-200-



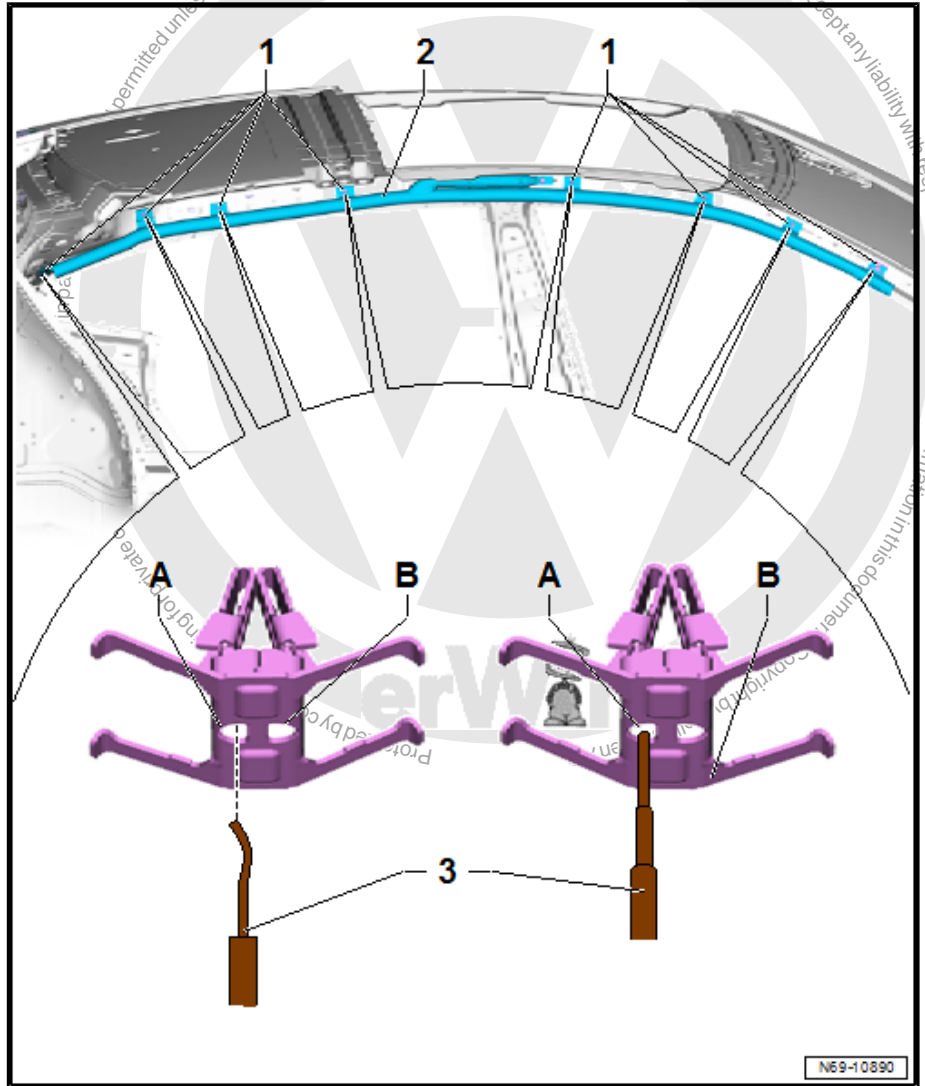
Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3.**
- ◆ **Observe the additional safety precautions for the head curtain airbag**
⇒ **"1.5 Additional Head Curtain Airbag Safety Precautions", page 6.**
- ◆ **Observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing (Pyrotechnic Components)", page 4.**

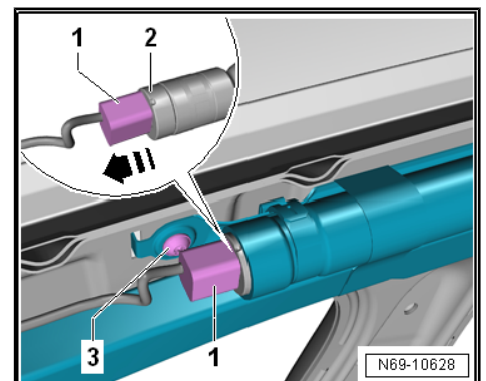
- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- Remove the headliner and place it on the instrument panel and the headrests of the front seats or rear seats. Refer to ⇒ **"7.2 Headliner, Removing and Installing", page 227 .**
- Disengage the clips -1- in the mounting tabs for the head curtain airbag -2- from the body.
- To do so, forcefully push the -VAS1978/17- -3- with the »spoon« -arrow- evenly into the opening -A- until it stops, as shown.
- At the same time, pull the left side of the clip out of the vehicle body.
- Pull the -VAS1978/17- -3- back out and make sure that the clips on the loosened side do not re-engage.
- Turn the -VAS1978/17- -3- 180°.
- Repeat the procedure on the opening -B-.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.

- Remove the connector lock and remove the connector -1- from the head curtain airbag -2- -arrow-.
- Remove the bolt -3- from the head curtain airbag.





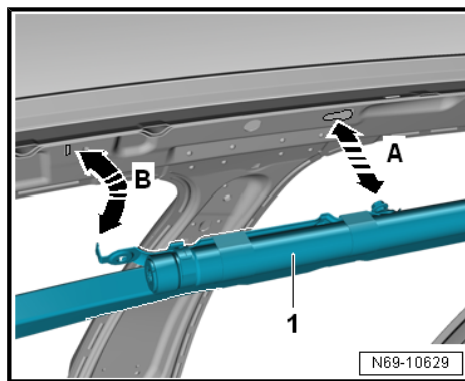
- Disengage the head curtain airbag -1- from the mount on the body -arrow B- and push rearward.
- Disengage the rear head curtain airbag from the mount on the body -arrow A- and remove.

Installing

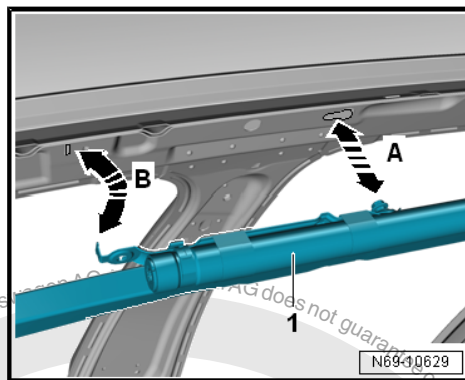


WARNING

- ◆ *Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3.*
- ◆ *Always follow the head curtain airbag installation procedure.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.*

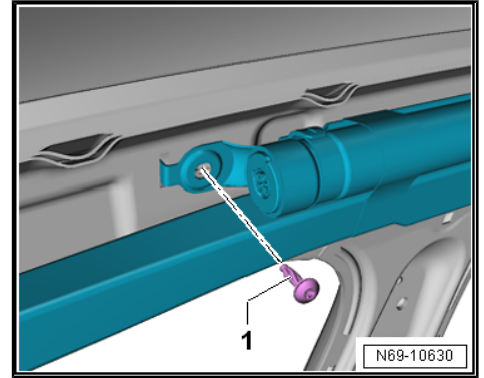


- Engage the head curtain airbag -1- at the rear in the mount on the body -arrow A- and push forward.
- Engage the front head curtain airbag in the mount on the body -arrow B-.





- Attach the head curtain airbag with the bolt -1-.
- Starting from the gas generator and moving toward the front and rear, install the head curtain airbag clips until it clicks into place.
- Check the clips by pulling on them and make sure they are completely engaged.
- Connect the connector to the head curtain airbag igniter.
- Press in the connector lock. This slides the connector into the head curtain airbag igniter all the way and simultaneously locks it.
- Make sure the anti-rotation protection line is visible along the entire length and it is straight. This will ensure that the head curtain airbag is NOT twisted.



Further installation is the reverse order of removal.



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after assembling, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ ["9.1 Overview - Head Curtain Airbag", page 117](#)



10 Knee Airbags

⇒ "10.1 Overview - Knee Airbag", page 122

⇒ "10.2 Knee Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 123

10.1 Overview - Knee Airbag

1 - Knee Airbag with the Driver Knee Airbag Igniter - N295-

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "10.2 Knee Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 123.



Caution

*The risk of damaging the knee airbag surface due to mechanical stress is to be prevented.
After finishing the procedure, perform a visual inspection to make sure the surface of the knee airbag is not damaged, especially along the perforation area.*

2 - Attachment Point

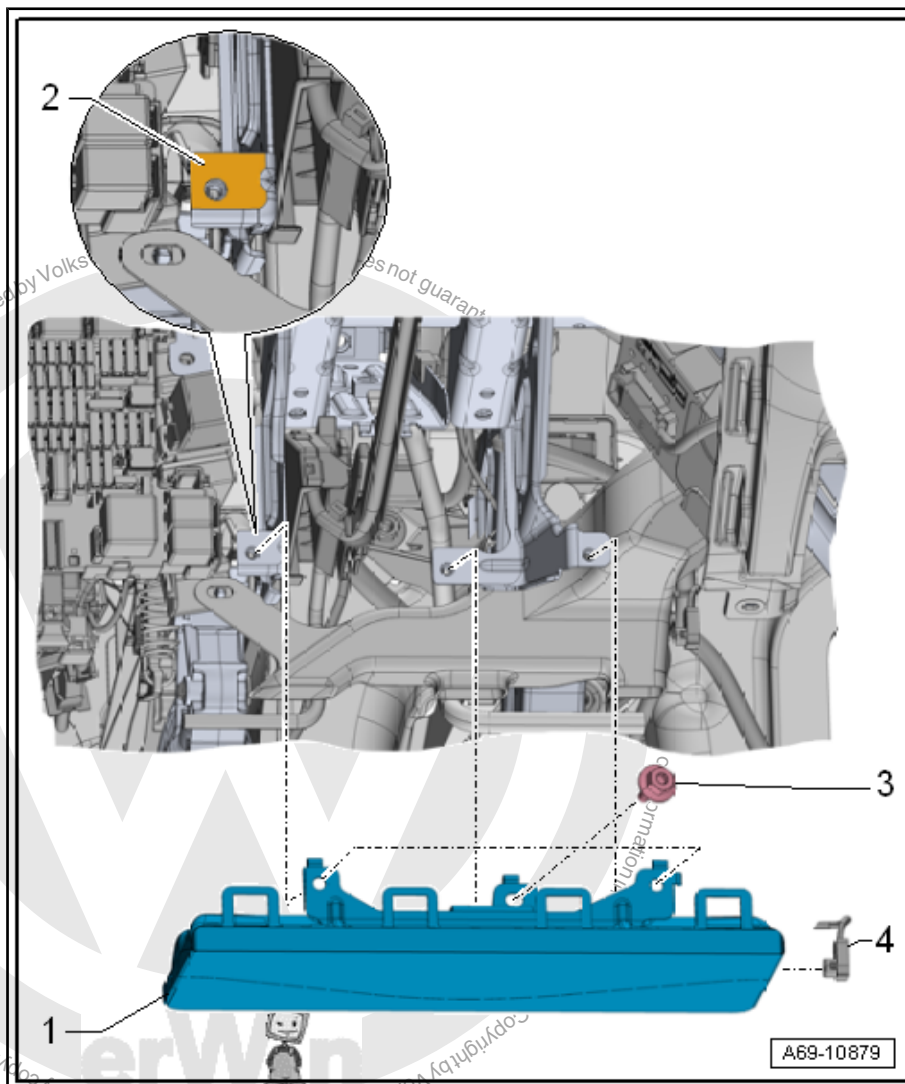
- ❑ For the knee airbag



Caution

*Avoid malfunctions due to faulty ground connections.
Mounting thread and contact surface must be free of paint, coating, and corrosion.*

The threaded connection serves as a ground connection for the knee airbag.



3 - Screw

- ❑ 8 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 3

4 - Connector

- ❑ For Driver Knee Airbag Igniter - N295-



10.2 Knee Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3**.
- ◆ **Observe the disposal regulations for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.3 Airbag, Belt Tensioner and Battery Cut-Out Units, Storing, Transporting and Disposing (Pyrotechnic Components)", page 4**.
- ◆ **Observe the allocation of the airbag unit for the instrument panel. Refer to the Parts Catalog.**

Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .

- Release the steering wheel adjustment lever.
- Remove the steering wheel completely, push it upward and secure it.
- Remove the three bolts -2- through the opening in the instrument panel for the steering column.
- Remove the driver side knee airbag -1- rearward.



WARNING

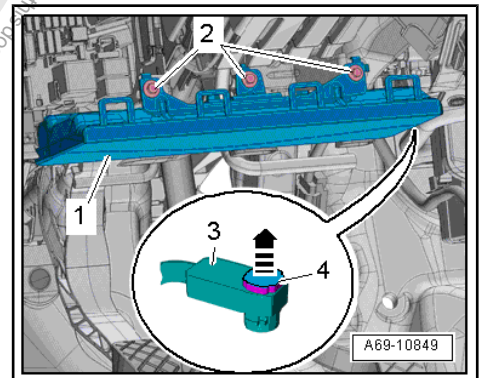
Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.

- Disconnect the connector -3- from the Driver Knee Airbag Igniter - N295- .
- Open the connector lock -4- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and disconnect the connector.



WARNING

Lay the airbag so that the collision cushion faces upward.



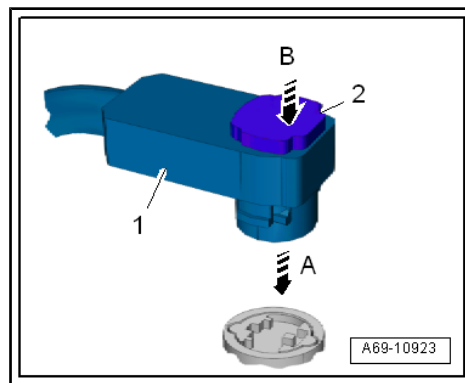


Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3.
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.**
- ◆ **Observe the airbag allocation for the instrument panel. Refer to the Parts Catalog.**



- Connect the connector -1- to the airbag igniter -arrow A-.
- Press in the connector lock -2- -arrow B-. While doing this, the connector is pushed into the airbag igniter and locks into place.

Further installation is performed in reverse order of removal, while noting the following:



Note

- ◆ **Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.**
- ◆ **Make sure the wires are not pinched.**



Caution

The risk of damaging the knee airbag surface due to mechanical stress is to be prevented.

- ◆ **After completing a procedure, perform a visual inspection to make sure that the surface of the knee airbag is not damaged.**



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after installing, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ➔ [“10.1 Overview - Knee Airbag”, page 122](#)



11 Airbag Crash Sensors

⇒ "11.1 Component Location Overview - Airbag Crash Sensors",
page 126

⇒ "11.2 Front Airbag Crash Sensor G190 , Removing and Instal-
ling", page 127

⇒ "11.3 Driver Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G179 / Front Pas-
senger Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G180 , Removing and In-
stalling", page 130

⇒ "11.4 Driver Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G256 /
Passenger Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G257 , Re-
moving and Installing", page 133

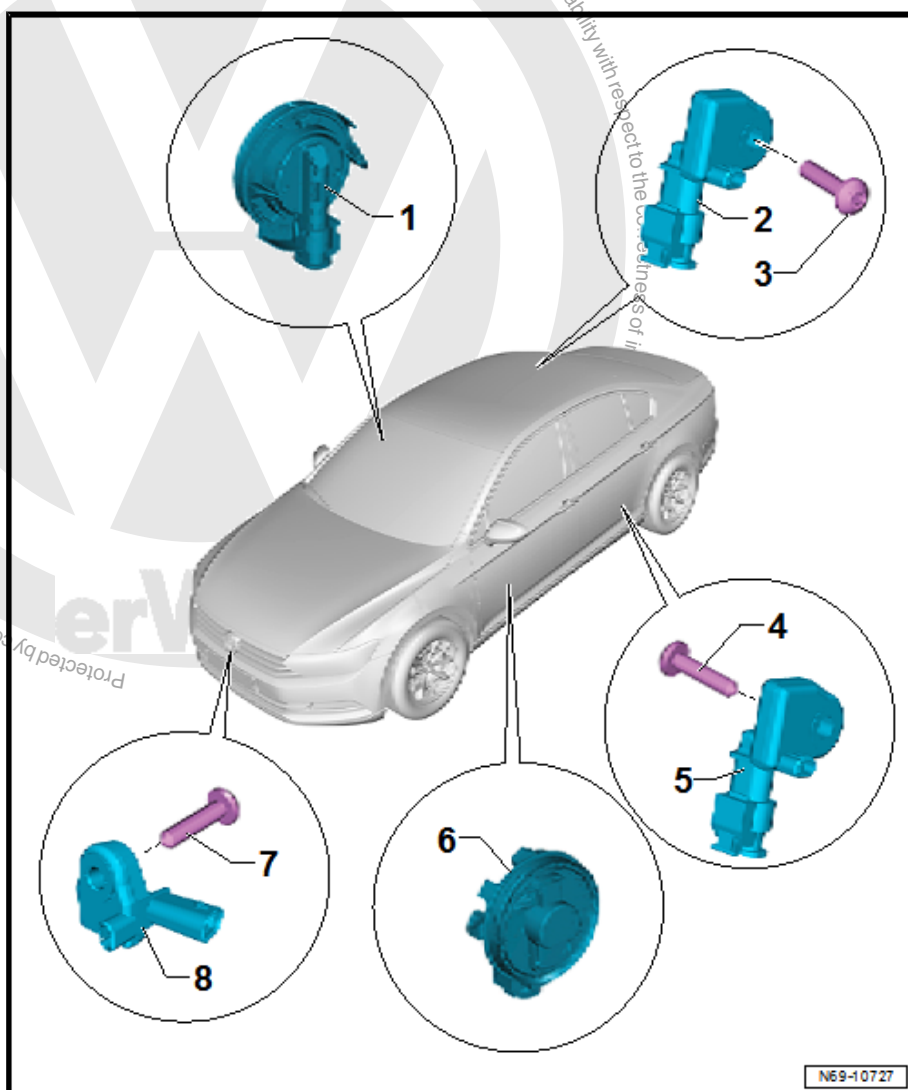
11.1 Component Location Overview - Airbag Crash Sensors

1 - Front Passenger Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor - G180-

- ❑ Component location: inside the door
- ❑ For the safety precautions for working with front thorax airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors). Refer to
⇒ "1.6 Front Thorax Airbag Crash Sensors (Pressure Sensors) Safety Precautions", page 6.
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "11.3 Driver Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G179 / Front Passenger Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G180 , Removing and Installing", page 130.

2 - Passenger Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor - G257-

- ❑ Component location: under the wheel housing trim panel
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "11.4 Driver Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G256 / Passenger Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G257 , Removing and Installing", page 133.



3 - Screw

- ❑ 9 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 9 Nm



5 - Driver Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor - G256-

- ☐ Component location: under the wheel housing trim panel
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["11.4 Driver Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G256 / Passenger Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G257, Removing and Installing", page 133](#).

6 - Driver Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor - G179-

- ☐ Component location: inside the door
- ☐ For the safety precautions for working with front thorax airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors). Refer to ⇒ ["1.6 Front Thorax Airbag Crash Sensors \(Pressure Sensors\) Safety Precautions", page 6](#).
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["11.3 Driver Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G179 / Front Passenger Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor G180, Removing and Installing", page 130](#).

7 - Bolt

- ☐ 9 Nm

8 - Front Airbag Crash Sensor - G190-

- ☐ Component location: in the vehicle center on the lock carrier
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["11.2 Front Airbag Crash Sensor G190, Removing and Installing", page 127](#).

11.2 Front Airbag Crash Sensor - G190- , Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components.
Refer to
⇒ ["1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3](#).

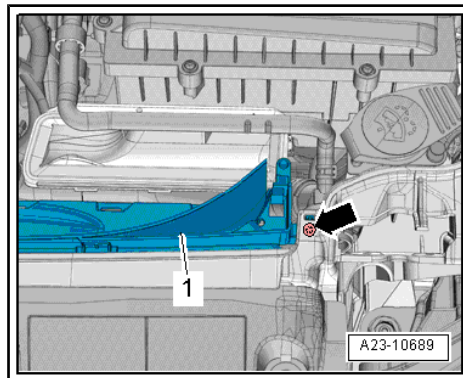
There is a risk of injury if the engine starts automatically in vehicles with the Start/Stop System.

- ◆ **For vehicles with an activated Start/Stop System (indicated by a message in the instrument cluster), the engine may start automatically if needed.**
- ◆ **Make sure that the Start/Stop System is disabled when working on the vehicle (turn off ignition, if needed, turn the ignition back on).**

- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- Open the hood.



- Remove the bolt -arrow- on the left and right.
- Unclip and remove the air guide -1-.



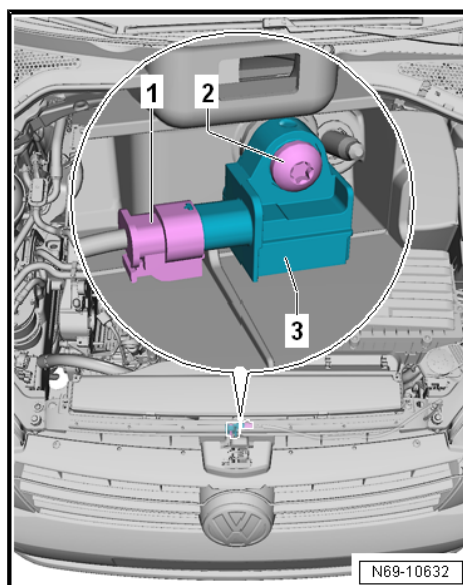
- Remove the bolt -2- and the front airbag crash sensor -3- from the lock carrier.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.

- Disconnect the connector -1-.



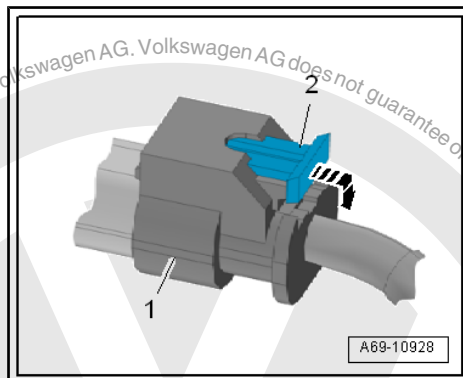
- To do this pull out the connector lock -2-, push down -arrow-, and disconnect the connector -1- on the crash sensor.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3.
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.**





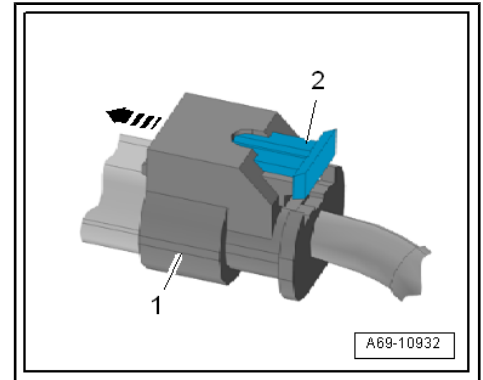
- Attach the connector -1- to the crash sensor until it clicks into place -arrow-.
- Push in the connector lock -2- to secure the connector.

Further installation is performed in reverse order of removal, while noting the following:



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.*
- ◆ *Make sure the wires are not pinched.*



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after assembling, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["11.1 Component Location Overview - Airbag Crash Sensors", page 126](#)



11.3 Driver Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor - G179- / Front Passenger Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor - G180- , Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3**.
- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for front thorax airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors). Refer to**
⇒ **"1.6 Front Thorax Airbag Crash Sensors (Pressure Sensors) Safety Precautions", page 6**.

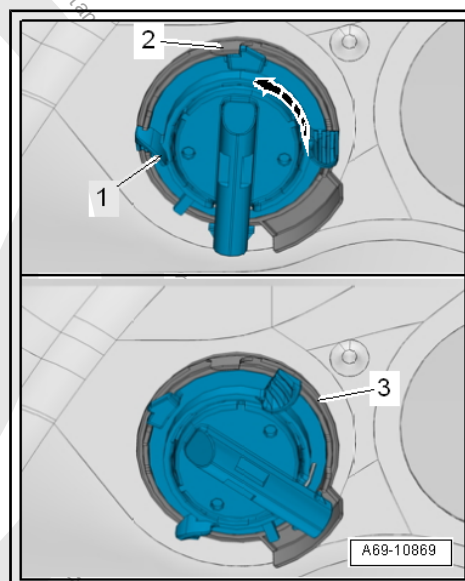
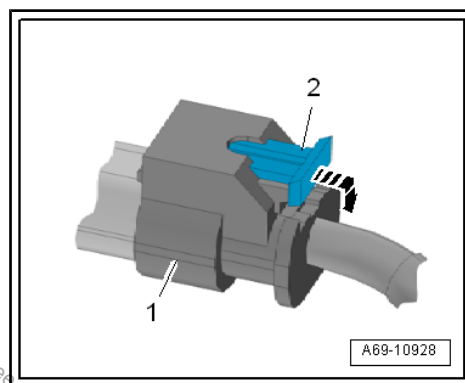
- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to ⇒ **"1.3 Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 149** .



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.

- Pull out the connector lock -2- and push down -arrow-, disconnect the connector -1- on the crash sensor.
- Release the locking mechanism -2- and turn the retainer -1- for the crash sensor approximately 45° counterclockwise -arrow-.
- Disengage the thorax airbag crash sensor -3- from the door and remove.





Installing



WARNING

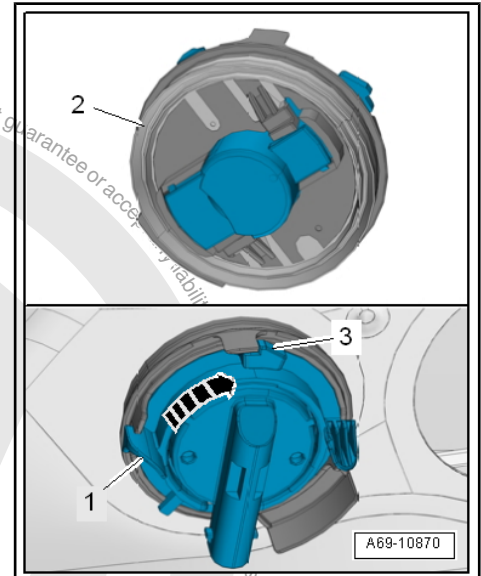
For proper crash sensor (pressure sensor) function, make sure the door is properly sealed.

- Pay attention that the seal -2- is seated correctly. Replace the crash sensor if damaged or deformed
- Engage the thorax airbag crash sensor in the door.
- Turn the locking mechanism -1- for the crash sensor clockwise -arrow-.
- The retaining tab -3- must engage audibly.



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ "1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3 .
- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for front thorax airbag crash sensors (pressure sensors). Refer to**
⇒ "1.6 Front Thorax Airbag Crash Sensors (Pressure Sensors) Safety Precautions", page 6 .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.**





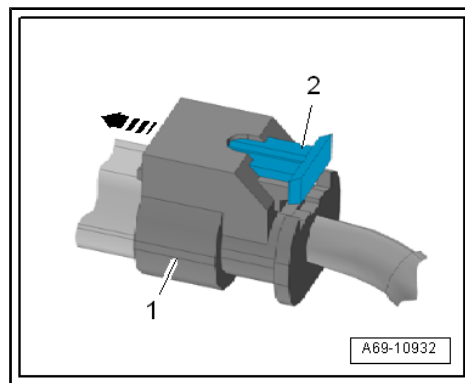
- Attach the connector -1- to the crash sensor until it clicks into place -arrow-.
- Push in the connector lock -2- to secure the connector.

Further installation is performed in reverse order of removal, while noting the following:



Note

- ♦ Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.
- ♦ Make sure the wires are not pinched.



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after assembling, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.



11.4 Driver Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor - G256- / Passenger Side Rear Thorax Airbag Crash Sensor - G257- , Removing and Installing

Removing



WARNING

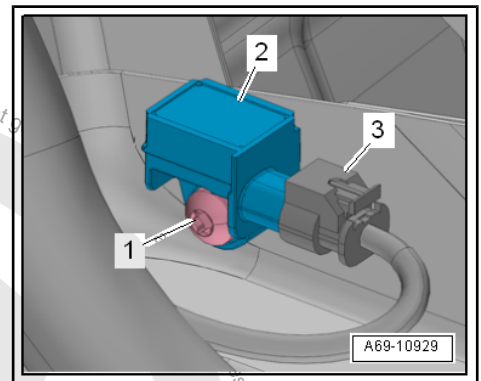
- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3** .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.**

- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- Remove the wheel housing trim panel. Refer to ⇒ **"5.13 Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 210** .
- Remove the bolt -1- and the thorax airbag crash sensor -2- from the body.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.



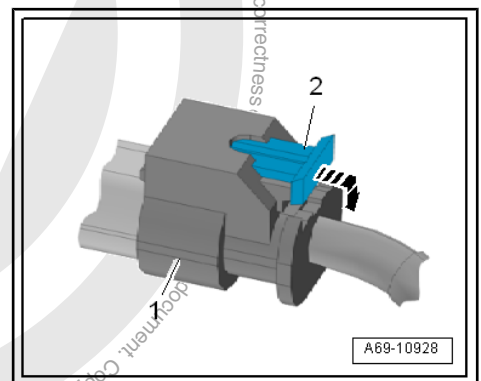
- Disconnect the connector -3-.
- To do this pull out the connector lock -2-, push down -arrow-, and disconnect the connector -1- on the crash sensor.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ **Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to**
⇒ **"1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components", page 3** .
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.**





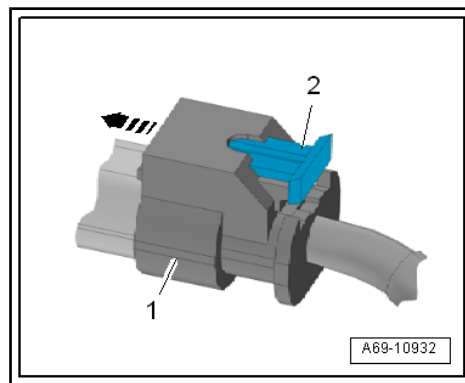
- Attach the connector -1- to the crash sensor until it clicks into place -arrow-.
- Push in the connector lock -2- to secure the connector.

Further installation is performed in reverse order of removal, while noting the following:



Note

- ♦ *Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.*
- ♦ *Make sure the wires are not pinched.*



WARNING

The ignition must be on when connecting the battery. If pyrotechnic components (for example, airbag, belt tensioner) are not repaired correctly, they may deploy unintentionally after connecting battery. There must not be anyone in the vehicle interior when connecting the battery.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



WARNING

If the ignition is not switched on after the battery is reconnected - "indicator lamps in the instrument cluster do not light up" - the ignition (key/button) may only be switched on when the driver seat is positioned all the way back.



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after assembling, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

Tightening Specifications

- ♦ Refer to
⇒ ["11.1 Component Location Overview - Airbag Crash Sensors", page 126](#)





12 Seat Belt Fastening Detection

⇒ "12.1 Passenger Seat Occupant Detection Sensor G128 , Removing and Installing", page 135

12.1 Passenger Seat Occupant Detection Sensor - G128- , Removing and Installing



Note

The passenger occupant detection sensor is only installed in the front passenger seat.

Removing

- Disconnect the connector -2- for the passenger occupant detection sensor.
- Unclip the mount -1- from the seat pan -arrows- and remove the passenger occupant detection sensor -3-.

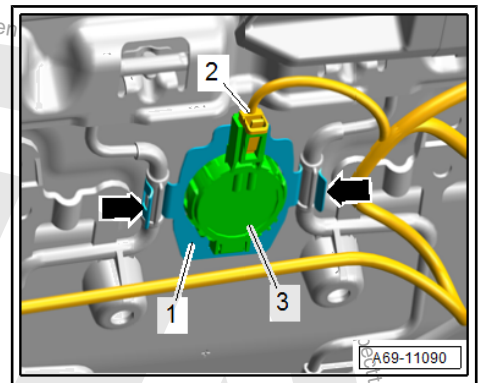
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

- ◆ *Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.*
- ◆ *If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after installing, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.*



13 Pedestrian Protection

⇒ "13.1 Overview - Pedestrian Protection", page 136

⇒ "13.2 Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor, Removing and Installing", page 138

⇒ "13.3 Pedestrian Protection Trigger 1 G598 / Pedestrian Protection Trigger 2 G599, Removing and Installing", page 139

⇒ "13.4 Pressure Hose Sensor for Front Pedestrian Protection G579, Removing and Installing", page 142

13.1 Overview - Pedestrian Protection

1 - Clip

2 - Pedestrian Protection Trigger 1 - G598-

- ❑ Reset the deployed pedestrian protection. Refer to ⇒ Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 55 ; Hood; Overview - Hood .
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ "13.3 Pedestrian Protection Trigger 1 G598 / Pedestrian Protection Trigger 2 G599, Removing and Installing", page 139 .

3 - Pedestrian Protection Center Crash Sensor - G693-

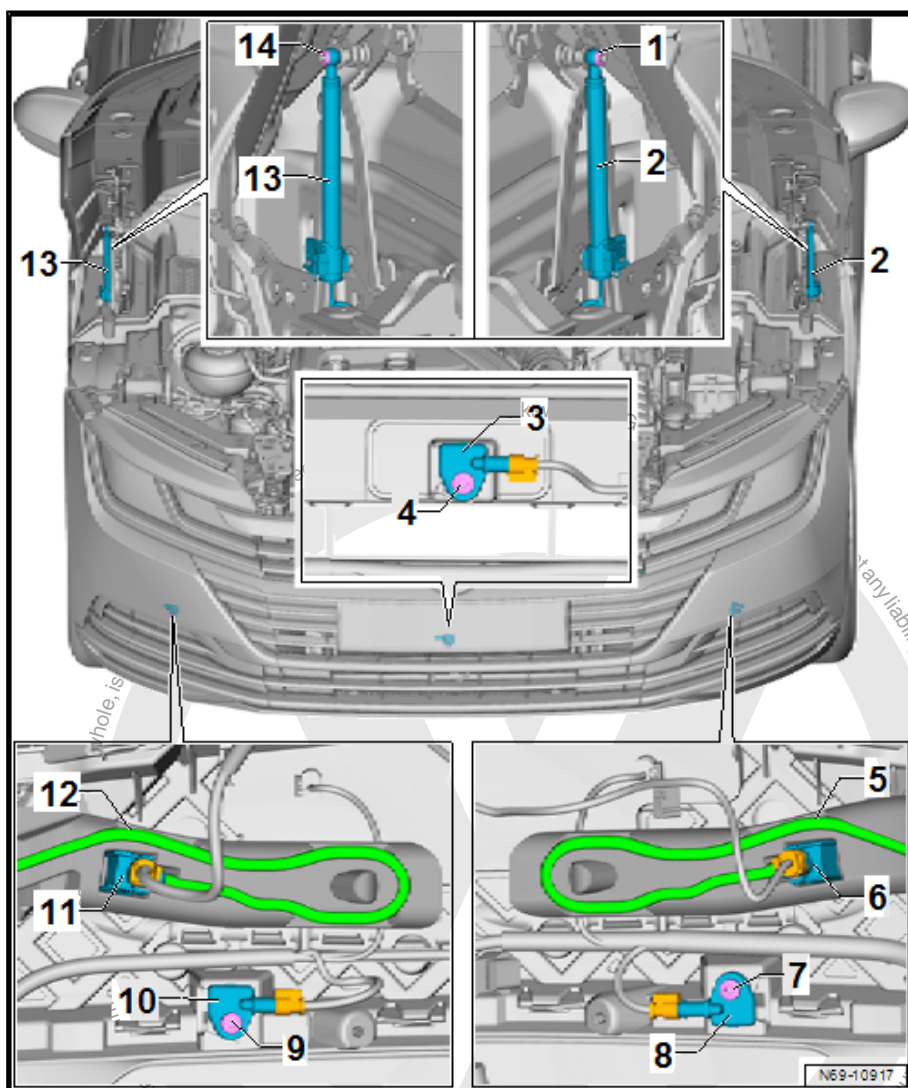
- ❑ Installation location: on the bumper cover
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ "13.2 Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor, Removing and Installing", page 138 .
- ❑ Must be replaced when
 - ◆ Molded foam part visibly damaged
 - ◆ The impact member is visibly deformed.
 - ◆ The bumper cover is deformed.

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 6 Nm

5 - Pressure Hose Sensor for Front Pedestrian Protection - G579-

- ❑ Component location: in the molded foam part on the impact member
- ❑ Must be replaced when
 - ◆ The molded foam part is visibly damaged.
 - ◆ The impact member is visibly deformed.
 - ◆ The bumper cover is deformed.
 - ◆ The pressure hose is damaged.





- ☐ Place the pressure hose in the groove on the molded foam part.
- ☐ Insert the pressure hose in the molded foam part, excess pieces are routed without kinks in the balancing zones
- ☐ Do not kink or squeeze the pressure hose.
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["13.4 Pressure Hose Sensor for Front Pedestrian Protection G579, Removing and Installing", page 142](#).

6 - Driver Side Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor 2 - G851-

- ☐ Component of Pressure Hose Sensor for Front Pedestrian Protection - G579-

7 - Bolt

- ☐ 6 Nm

8 - Driver Side Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor - G570-

- ☐ Installation location: on the bumper cover
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["13.2 Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor, Removing and Installing", page 138](#).
- ☐ Must be replaced when

- ◆ Foam visibly damaged
- ◆ The impact member is visibly deformed.
- ◆ The bumper cover is deformed.

9 - Bolt

- ☐ 6 Nm

10 - Front Passenger Side Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor - G571-

- ☐ Installation location: on the bumper cover
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["13.2 Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor, Removing and Installing", page 138](#).
- ☐ Must be replaced when

- ◆ Foam visibly damaged
- ◆ The impact member is visibly deformed.
- ◆ The bumper cover is deformed.

11 - Front Passenger Side Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor 2 - G852-

- ☐ Component of Pressure Hose Sensor for Front Pedestrian Protection - G579-

12 - Pressure Hose Sensor for Front Pedestrian Protection - G579-

- ☐ Component location: in the molded foam part on the impact member
- ☐ Must be replaced when
- ◆ The molded foam part is visibly damaged.
- ◆ The impact member is visibly deformed.
- ◆ The bumper cover is deformed.
- ◆ The pressure hose is damaged.
- ☐ Place the pressure hose in the groove on the molded foam part.
- ☐ Insert the pressure hose in the molded foam part, excess pieces are routed without kinks in the balancing zones
- ☐ Do not kink or squeeze the pressure hose.
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["13.4 Pressure Hose Sensor for Front Pedestrian Protection G579, Removing and Installing", page 142](#).

13 - Pedestrian Protection Trigger 2 - G599-

- ☐ Reset the deployed pedestrian protection. Refer to ⇒ Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 55 ; Hood; Overview - Hood.



- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["13.3 Pedestrian Protection Trigger 1 G598 / Pedestrian Protection Trigger 2 G599 , Removing and Installing", page 139](#) .

14 - Clip

13.2 Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor, Removing and Installing

Removing

Driver Side Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor - G570-

Pedestrian Protection Center Crash Sensor - G693-

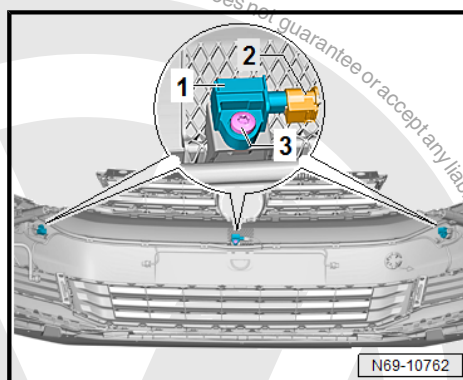
Front Passenger Side Pedestrian Protection Crash Sensor - G571-

- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- Remove the front bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 63 ; Front Bumper; Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing .
- Remove each of the bolts -3- and remove the crash sensor from the bumper.
- Disconnect the connector -2-.



WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.



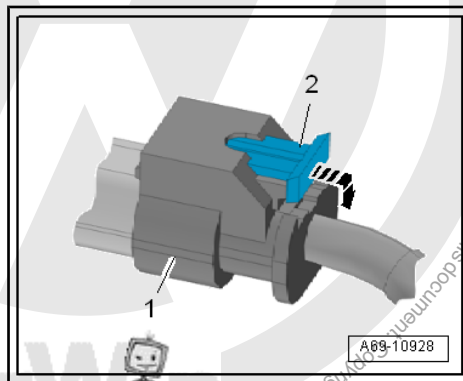
- To do this pull out the connector lock -2-, push down -arrow-, and disconnect the connector -1- on the crash sensor.

Installing



WARNING

- ◆ *Pay attention to the safety precautions when working with pyrotechnic components.*
- ◆ *Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.*



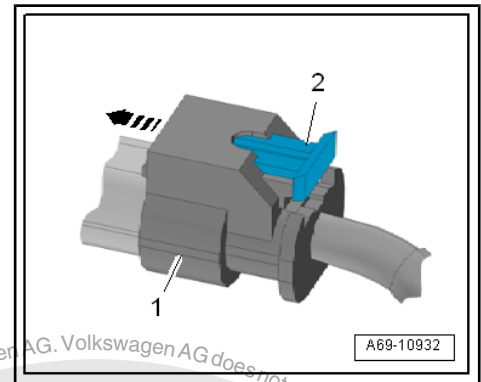


- Attach the connector -1- to the crash sensor until it clicks into place -arrow-.
- Push in the connector lock -2- to secure the connector.

Further installation is performed in reverse order of removal, while noting the following:

i Note

- ◆ Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.
- ◆ Make sure the wires are not pinched.



WARNING

Repairing pyrotechnic components (for example the airbag and seat belt tensioner) incorrectly increases the risk of unintentional deployments when the battery is connected.

- ◆ The ignition must be on when connecting the battery.
- ◆ For personal safety when connecting the battery, stay out of the deployment area of the airbag and maintain a distance from the seat belt tensioners/seat belts.
- ◆ Make sure that there are no other people inside the vehicle at the time when the battery is connected.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .

i Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after assembling, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

Installation notes, for example tightening specifications, replacing components. Refer to

⇒ **“13.1 Overview - Pedestrian Protection”, page 136** .

13.3 Pedestrian Protection Trigger 1 - G598- / Pedestrian Protection Trigger 2 - G599- , Removing and Installing

i Note

The following describes removing and installing on the left side. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.

Removing



WARNING

Pay attention to the safety precautions when working with pyrotechnic components.



- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ➔ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .

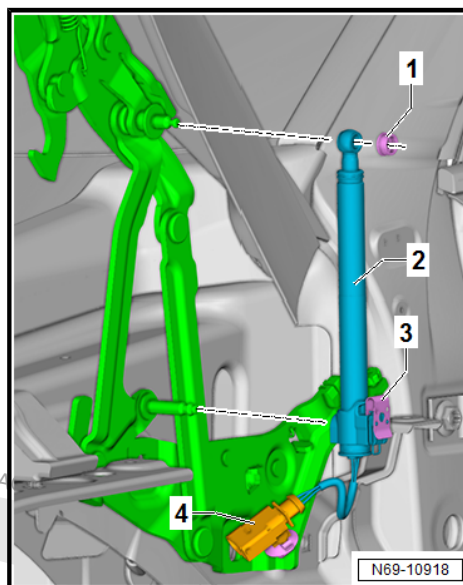


WARNING

Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.

- Press the release on the connector -4- and disconnect it.
- Unclip the connector from the fender.
- Release the clip -3-.
- Remove the clip -1-.
- Remove the pedestrian protection trigger -2- from both hinge pins.

Installing





- Slide the pedestrian protection trigger -2- all the way onto both hinge pins.

i Note

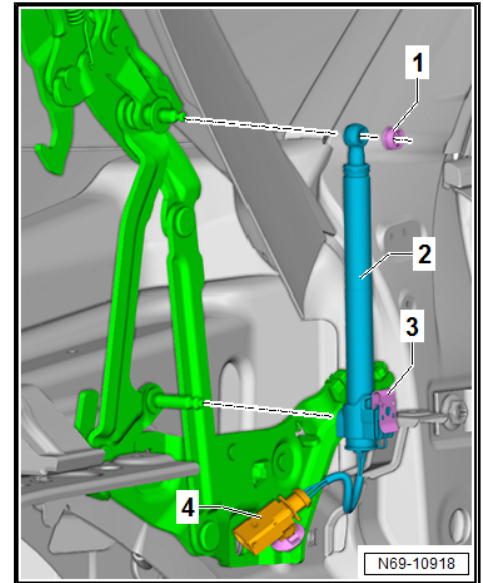
Pay attention to the prelatching mechanism on the lower hinge pin.

- Secure the pedestrian protection trigger -2- on the upper hinge pin with the clip -1-.
- Use the clip -3- to secure the pedestrian protection trigger -2- on the lower hinge pin.



WARNING

- ◆ **Pay attention to the safety precautions when working with pyrotechnic components.**
- ◆ **Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, connecting a connector), the person handling it must "discharge static electricity". For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.**



- Connect the connector -4- for the pedestrian protection trigger to the vehicle electrical system.

i Note

- ◆ **Make sure the connectors are pushed in all the way and that they engage audibly.**
- ◆ **Make sure the wires are not pinched.**
- ◆
- Route the connector -4- over the fender tab and clip it in the fender.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.



WARNING

Repairing pyrotechnic components (for example the airbag and seat belt tensioner) incorrectly increases the risk of unintentional deployments when the battery is connected.

- ◆ **The ignition must be on when connecting the battery.**
- ◆ **For personal safety when connecting the battery, stay out of the deployment area of the airbag and maintain a distance from the seat belt tensioners/seat belts.**
- ◆ **Make sure that there are no other people inside the vehicle at the time when the battery is connected.**

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after assembling, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester ⇒ Vehicle diagnostic tester.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["13.1 Overview - Pedestrian Protection", page 136](#)

13.4 Pressure Hose Sensor for Front Pedestrian Protection - G579- , Removing and Installing

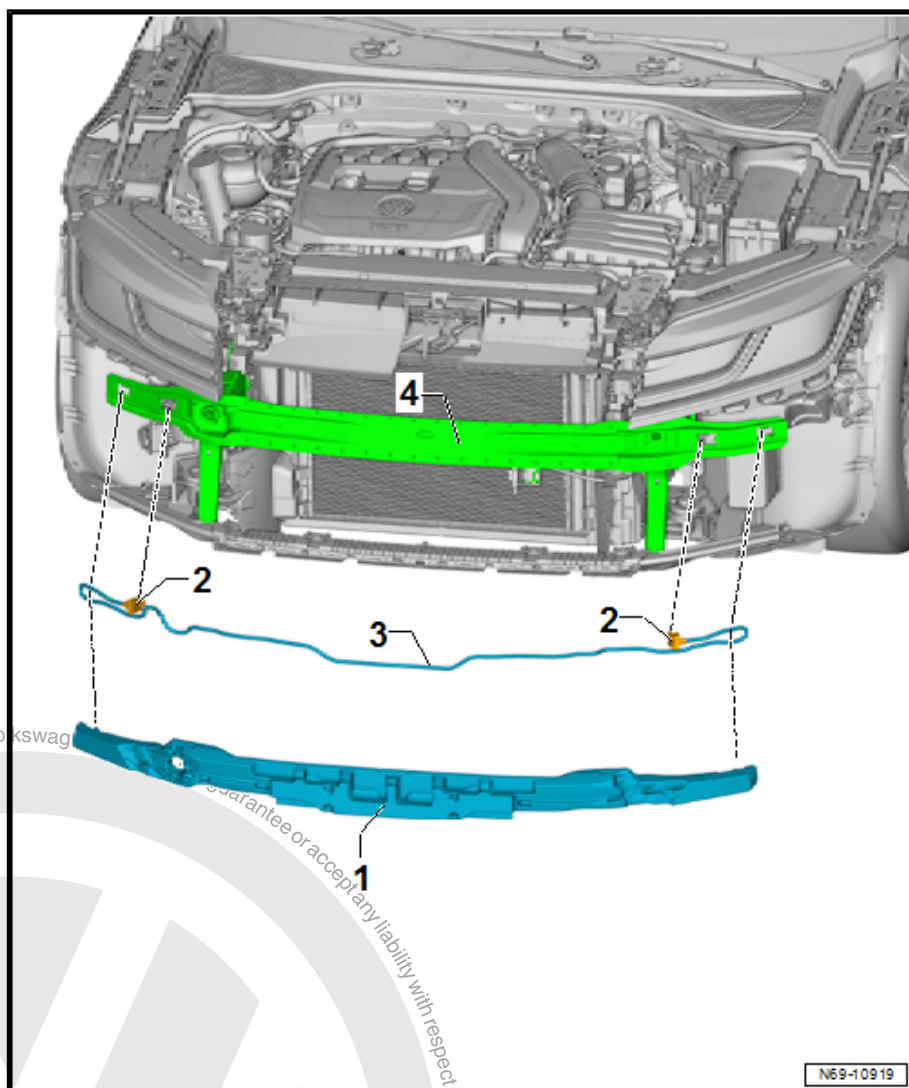


WARNING

If the foam piece is damaged, the Pressure Hose Sensor for Front Pedestrian Protection - G579- must be replaced.

Removing

- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- Remove the front bumper cover. Refer to ⇒ Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 63 ; Front Bumper; Bumper Cover, Removing and Installing .
- Unclip the foam piece -1- from the impact member -4-.
- Disconnect the connectors from the pressure sensors -2-.
- Unclip the pressure hose -3- with the two pressure sensors -2- from the foam piece -1-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after assembling, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

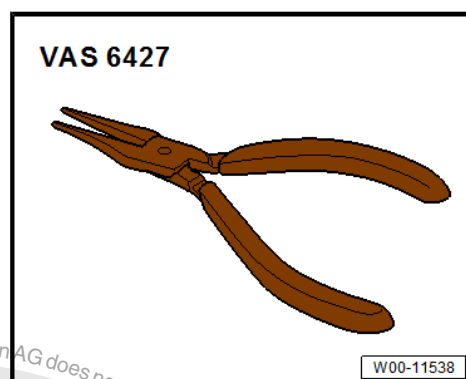




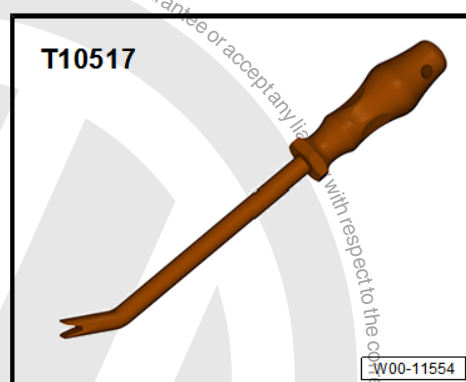
14 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

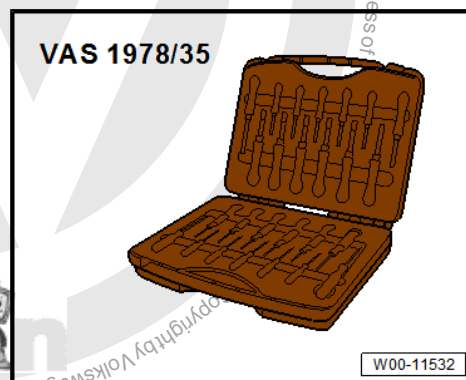
- ◆ Release Pliers - VAS6427-



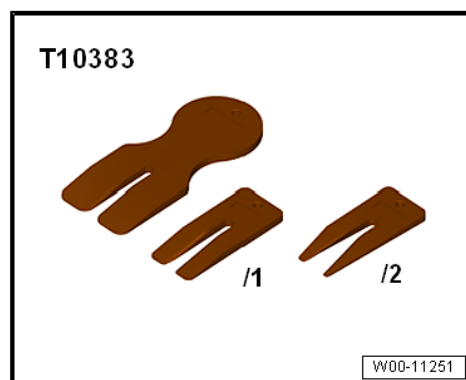
- ◆ Release Tool - T10517-



- ◆ Release Tool Set - Extraction Tool 17 - VAS1978/17- from the Release Tool Set - VAS1978/35-

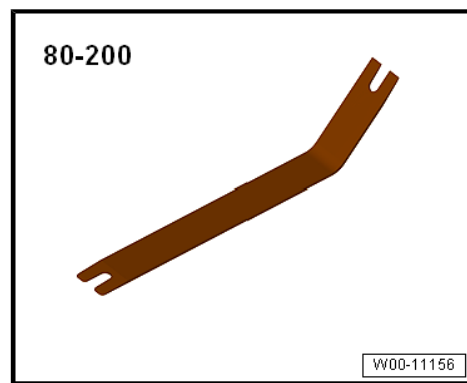


- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-





◆ Pry Lever - 80-200-



70 – Interior Trim

1 Front Door Trim Panels

⇒ [“1.1 Overview - Front Door Trim Panel”, page 146](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 147](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 149](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Front Armrest, Removing and Installing”, page 153](#)

1.1 Overview - Front Door Trim Panel



Note

The overview illustration shows the driver side door trim panel.
The illustration for the front passenger side is similar.

1 - Front Door Trim Panel

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.3 Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 149](#)

2 - Decorative Trim

- ❑ With Driver Interior Locking Button - E308-
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.2 Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 147](#)

3 - Central Locking -Safe- Indicator Lamp - K133-

- ❑ For the driver door only

4 - Clip

5 - Door Pull Handle Decorative Trim

6 - Base Plate

7 - Screw

- ❑ 4.5 Nm
- ❑ Secures the door trim panel

8 - Upper Cover

- ❑ For securing the door trim panel

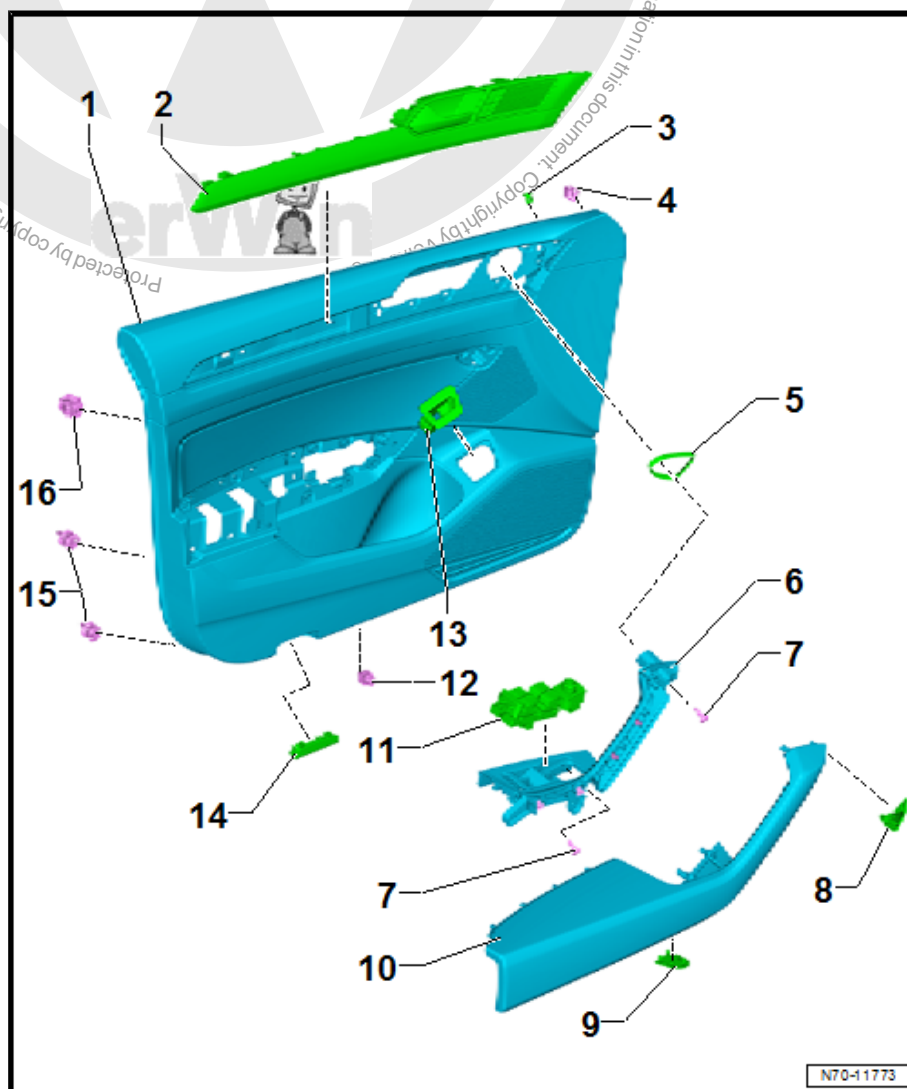
9 - Lower Cover

- ❑ For securing the door trim panel

10 - Front Armrest

11 - Power Window Control Head in Driver Door - E512-

- ❑ With Exterior Rearview Mirror Adjuster - EX11-





12 - Rotating Clip

13 - Rear Lid Remote Release Button - E233-

14 - Reflector or Door Warning Lamp

- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment

15 - Clip

- ☐ Quantity: 5
- ☐ Insert in the trim panel
- ☐ Replace damaged or deformed clips

16 - Crash Clip

- ☐ Quantity: 1

1.2 Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

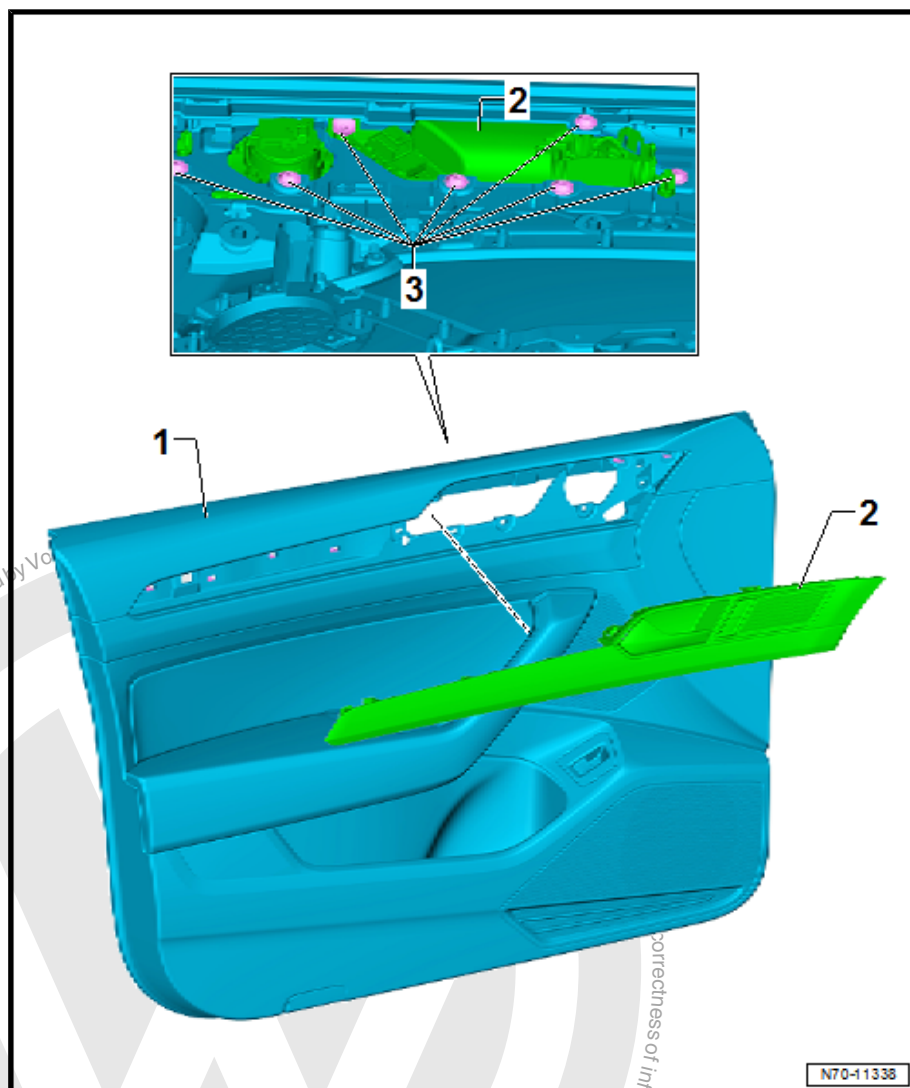


Note

Removing and installing the driver side decorative trim is described. The removal and installation for the front passenger side is the same.

Removing





- Remove the front door trim panel. Refer to [⇒ “1.3 Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 149](#).
- Disconnect the connector for the Driver Interior Locking Button - E308-.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, disconnect the connector for the Driver Side Door Ambient Lighting Lamp - W86-.
- Remove the screws -3- for the decorative trim -2-.
- Using the -3409-, carefully detach the decorative trim -2- and remove it from the door trim panel.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Insert and fasten the decorative trim -2- in the door trim panel -1-.
- Reconnect the connectors.
- Install the front door trim panel. Refer to [⇒ “1.3 Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 149](#).



Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Decorative trim screws	1.5 Nm

1.3 Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

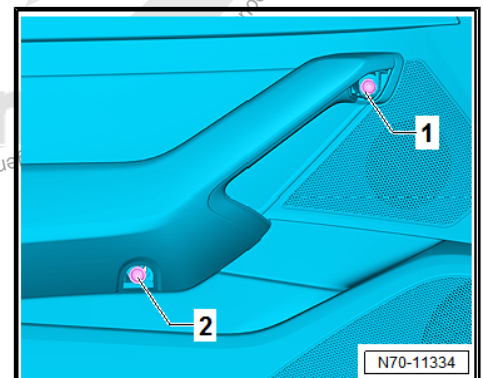
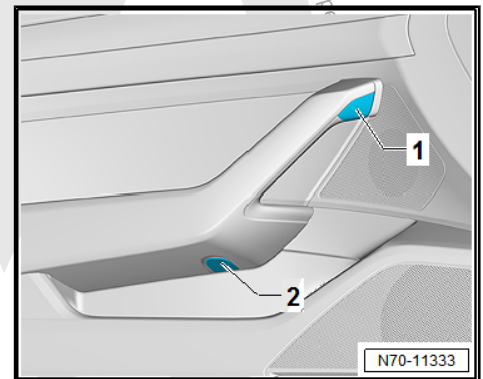


Note

Removing and installing the driver side door trim panel is described. The removal and installation for the front passenger side is the same.

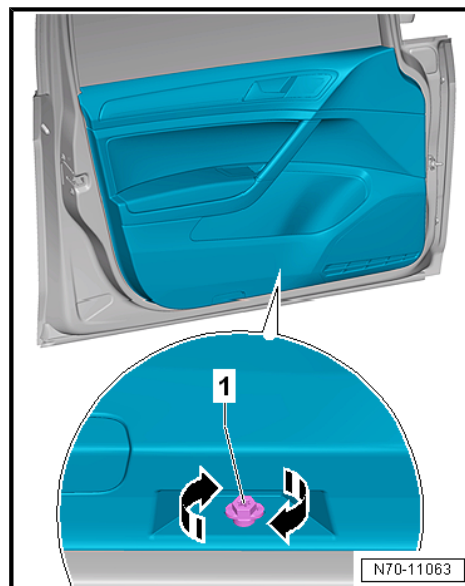
Removing

- Turn off the ignition and all electrical equipment and remove the key.
- Use the -3409- to pry the caps -1 and 2- out of the armrest mounts.
- Remove the bolts -1 and 2-

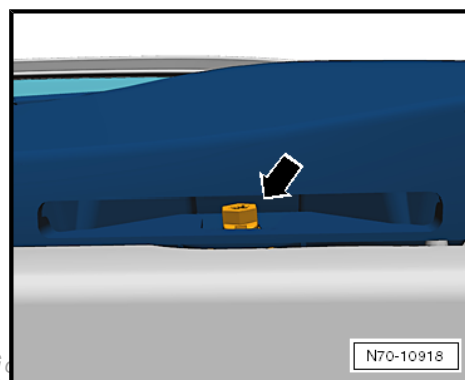


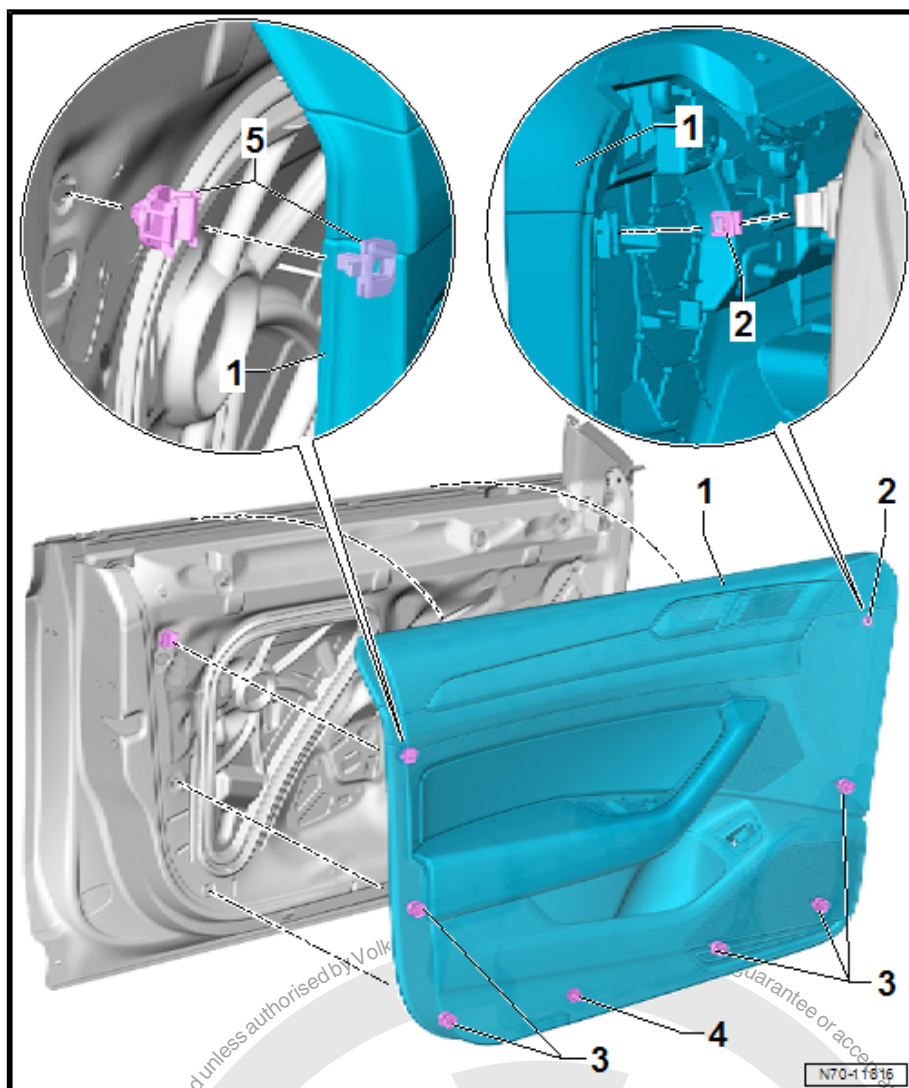


- Turn/release the rotating clip -1- 90° in the direction of the -arrow-.



- The rotating clip -arrow- is loosened.





- Detach the clips -3- for the door trim panel -1- out of the mounts using the -T10383-. The clip -4- was already released.



Note

The clip -5- is designed as a crash clip. When lifting out the door trim panel -1-, it is automatically released from the window shaft strip.

- Remove the door trim panel -1- vertically upward from the window shaft strip. While doing so, the crash clip -5- is automatically released.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment level, disconnect the connectors from the door trim panel -1-.



erWin



- Disconnect the cable -1- from the interior door mechanism.

Installing

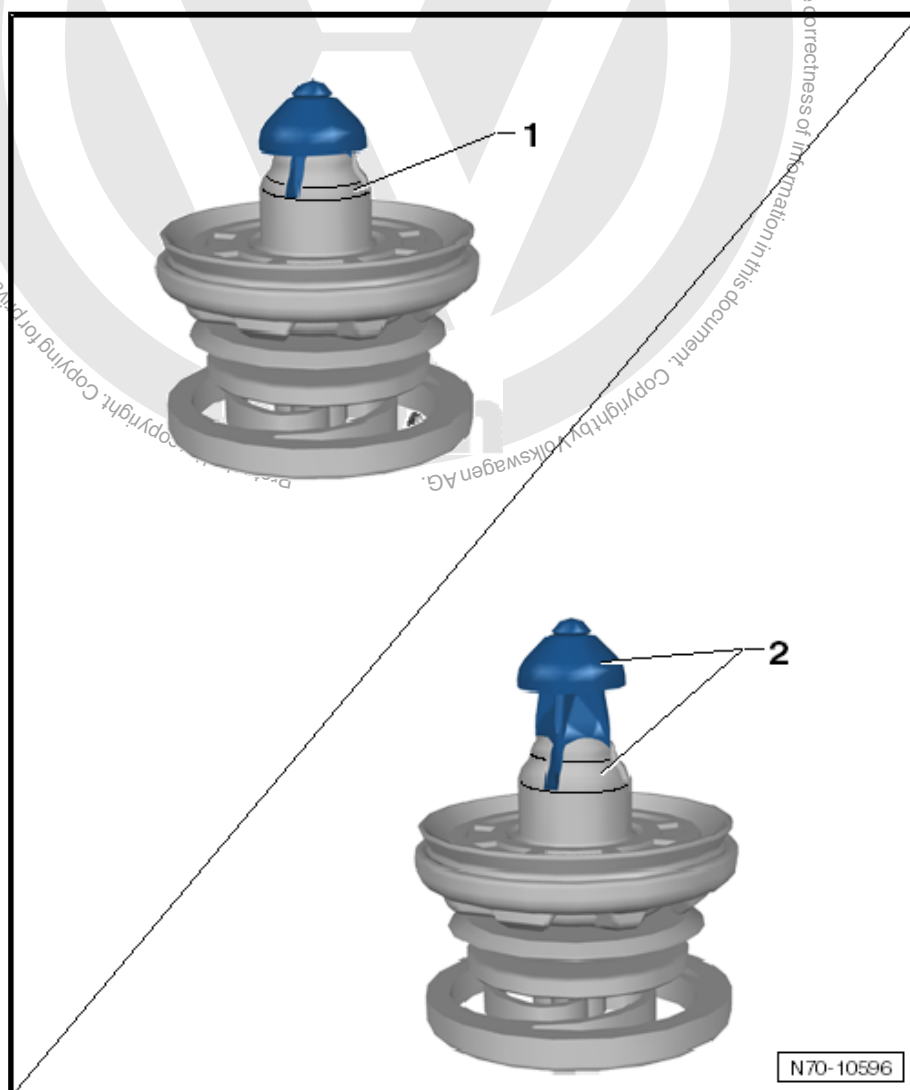
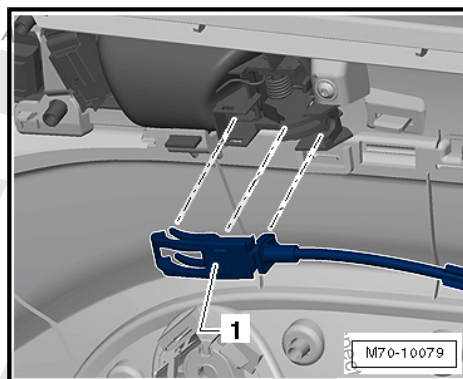
Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

- Insert the clips into the front door trim panel.



Caution

Before installing the door trim panel, make sure that the locking mechanism of all clip connections are in -position 1-.

It is not possible to install the door trim panel correctly if the clips are in the -position 2-.



Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ ["1.1 Overview - Front Door Trim Panel", page 146](#)

1.4 Front Armrest, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

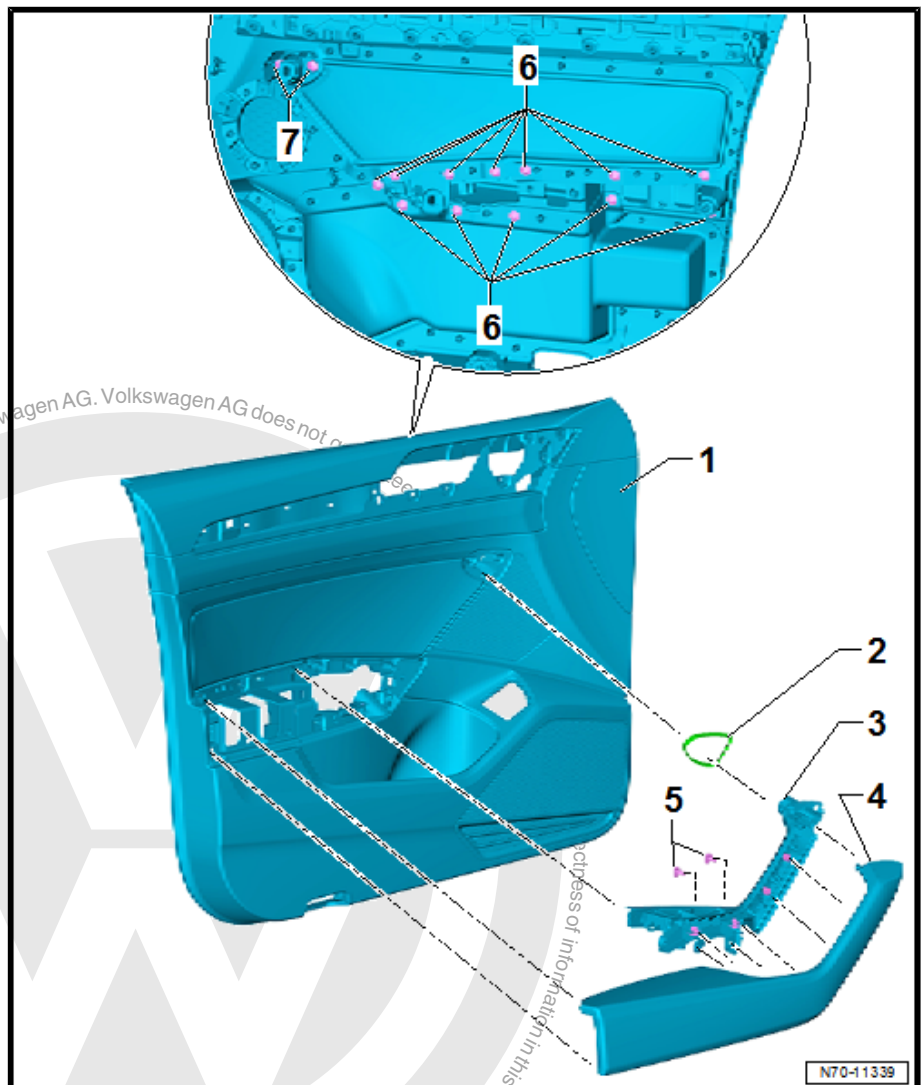
- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Note

Removing and installing the driver side armrest is described. The removal and installation for the front passenger side is the same.

Removing



- Remove the door trim panel -1-. Refer to ⇒ ["1.3 Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 149](#).
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, disconnect the connectors from the base carrier -3-.



- Remove the screws -6- and -7- for the armrest -4-.
- Detach the armrest -4- and remove it from the door trim panel.
- Remove the screws -5-.
- Carefully separate the base carrier -3- from the armrest -4- using the -3409- .

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Armrest screws	1.5 Nm





2 Rear Door Trim Panels

⇒ ["2.1 Overview - Rear Door Trim Panel", page 155](#)

⇒ ["2.2 Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing", page 156](#)

⇒ ["2.3 Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 157](#)

⇒ ["2.4 Rear Armrest, Removing and Installing", page 161](#)

2.1 Overview - Rear Door Trim Panel



Note

The overview illustration shows the driver side door trim panel. The illustration for the front passenger side is similar.

1 - Rear Door Trim Panel

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.3 Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 157](#).

2 - Decorative Trim

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.2 Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing", page 156](#).

3 - Door Pull Handle Decorative Trim

4 - Rotating Clip

5 - Rear Reflector

6 - Upper Cover

- ☐ For securing the door trim panel

7 - Screws

- ☐ 4.5 Nm
- ☐ Secures the door trim panel

8 - Lower Cover

- ☐ For securing the door trim panel

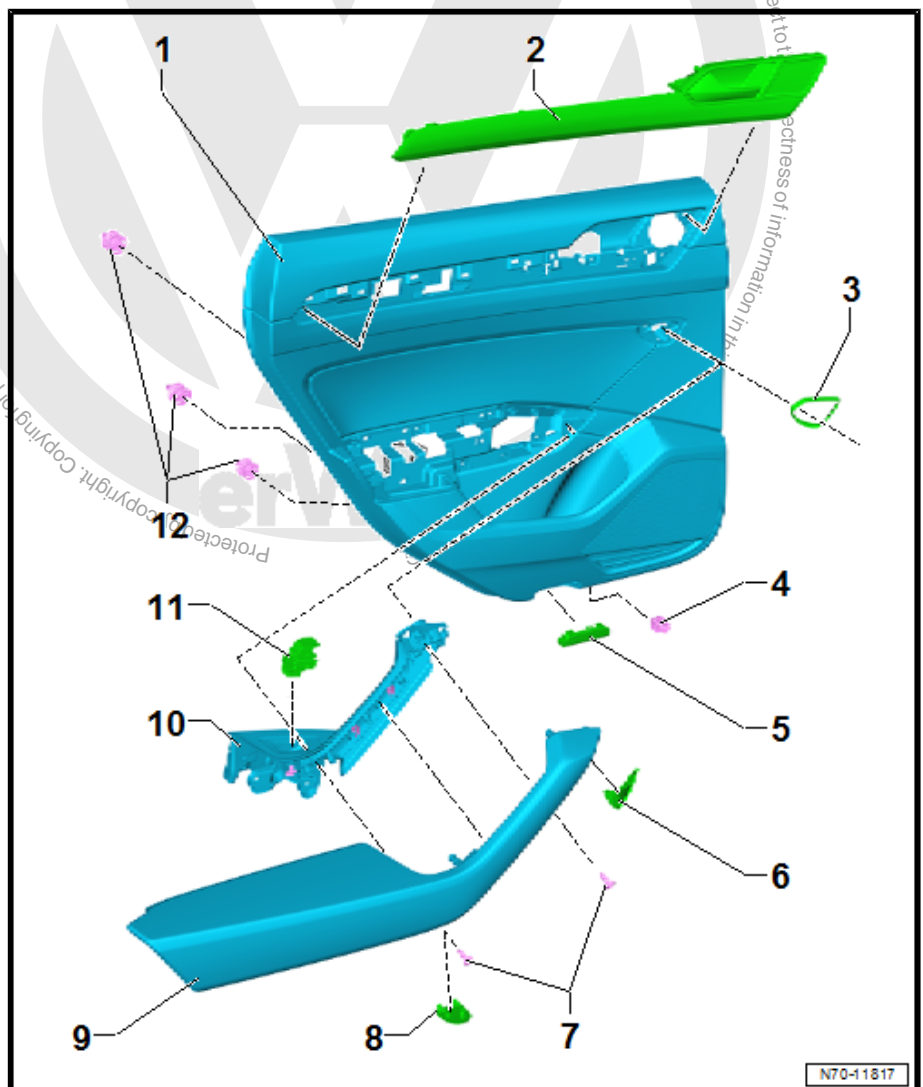
9 - Armrest

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.4 Rear Armrest, Removing and Installing", page 161](#).

10 - Base Plate

11 - Power Window Switch in the Rear Door

- ☐ Driver side: Power Window Switch in Left Rear Door - E52-
- ☐ Passenger side: Power Window Switch in Right Rear Door - E54-





12 - Clip

- ☐ Quantity: 6
- ☐ Insert in the door trim panel
- ☐ Replace damaged or deformed clips

2.2 Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

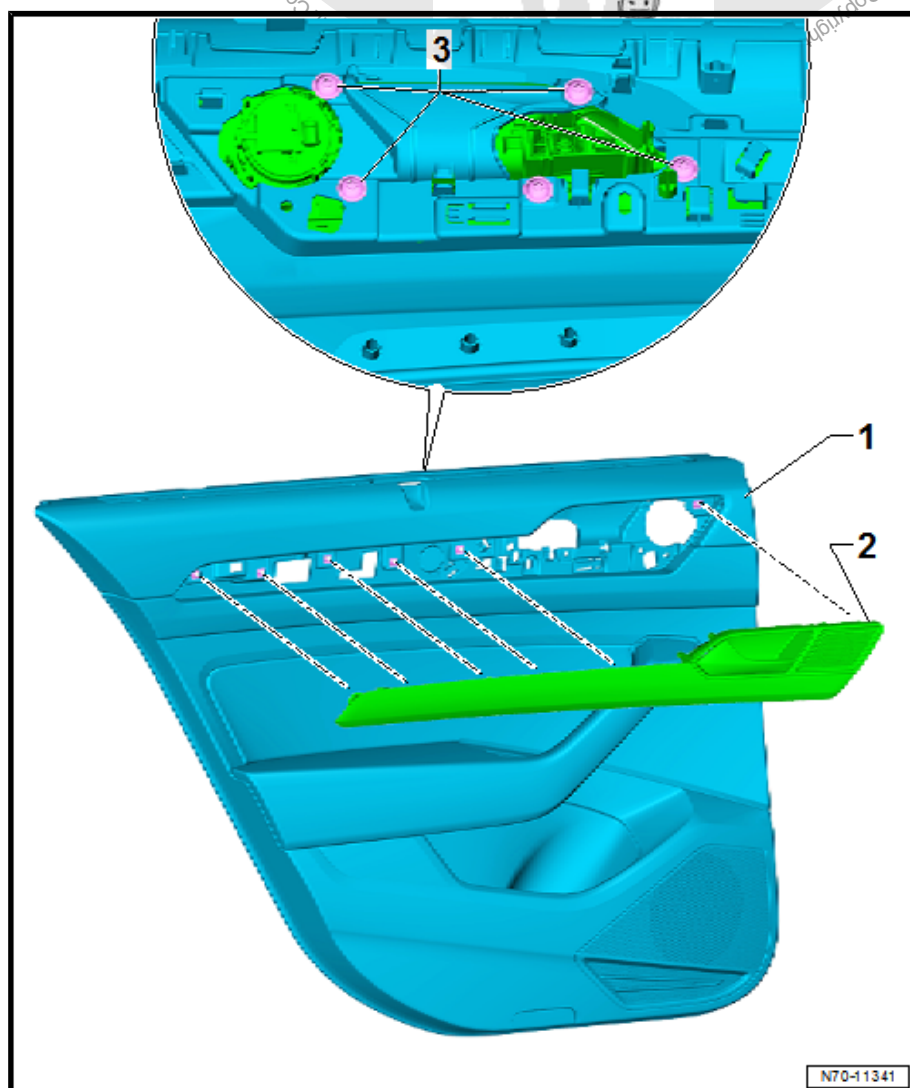
- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG 1783-



Note

The removal and installation of the driver side trim molding is described. The removal and installation for the front passenger side is the same.

Removing





- Remove the door trim panel -1-. Refer to
⇒ [“2.3 Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 157](#).
- Disconnect the connector for the Left Rear Treble Speaker - R14-.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, disconnect the connector for the Left Rear Door Ambient Lighting Bulb 1 - L201-.
- Remove the screws -3- for the decorative trim -2-.
- Using the Trim Removal Wedge - 3409- , carefully detach the decorative trim -2- and remove it from the door trim panel -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

- Insert and fasten the decorative trim -2- in the door trim panel -1-.
- Reconnect the connectors.
- Install the front door trim panel. Refer to
⇒ [“1.3 Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 149](#).

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Decorative trim screws	1.5 Nm

2.3 Rear Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

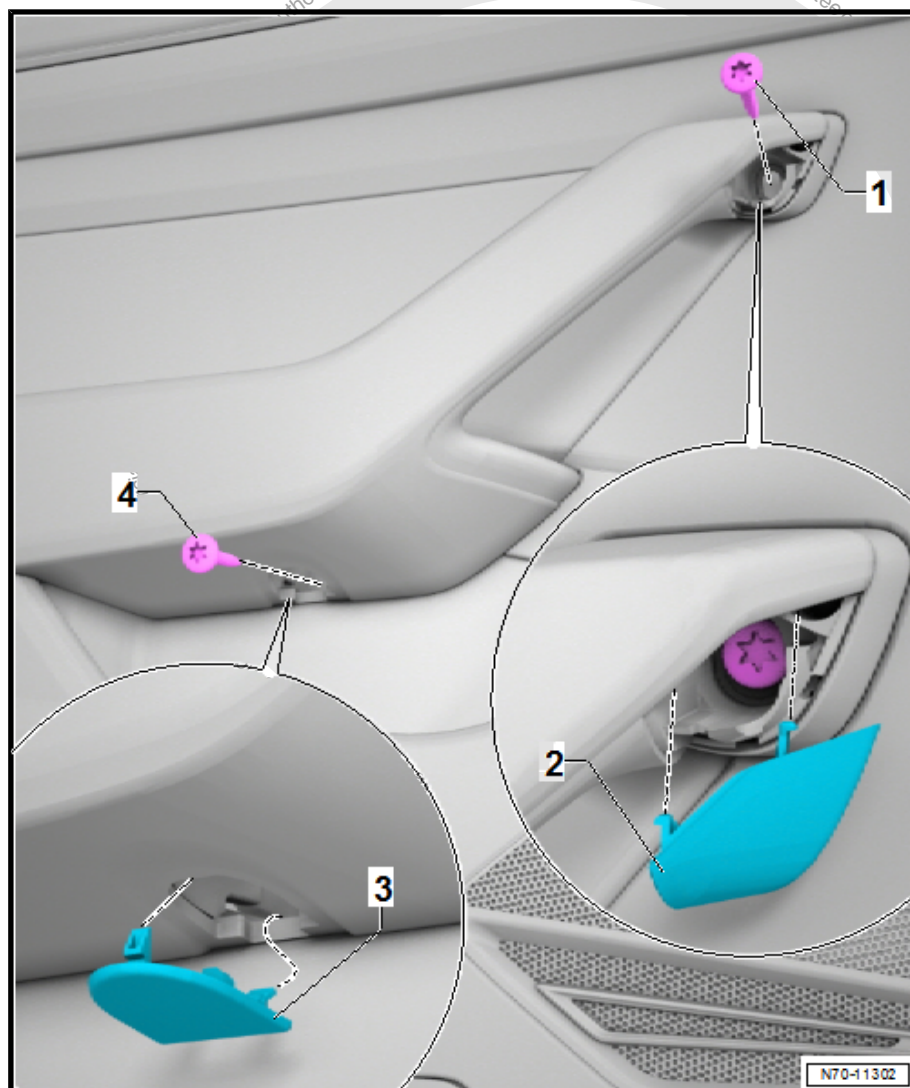
- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Note

Removing and installing the driver side door trim panel is described. The removal and installation for the front passenger side is the same.

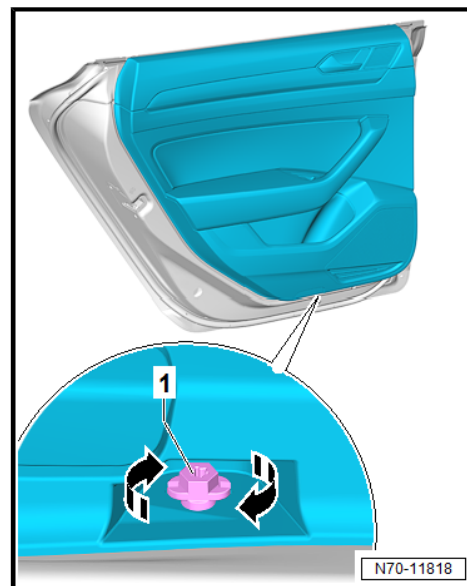
Removing



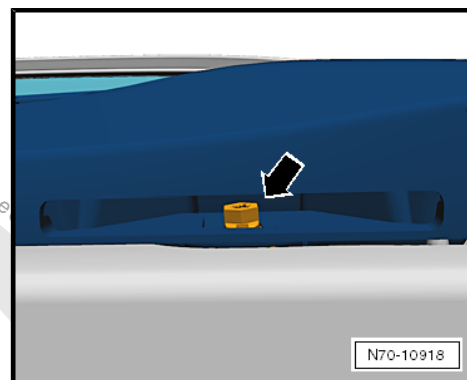
- Turn off the ignition and all electrical equipment and remove the key.
- Pry out the caps -2- and -3- using the -3409- .
- Remove the bolts -1- and -4-.

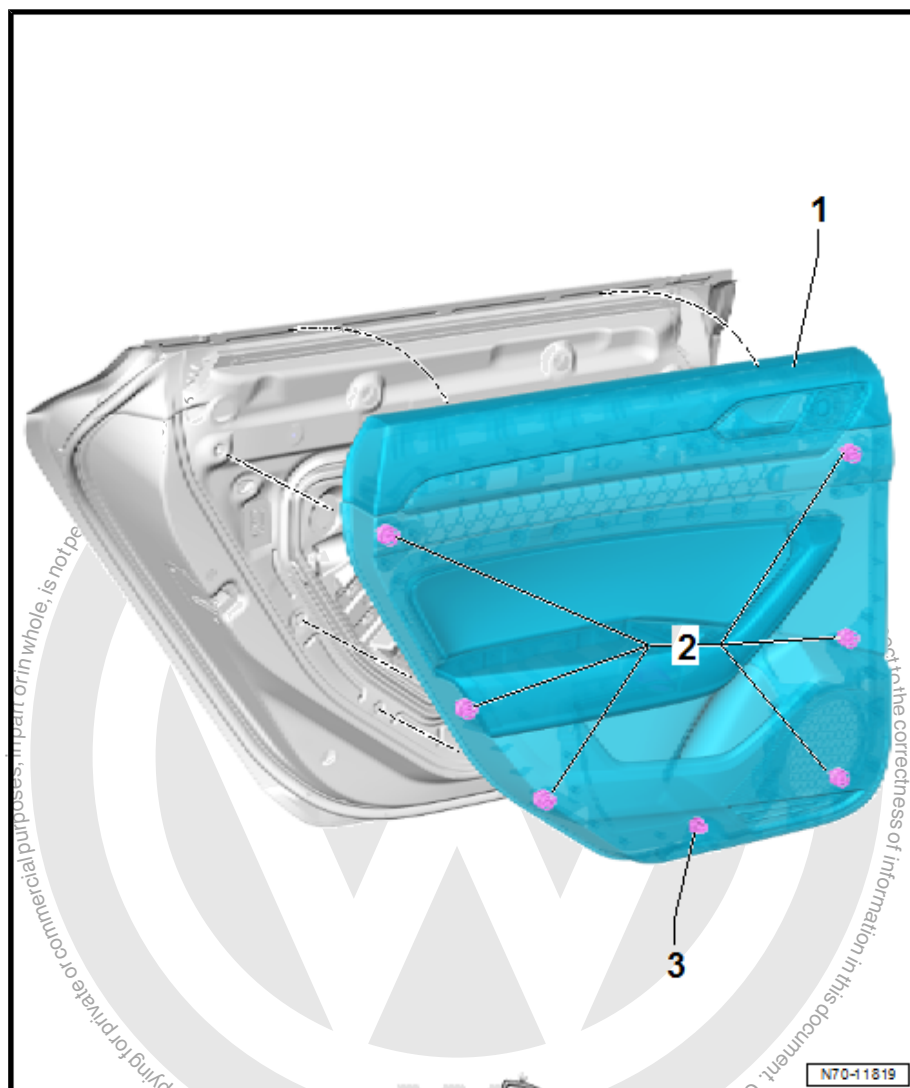


- Turn/release the rotating clip -1- 90° in the direction of the -arrow-.



- The rotating clip -arrow- is loosened.





- Loosen the clips -2- for the door trim panel -1- out of the mounts using the -T10383-. The clip -3- was already released.
- Remove the door trim panel -1- vertically upward from the window shaft strip.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment level, disconnect the connectors from the door trim panel -1-.
- Disconnect the cable -1- from the interior door mechanism.

Installing

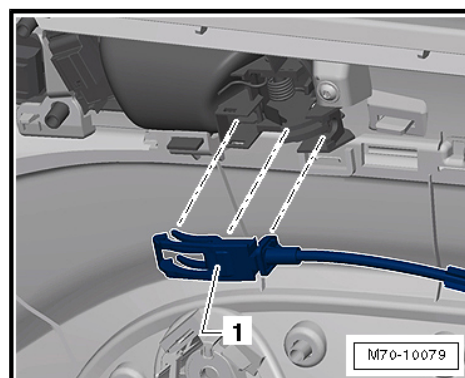
Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

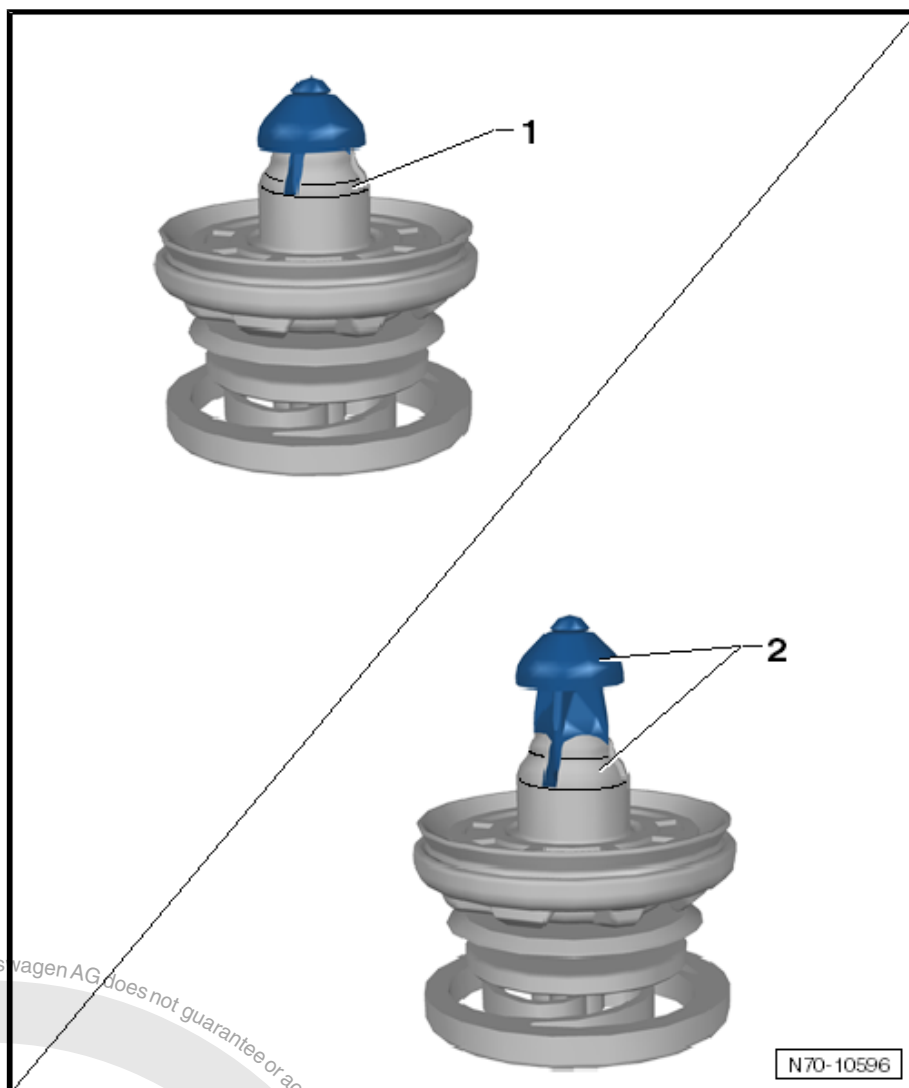


Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

- Insert the clips into the rear door trim panel.





Caution

Before installing the door trim panel, make sure that the locking mechanism of all clip connections are in -position 1-.

It is not possible to install the door trim panel correctly if the clips are in the -position 2-.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.1 Overview - Rear Door Trim Panel”, page 155](#)

2.4 Rear Armrest, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

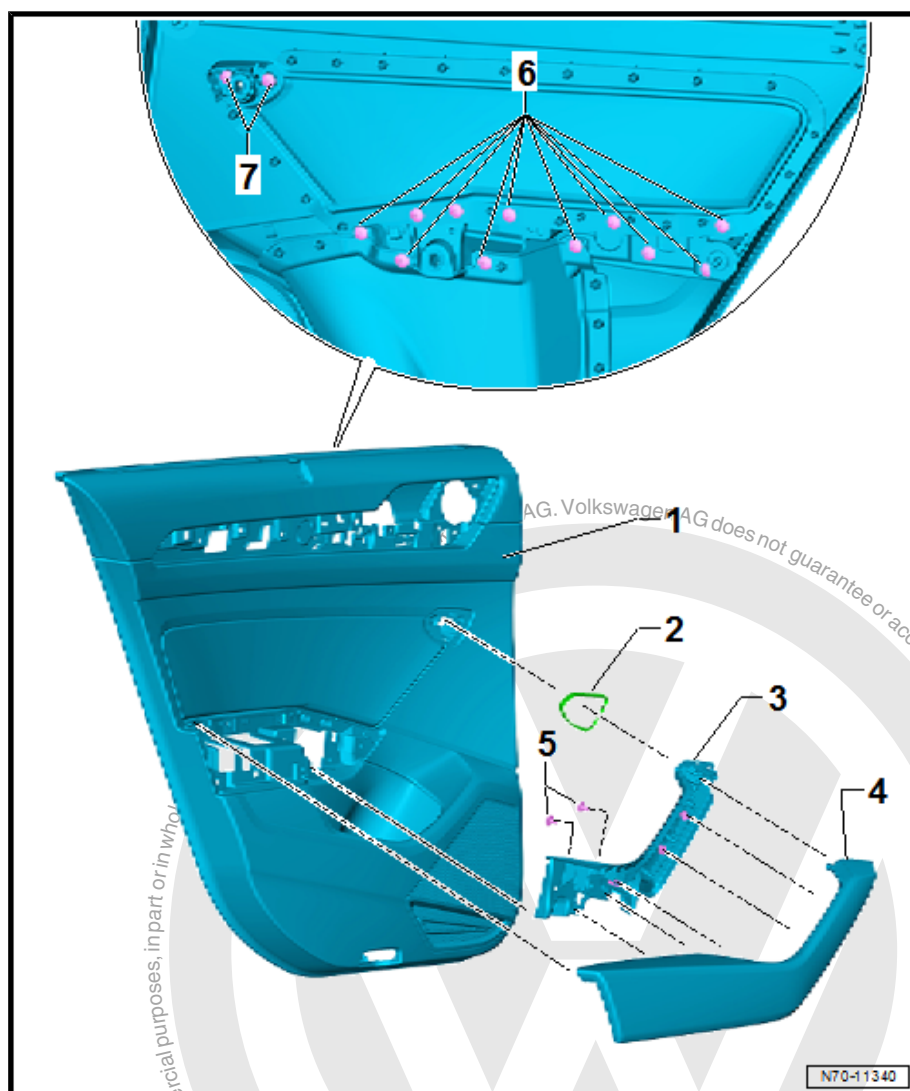




Note

Removing and installing the driver side armrest is described. The removal and installation for the front passenger side is the same.

Removing



- Remove the door trim panel -1-. Refer to ["1.3 Front Door Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 149](#).
- Detach the door trim panel noise insulation -1-.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment, disconnect the connectors from the base carrier -3-.
- Remove bolts -6 and 7-.
- Detach the armrest -4- and remove it from the door trim panel -1-.
- Remove the bolts -5-.
- Carefully separate the base carrier -3- from the armrest -4- using the -3409-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Armrest screws	1.5 Nm





3 Instrument Panel

⇒ [“3.1 Overview - Instrument Panel”, page 164](#)

⇒ [“3.2 Overview - Windshield Projection Cover and Trim \(Head Up Display\)”, page 166](#)

⇒ [“3.3 Instrument Panel Side Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 166](#)

⇒ [“3.4 Instrument Panel Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 167](#)

⇒ [“3.5 Radio/Navigation System Frame, Removing and Installing”, page 168](#)

⇒ [“3.6 Instrument Cluster Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 169](#)

⇒ [“3.7 Instrument Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 170](#)

⇒ [“3.8 Outer Instrument Panel Vent, Removing and Installing”, page 179](#)

⇒ [“3.9 Windshield Projection \(Head-Up Display\) Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 181](#)

⇒ [“3.10 Windshield Projection \(Head-Up Display\) Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 181](#)

3.1 Overview - Instrument Panel



1 - Rubber Buffer

- ☐ Quantity: 3
- ☐ Pushed on the instrument panel mount under the windshield frame

2 - Screw

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

3 - Cap or Sunlight Photo Sensor - G107-

- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Sunlight Photo Sensor - G107- , Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning; Rep. Gr. 87 ; Additional Components for Control and Regulation; Sunlight Photo Sensor - G107- , Removing and Installing .

4 - Instrument Panel

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.7 Instrument Panel, Removing and Installing"](#), page 170 .

5 - Instrument Panel Decorative Trim

- ☐ Front passenger side
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.4 Instrument Panel Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing"](#), page 167 .

6 - Instrument Panel Vent

- ☐ Front passenger side
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.8 Outer Instrument Panel Vent, Removing and Installing"](#), page 179 .

7 - Radio/Navigation System Frame

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.5 Radio/Navigation System Frame, Removing and Installing"](#), page 168 .

8 - Instrument Cluster

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 90 ; Instrument Cluster; Instrument Cluster - KX2- , Removing and Installing .

9 - Rotary Light Switch - EX1-

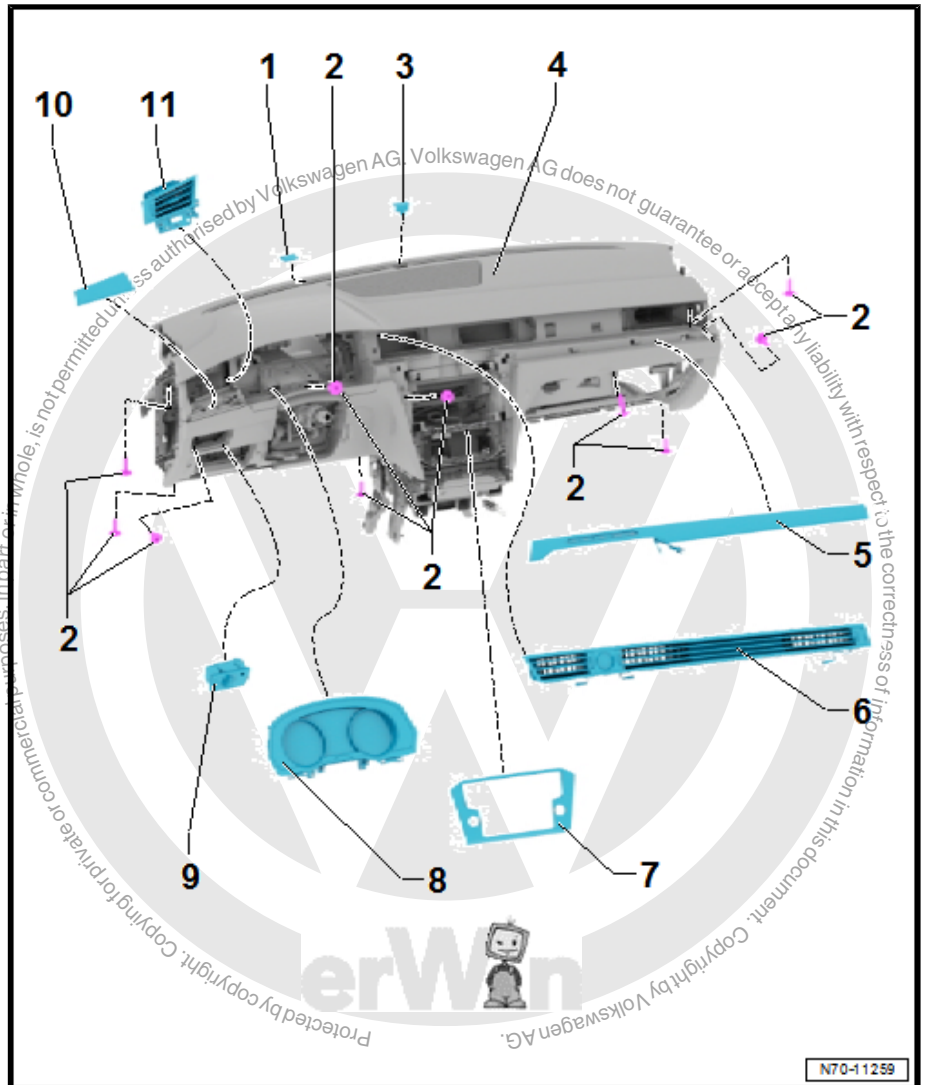
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Controls; Component Location Overview - Controls in Instrument Panel .

10 - Instrument Panel Decorative Trim

- ☐ Driver side
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.4 Instrument Panel Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing"](#), page 167 .

11 - Instrument Panel Vent

- ☐ Driver side





- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“3.8 Outer Instrument Panel Vent, Removing and Installing”, page 179](#).

3.2 Overview - Windshield Projection Cover and Trim (Head Up Display)

1 - Windshield Projection Trim (Head Up Display)

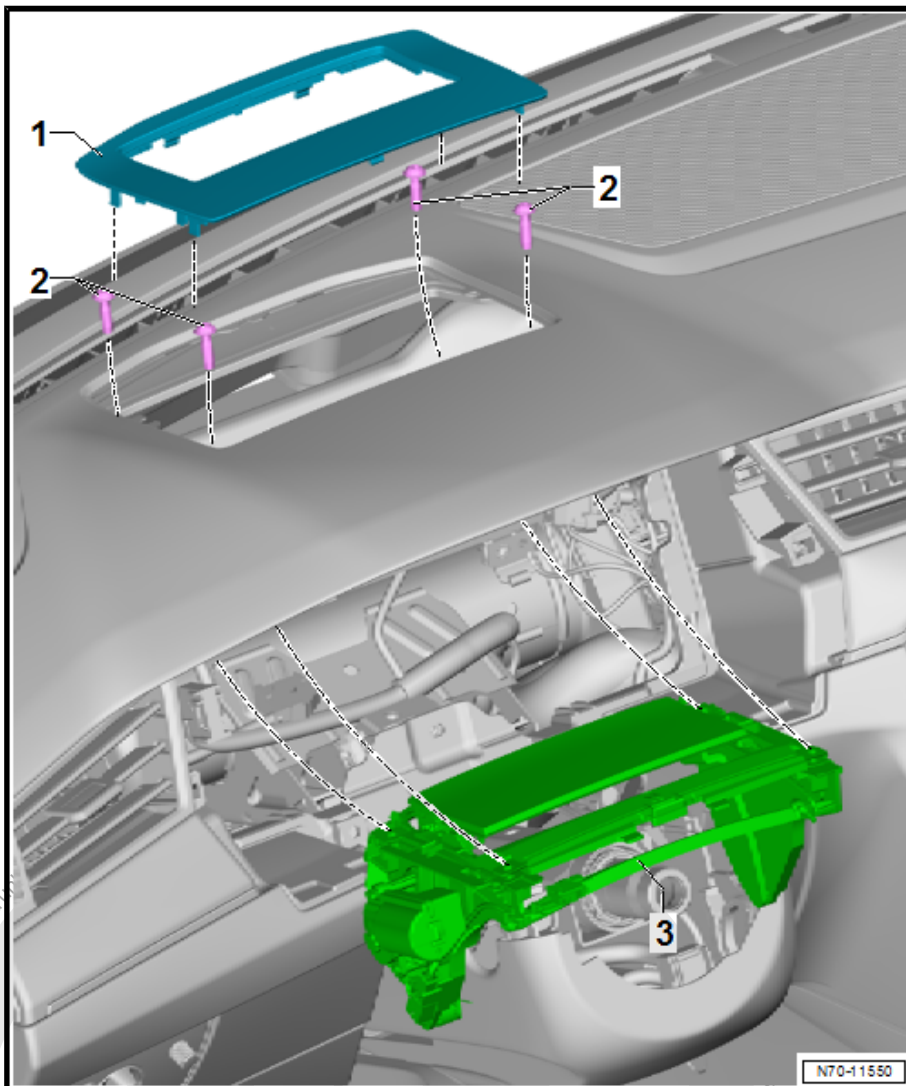
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“3.9 Windshield Projection \(Head-Up Display\) Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 181](#).

2 - Screws

- ❑ 1.5 Nm
- ❑ When installing, pay attention to the specified tightening sequence

3 - Windshield Projection Cover (Head Up Display)

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“3.10 Windshield Projection \(Head-Up Display\) Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 181](#).



3.3 Instrument Panel Side Cover, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-



Note

Removal and installation are described for the driver side instrument panel side cover. The removal and installation for the front passenger side is the same.



Removing

- Pry out the instrument panel side cover -1- with the -3409- near the catches -arrows-.
- Remove the cover rearward from the A-pillar gap cover.

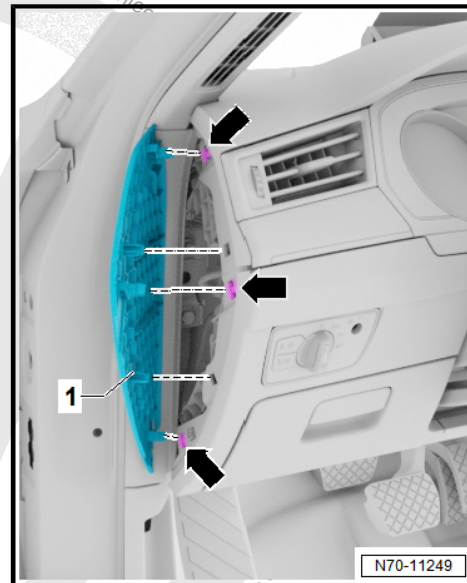
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



3.4 Instrument Panel Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-

Removing, Driver Side

- Carefully detach the decorative trim -1- at the sides from the retainers using the -10383/1- .
- If equipped, disconnect the wiring harness for the Left Instrument Panel Ambient Lighting Lamp - L229- .

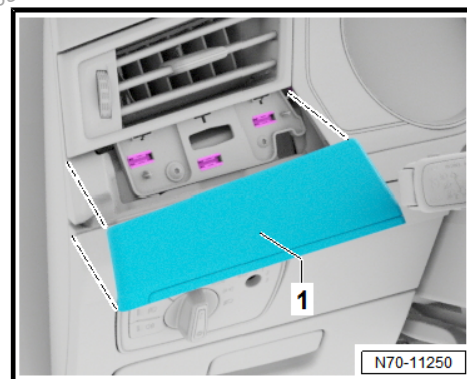
Installing, Driver Side

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



Removing, Front Passenger Side

- Radio/Navigation System Frame, Removing and Installing. Refer to ["3.5 Radio/Navigation System Frame, Removing and Installing", page 168](#) .
- Use the -10383- to detach the instrument cluster trim in the transition area to the decorative trim from the retainers.



- Working from the outside inward, carefully detach the decorative trim -1- from the retainers using the -10383- .
- If equipped, disconnect the wiring harness for the Right Instrument Panel Ambient Lighting Lamp - L230- .

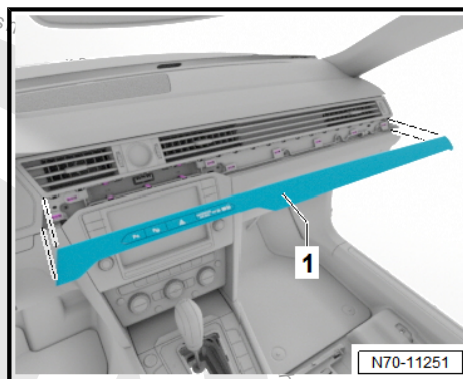
Installing, Front Passenger Side

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

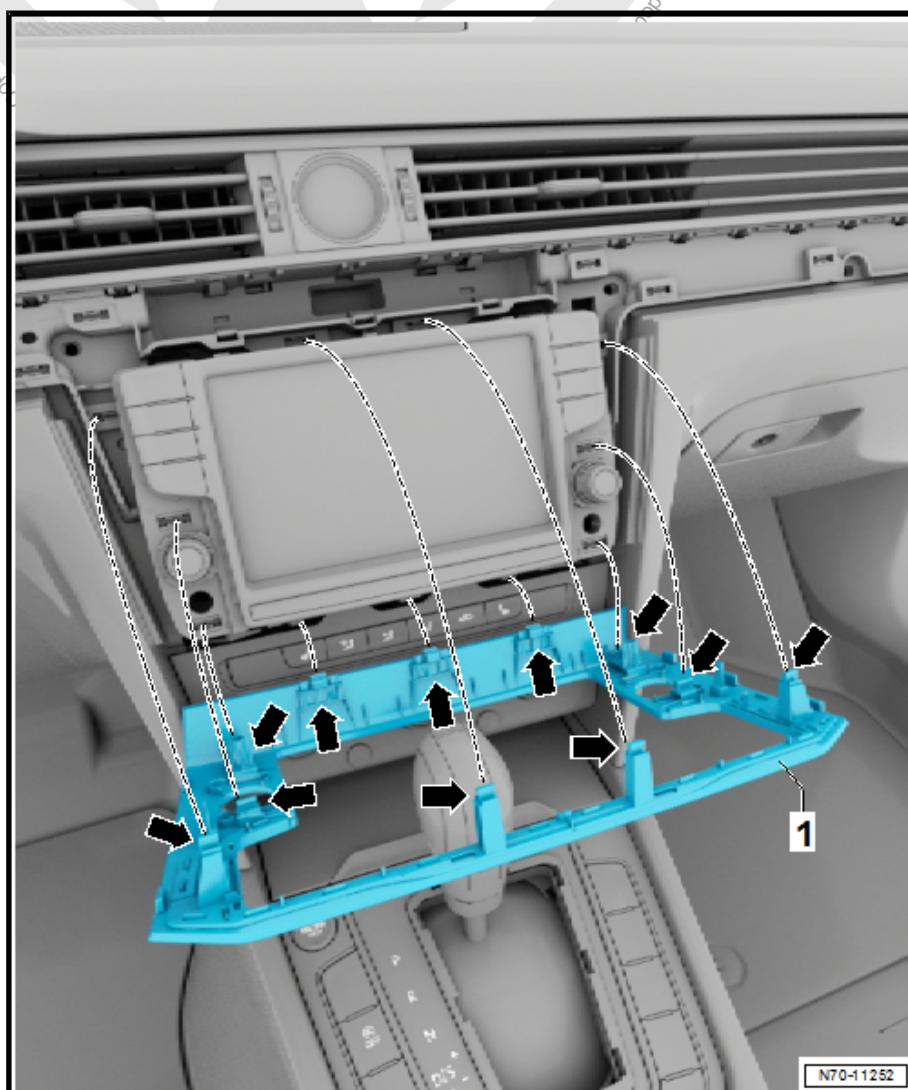
Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



3.5 Radio/Navigation System Frame, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Carefully unclip the frame -1- from the clip connections -arrows-.





Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

3.6 Instrument Cluster Trim, Removing and Installing

⇒ ["3.6.1 Instrument Cluster Trim with Analog Instruments, Removing and Installing", page 169](#)

⇒ ["3.6.2 Fully Digital Instrument Cluster Trim, Removing and Installing", page 169](#)

3.6.1 Instrument Cluster Trim with Analog Instruments, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-
- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Removing

- Release the steering wheel adjustment lever.
- Pull out the steering wheel completely, push it downward and lock it.
- Carefully unclip the steering column trim panel gap cover from the mounts in the instrument cluster.
- Unclip the bottom sides -A arrows- of the instrument cluster trim -1- from the instrument cluster -2- using the -T10383- .
- Unclip the sides -B arrows- of the instrument cluster trim -1- from the instrument cluster -2- using the -T10383- .
- Unclip the top -C arrows- of the instrument cluster trim -1- from the instrument cluster -2- using the -3409- .

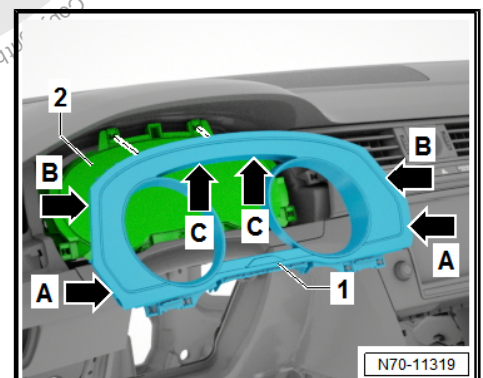
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



3.6.2 Fully Digital Instrument Cluster Trim, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-
- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Removing

- Release the steering wheel adjustment lever.



- Pull out the steering wheel completely, push it downward and lock it.
- Carefully unclip the steering column trim panel gap cover from the mounts in the instrument cluster.
- Using the -T10383- , unclip the sides of the instrument cluster trim -1- from the instrument cluster -2-.
- Unclip the top of the instrument cluster trim -1- from the instrument cluster -2- using the -3409- .

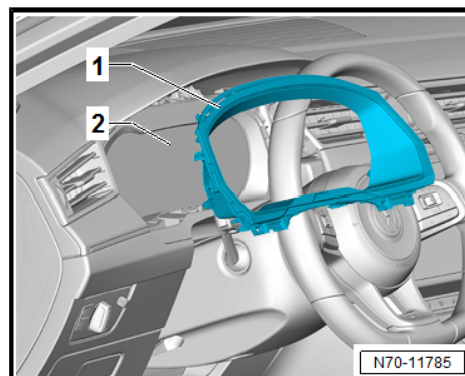
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



3.7 Instrument Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

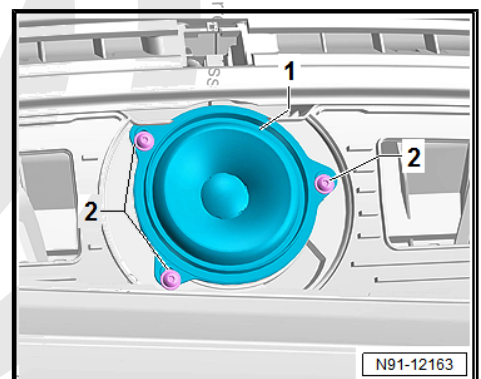
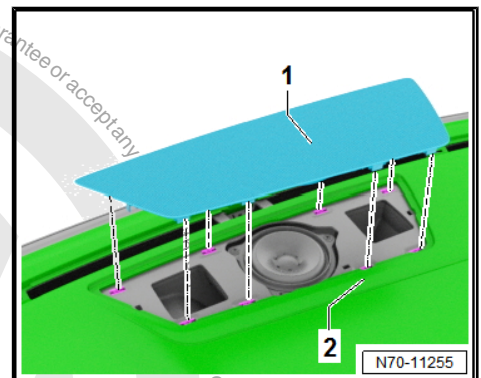
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-
- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Removing

- Remove the upper steering column trim panel. Refer to ⇒ [“1.7 Upper Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 21](#) .
- Remove the lower steering column trim panel. Refer to ⇒ [“1.8 Lower Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 22](#) .
- Remove the instrument cluster. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 90 ; Instrument Cluster; Instrument Cluster - KX2- , Removing and Installing .
- If equipped, remove the Windshield Projection Head Up Display Control Module - J898- Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 90 ; Instrument Cluster; Windshield Projection Head Up Display Control Module, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the driver side airbag. Refer to ⇒ [“6.2 Airbag Unit with Igniter, Removing and Installing”, page 100](#) .
- Remove the steering wheel. Refer to ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 48 ; Steering Wheel; Steering Wheel, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the steering column switch. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 94 ; Steering Column Switch Module; Steering Column Switch Module, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the Rotary Light Switch - EX1- . Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Controls; Component Location Overview - Instrument Panel Controls .
- Remove the instrument panel cover on the driver side. Refer to ⇒ [“1.6 Driver Side Instrument Panel Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 20](#) .



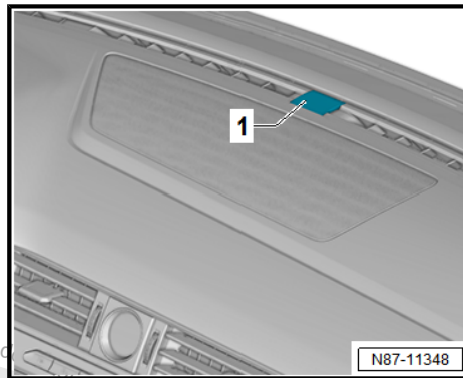
- Remove the instrument panel side covers. Refer to
⇒ ["3.3 Instrument Panel Side Cover, Removing and Installing"](#),
[page 166](#) .
- Remove the radio/navigation system assembly frame. Refer to
⇒ ["3.5 Radio/Navigation System Frame, Removing and Installing"](#), [page 168](#) .
- Remove the instrument panel decorative trim on the front passenger side. Refer to
⇒ ["3.4 Instrument Panel Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing"](#), [page 167](#) .
- Remove the Front Information Display Control Head - J685- . Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Infotainment System; Component Location Overview - Infotainment System .
- If equipped, remove the Information Electronics Control Module 1 - J794- . Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Infotainment System; Information Electronics Control Module 1 - J794- , Removing and Installing .
- Remove the glove compartment. Refer to
⇒ ["1.12 Glove Compartment, Removing and Installing"](#),
[page 26](#) .
- Remove the display control head. Refer to ⇒ Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning; Rep. Gr. 87 ; Display Control Head; Display Control Head, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the A-pillar gap cover. Refer to
⇒ ["5.9 A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing"](#),
[page 200](#) .
- Remove the A-pillar upper trim panels. Refer to
⇒ ["5.10 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing"](#),
[page 201](#) .
- For vehicles with a Center Speaker - R208- , carefully unclip the speaker trim -1- from the mounts in the instrument panel -2- using the Trim Removal Wedge - 3409- .



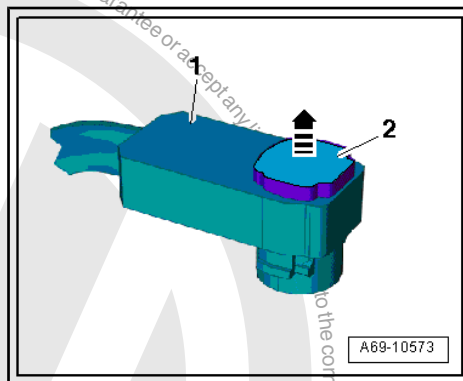
- Remove the bolts -2-.
- Pull the Center Speaker - R208- -1- upward out of the instrument panel until the connector is accessible.
- Release and disconnect the connector from the Center Speaker - R208- -1-.
- Remove the Center Speaker - R208- -1-.

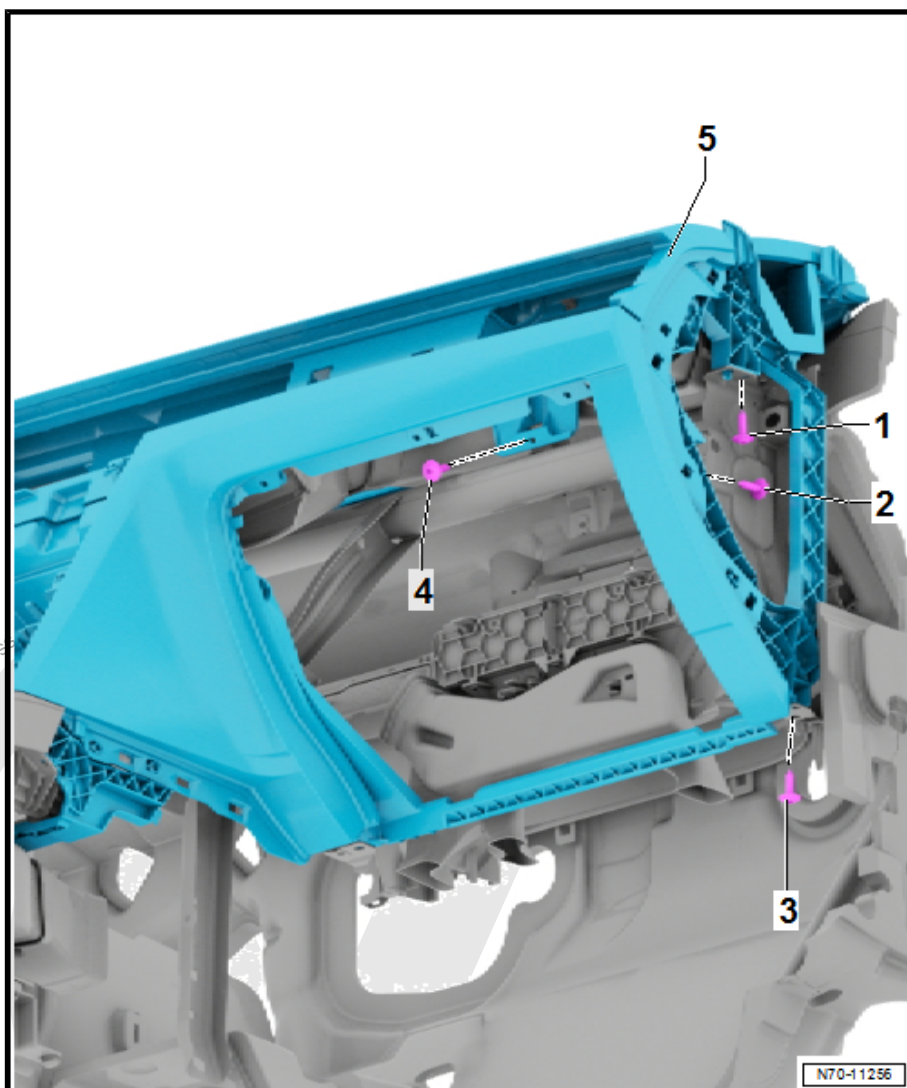


- If equipped, unclip the Sunlight Photo Sensor - G107- -1- upward from the instrument panel.
- Release and disconnect the connector.
- For vehicles with "Climatronic", release and disconnect the connectors from the Left Vent Temperature Sensor - G150- and from Right Vent Temperature Sensor - G151- .
- Disconnect the connector for the front passenger airbag.

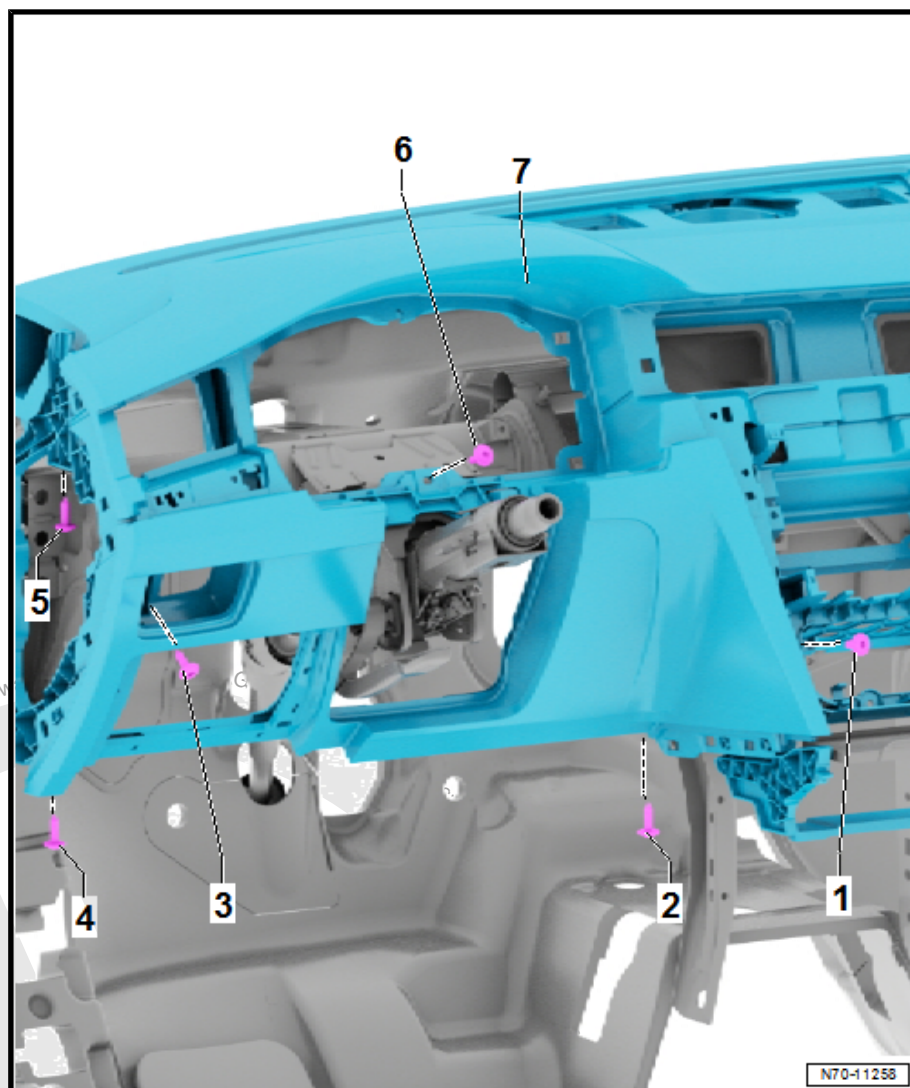


- To do so, release the connector lock -2- with a small screwdriver -arrow- and disconnect the connector -1-.
- Move the front seats all the way back.
- Remove the center console. Refer to [⇒ "3.7 Center Console, Removing and Installing", page 44](#) .

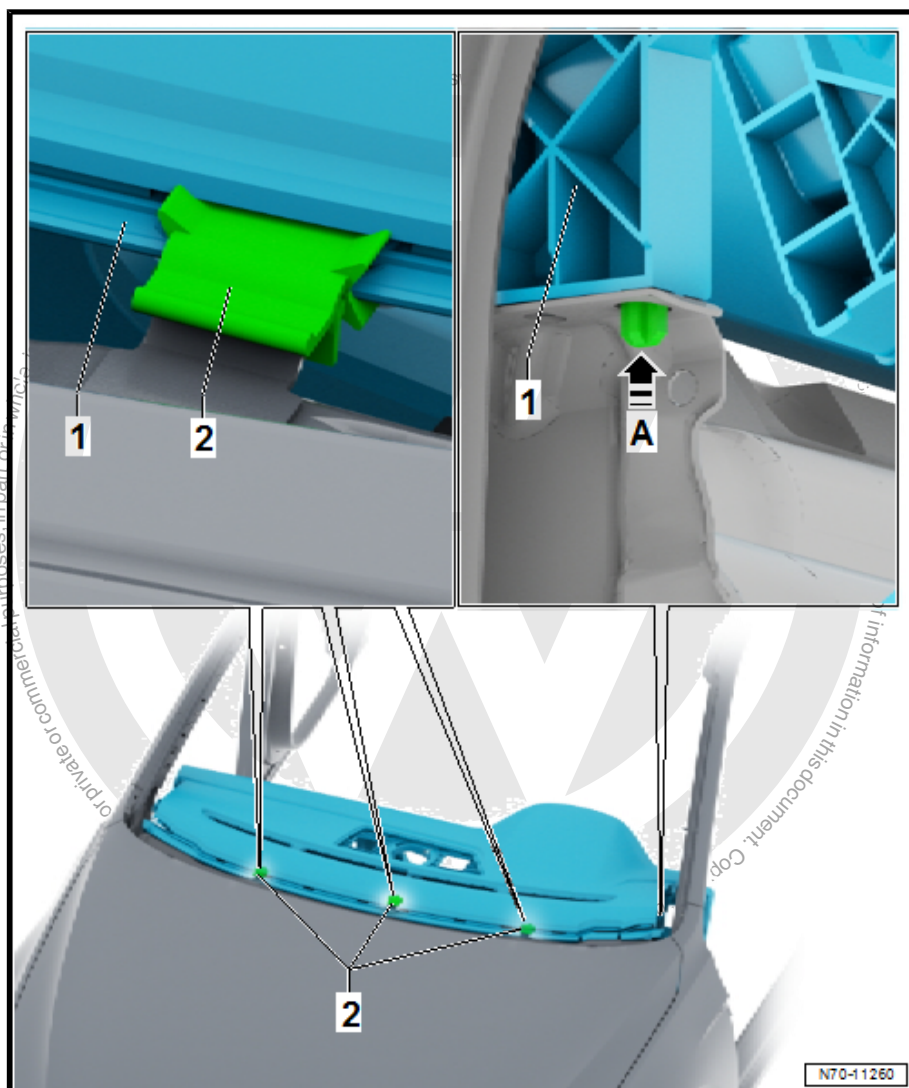




- On the front passenger side, remove the screws -1- through -4- for mounting the instrument panel -5-.



- Remove the screws -1 through 6- for mounting the instrument panel -7-.

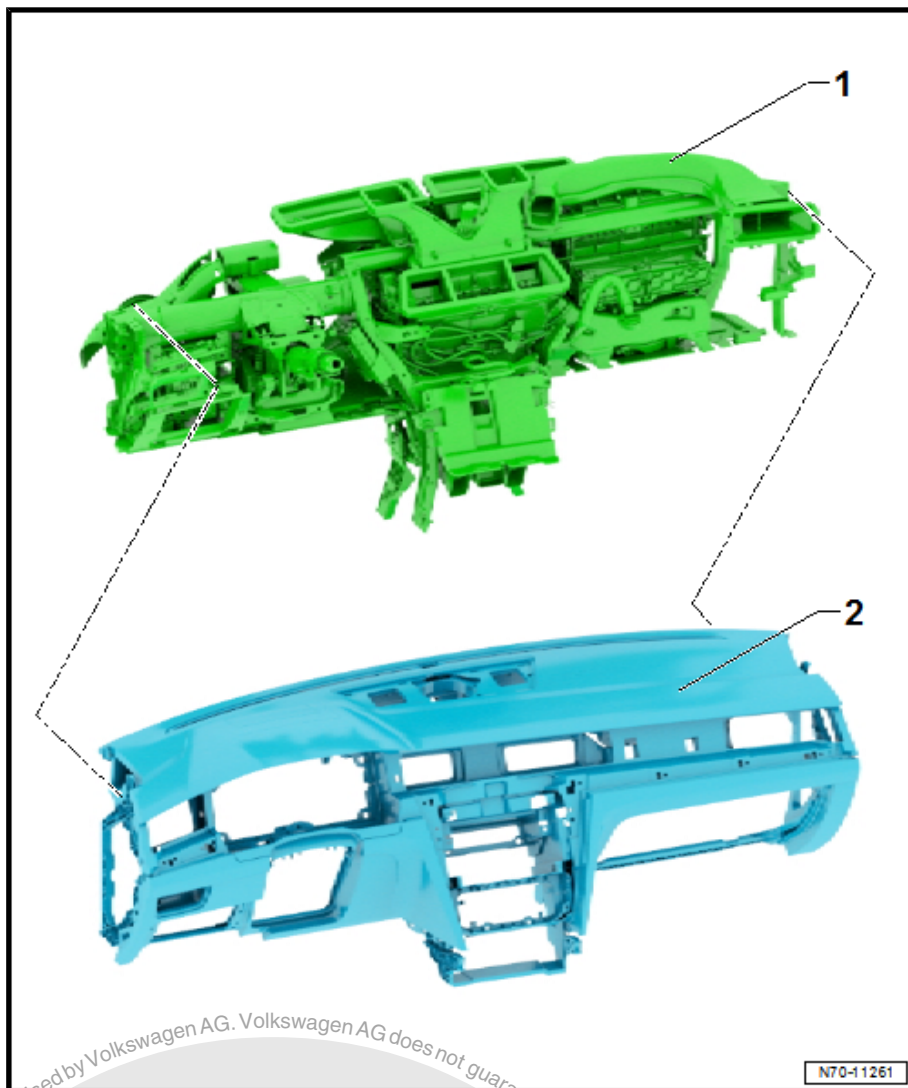


- Lift the instrument panel -1- until the left and right guide tabs -arrow A- are free.
- Remove the instrument panel -1- from the three mounts -2- in the windshield transition area.



Note

A second technician is required for removing the instrument panel from the vehicle.



- Remove the instrument panel -2- from the crossmember -1-.
- Disconnect the connector and free up the wiring harness from the instrument panel.
- Carefully remove the instrument panel from the vehicle interior and lay it on a soft surface.

Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



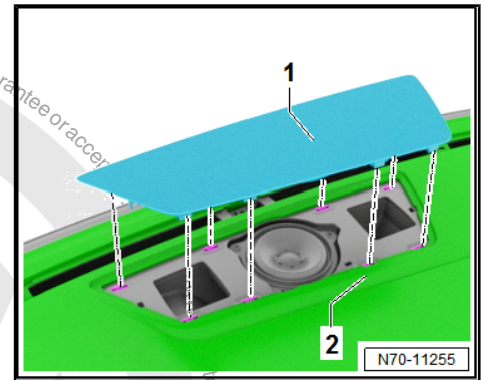
Vehicles without Center Speaker - R208- and without Indirect Ventilation

- Under the speaker trim -1-, seal off the openings for the speaker and indirect ventilation with "noise insulation". For the allocation, refer to the Parts Catalog.

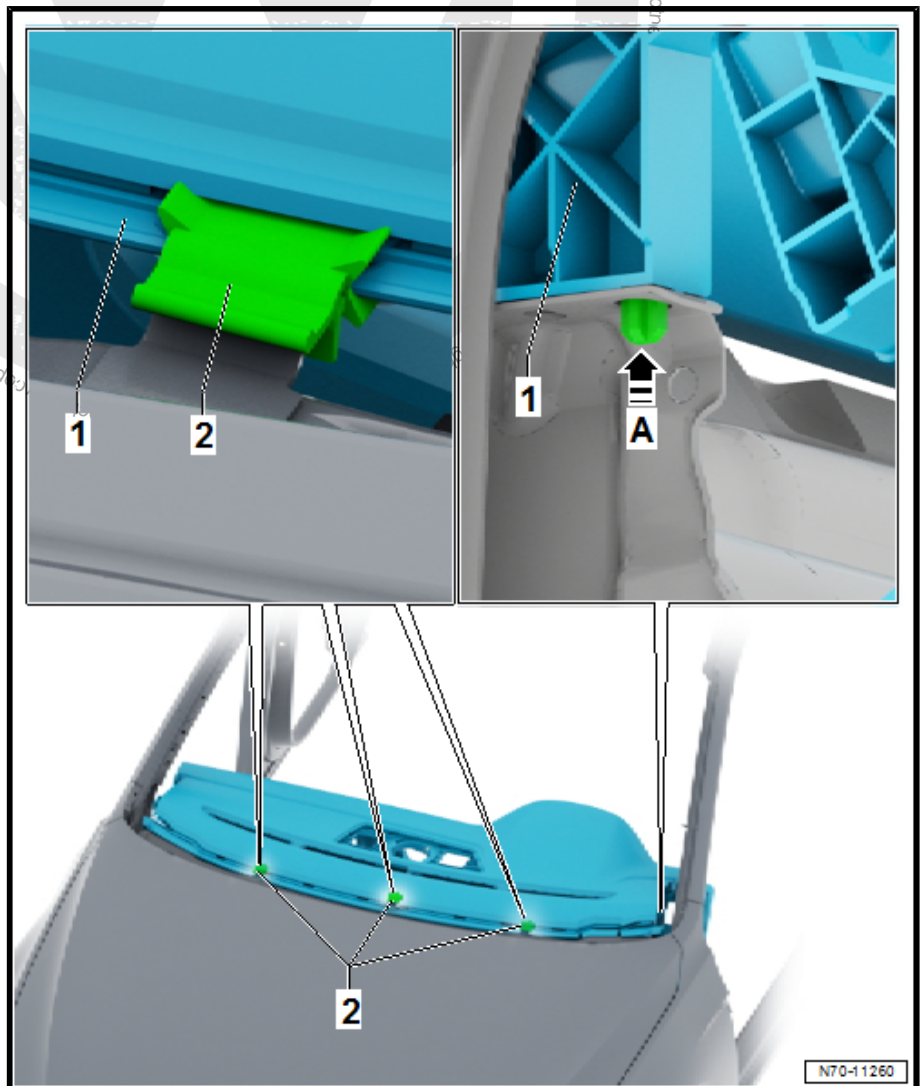


Note

Cut the "noise insulation" to the exact size of the openings.



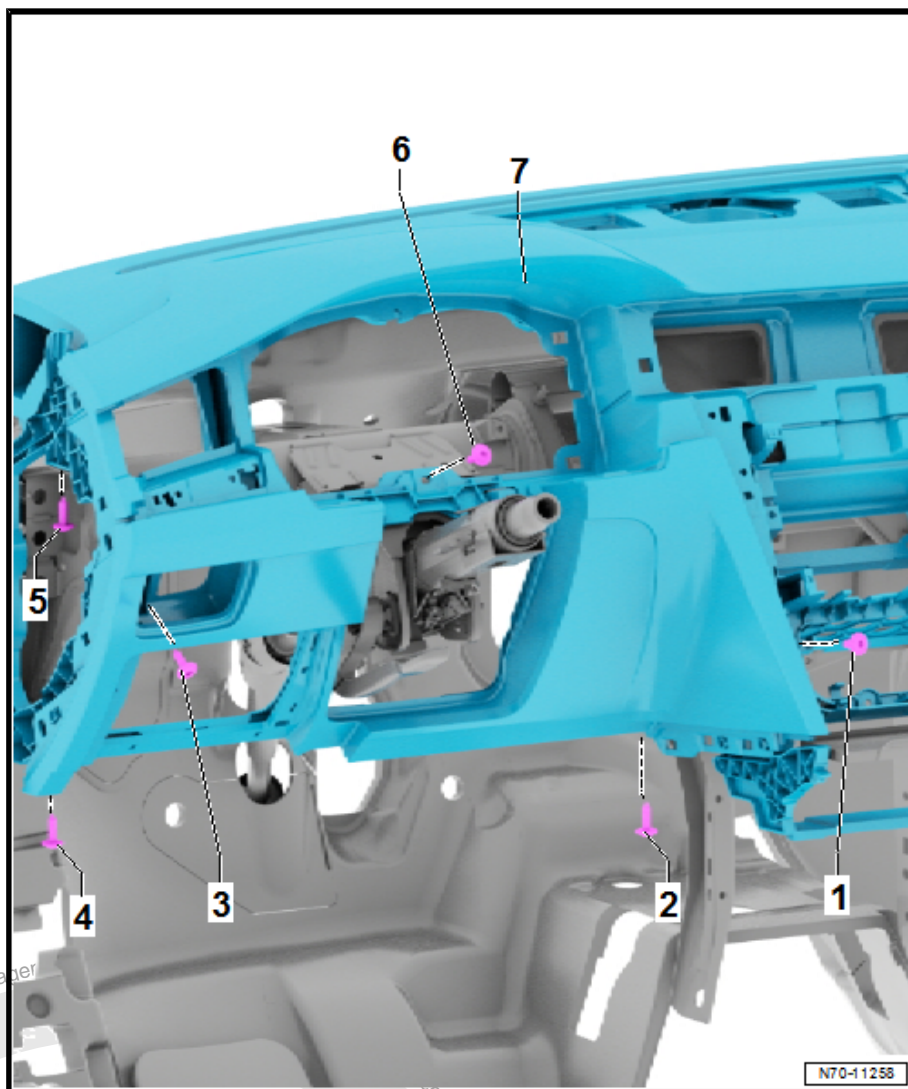
Continuation for All Vehicles



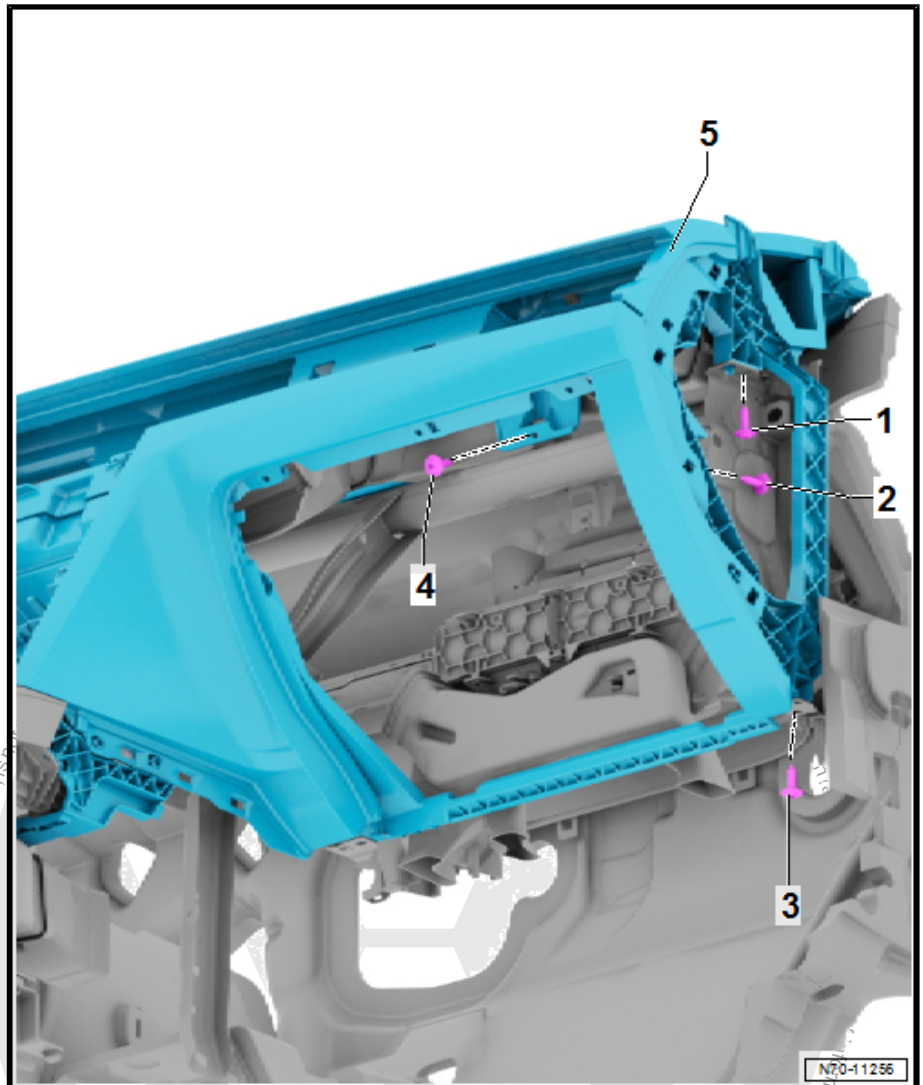
- Make sure that the mounts -2- are secured inside the body before installing the instrument panel -1-.
- Connect the connectors and secure the wiring harnesses to the instrument panel the same way they were during removal.
- With a second technician push the instrument panel -1- in the three mounts -2- in the windshield transition area.



- Insert the instrument panel using the left and right tab -arrow A- so it exactly fits in the guide holes.



- Fasten the instrument panel -7- with the six screws in the sequence: -6, 5, 4, 3, 2 and 1-.



- On the front passenger side, fasten the instrument panel -5- with the four screws in the sequence: -4, 3, 2 and 1-.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“3.1 Overview - Instrument Panel”, page 164](#)

Component	Tightening Specification
Screws for Center Speaker - R208-	1.5 Nm

3.8 Outer Instrument Panel Vent, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing, Driver Side Instrument Panel Vent

- Remove the instrument panel side cover on the driver side. Refer to ⇒ [“3.3 Instrument Panel Side Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 166](#).
- Remove the instrument panel decorative trim on the driver side. Refer to



⇒ [“3.4 Instrument Panel Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 167](#) .

- Remove the instrument cluster trim. Refer to [“3.6 Instrument Cluster Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 169](#) .
- Remove the screws -1- for the instrument panel vent -2-.
- If equipped, disconnect the connector for the Left Vent Temperature Sensor - G150- on the instrument panel vent -2-.
- Remove the instrument panel vent.

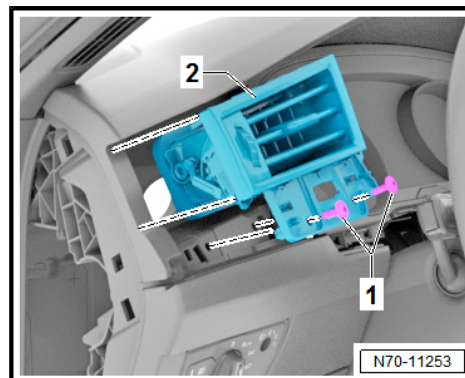
Installing, Driver Side Instrument Panel Vent

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

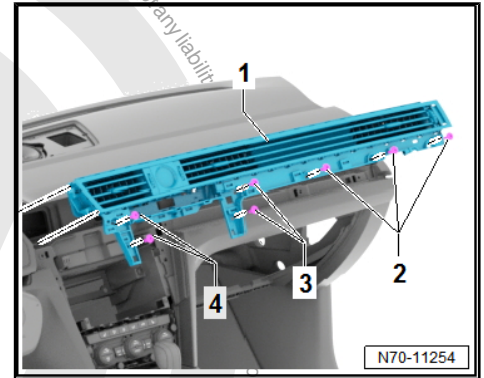


Removing, Front Passenger Side Instrument Panel Vent

- Remove the instrument cluster trim. Refer to [“3.6 Instrument Cluster Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 169](#) .
- Remove the radio/navigation system assembly frame. Refer to [“3.5 Radio/Navigation System Frame, Removing and Installing”, page 168](#) .
- Remove the instrument panel decorative trim on the front passenger side. Refer to [“3.4 Instrument Panel Decorative Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 167](#) .
- Remove the Front Information Display Control Head - J685- . Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Infotainment System; Component Location Overview - Infotainment System .
- If equipped, remove the Information Electronics Control Module 1 - J794- . Refer to ⇒ Communication; Rep. Gr. 91 ; Infotainment System; Information Electronics Control Module 1 - J794- , Removing and Installing .



- Remove the bolts -2-, 3 and 4-.
- If equipped, disconnect the connector for the Right Vent Temperature Sensor - G151- on the instrument panel vent.
- Disconnect the connectors above the glove compartment.
- If the wiring harness is too short, remove the glove compartment. Refer to ["1.12 Glove Compartment, Removing and Installing", page 26](#).
- Remove the front passenger side instrument panel vent -1- from the instrument panel.



Installing, Front Passenger Side Instrument Panel Vent

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Screws for instrument panel vent to instrument panel	1.5 Nm

3.9 Windshield Projection (Head-Up Display) Trim, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-

Removing

- Carefully loosen and lift the windshield projection trim -1- using the -T10383/1-.
- Pull the windshield projection trim -1- out of the instrument panel -2- and remove it upward.

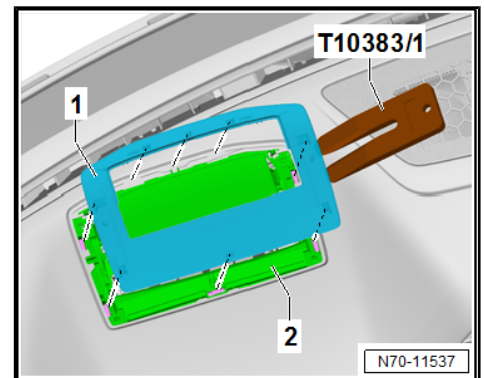
Installing

Further installation is performed in reverse order of removal, while noting the following:



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



3.10 Windshield Projection (Head-Up Display) Cover, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

- Move the steering wheel toward the rear and down as far as possible. Use the full adjustment range of the steering column adjuster.



- Switch off the ignition.
- Store the ignition key outside of the vehicle so that the ignition will not unintentionally start.
- Carefully unclip the top of the steering column trim panel gap cover from the mounts on the instrument cluster, but do not remove it completely. Refer to [⇒ “1.7 Upper Steering Column Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 21](#).
- Remove the Instrument Cluster - KX2- . Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 90 ; Instrument Cluster; Instrument Cluster - KX2- , Removing and Installing .
- Remove the Windshield Projection Head Up Display Control Module - J898- . Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 90 ; Instrument Cluster; Windshield Projection Head Up Display Control Module, Removing and Installing .



Note

Before removing, always cover the area underneath the windshield projection cover with a cloth, for example, so that no screws can fall in.

- Remove the screws -1, 2, 3 and 4-.
- Pivot the windshield projection cover -5- out of the instrument panel.
- Disconnect the connector and remove the windshield projection cover -5- from the instrument panel.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

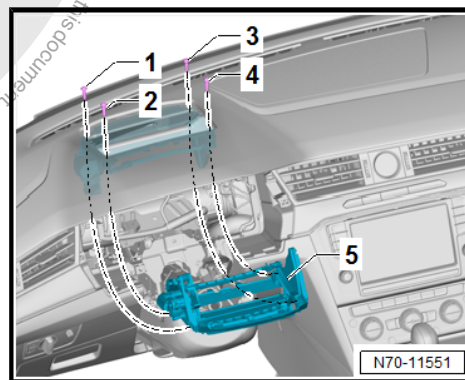
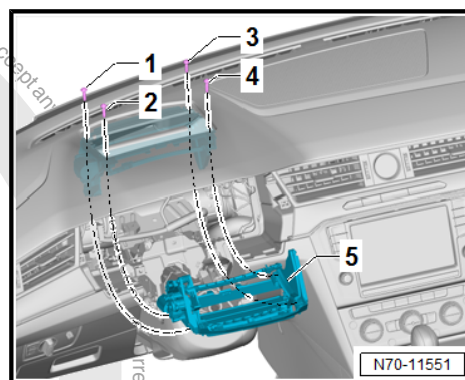
- ♦ *Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.*
- ♦ *Before installing, always cover the area underneath the windshield projection cover with a cloth, for example, so that no screws can fall in.*

- Fasten the windshield projection cover -5- in the corresponding mounts in the following tightening sequence:

- ♦ Screw -2-
- ♦ Screw -4-
- ♦ Screw -3-
- ♦ Screw -1-

Tightening Specifications

- ♦ Refer to [⇒ “3.2 Overview - Windshield Projection Cover and Trim \(Head Up Display\)”, page 166](#)





4 Instrument Panel Crossmember

⇒ ["4.1 Overview - Instrument Panel Crossmember", page 183](#)

⇒ ["4.2 Instrument Panel Crossmember, Removing and Installing", page 183](#)

⇒ ["4.3 Crash Bolster, Removing and Installing", page 187](#)

4.1 Overview - Instrument Panel Crossmember

1 - Securing Bracket

- ☐ Welded to the body

2 - Threaded Pins

- ☐ 20 Nm

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 20 Nm

4 - Instrument Panel Crossmember

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["4.2 Instrument Panel Crossmember, Removing and Installing", page 183](#).

5 - Nuts

- ☐ 20 Nm

6 - Screws

- ☐ 4 Nm
- ☐ If one of the screws is overtightened when installing the heater and A/C unit, use the screw "N. 911.981.01" as a replacement.

7 - Bolts

- ☐ 20 Nm

8 - Bolt

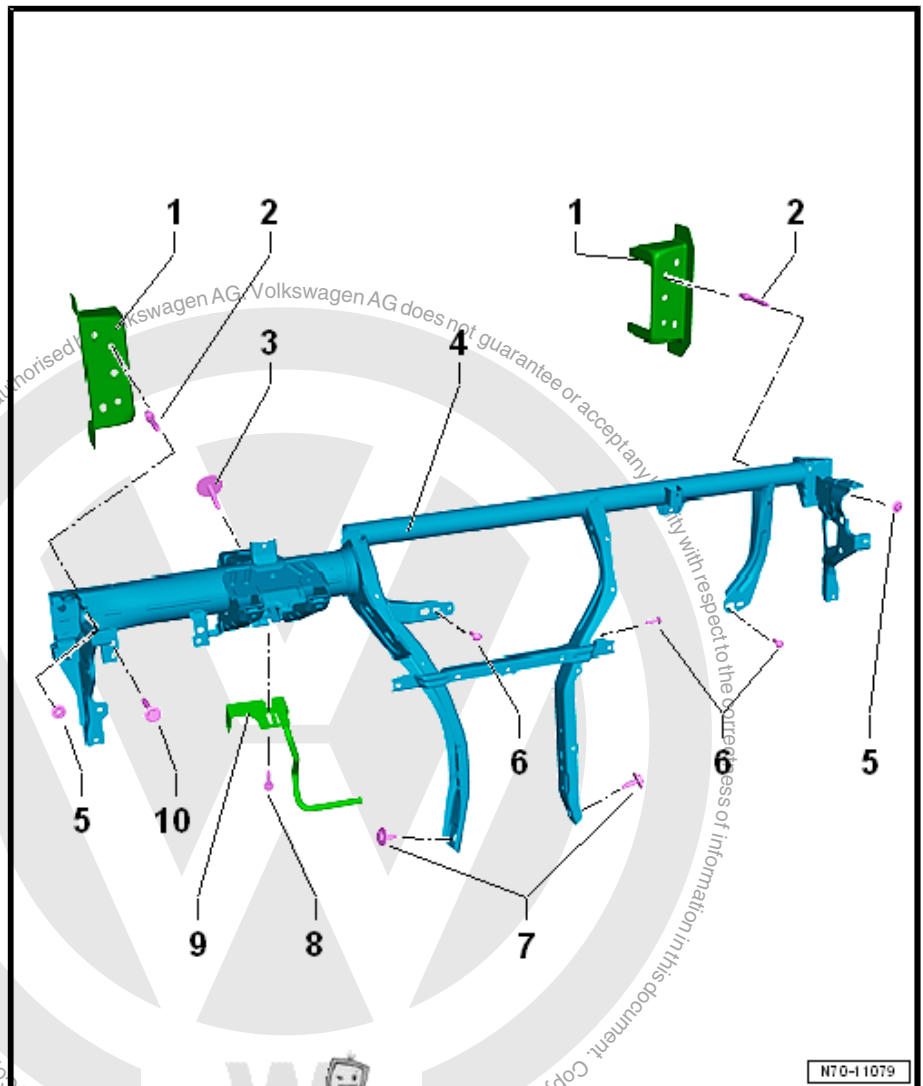
- ☐ 20 Nm

9 - Crash Bolster

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["4.3 Crash Bolster, Removing and Installing", page 187](#).

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 20 Nm



4.2 Instrument Panel Crossmember, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

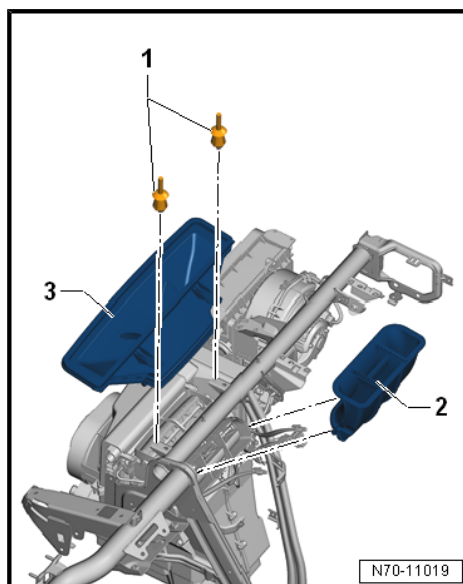
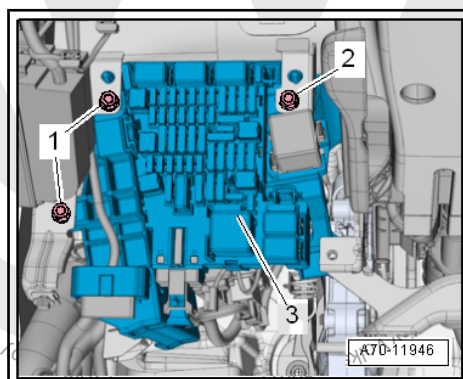
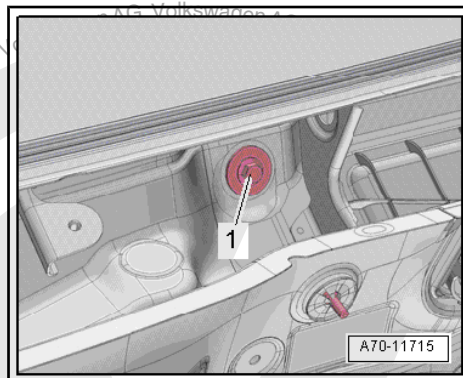


Note

It may be helpful to make drawings or take photos of any wires that are going to be loosened, removed and then installed. This assures the wires will be reconnected correctly.

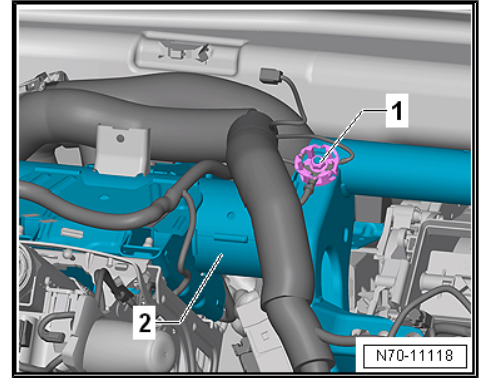
Removing

- Remove the left plenum chamber cover. Refer to ⇒ Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 50 ; Bulkhead; Overview - Plenum Chamber Cover .
- Remove the bolt -1- for the brace and crossmember from the plenum chamber bulkhead.
- Remove the instrument panel. Refer to ⇒ [“3.7 Instrument Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 170](#) .
- Remove the knee airbag with igniter. Refer to ⇒ [“10.2 Knee Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing”, page 123](#) .
- Remove the footwell vent on the driver side. Refer to ⇒ Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning; Rep. Gr. 87 ; Air Routing; Overview - Passenger Compartment Air Routing and Air Distribution .
- Remove the Data Bus on Board Diagnostic Interface - J533- . Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 97 ; Control Modules; Component Location Overview - Control Modules .
- Remove the bolts -1 and 2-.
- Disengage the load distributor -3- on the instrument panel crossmember.
- Remove the steering column from the instrument panel crossmember and lay it on the underbody. Refer to ⇒ Suspension, Wheels, Steering; Rep. Gr. 48 ; Steering Column; Steering Column, Removing and Installing .
- If equipped, remove the Access/Start System Interface J965- . Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 97 ; Control Modules; Component Location Overview - Control Modules .
- Release the expanding rivet -1- and remove it upward.
- Remove the intermediate piece for the defroster air vent -3- from the instrument panel crossmember.
- Unclip and remove the intermediate piece for the center vent -2- from the heater and A/C unit.

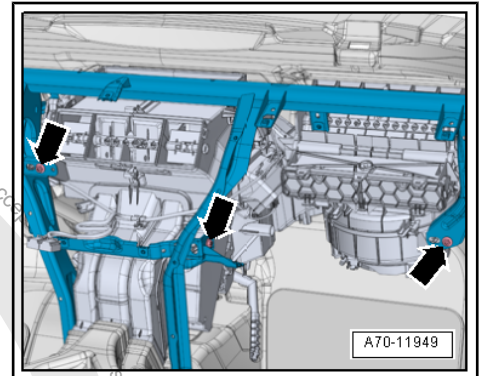




- Remove the nut -1- from the crossmember ground connection -2- and free up the wires.
- Remove the footwell vent on the front passenger side. Refer to ⇒ Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning; Rep. Gr. 87 ; Air Routing; Overview - Passenger Compartment Air Ducts and Air Distribution .



- Remove the bolts -arrows- for the heater and A/C unit.

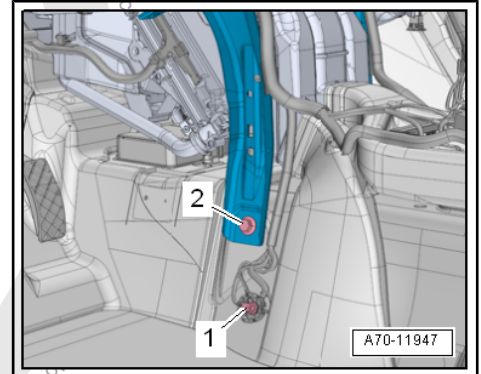


- Push the carpet in the threaded connection area to the side. Remove the left and right bolt -2- for the support for the instrument panel crossmember.

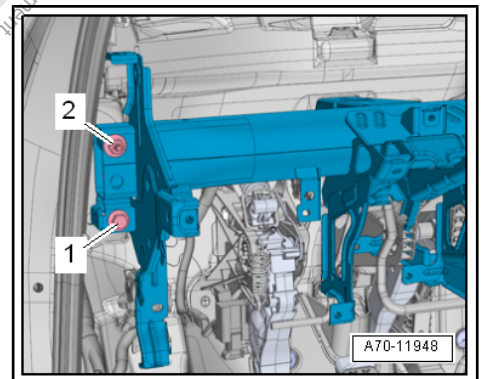


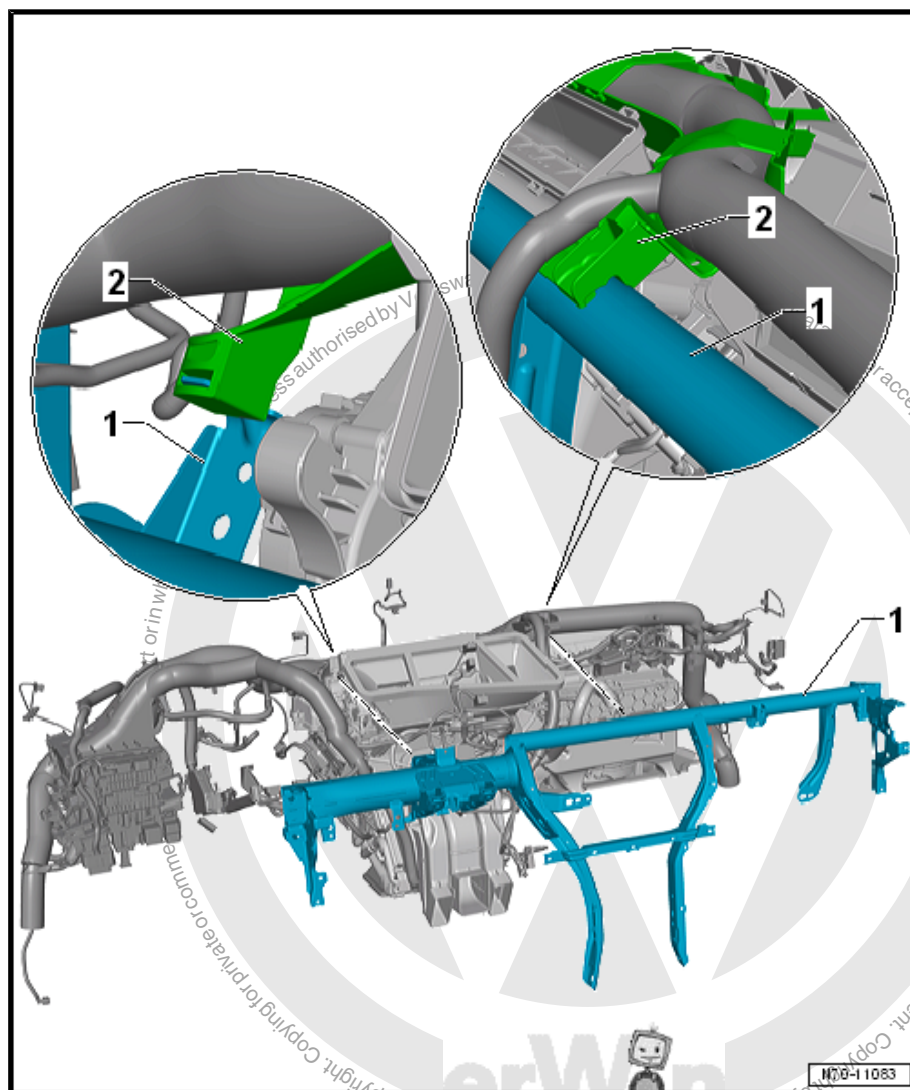
Note

Mark the height and side position on the instrument panel crossmember for reinstallation.



- Mark the height and side position of the crossmember in the vehicle near the nut -1- on the left and right sides using a scribe.
- Mark the height and side position of the crossmember in the vehicle near the bolt -2- on the left and right sides using a scribe.
- Remove the bolt -1- for the instrument panel crossmember.
- Remove the nut -2- for the instrument panel crossmember from the left and right A-pillar.
- Unclip the wires from the instrument panel crossmember, disengage and free them up.





- Remove the wiring harness bracket -2- from the instrument panel crossmember -1-.
- Loosen the instrument panel crossmember -1- and pull it slightly to the rear.
- Carefully lift the instrument panel crossmember -1- out of the vehicle with the help of a second technician. Pay attention to the wiring harnesses.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

- ◆ Before installing the instrument panel crossmember, line it up with the markings made before it was removed.
- ◆ Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



Caution

If the crossmember is being replaced with a new part, malfunctions may occur due to faulty ground connections.

- ◆ *The ground connections must be free of paint, coating, and corrosion so that an error-free ground connection is guaranteed.*
- ◆ *The mounting threads and contact surfaces between the crossmember and the securing brackets must also be free of paint, coating and corrosion. The threaded connections serve as a ground connection for the knee airbag.*
- ◆ *The contact surfaces for the left and right tunnel support must be free of paint on both sides. They serve as the main ground path.*

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["4.1 Overview - Instrument Panel Crossmember", page 183](#)

Component	Tightening Specification
Nut on crossmember ground connection	9 Nm
Three load distributor screws to crossmember	4.5 Nm

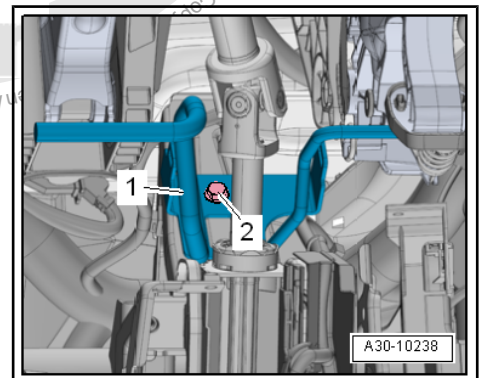
4.3 Crash Bolster, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Removing

- Remove the knee airbag with igniter. Refer to ⇒ ["10.2 Knee Airbag with Igniter, Removing and Installing", page 123](#).
- Remove the footwell vent on the driver side. Refer to ⇒ Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning; Rep. Gr. 87 ; Air Routing; Overview - Passenger Compartment Air Routing and Air Distribution .
- Remove the Data Bus on Board Diagnostic Interface - J533- . Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 97 ; Control Modules; Component Location Overview - Control Modules .
- Remove the bolt -2-, disengage the crash bolster -1- and guide it out.





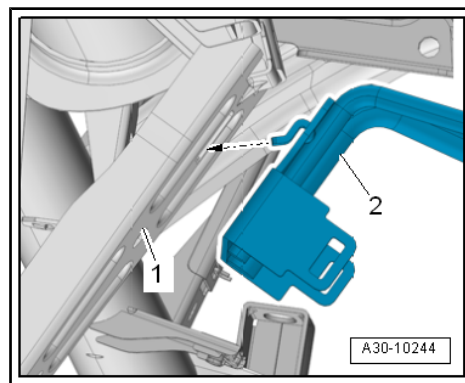
Installing

- Engage the crash bolster -2- on the crossmember -1-
-arrow- and fasten.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ [“4.1 Overview - Instrument Panel Crossmember”](#),
[page 183](#)





5 Vehicle Interior Trim Panels

⇒ [“5.1 Component Location Overview - Vehicle Interior Trim Panels”, page 189](#)

⇒ [“5.2 Overview - Sill Panel”, page 191](#)

⇒ [“5.3 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel”, page 192](#)

⇒ [“5.4 Overview - B-Pillar Trim Panel”, page 194](#)

⇒ [“5.5 Overview - C-Pillar Trim Panel”, page 196](#)

⇒ [“5.6 Overview - Wheel Housing Trim Panel”, page 196](#)

⇒ [“5.7 Overview - Footrest and Carpet”, page 198](#)

⇒ [“5.8 Sill Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 199](#)

⇒ [“5.9 A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 200](#)

⇒ [“5.10 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 201](#)

⇒ [“5.11 B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 207](#)

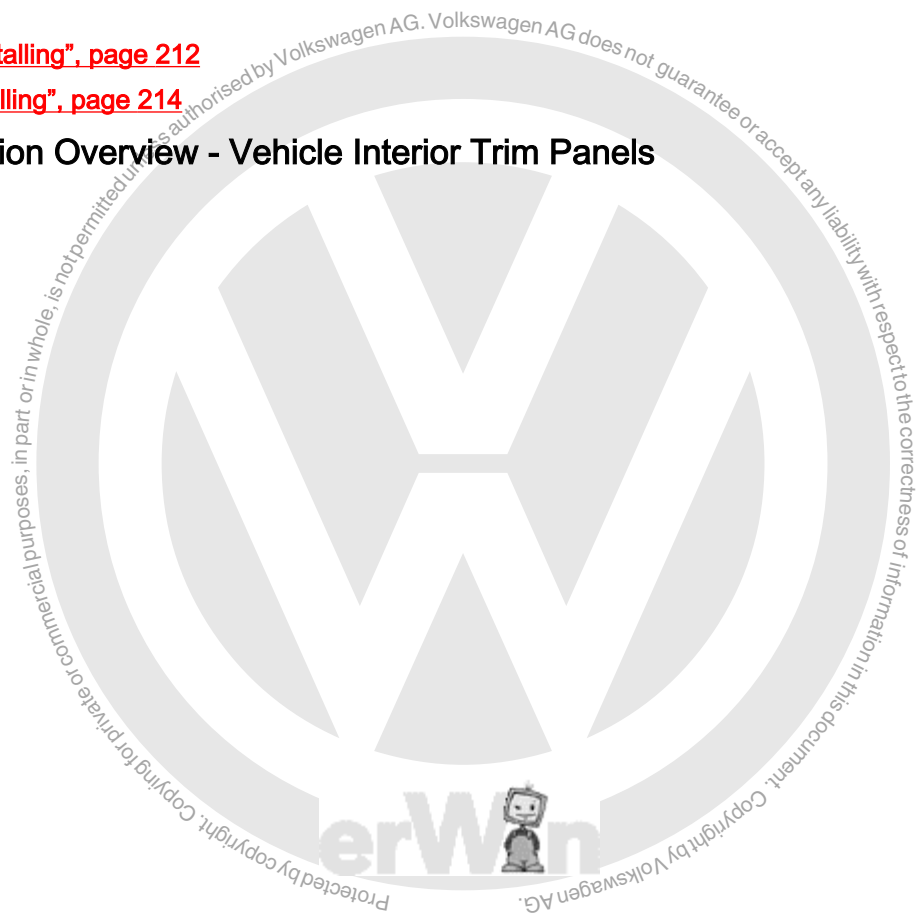
⇒ [“5.12 C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 209](#)

⇒ [“5.13 Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 210](#)

⇒ [“5.14 Footrest, Removing and Installing”, page 212](#)

⇒ [“5.15 Carpet, Removing and Installing”, page 214](#)

5.1 Component Location Overview - Vehicle Interior Trim Panels





1 - Rear Shelf

2 - C-Pillar Trim Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to [⇒ "5.5 Overview - C-Pillar Trim Panel", page 196](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "5.12 C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 209](#).

3 - Wheel Housing Trim Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to [⇒ "5.6 Overview - Wheel Housing Trim Panel", page 196](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "5.13 Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 210](#).

4 - B-Pillar Lower Trim Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to [⇒ "5.4 Overview - B-Pillar Trim Panel", page 194](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "5.11 B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 207](#).

5 - B-Pillar Upper Trim Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to [⇒ "5.4 Overview - B-Pillar Trim Panel", page 194](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "5.11 B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 207](#).

6 - A-Pillar Gap Cover

- ❑ Overview. Refer to [⇒ "5.3 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel", page 192](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "5.9 A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing", page 200](#).

7 - A-Pillar Upper Trim Panel

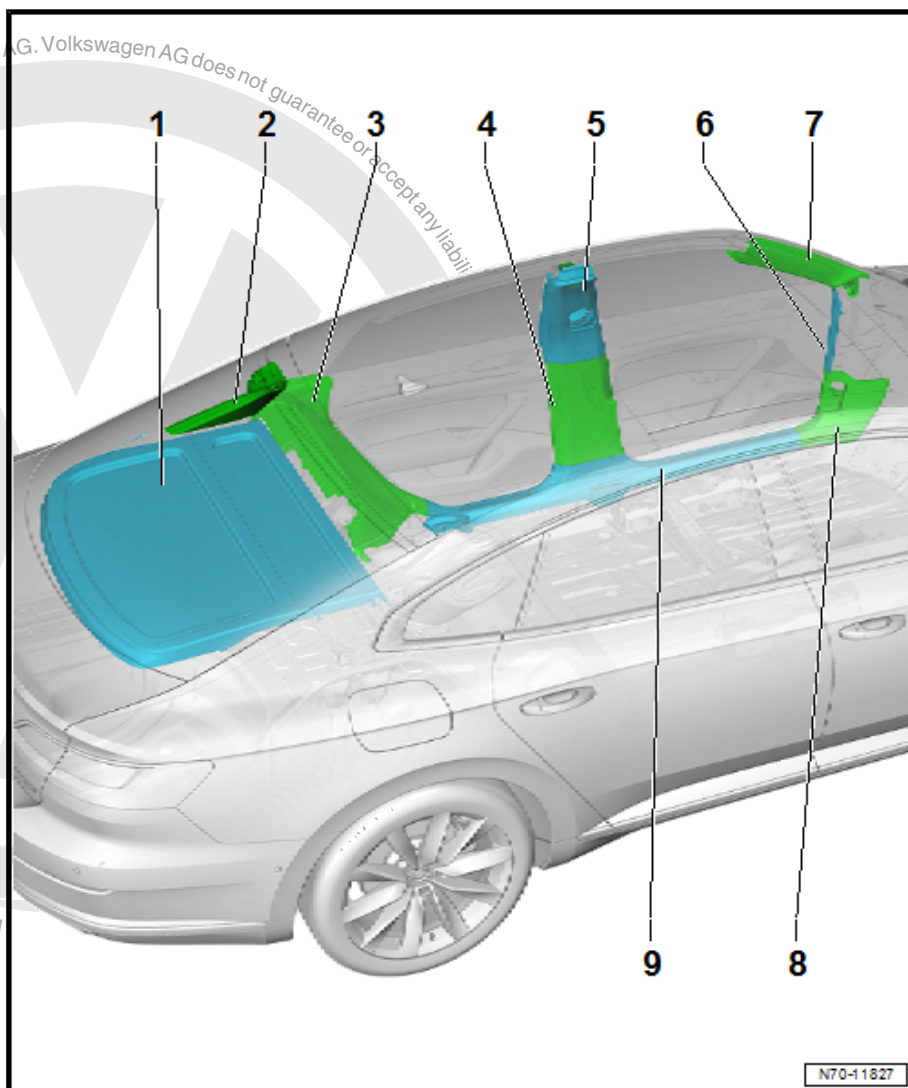
- ❑ Overview. Refer to [⇒ "5.3.1 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel, Upper A-Pillar Trim Panel", page 192](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "5.10.1 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Upper Trim Panel", page 201](#).

8 - A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to [⇒ "5.3 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel", page 192](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "5.10 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 201](#).

9 - Sill Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to [⇒ "5.2 Overview - Sill Panel", page 191](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "5.8 Sill Panel, Removing and Installing", page 199](#).





5.2 Overview - Sill Panel



Note

The illustration shows the sill panel strip on the left side. The right side is the same.

1 - Sill Panel

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.8 Sill Panel, Removing and Installing"](#),
[page 199](#).

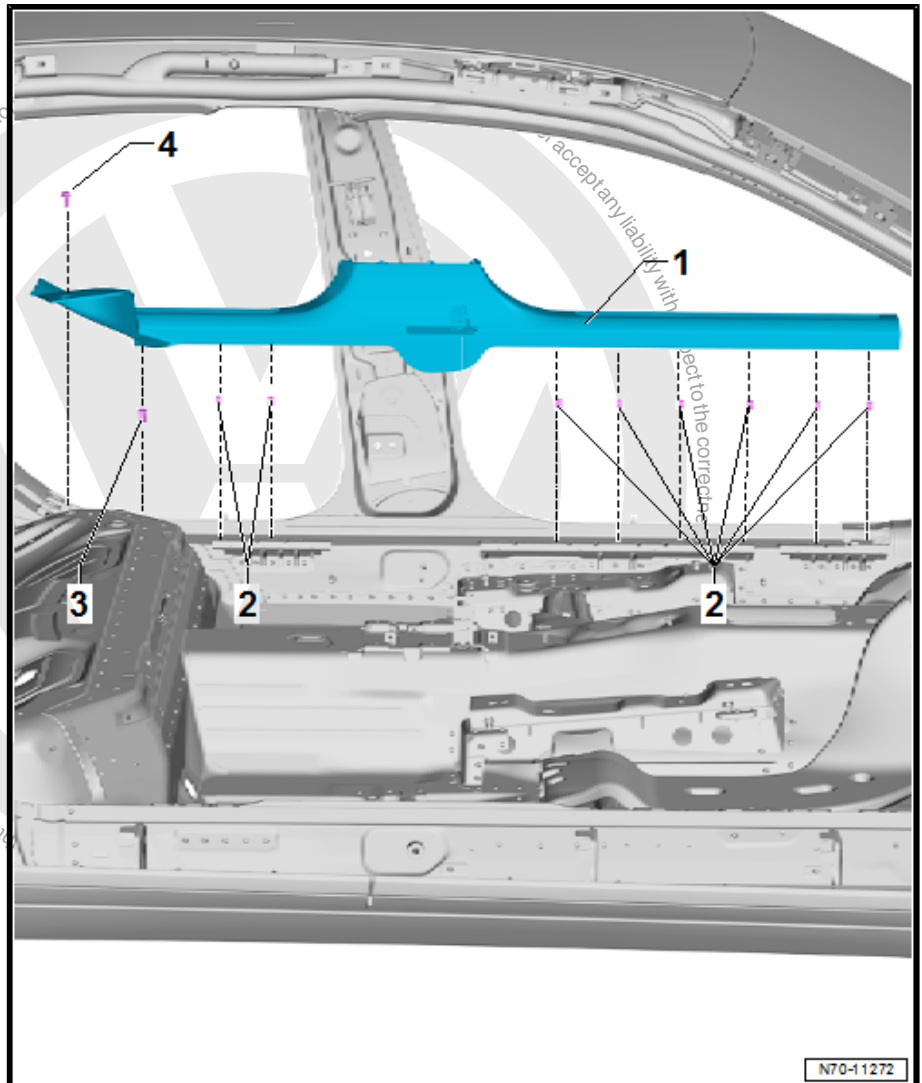
2 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in the sill panel
- ❑ Replace damaged or deformed clips

3 - Bracket

- ❑ Insert in the body

4 - Expanding Clip





5.3 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel

⇒ ["5.3.1 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel, Upper A-Pillar Trim Panel"](#), page 192

⇒ ["5.3.2 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel, A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel"](#), page 193

5.3.1 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel, Upper A-Pillar Trim Panel



Note

The illustration shows the A-pillar trim panels on the left side. The right side is the same.

1 - A-Pillar Upper Trim Panel

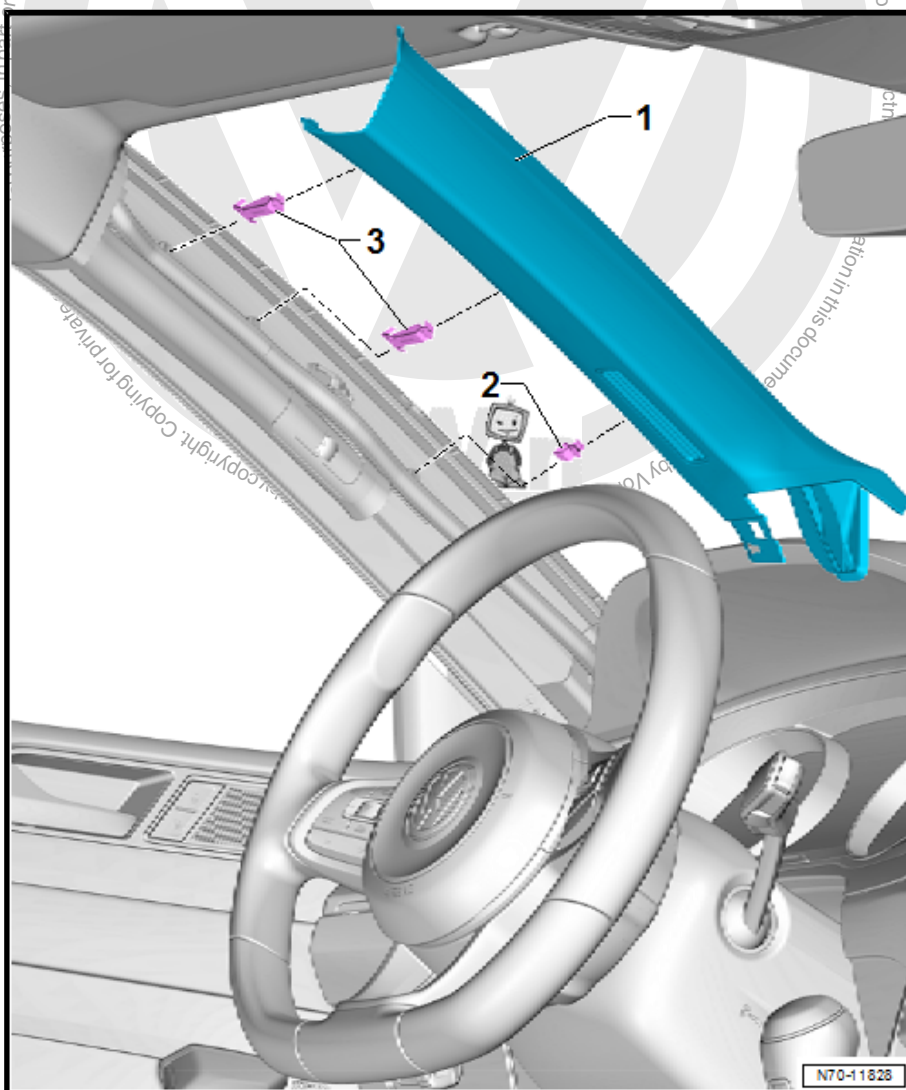
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.10.1 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Upper Trim Panel"](#), page 201.

2 - Clip

- ☐ Insert in the trim panel
- ☐ Replace damaged or deformed clips

3 - Clips

- ☐ With hooks
- ☐ Insert in the trim panel
- ☐ Replace after removing.





5.3.2 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel, A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel

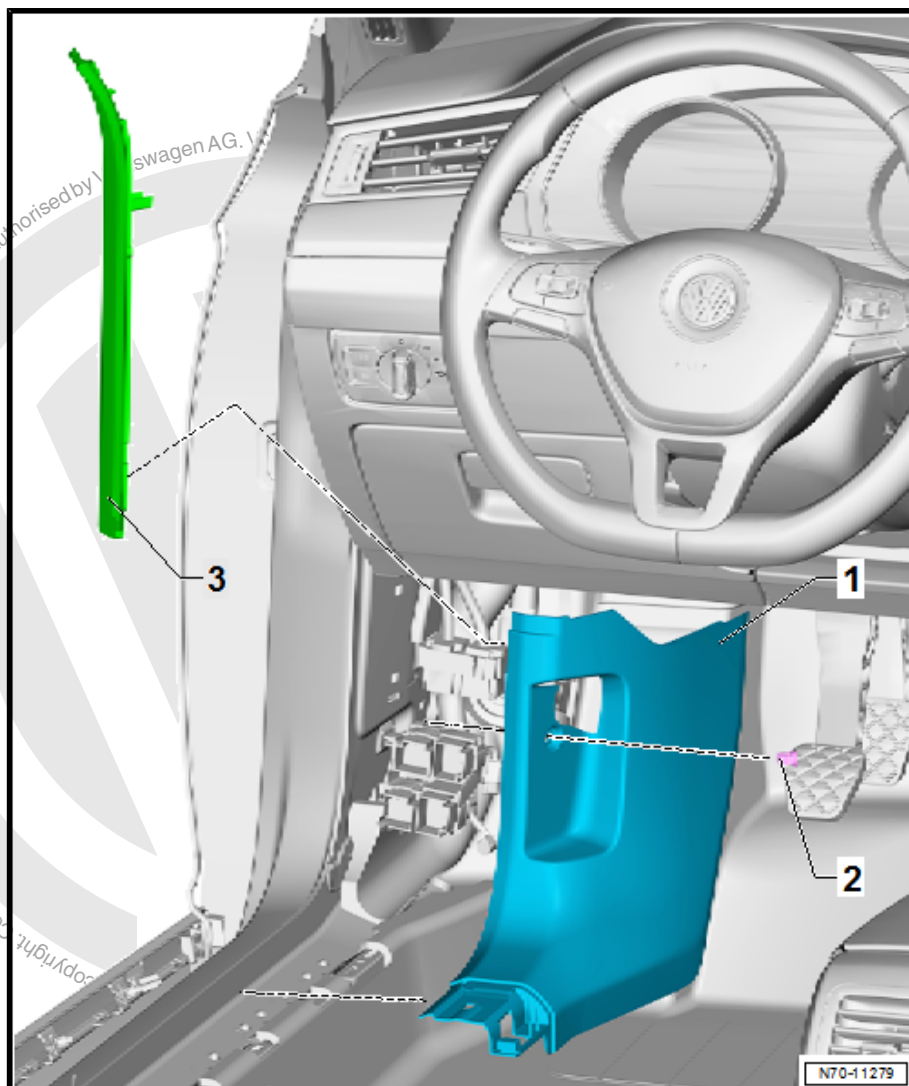
1 - A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.10.2 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel, Driver Side", page 203](#).

2 - Clip

3 - A-Pillar Gap Cover

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.9 A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing", page 200](#).





5.3.3 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel, A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel, RHD

1 - A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.10.3 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel, Driver Side, RHD", page 205](#).

2 - Expanding Clip

3 - Spreader Plug

4 - Nut

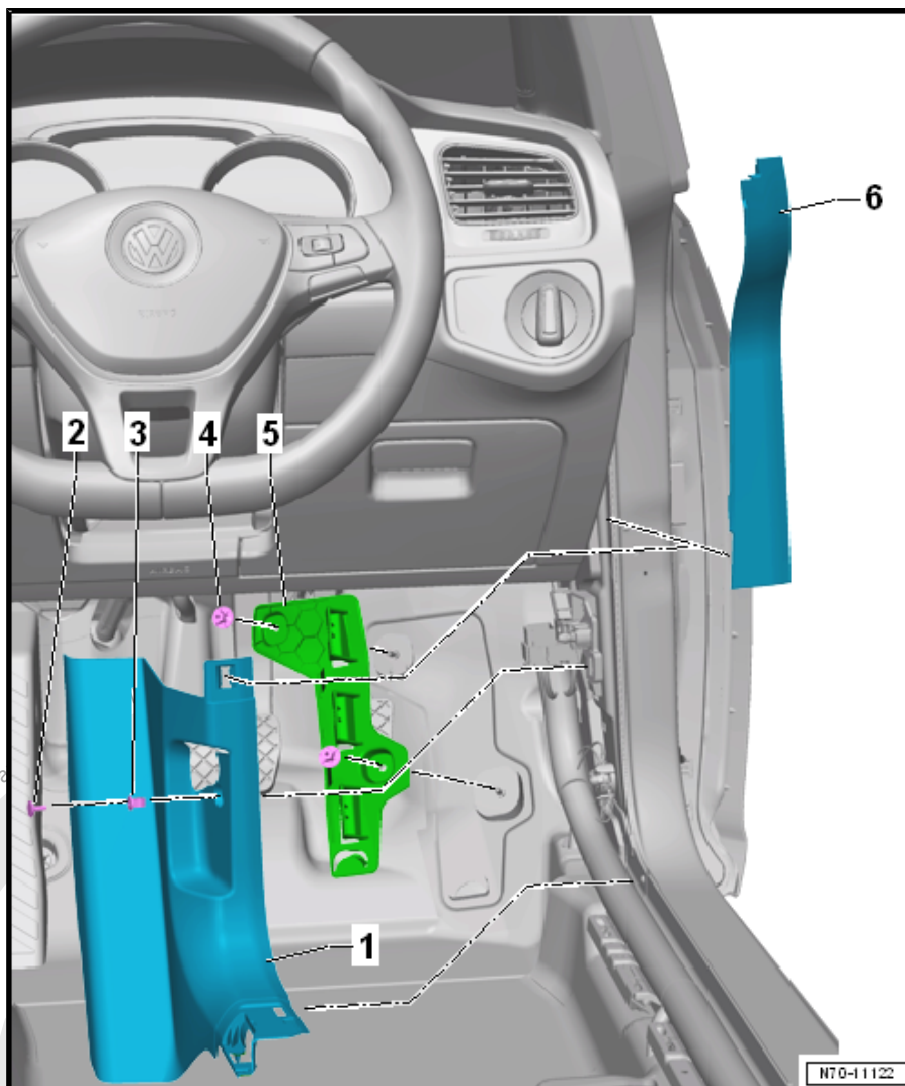
- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ 2 Nm

5 - Bracket

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.10.3 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel, Driver Side, RHD", page 205](#).

6 - A-Pillar Gap Cover

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.9 A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing", page 200](#).



5.4 Overview - B-Pillar Trim Panel



Note

The illustration shows the B-pillar trim panels on the left side. The right side is the same.



1 - B-Pillar Upper Trim Panel

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.11 B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 207](#) .

2 - Screw

- ☐ 4.5 Nm

3 - Cap

- ☐ With the "Airbag" symbol
- ☐ Replace if damaged

4 - B-Pillar Lower Trim Panel

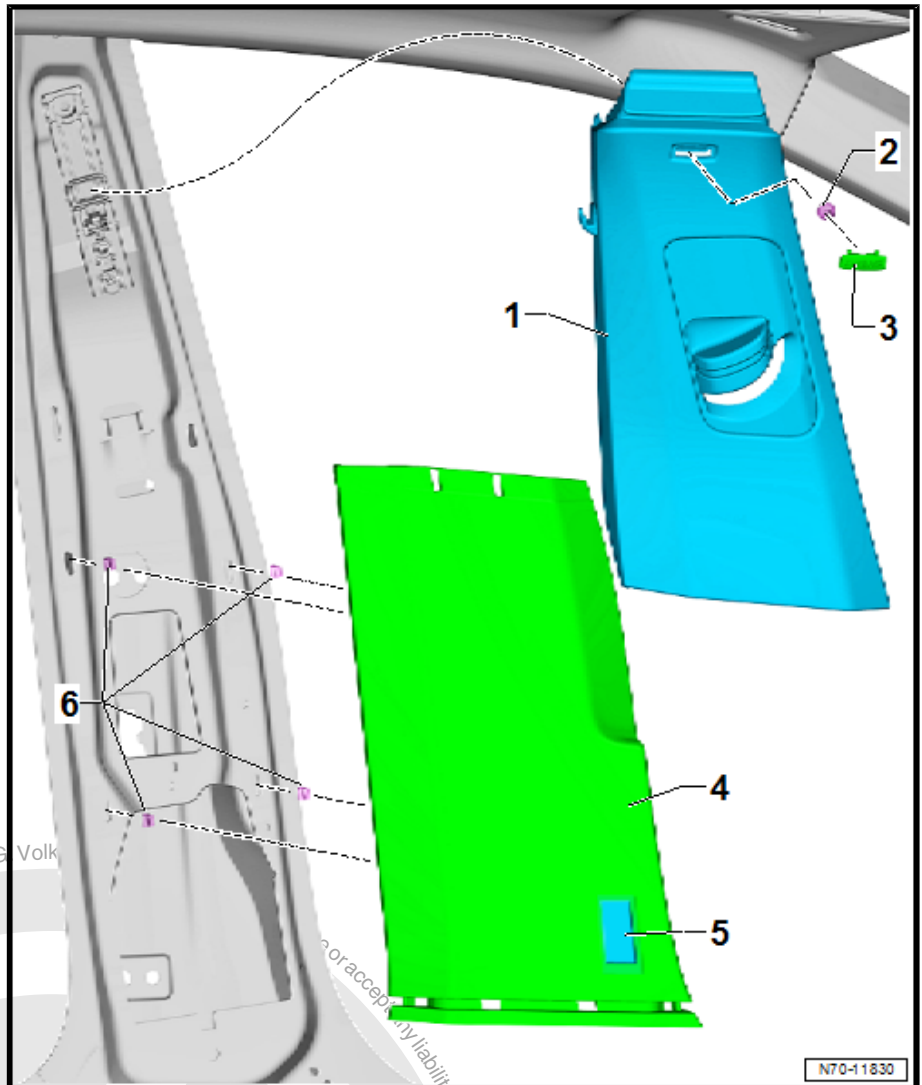
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.11 B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 207](#) .

5 - Interior Monitoring and Vehicle Inclination Deactivation Button - E616-

- ☐ Removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Anti-Theft Alarm System; Overview - Interior Monitoring .

6 - Clips

- ☐ Insert in the trim panel
- ☐ Replace damaged or deformed clips





5.5 Overview - C-Pillar Trim Panel



Note

The illustration shows the C-pillar trim panel on the left side. The right side is the same.

1 - C-Pillar Trim Panel

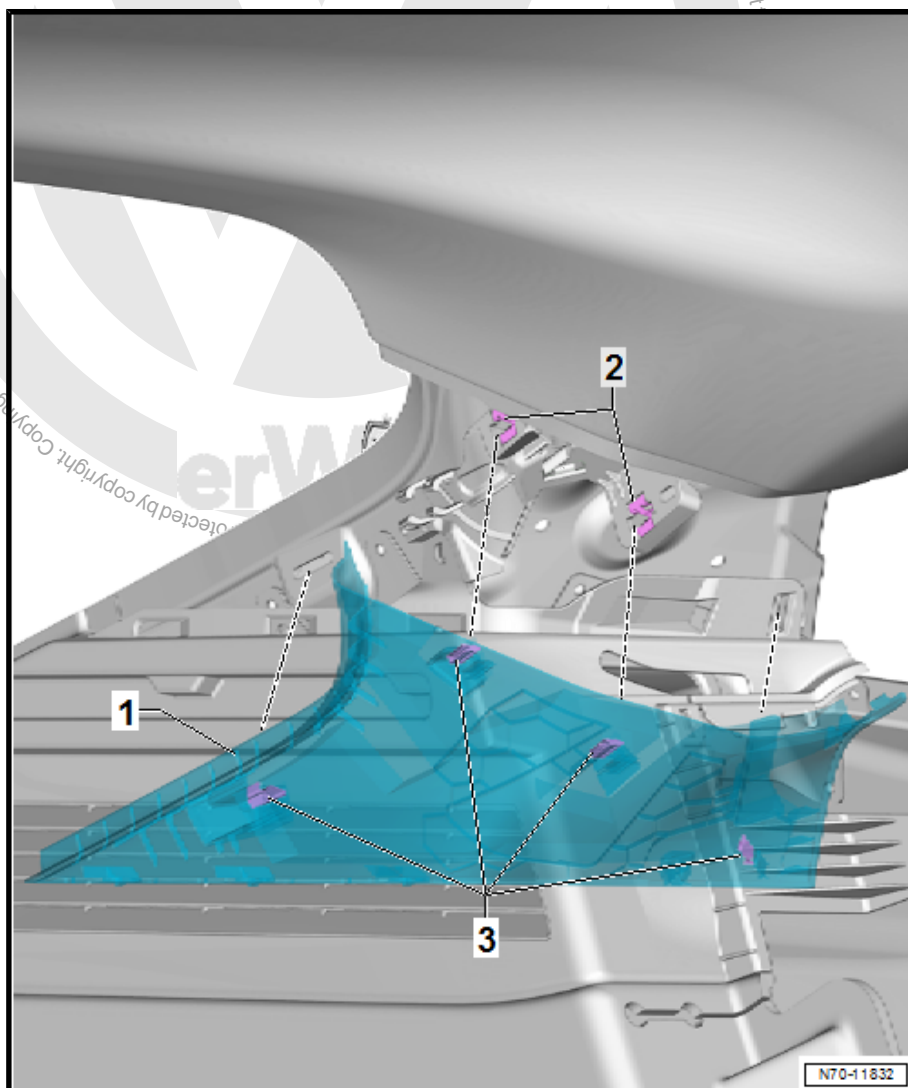
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.12 C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 209](#).

2 - Sleeves

- ❑ Insert in the bracket for the C-pillar trim panel
- ❑ Counterpart of clips -Item 3-
⇒ [Item 3 \(page 196\)](#)

3 - Clips

- ❑ Insert in the trim panel
- ❑ Replace damaged or deformed clips



5.6 Overview - Wheel Housing Trim Panel



Note

The illustration shows the wheel housing trim panel on the left side. The right side is the same.



1 - Wheel Housing Trim Panel

- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment

◆ -A- = with rear thorax airbag. Refer to
⇒ ["8.2 Overview - Rear Thorax Airbag", page 112](#) .

◆ -B- = without rear thorax airbag

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.13 Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 210](#) .

2 - Clip

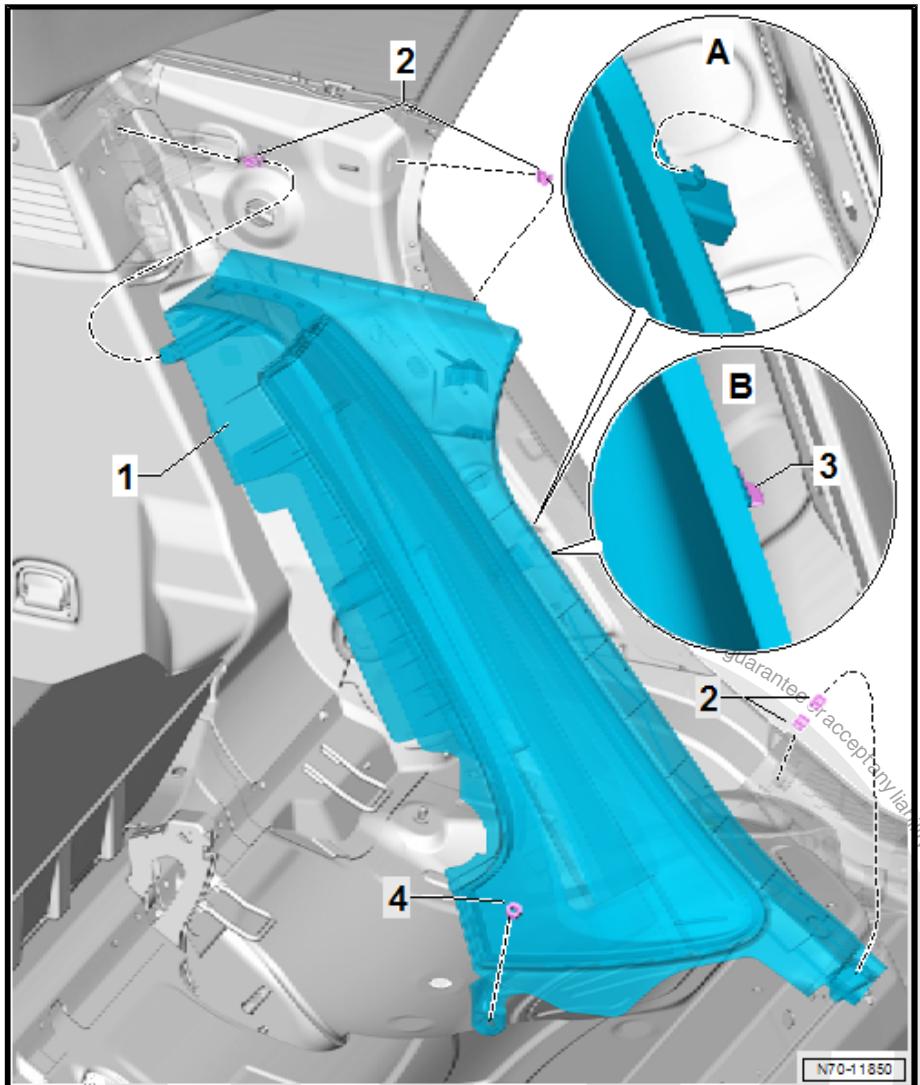
- ☐ Insert in the trim panel
- ☐ Replace damaged or deformed clips

3 - Clip

- ☐ Only for vehicles without rear thorax airbag
- ☐ Insert in the trim panel
- ☐ Replace damaged or deformed clips

4 - Lock Washer or Nut

- ☐ Replace after removing.
- ☐ Nut tightening specification: 6 Nm





5.7 Overview - Footrest and Carpet

⇒ ["5.7.1 Overview - Footrest and Carpet", page 198](#)

5.7.1 Overview - Footrest and Carpet

1 - Footrest

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.14.1 Footrest, Removing and Installing", page 212](#).

2 - Nuts

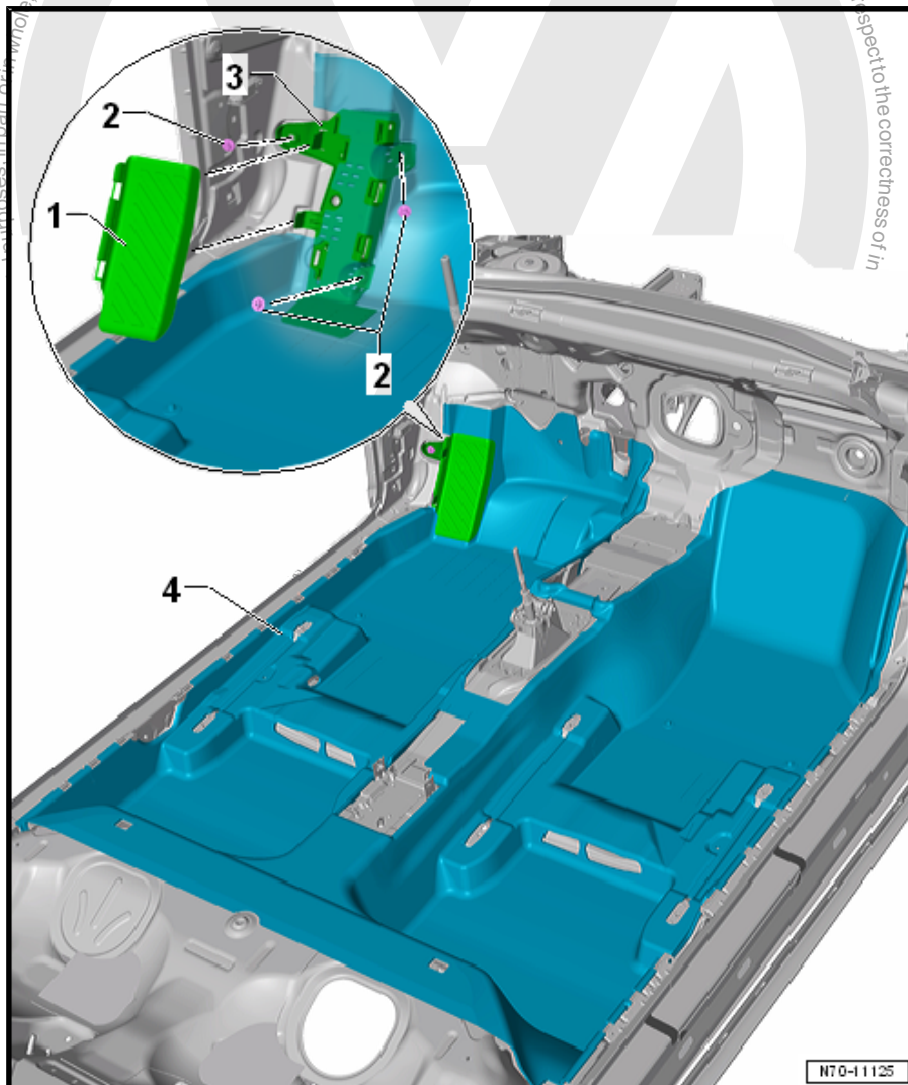
- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Bracket

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.14.1 Footrest, Removing and Installing", page 212](#).

4 - Carpet

- ❑ One piece
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.15 Carpet, Removing and Installing", page 214](#).





5.7.2 Overview - Footrest and Carpet, RHD Vehicles

1 - Footrest

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.14.2 Footrest, Removing and Installing, RHD Vehicles", page 213](#).

2 - Screw

- ❑ 2 Nm

3 - Nuts

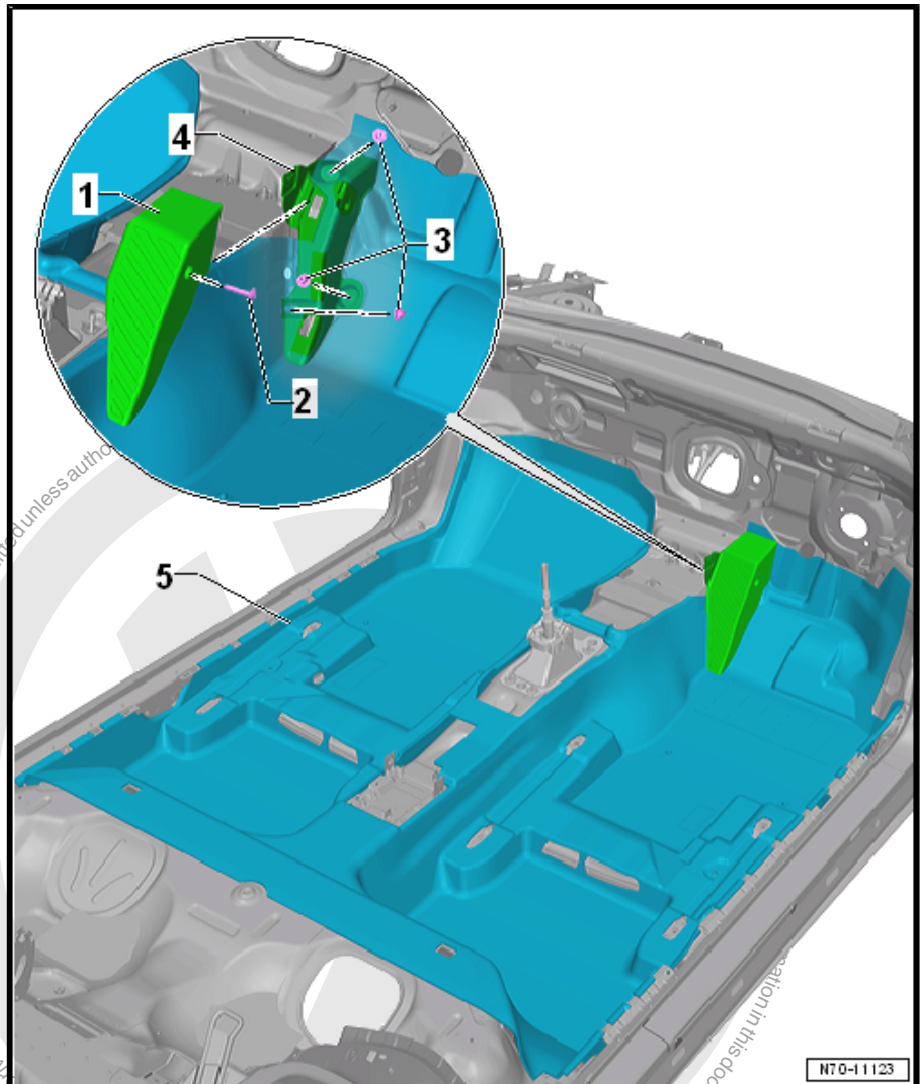
- ❑ 2 Nm

4 - Bracket

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.14.2 Footrest, Removing and Installing, RHD Vehicles", page 213](#).

5 - Carpet

- ❑ One piece
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["5.15 Carpet, Removing and Installing", page 214](#).



5.8 Sill Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-



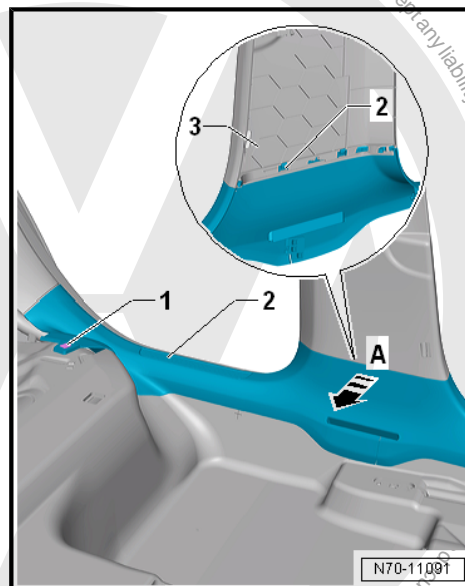
Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.



Removing

- Remove the rear bench seat. Refer to [⇒ "3.6 Bench Seat/Single Seat, Removing and Installing", page 296](#).
- Remove the expanding clip -1-.
- Release the sill panel locking tabs -2- from the lower B-pillar trim panel -3- using the -T10383- -arrow A-.



- Loosen the sill panel -1- from the side sill and door seal molding using the -T10383- -arrows-.
- Remove the sill panel -1- slightly forward at the same time.
- Open the seat belt guide cover and guide the seat belt out.
- Remove the sill panel.

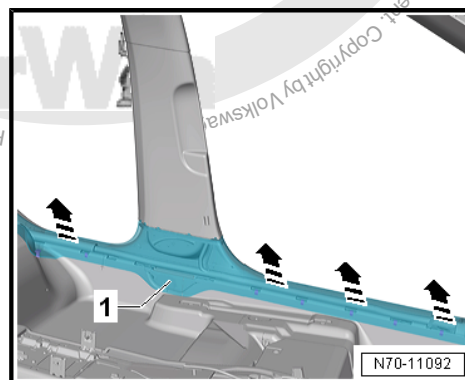
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following.



Note

- ◆ Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.
- ◆ Remove any remaining clips in the body mounting points using the -T40280-. To install, insert into the sill panel strip.
- ◆ Make sure that the sill panel strip is inside the door seal molding after installing.



5.9 A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-



Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.



Removing

- Remove the instrument panel side cover. Refer to [⇒ “3.3 Instrument Panel Side Cover, Removing and Installing”, page 166](#).
- Unclip the A-pillar gap cover -1- from the A-pillar upper trim panel and A-pillar lower trim panel -arrows-.
- Loosen and remove the A-pillar gap cover -1- from the door seal molding.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



Note

Make sure that the A-pillar gap cover is inside the door seal molding after installing.



5.10 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

⇒ [“5.10.1 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Upper Trim Panel”, page 201](#)

⇒ [“5.10.2 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel, Driver Side”, page 203](#)

⇒ [“5.10.4 A-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Lower Trim, Front Passenger Side”, page 206](#)

5.10.1 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Upper Trim Panel

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Omega Clip Tool - T40280-

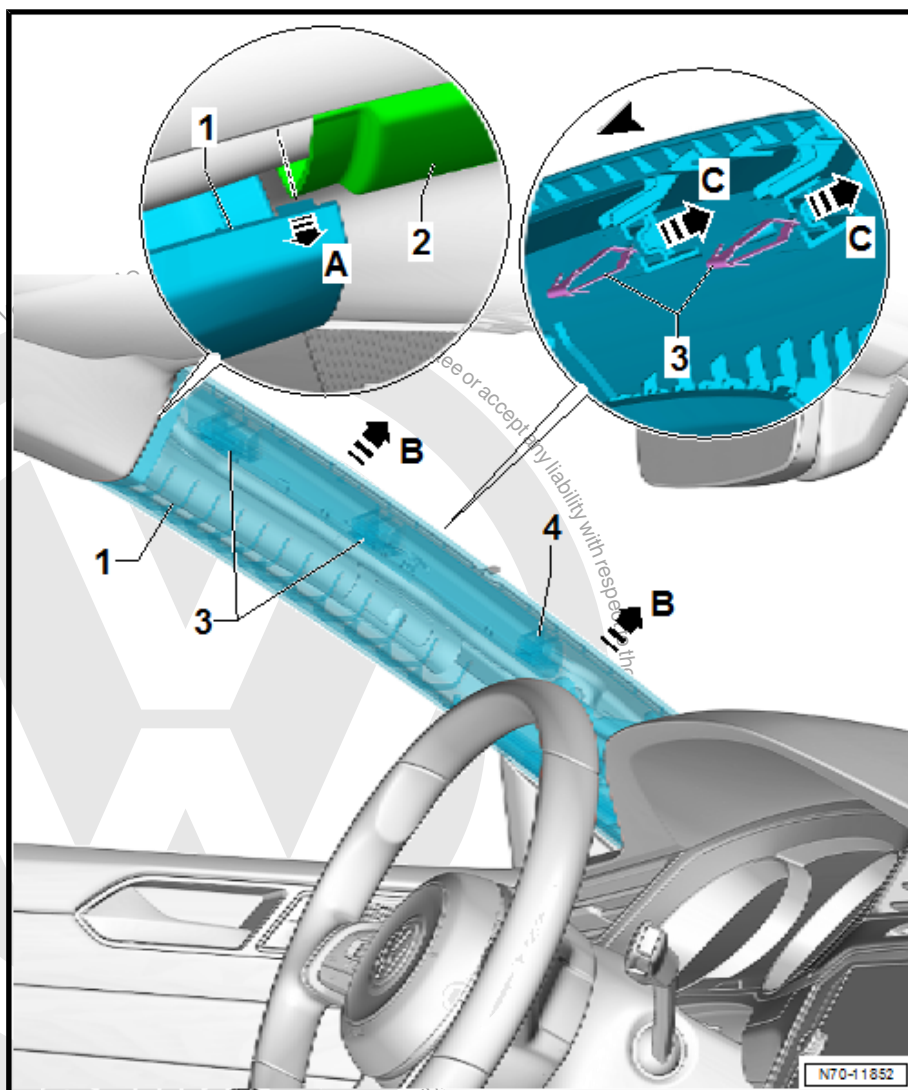


Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.

Removing





- Remove the A-pillar gap cover. Refer to [⇒ "5.9 A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing", page 200](#).
- Detach the A-pillar trim panel -1- in the transition area to the headliner -2- from the tab on the headliner -arrow A- using the -3409-.
- Remove the A-pillar trim panel in the area of the clip -4- from the body.
- Remove the A-pillar trim panel in the area of the clips with the hooks -3- up to the bracket stop from the body -B arrows-.
- Push the clips with the hooks -3- from the A-pillar trim panel -C arrows-.
- Remove the A-pillar trim panel from the body.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



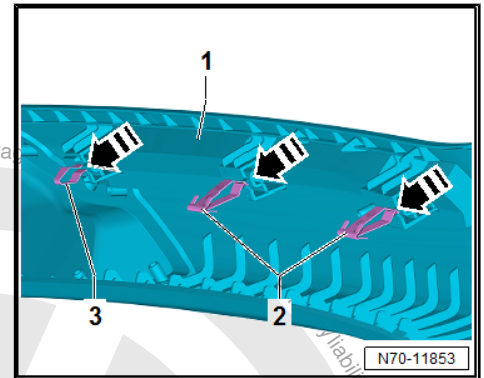
Note

- ◆ The clips with the hooks -2- must be replaced after removal.
- ◆ Check the clip -3- for damage and replace if necessary.
- Insert the new clips with hooks -2- in the direction of the -arrow- in the A-pillar trim panel -1-.
- Insert the clip -3- in the A-pillar trim panel -1- in the direction of the -arrow-.
- Insert the A-pillar trim panel -1- in the vehicle and clip in the body.



Note

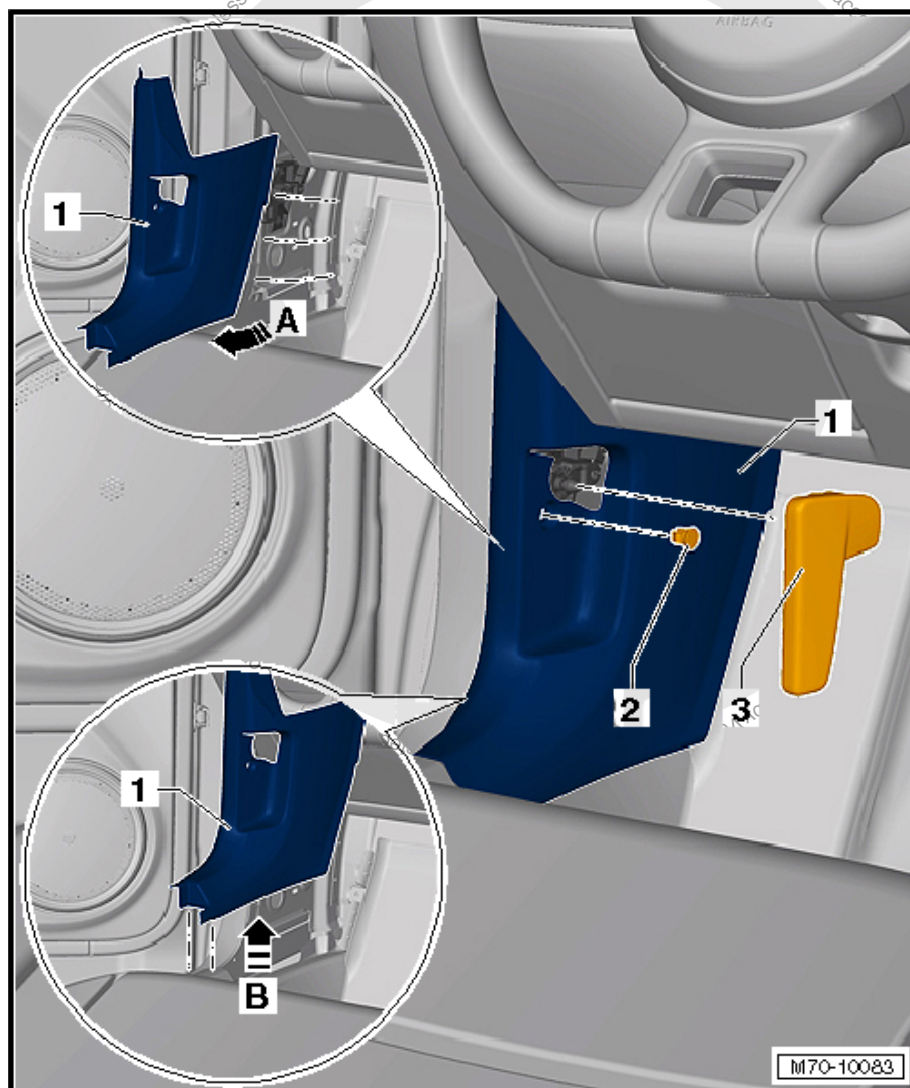
Make sure that the A-pillar trim panels are inside the door seal molding after installing.



5.10.2 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel, Driver Side

Removing

- Detach the sill panel from the body in the transition area to the A-pillar lower trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "5.8 Sill Panel, Removing and Installing", page 199](#).
- Remove the A-pillar gap cover. Refer to [⇒ "5.9 A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing", page 200](#).



- Remove the hood release lever -3-. Refer to ⇒ Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 55 ; Hood; Latch Release Lever, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the clip -2-.
- Loosen the lower A-pillar trim panel -1- from the body in the direction of the -arrow B-. Loosen the lower A-pillar trim panel from the door seal molding.
- Remove the lower A-pillar trim panel -1- from the mount direction of -arrow A-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the A-pillar trim panels are inside the door seal molding after installing.*



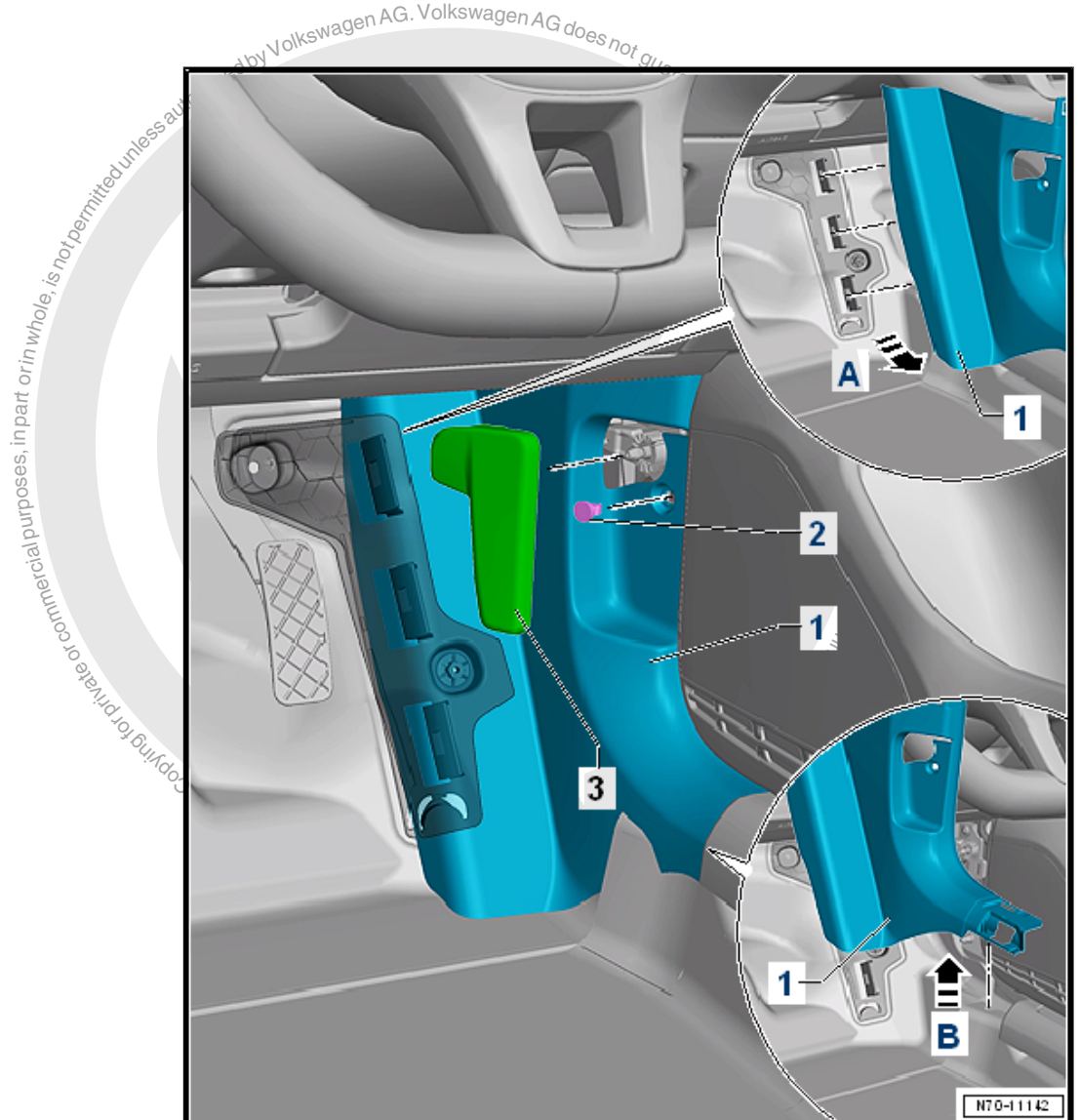
5.10.3 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel, Driver Side, RHD

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

- Detach the sill panel from the body in the transition area to the A-pillar lower trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "5.8 Sill Panel, Removing and Installing", page 199](#).
- Remove the A-pillar gap cover. Refer to [⇒ "5.9 A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing", page 200](#).



- Remove the hood release lever -3-. Refer to ⇒ Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 55 ; Hood; Latch Release Lever, Removing and Installing .
- Remove the clip -2-.
- Unclip the lower A-pillar trim panel -1- from the bracket -direction of arrow A-.



- At the same time, loosen the lower A-pillar trim panel -1- from the body in the -direction of the arrow B-. Loosen the lower A-pillar trim panel from the door seal molding.
- Push aside the carpet in the area of the threaded connections and remove the nuts -arrows-.
- Remove the bracket -1- from the threaded pins and remove under the carpet.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

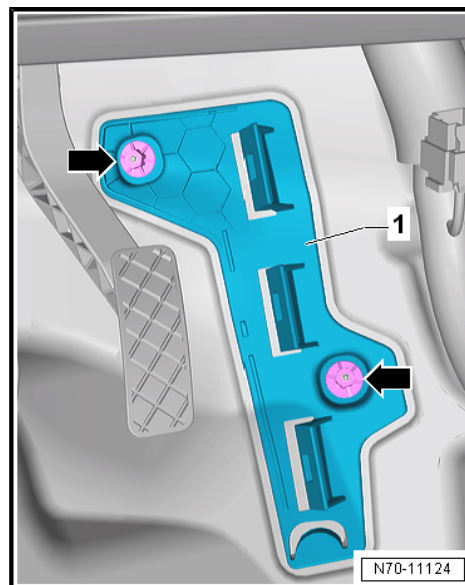


Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the A-pillar trim panels are inside the door seal molding after installing.*

Tightening Specifications

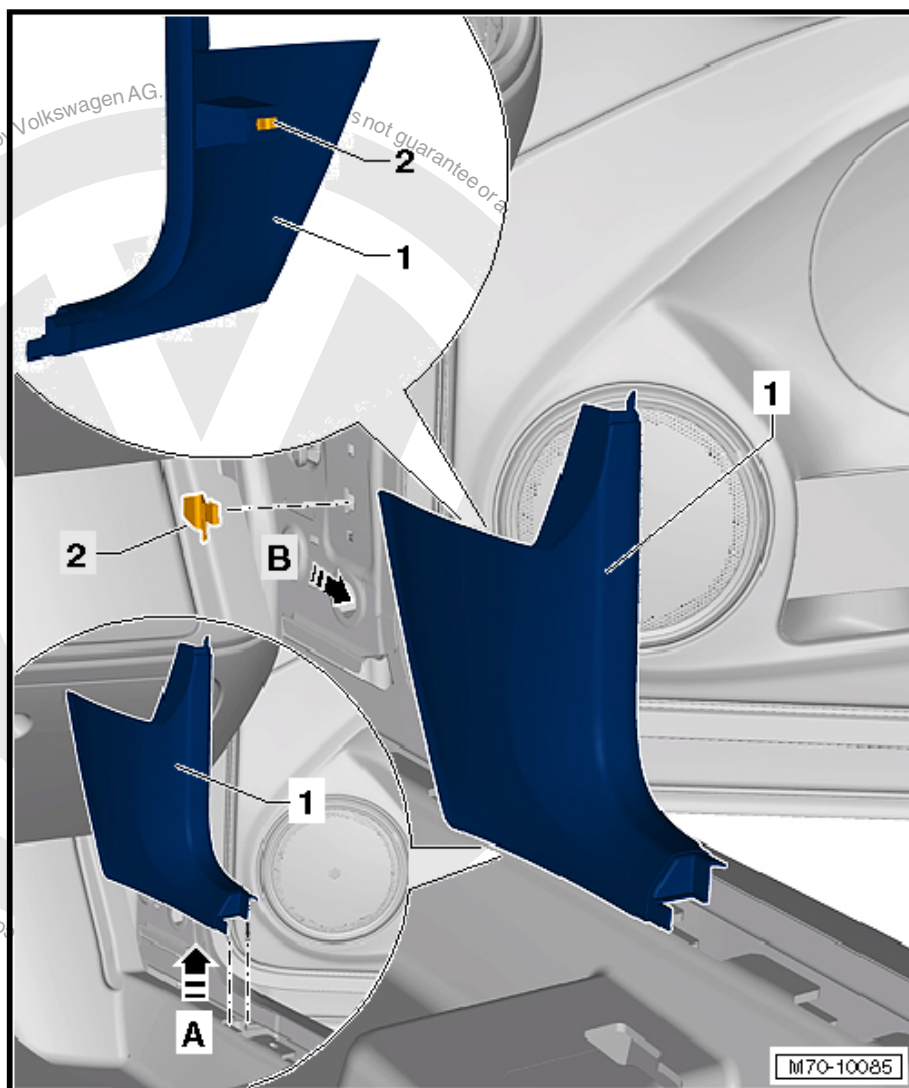
- ◆ ⇒ ["5.3.3 Overview - A-Pillar Trim Panel, A-Pillar Lower Trim Panel, RHD", page 194](#)



5.10.4 A-Pillar Trim, Removing and Installing, A-Pillar Lower Trim, Front Passenger Side

Removing

- Detach the sill panel from the body in the transition area to the A-pillar lower trim panel. Refer to ["5.8 Sill Panel, Removing and Installing", page 199](#).
- Remove the A-pillar gap cover. Refer to ["5.9 A-Pillar Gap Cover, Removing and Installing", page 200](#).



- Loosen the lower A-pillar trim panel -1- from the body in the direction of the -arrow A-. Loosen the lower A-pillar trim panel from the door seal molding.
- Remove the lower A-pillar trim panel -1- from the A-pillar in the direction of the -arrow B-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

- ◆ *Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.*
- ◆ *Make sure that the A-pillar trim panels are inside the door seal molding after installing.*

5.11 B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-



- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-
- ◆ Omega Clip Tool - T40280-



Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.

Removing

- Pry the cap -3- with the "airbag" symbol out of the trim panel -1- using a screwdriver.
- Remove the bolt -2-.

B-Pillar Upper Trim Panel

- Remove the front belt end fitting. Refer to [⇒ "1.11 Front Belt End Fitting Removing and Installing", page 81](#).

- Move seat belt height adjuster to the lowest position.

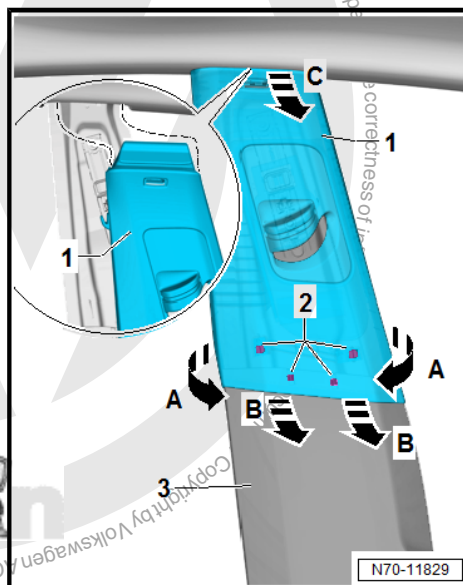
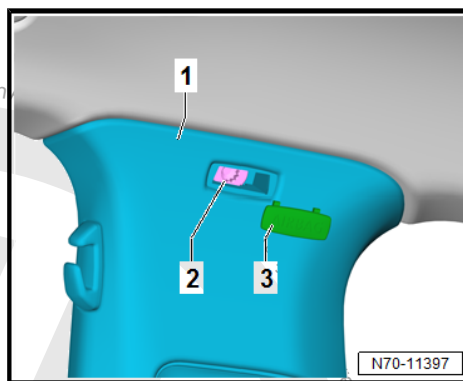
- Starting at the bottom, disengage the B-pillar upper trim panel -1- at the door seal -A arrows- by placing the -T10383- on the front edge of the trim panel.

- Unclip the B-pillar upper trim panel -1- from the B-pillar lower trim panel -3- -B arrows- by placing the -T10383- on the lower edge of the trim panel.

- Detach the B-pillar upper trim panel -1- at the clips -2-.

- Remove the upper B-pillar trim panel -1- from the mount on the body -arrow C- by moving the trim panel inward and pulling it downward at the same time.

- Guide the seat belt webbing with belt tongue out through the slide for the seat belt height adjuster, and then remove the upper B-pillar trim panel.





B-Pillar Lower Trim Panel

- Detach the sill panel in the transition area to the B-pillar lower trim panel -1-. Refer to [⇒ "5.8 Sill Panel, Removing and Installing", page 199](#).
- Loosen the upper B-pillar trim panel in the transition area to the lower B-pillar trim panel -1-. Refer to [⇒ page 208](#).
- Loosen the B-pillar lower trim panel -1- from the door seal molding.
- Detach the B-pillar lower trim panel in the clip area -2- from the body mounts -A arrow- using the -T10383-.
- If equipped, disconnect the connector from the Interior Monitoring and Vehicle Inclination Deactivation Button - E616-.
- Remove the B-pillar lower trim panel from the body in the direction of the -arrow B-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

- ◆ Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.
- ◆ Remove any remaining clips in the body mounting points using the -T40280-. To install, insert into the B-pillar trim panels.
- ◆ Make sure that the B-pillar trim panels are inside the door seal molding after installing.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to [⇒ "5.4 Overview - B-Pillar Trim Panel", page 194](#)

5.12 C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

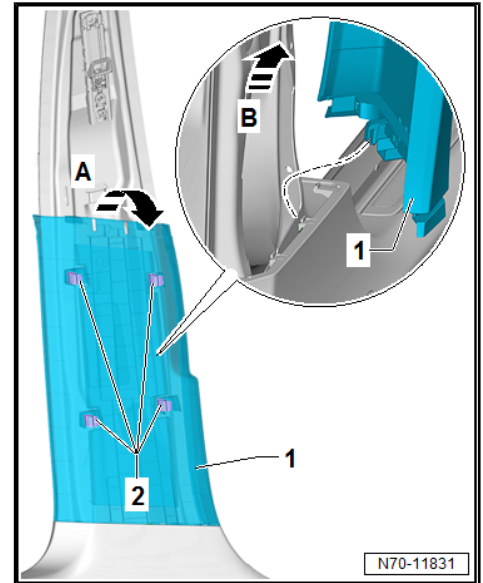
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pry Lever - 80-200-
- ◆ Omega Clip Tool - T40280-



Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.





Removing

- Remove the wheel housing trim panel. Refer to ⇒ [“5.13 Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”](#), page 210 .
- Detach the clips -2- in the C-pillar trim panel -1- from the body mounts using the -80 - 200- .
- Guide the C-pillar trim panel -1- out of the clip -3-.

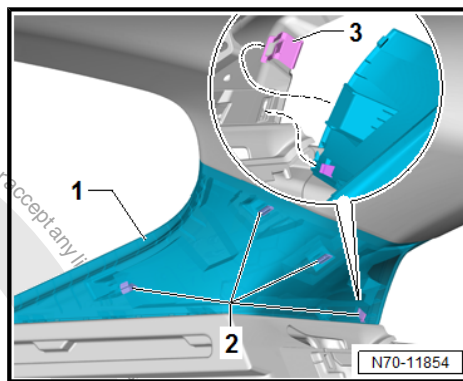
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

- ♦ Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.
- ♦ Remove any remaining clips in the body mounting points using the T40280- . To install, insert into the C-pillar trim panel.
- ♦ Make sure that the C-pillar trim panel is inside the door seal molding after installing.



5.13 Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Wedge Set - T10383-
- ♦ Omega Clip Tool - T40280-



Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.

Removing

Vehicles with Thorax Airbag



WARNING

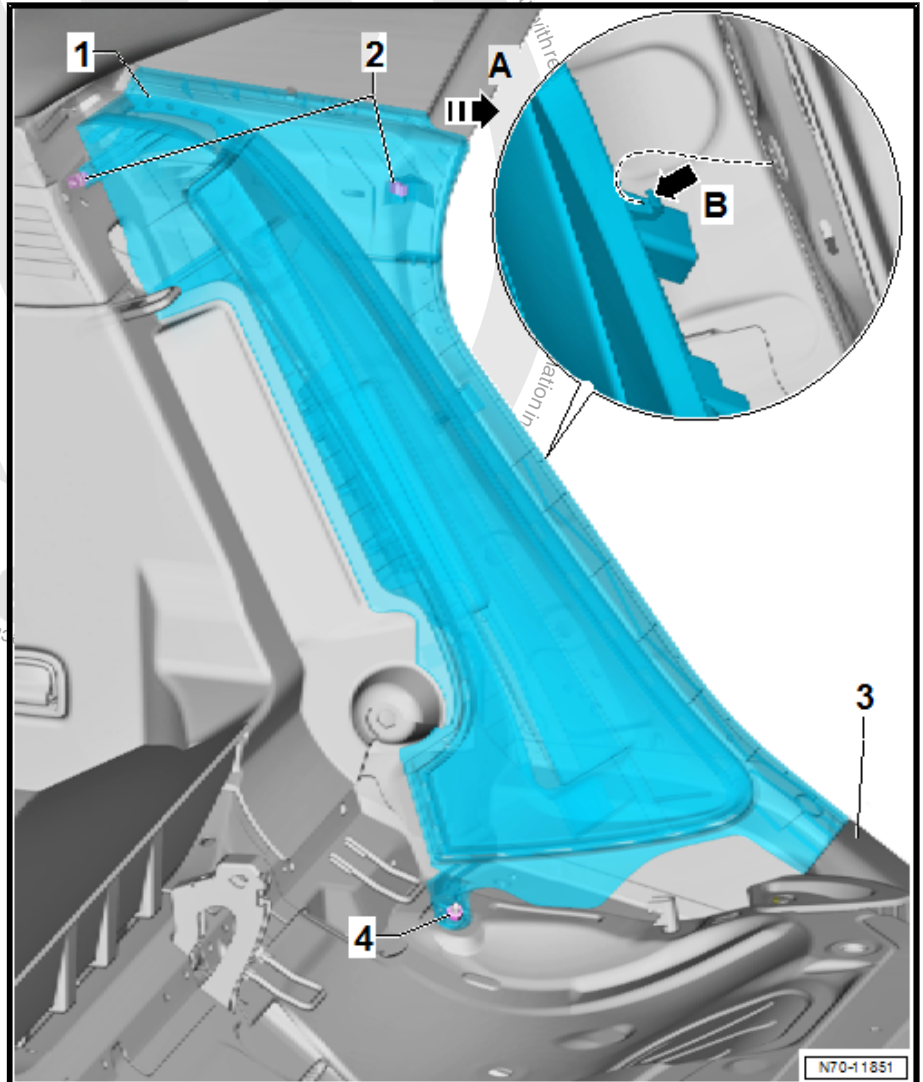
- ♦ Observe the safety precautions for pyrotechnical components. Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Safety Precautions when Working with Pyrotechnic Components”](#), page 3 .
- ♦ Pay attention to the additional safety precautions for the thorax airbag. Refer to ⇒ [“1.4 Additional Thorax Airbag Safety Precautions”](#), page 5 .
- ♦ Before handling pyrotechnic components (for example, disconnecting the connector), the person handling it must “discharge static electricity”. For example, this can be done by briefly touching the door striker.

- Disconnect the battery ground cable when the ignition is turned on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



Continuation for All Vehicles

- Remove the bench seat. Refer to
⇒ [“3.6 Bench Seat/Single Seat, Removing and Installing”,
page 296](#).



- Remove the lock washer or nut -4-.
- Detach the sill panel -3- in the transition area to the wheel housing trim panel from the body and detach the wheel housing trim panel clips -1-. Refer to
⇒ [“5.8 Sill Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 199](#).
- Fold the rear seat backrest forward.
- Detach the wheel housing trim panel -1- near the clips -2- from the body mounts using the -T10383-.
- Carefully push the wheel housing trim panel -1- outward and forward in the direction of the -arrow A- in order to detach the guide tab -arrow B- from the body side.

Vehicles with Thorax Airbag

- Disconnect the thorax airbag wire at the wheel housing trim panel.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Remove the clips that are still in the mounting points on the body using the -T40280-

Vehicles with Thorax Airbag

- Switch the ignition on.



WARNING

Make sure that no persons are in the vehicle.

- Connect the battery ground cable with the ignition switched on. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after installing, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

5.14 Footrest, Removing and Installing

⇒ ["5.14.1 Footrest, Removing and Installing", page 212](#)

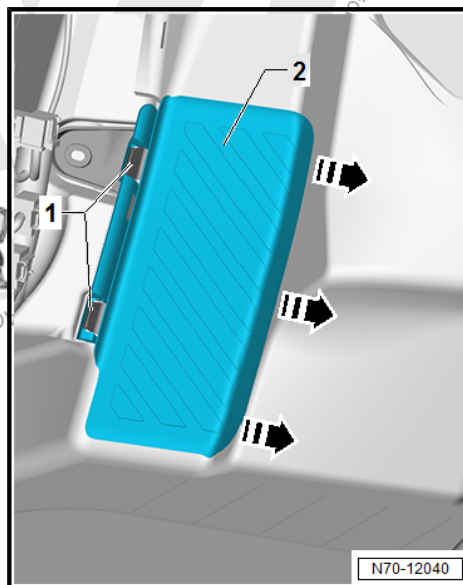
5.14.1 Footrest, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge -3409-
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

- Remove the A-pillar lower trim panel on the driver side. Refer to ⇒ ["5.10 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 201](#) .
- Push the footrest -2- in the direction of the vehicle center out of the three mounts into the bracket underneath -arrows-.
- Release the two tabs -1- using the -3409- in the direction of the center of the vehicle.
- Pivot the footrest -2- upward out of the catches -1- and remove.





- Push aside the carpet in the area of the threaded connections and remove the nuts -arrows-.
- Remove the bracket -1- from the threaded pins and remove under the carpet.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

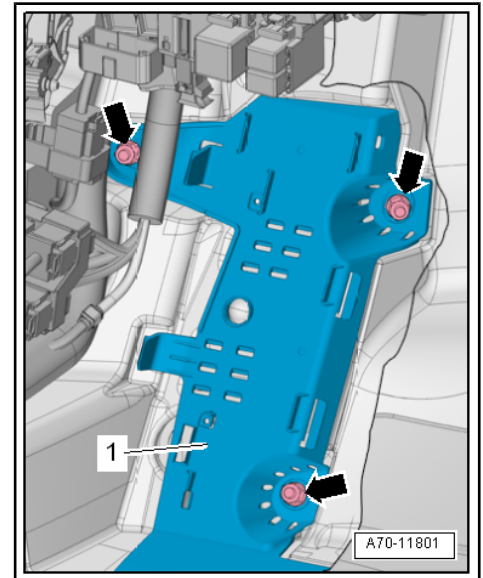


Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“5.7.1 Overview - Footrest and Carpet”, page 198](#)



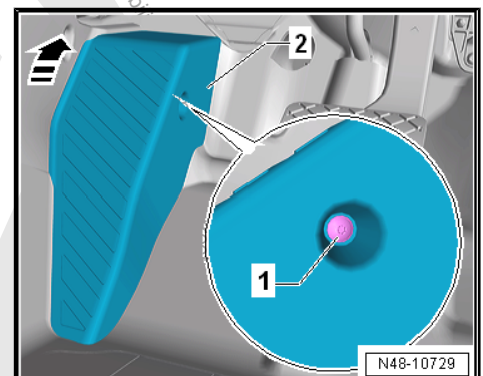
5.14.2 Footrest, Removing and Installing, RHD Vehicles

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

Removing

- Remove the bolt -1-.
- Slide the footrest -2- upward in the -direction of the arrow- and remove it.



- Push aside the carpet in the area of the threaded connections and remove the nuts -arrows-.
- Lift the bracket -1- from the threaded pins and remove it.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

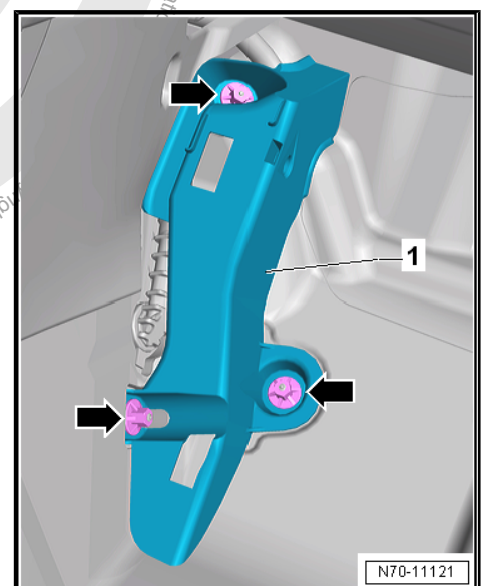


Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ ⇒ [“5.7.2 Overview - Footrest and Carpet, RHD Vehicles”, page 199](#)





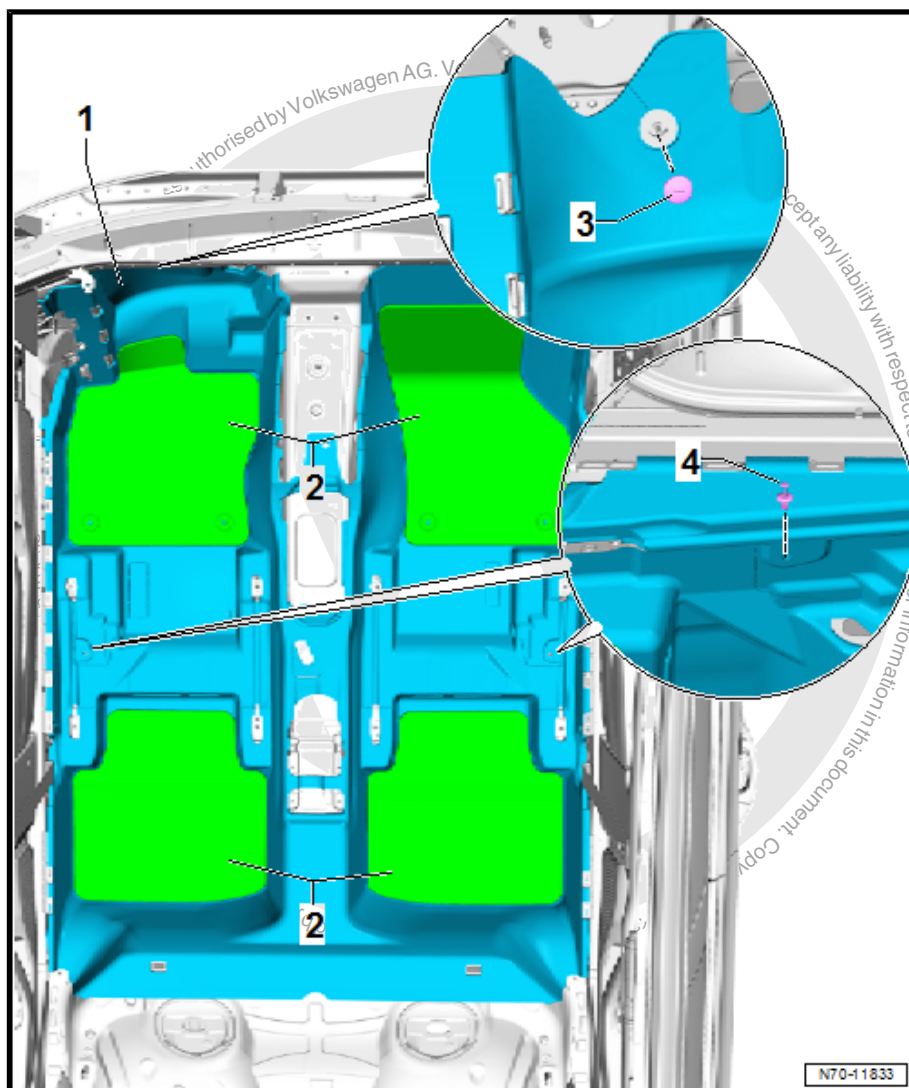
5.15 Carpet, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Removing

- Remove the front seats. Refer to
⇒ ["2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing", page 264](#)
- Remove the rear bench seat. Refer to
⇒ ["3.6 Bench Seat/Single Seat, Removing and Installing", page 296](#) .
- Remove the sill panels. Refer to
⇒ ["5.8 Sill Panel, Removing and Installing", page 199](#) .
- Remove the A-pillar lower trim panels. Refer to
⇒ ["5.10 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 201](#) .
- Remove the front belt end fittings. Refer to
⇒ ["1.11 Front Belt End Fitting, Removing and Installing", page 81](#) .
- Remove the center console. Refer to
⇒ ["3.7 Center Console, Removing and Installing", page 44](#) .
- Remove the footrest. Refer to
⇒ ["5.14 Footrest, Removing and Installing", page 212](#) .
- If equipped, remove the rear air duct. Refer to ⇒ Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning; Rep. Gr. 87 ; Air Routing; Overview - Vehicle Interior Air Routing and Air Distribution .



- Remove the floor mats -2-.
- Remove the clips -3 and 4- using the -3409- .
- Lift the carpet -1- and pull rearward.



Caution

Make sure the carpet does not tear at the openings.

- Fold the carpet together and remove it through the front door.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



6 Luggage Compartment Trim Panels

⇒ [“6.1 Component Location Overview - Luggage Compartment Trim Panels”, page 216](#)

⇒ [“6.2 Overview - Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel”, page 217](#)

⇒ [“6.3 Overview - Luggage Compartment Floor”, page 218](#)

⇒ [“6.4 Overview - Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel”, page 219](#)

⇒ [“6.5 Overview - Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel”, page 220](#)

⇒ [“6.6 Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 220](#)

⇒ [“6.7 Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 222](#)

⇒ [“6.8 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 223](#)

⇒ [“6.9 Lock Carrier Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 225](#)

⇒ [“6.10 Tie Down, Removing and Installing”, page 225](#)

6.1 Component Location Overview - Luggage Compartment Trim Panels

1 - Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“6.4 Overview - Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel”, page 219](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“6.6 Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 220](#).

2 - Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel

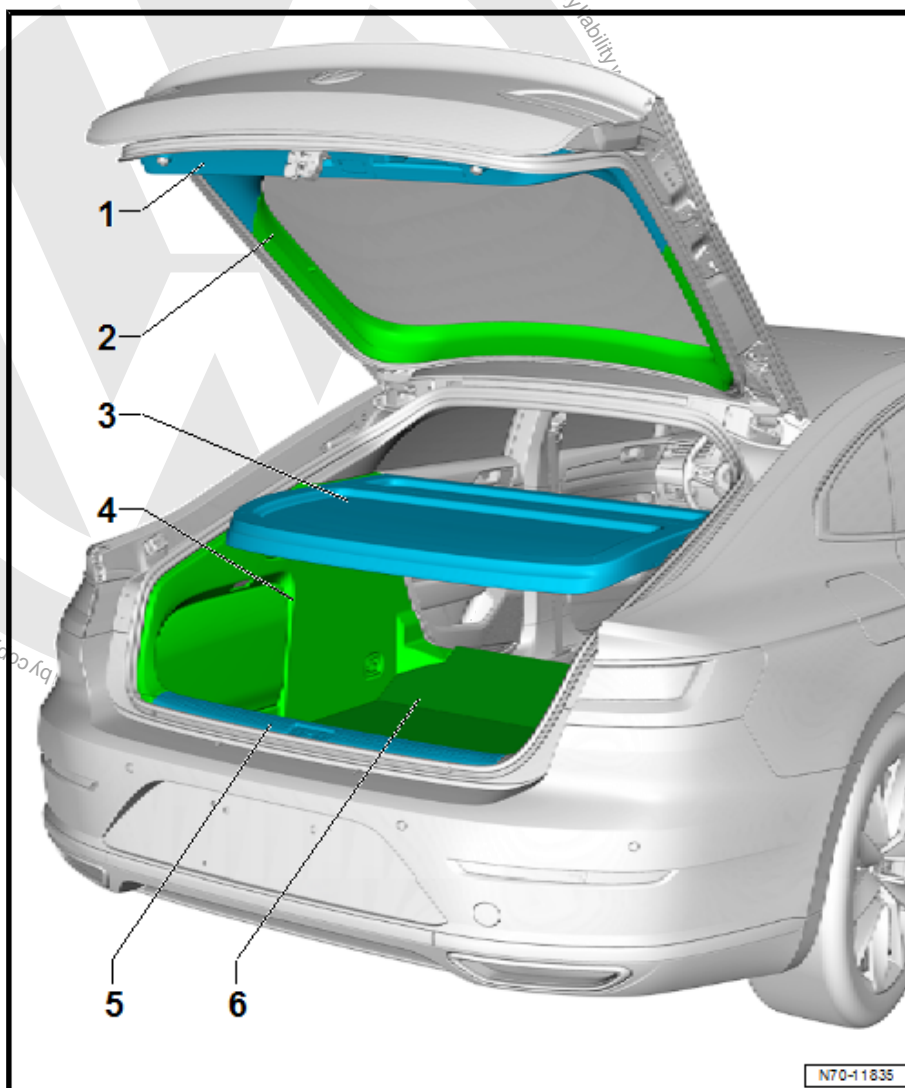
- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“6.5 Overview - Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel”, page 220](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“6.7 Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 222](#).

3 - Rear Shelf

- ❑ Remove from the vehicle toward the rear

4 - Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel

- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“6.2 Overview - Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel”, page 217](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“6.8 Luggage Com-](#)





[partment Side Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 223](#) .

5 - Lock Carrier Trim Panel

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "6.9 Lock Carrier Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 225](#) .

6 - Luggage Compartment Floor

- ☐ Overview. Refer to [⇒ "6.3 Overview - Luggage Compartment Floor", page 218](#) .

6.2 Overview - Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel



Note

The illustration shows the luggage compartment side trim panel on the left side. The luggage compartment side trim panel is the same on the right side.

1 - Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "6.8 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 223](#) .

2 - Tie Down

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "6.10 Tie Down, Removing and Installing", page 225](#) .

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 8 Nm

4 - Bolt

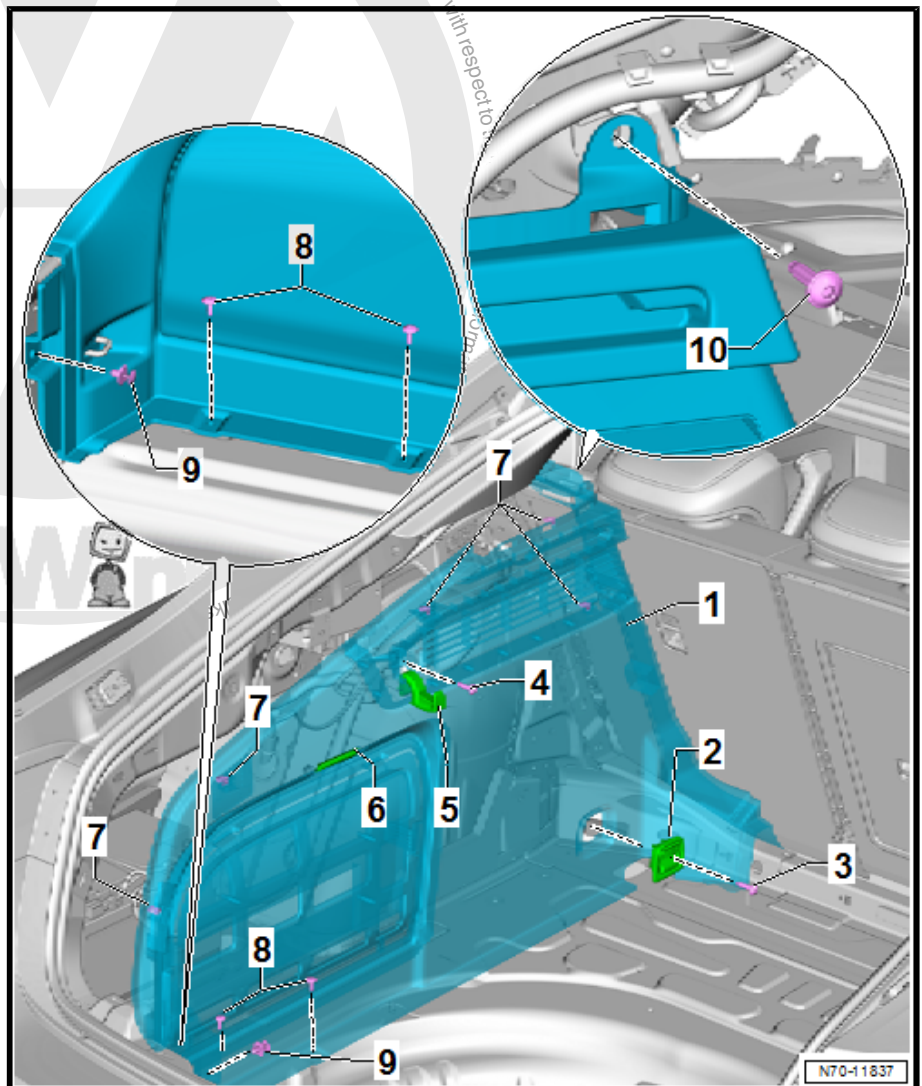
- ☐ 6 Nm

5 - Bag Hook

- ☐ Inserted into the trim panel from behind
- ☐ To remove, remove the luggage compartment side trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "6.8 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 223](#) .

6 - Luggage Compartment Lamp

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 96 ; Lamps; Luggage Compartment Lamp - W3- , Removing and Installing](#) .





7 - Clip

- ☐ Quantity: 5
- ☐ Insert in the trim panel
- ☐ Replace damaged or deformed clips

8 - Screw

- ☐ 1.5 Nm

9 - Clip

- ☐ Replace a damaged or deformed clip

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 6 Nm

6.3 Overview - Luggage Compartment Floor

1 - Luggage Compartment Floor

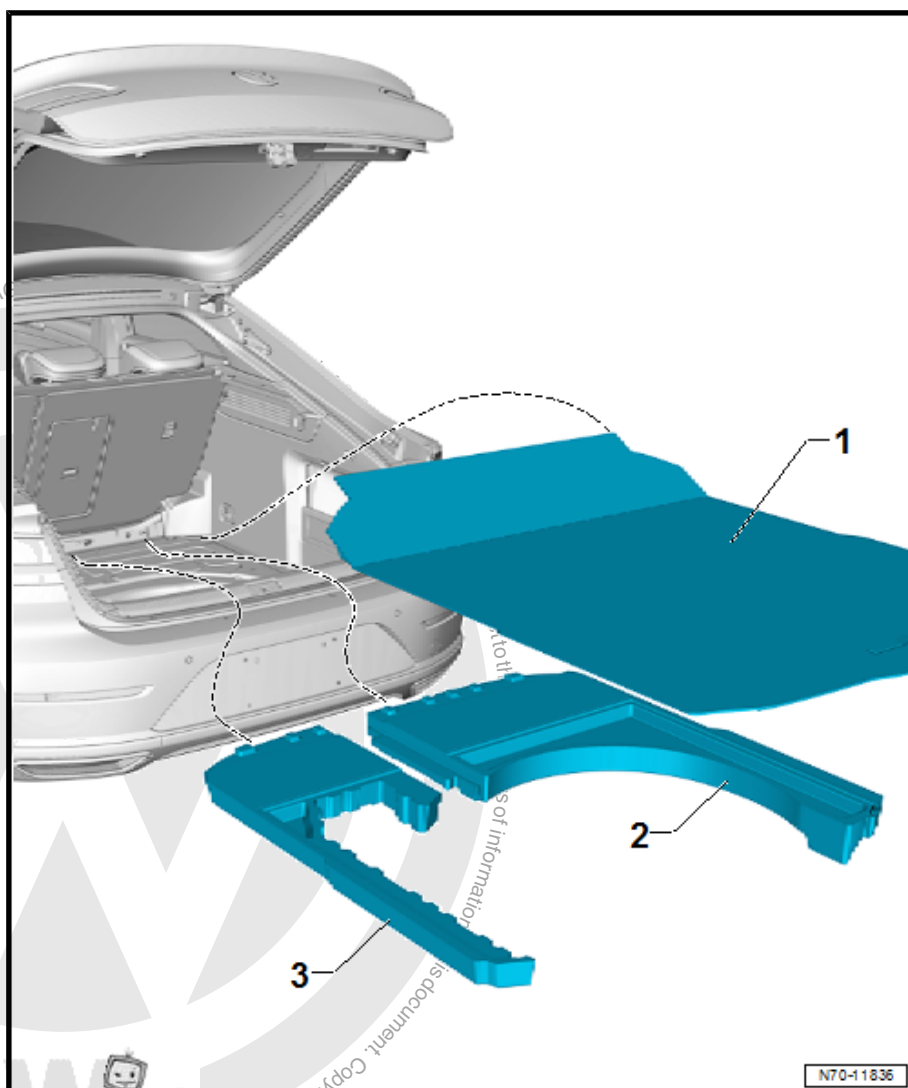
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog .
- ☐ Remove from the vehicle toward the rear

2 - Right Luggage Compartment Floor Support

- ☐ Not with a low luggage compartment floor
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog .
- ☐ Remove from the vehicle toward the rear

3 - Left Luggage Compartment Floor Support

- ☐ Not with a low luggage compartment floor
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog .
- ☐ Remove from the vehicle toward the rear





6.4 Overview - Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel

1 - Rear Lid

- ☐ Overview - Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel. Refer to ⇒ ["6.5 Overview - Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel"](#), page 220 .

- ☐ Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel, Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["6.7 Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel, Removing and Installing"](#), page 222 .

2 - Clip

- ☐ Insert in the trim panel
- ☐ Replace damaged or deformed clips

3 - Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["6.6 Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing"](#), page 220 .

4 - Screw

- ☐ 2 Nm

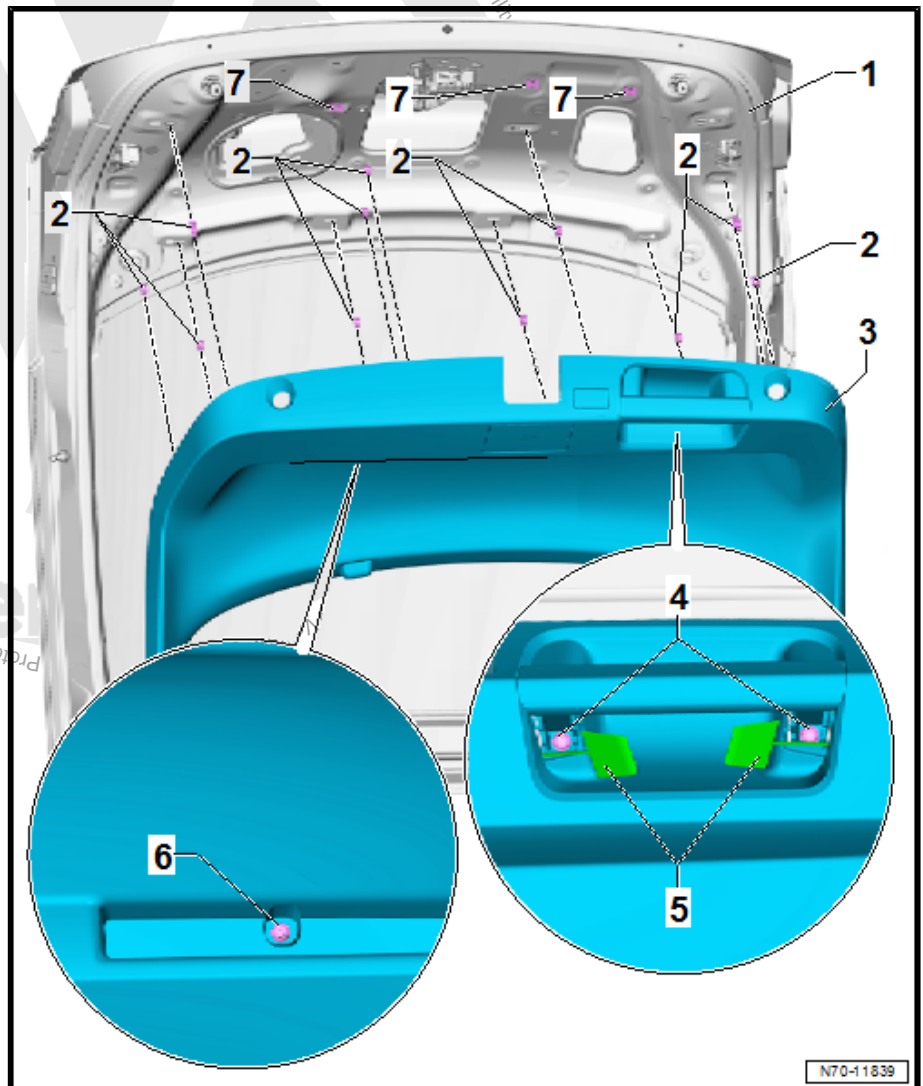
5 - Cover

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["6.6 Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing"](#), page 220 .

6 - Screw

- ☐ 2 Nm

7 - Spring Nut





6.5 Overview - Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel

1 - Rear Lid

- ❑ Overview - Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel. Refer to
⇒ ["6.4 Overview - Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel"](#),
[page 219](#) .
- ❑ Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["6.6 Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing"](#),
[page 220](#) .

2 - Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel

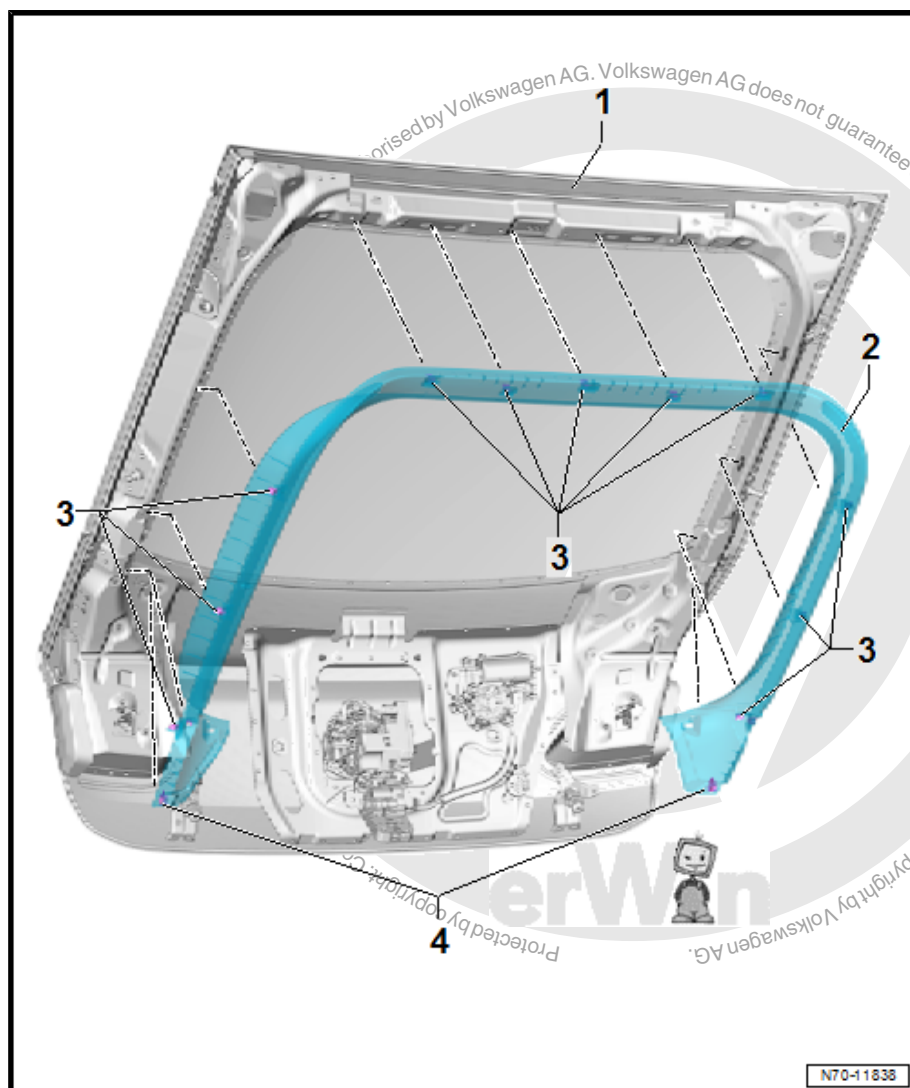
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["6.7 Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel, Removing and Installing"](#),
[page 222](#) .

3 - Clip

- ❑ Insert in the trim panel
- ❑ Replace damaged or deformed clips

4 - Clip

- ❑ Replace a damaged or deformed clip

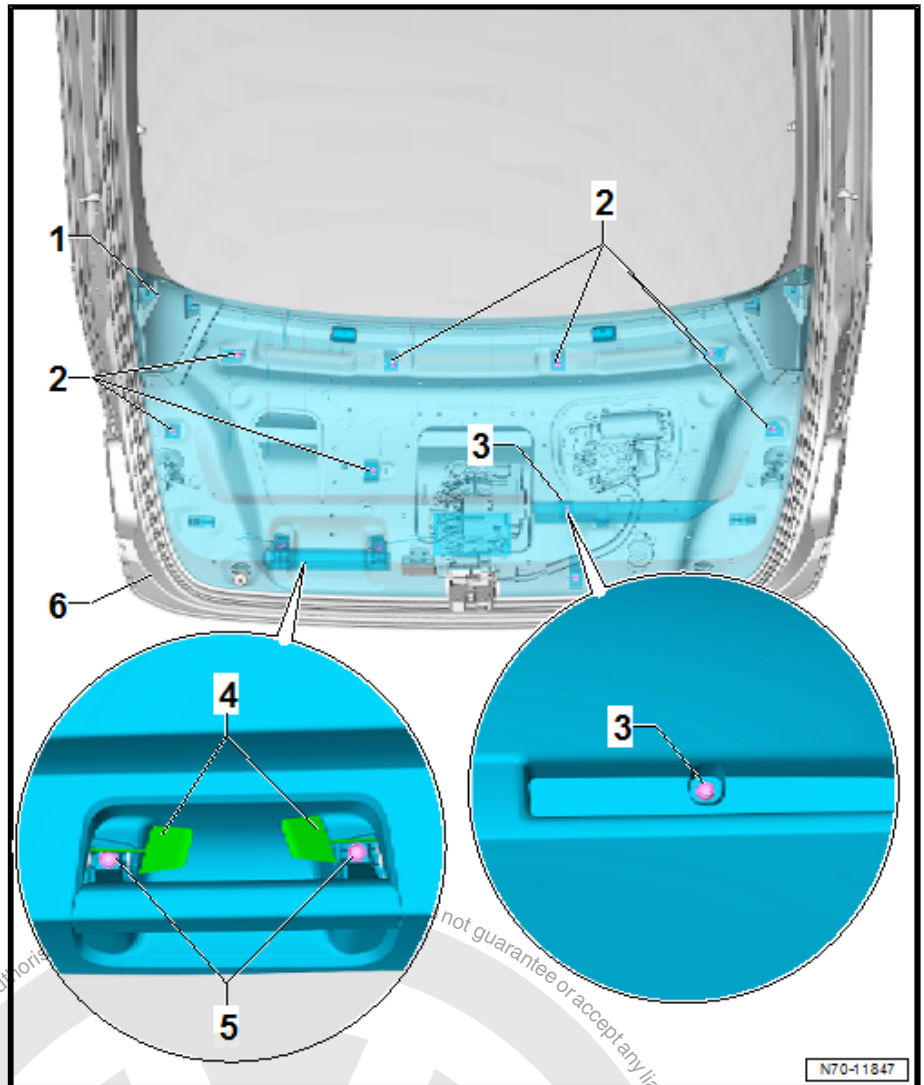


6.6 Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-
- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Omega Clip Tool - T40280-

Removing



- Remove the screw -3-.
- Unclip the screw covers -4- from the handle using the -3409- .
- Remove the screws -5- from the handle.
- Slide the -T10383- between the trim panel -1- and the rear lid -6-.
- Detach the trim panel -1- by hand from the rear lid mounts -6- using a »forceful pulling motion«.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

- Make sure that all clips -2- are on the trim panel -1-.
- Remove any remaining clips -2- on the rear lid -6- with the -T40280- .
- Insert the removed clips -2- back into the trim panel -1-.



Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["6.4 Overview - Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel", page 219](#)

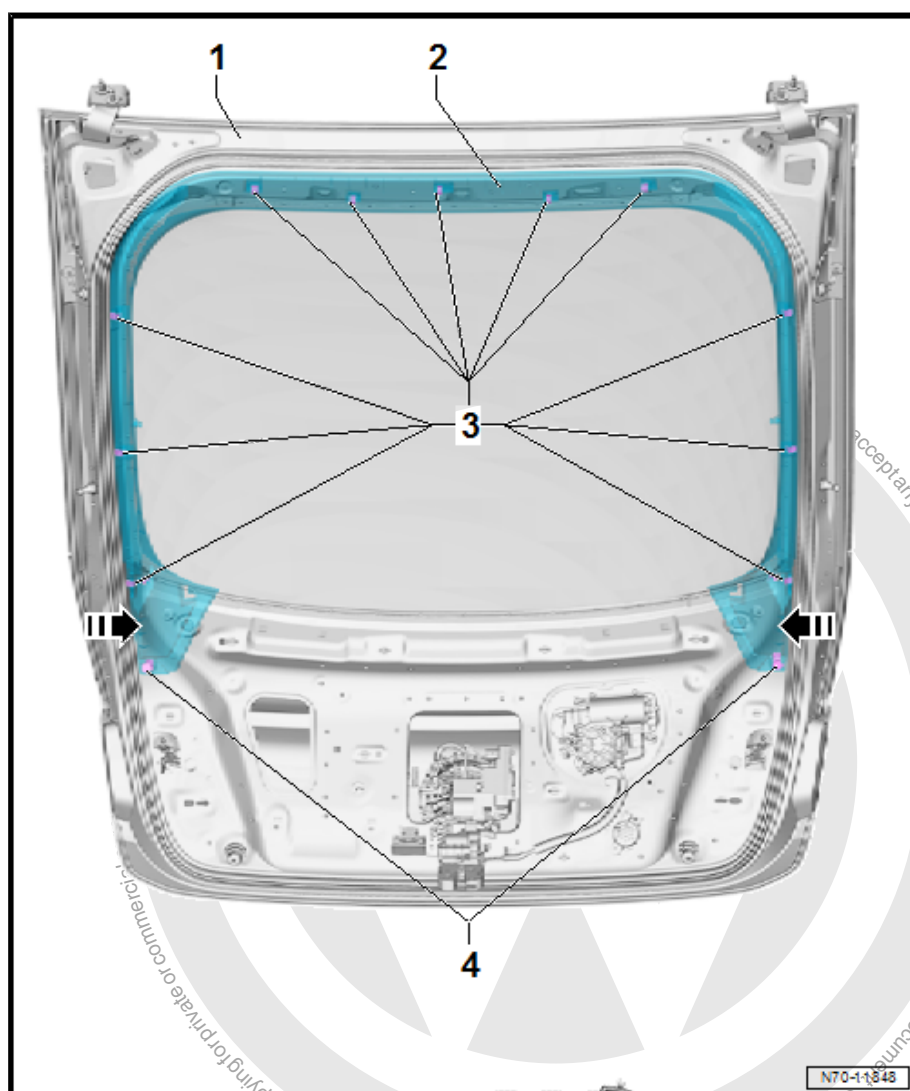
6.7 Rear Lid Upper Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-
- ◆ Omega Clip Tool - T40280-

Removing

- Remove the rear lid lower trim panel. Refer to
⇒ ["6.6 Rear Lid Lower Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 220](#).



- Remove the clip -4-.
- Starting at the bottom -arrows-, detach the clips -3- on the rear lid upper trim panel -2- from the rear lid mounts -1- using the -T10383-.
- Remove the rear lid upper trim panel -2-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

- Make sure that all clips -3- are on the trim panel -2-.
- Remove any remaining clips -3- on the rear lid -1- with the - T40280- .
- Insert the removed clips -3- back into the trim panel -2-.

6.8 Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783- 2-10Nm - VAG1783-
- ◆ Pry Lever - 80-200-
- ◆ Omega Clip Tool - T40280-

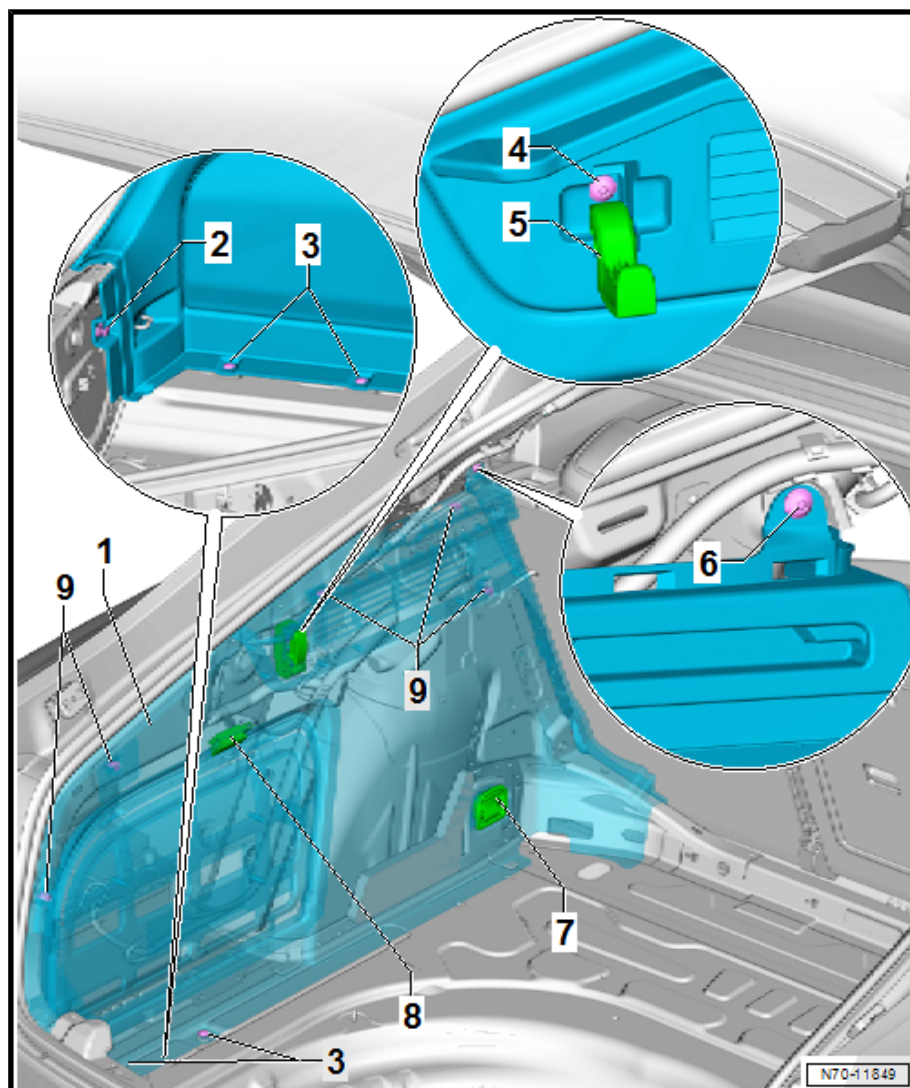


Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side of the vehicle is identical.

Removing

- Fold the rear seat backrests forward.
- Remove the wheel housing trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "5.13 Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 210](#) .
- Remove the C-pillar trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "5.12 C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 209](#) .
- Remove the luggage compartment floor.
- If the luggage compartment floor is high, remove the luggage compartment floor support.
- Remove the lock carrier trim panel. Refer to [⇒ "6.9 Lock Carrier Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 225](#) .



- Remove the clip -2-.
- Remove the screws -3-.
- Remove the bolt -4- for the bag hook -5-.
- Remove the tie down -7-. Refer to [⇒ "6.10 Tie Down, Removing and Installing", page 225](#).
- Loosen the luggage compartment side trim panel -1- from the rear lid seal molding.
- Use the -80 - 200- to detach the clips -9- for the luggage compartment side trim panel -1-.
- Disconnect the connector for the luggage compartment lamp -8-.
- Remove the luggage compartment side trim panel -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

- Make sure that all clips -9- are on the luggage compartment side trim panel -1-.
- Remove any clips -9- remaining in the body using the -T40280-.
- Insert the removed clips -9- back in the luggage compartment side trim panel -1-.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["6.2 Overview - Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel", page 217](#)

6.9 Lock Carrier Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pry Lever - 80-200-

Removing

- Remove the luggage compartment floor toward the rear.
- Detach the lock carrier trim panel -1- from the molding for the rear lid seal -2-.
- Detach the lock carrier trim panel -1- near the clips -arrows- from the body mounts using the -80 - 200-.
- Remove the lock carrier trim panel -1- upward -arrows-.

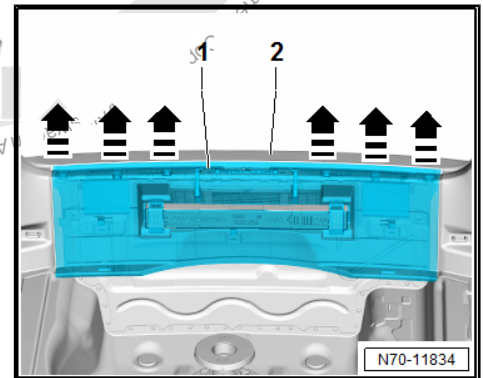
Installing



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.

- Remove any clips remaining in the body using the -T40280-.
- Insert the removed clips back into the trim panel -1-.
- Engage the lock carrier trim panel -1- in the body mounting points.
- Position the lock carrier trim panel -1- in the rear lid seal molding -2-.



6.10 Tie Down, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Removing

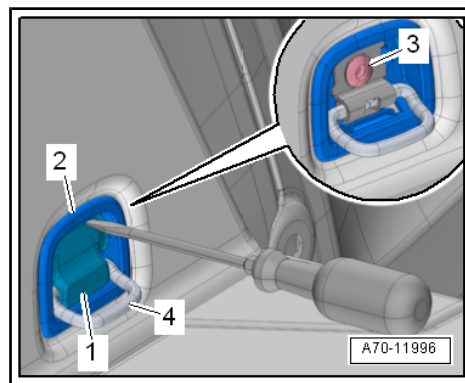
- Open the bracket -4- and unclip the cover -1- using a screwdriver.
- Remove the bolt -3- and the tie down -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["6.2 Overview - Luggage Compartment Side Trim Panel"](#),
[page 217](#)





7 Roof Trim Panels

⇒ [“7.1 Overview - Headliner”, page 227](#)

⇒ [“7.2 Headliner, Removing and Installing”, page 227](#)

⇒ [“7.3 Roof Reinforcement, Attaching to Body”, page 231](#)

7.1 Overview - Headliner

1 - Headliner

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ For certain equipment levels, it is necessary to cut openings in the new headliner. Refer to [⇒ page 230](#).
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ “7.2 Headliner, Removing and Installing”, page 227](#).

2 - Front Roof Reinforcement

- ☐ Not with a sliding sunroof
- ☐ Install on the body. Refer to [⇒ “7.3.1 Roof Reinforcement, Attaching to Body, without Sliding Sunroof”, page 231](#).

3 - Rear Roof Reinforcement

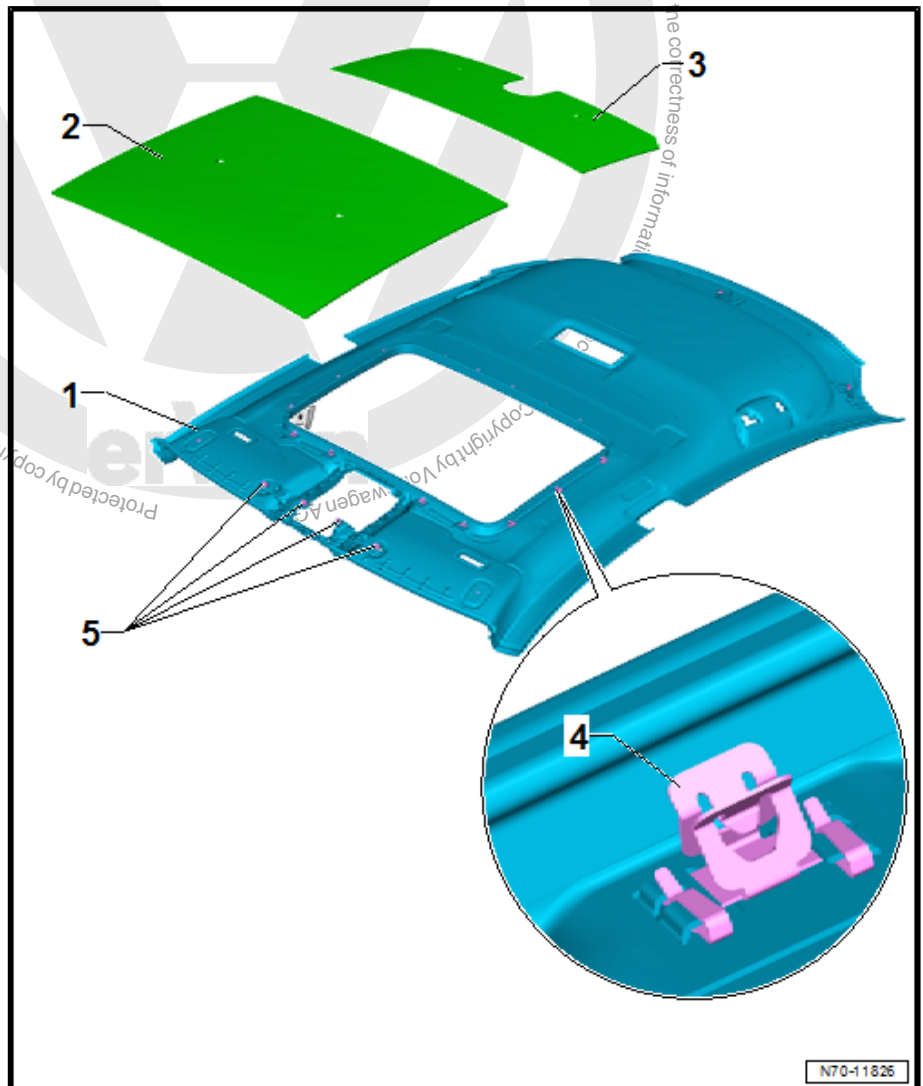
- ☐ Install on the body. Refer to [⇒ “7.3.2 Roof Reinforcement, Attaching to Body, with Sliding Sunroof”, page 232](#).

4 - Clip

- ☐ Only with a sliding sunroof
- ☐ Quantity: 15
- ☐ Remove any remaining clips in the frame
- ☐ Insert in the headliner
- ☐ Replace after removing.

5 - Clip

- ☐ For the headliner
- ☐ Quantity: 4
- ☐ Replace damaged or deformed clips



7.2 Headliner, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-



- ◆ Pry Lever - 80-200-
- ◆ Release Pliers - VAS6427-
- ◆ Omega Clip Tool - T40280-





Removing

Vehicles with sliding sunroof

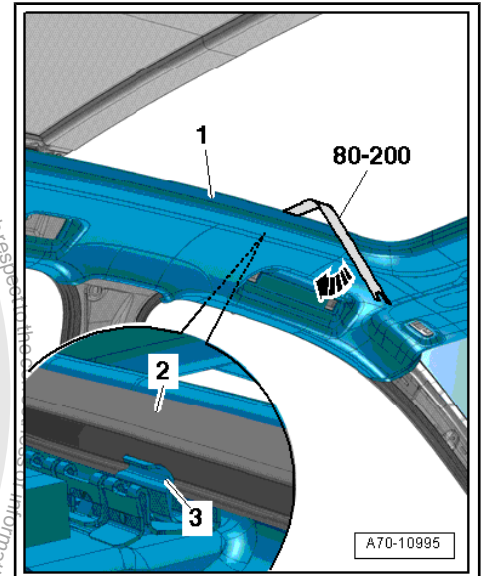
- Open the sliding sunroof all the way.
- Open the sun shade about $\frac{2}{3}$.
- Clean the -80 - 200- to avoid dirtying the headliner.
- Using the -80 - 200- , slide it along between the cover frame on the sliding sunroof -2- and headliner -1- until one of the clips -3- is touched.
- Unclip the cover frame on the sliding sunroof -2- all around near the clips -3- using the -80 - 200- -arrow-.

Continuation for All Vehicles

- Steering wheel in the lowest position
- Adjust the front seat backrests to a 45° angle
- Fold the rear seat backrests forward

Remove the A-pillar upper trim panels. Refer to
⇒ [“5.10 A-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 201](#) .

- Loosen the top of the B-pillar trim panels, but leave them installed at the bottom (do not remove the belt end fitting). Refer to
⇒ [“5.11 B-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 207](#) .
- Remove the C-pillar trim panels. Refer to
⇒ [“5.12 C-Pillar Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 209](#) .
- If necessary, remove the covers for the interior rearview mirror. Refer to
⇒ [“5.1 Overview - Interior Rearview Mirror”, page 51](#) .
- Remove the sun visors. Refer to
⇒ [“2.2 Sun Visor, Removing and Installing”, page 31](#) .
- Remove the sun visor center support. Refer to
⇒ [“2.3 Sun Visor Center Support, Removing and Installing”, page 32](#) .
- Remove the headliner storage compartment. Refer to
⇒ [“1.14 Headliner Storage Compartment, Removing and Installing”, page 28](#) .
- Only loosen the roof grab handles from the mounts in the roof grab handle bracket, and do not completely remove. Refer to
⇒ [“2.4 Roof Grab Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 33](#) .
- Disconnect the connector for the headliner wiring harness behind the headliner storage compartment.



Caution

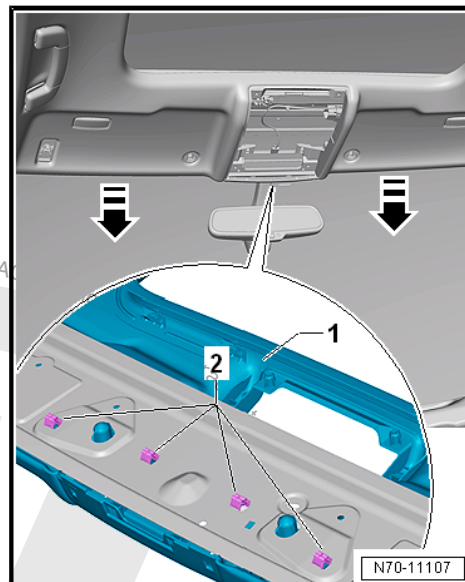
- ◆ *The headliner bends easily.*
- ◆ *Replace the headliner if it is bent.*



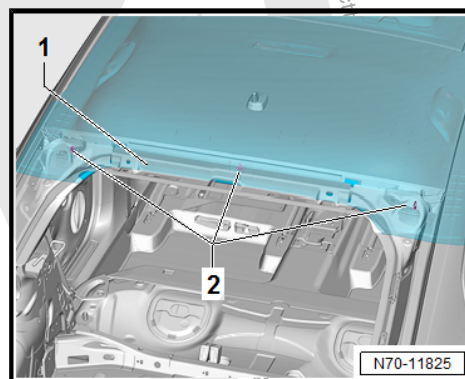
Note

For the following steps, make sure that the -VAS6427- are positioned in the center of the clamps.

- Loosen the clips -2- in the headliner frame -1- from the body mounts using the -VAS6427- .
- At the same time keep tension on the headliner -1- -arrows- to prevent the already loosened clips -2- from re-engaging.
- Have a second technician carefully hold the headliner -1- in position.



- Loosen the headliner -1- from the rear lid seal molding.
- Use the -T10383- and -80 - 200- to detach the clips -2- in the rear area of the headliner -1- from the body mounts.
- Remove the windshield. Refer to ⇒ Body Exterior; Rep. Gr. 64 ; Windshield; Windshield, Removing and Installing .
- With the help of a second technician, remove the headliner through the windshield opening.



Installing

Cutting Openings in the new Headliner

For vehicles with illuminated vanity mirrors and/or Rain/Light Recognition Sensor - G397- , the appropriate openings must be cut into a new headliner.

- With the help of the markings, cut out the necessary openings in the new headliner using a carpet knife.

Further installation is performed in reverse order of removal, while noting the following:



Note

- ◆ Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.
- ◆ Always replace the clips for the sliding sunroof cover frame (quantity: 15) before assembling.
- ◆ Remove any remaining clips in the body mounting points using the -T40280- and insert in the headliner for installation.
- ◆ Make sure the headliner is inside the rear lid seal molding after it is installed.



7.3 Roof Reinforcement, Attaching to Body

⇒ ["7.3.1 Roof Reinforcement, Attaching to Body, without Sliding Sunroof", page 231](#)

⇒ ["7.3.2 Roof Reinforcement, Attaching to Body, with Sliding Sunroof", page 232](#)

7.3.1 Roof Reinforcement, Attaching to Body, without Sliding Sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Window Cutter - VAG1561A-
- ◆ Scraper Blade - 45mm - VAG1561/20-
- ◆ Cartridge Gun - VAG1628-
- ◆ Trim Release Lever - T10039-

Removing

- Remove the headliner. Refer to ["7.2 Headliner, Removing and Installing", page 227](#).
- Cut the roof reinforcement -1- along the adhesive bead with a carpet knife in strips -2-.
- Pull off the strips -2- from the roof.
- Cut back any remaining adhesive using the -VAG1561A- and -VAG1561/20-.



Note

If the paint structure was damaged while removing the roof reinforcement, paint damage must be repaired according to the specifications. Refer to the Paint Repair Manual.

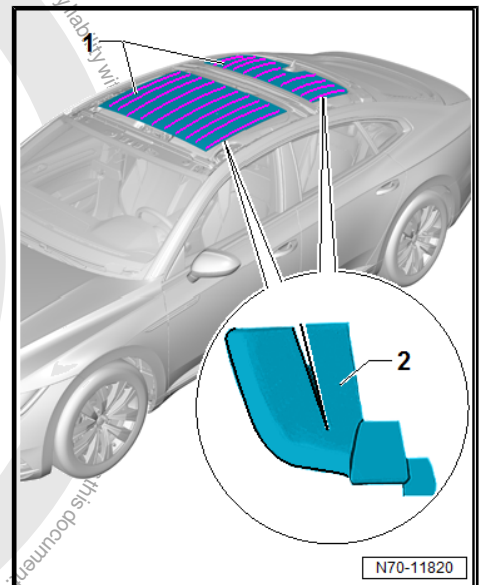
Installing



Note

Processing instructions for the adhesive must be observed when installing the roof reinforcement.

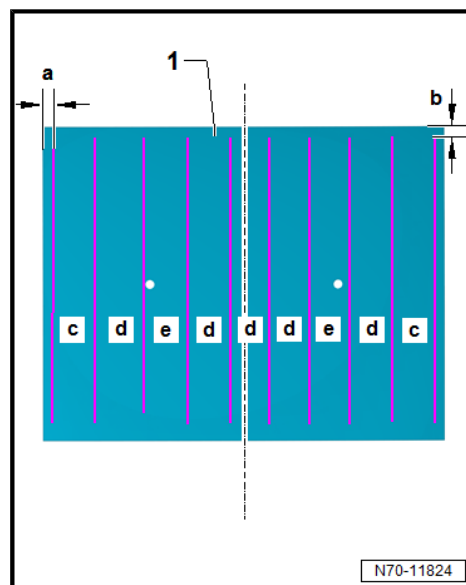
- Measure the roof reinforcement -1- and mark the adhesive beads.





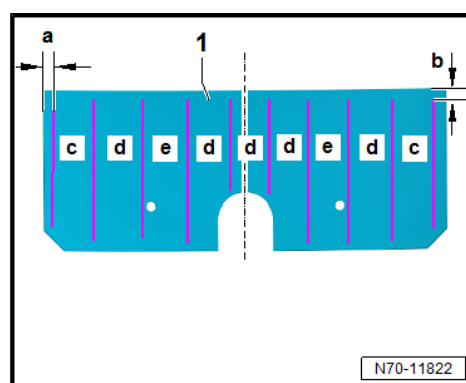
Front Roof Reinforcement

- ◆ Dimension -a- = 20 mm
- ◆ Dimension -b- = 20 mm
- ◆ Dimension -c- = 92.5 mm
- ◆ Dimension -d- = 95 mm
- ◆ Dimension -e- = 100 mm
- ◆ Adhesive bead diameter: approximately 6 mm



Rear Roof Reinforcement

- ◆ Dimension -a- = 20 mm
- ◆ Dimension -b- = 20 mm
- ◆ Dimension -c- = 92.5 mm
- ◆ Dimension -d- = 95 mm
- ◆ Dimension -e- = 100 mm
- ◆ Adhesive bead diameter: approximately 6 mm



- Apply the one-part assembly adhesive (refer to the Parts Catalog) as adhesive beads with an approximately 6 mm diameter on the roof reinforcement using the -VAG1628-.

- Guide the front roof reinforcement -1- into the vehicle.

- Position the front roof reinforcement -1- according to dimension -a- at the center of the roof and press on the entire surface.

- ◆ Dimension -a- = 43 mm from the trim edge on the front roof crossmember

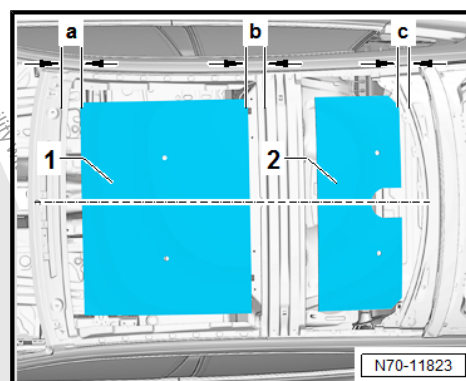
If the roof reinforcement -1- is installed correctly, dimension -b- is the automatic result.

- ◆ Dimension -b- = 43 mm from the trim edge on the center roof crossmember

- Guide the rear roof reinforcement -2- into the vehicle.

- Position the rear roof reinforcement -2- according to dimension -c- at the center of the roof and press on the entire surface.

- ◆ Dimension -c- = 43 mm from the trim edge on the rear roof crossmember



7.3.2 Roof Reinforcement, Attaching to Body, with Sliding Sunroof

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Window Cutter - VAG1561A-
- ◆ Scraper Blade - 45mm - VAG1561/20-



- ◆ Cartridge Gun - VAG1628-
- ◆ Trim Release Lever - T10039-

Removing

- Remove the headliner. Refer to
⇒ ["7.2 Headliner, Removing and Installing", page 227](#) .
- Cut the roof reinforcement -1- along the adhesive bead with a carpet knife in strips -2-.
- Pull off the strips -2- from the roof.
- Cut back any remaining adhesive using the -VAG1561A- and -VAG1561/20- .



Note

If the paint structure was damaged while removing the roof reinforcement, paint damage must be repaired according to the specifications. Refer to the Paint Repair Manual.

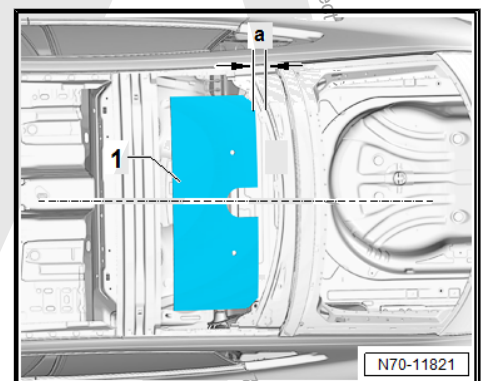
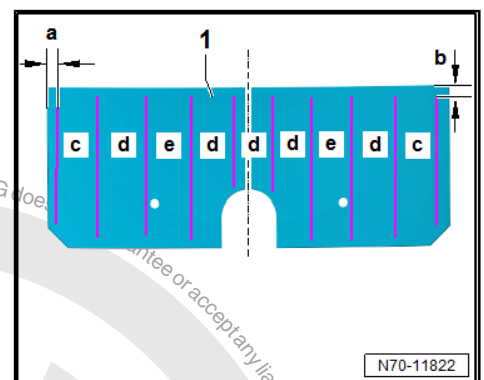
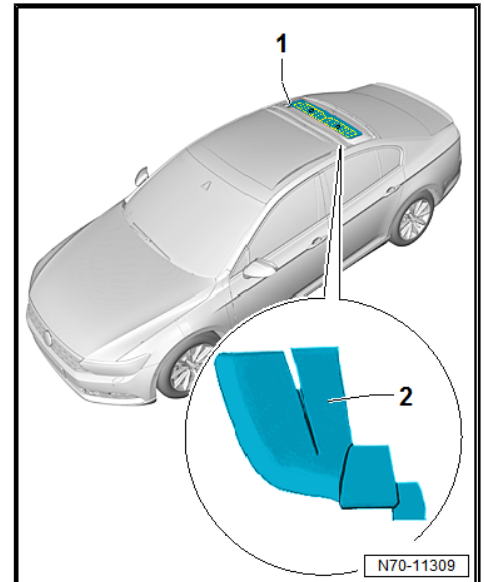
Installing



Note

Processing instructions for the adhesive must be observed when installing the roof reinforcement.

- Measure the roof reinforcement -1- and mark the adhesive beads.
- ◆ Dimension -a- = 20 mm
- ◆ Dimension -b- = 20 mm
- ◆ Dimension -c- = 92.5 mm
- ◆ Dimension -d- = 95 mm
- ◆ Dimension -e- = 100 mm
- ◆ Adhesive bead diameter: approximately 6 mm
- Apply the one-part assembly adhesive (refer to the Parts Catalog) as adhesive beads with an approximately 6 mm diameter on the roof reinforcement using the -VAG1628- .
- Guide the roof reinforcement -1- into the vehicle.
- Position the roof reinforcement -1- according to dimension -a- at the center of the roof and press on the entire surface.
- ◆ Dimension -a- = 43 mm from the trim edge on the rear roof crossmember

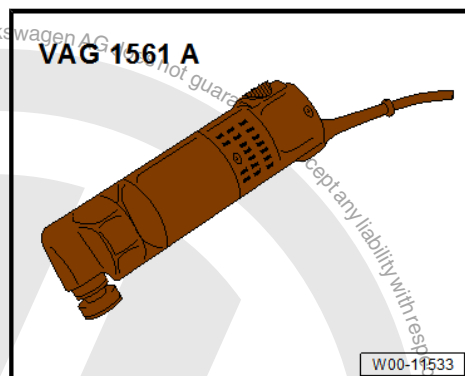




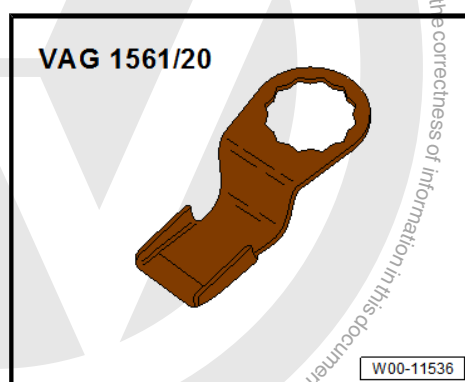
8 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

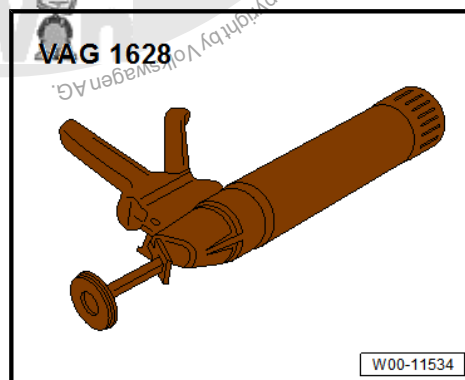
- ◆ Window Cutter - VAG1561A-



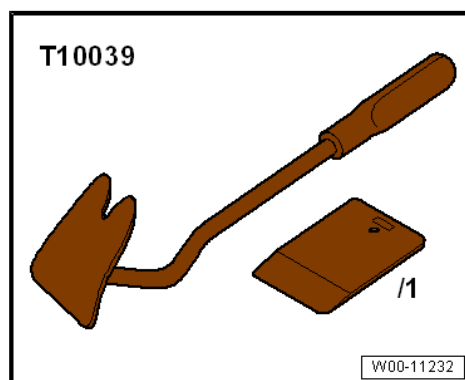
- ◆ Scraper Blade - 45mm - VAG1561/20-



- ◆ Cartridge Gun - VAG1628-

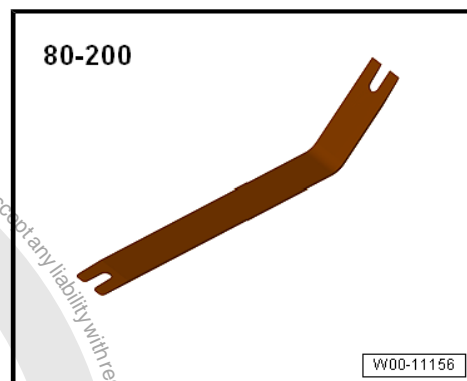


- ◆ Trim Release Lever - T10039-

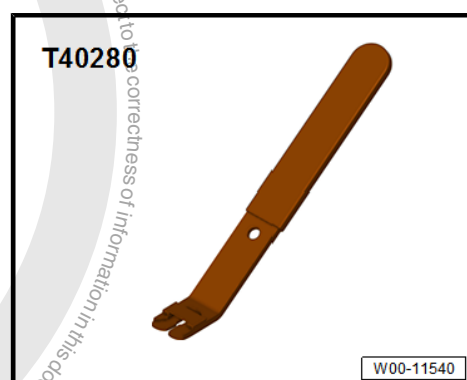




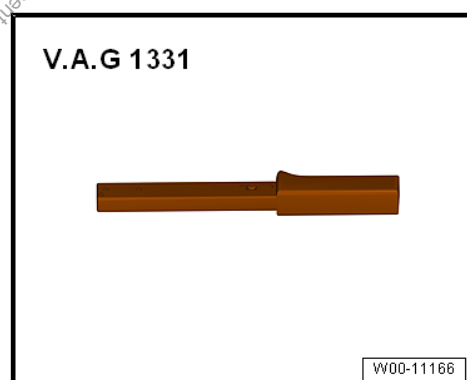
◆ Pry Lever - 80-200-



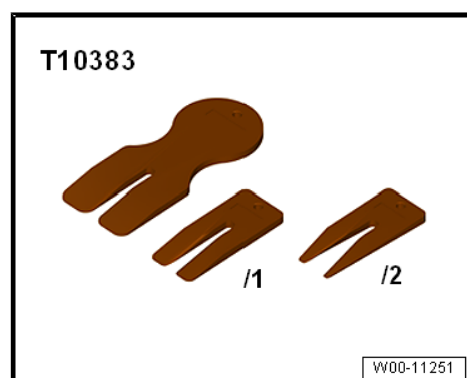
◆ Omega Clip Tool - T40280-



◆ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

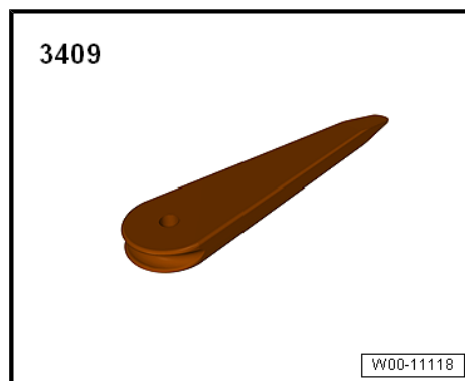


◆ Wedge Set - T10383-

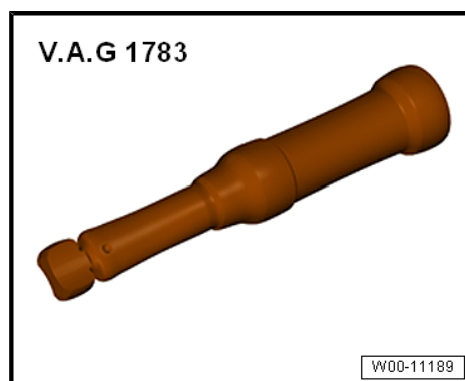




◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-



◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-





72 – Seat Frames

1 Overview - Seat Versions

⇒ [“1.1 Component Location Overview - Seat Versions”, page 237](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Front Seat, Mounting on Fixture for Seat Repair”, page 238](#)

1.1 Component Location Overview - Seat Versions

1 - Front Passenger Side Front Seat

- ☐ The design depends on vehicle equipment
- ☐ Overview - Front Seat. Refer to
⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Front Seat”, page 246](#).
- ☐ Overview - Front Backrest. Refer to
⇒ [“2.3 Overview - Front Backrest”, page 250](#).
- ☐ Overview - Seat Pan. Refer to
⇒ [“2.4 Overview - Seat Pan”, page 253](#).

2 - Rear Seat Backrest

- ☐ The design depends on vehicle equipment
- ☐ Overview - Rear Seat Backrest. Refer to
⇒ [“3.3 Overview - Rear Seat Backrest”, page 294](#).
- ☐ Overview - Center Armrest. Refer to
⇒ [“3.4 Overview - Center Armrest”, page 295](#).

3 - Side Cushion

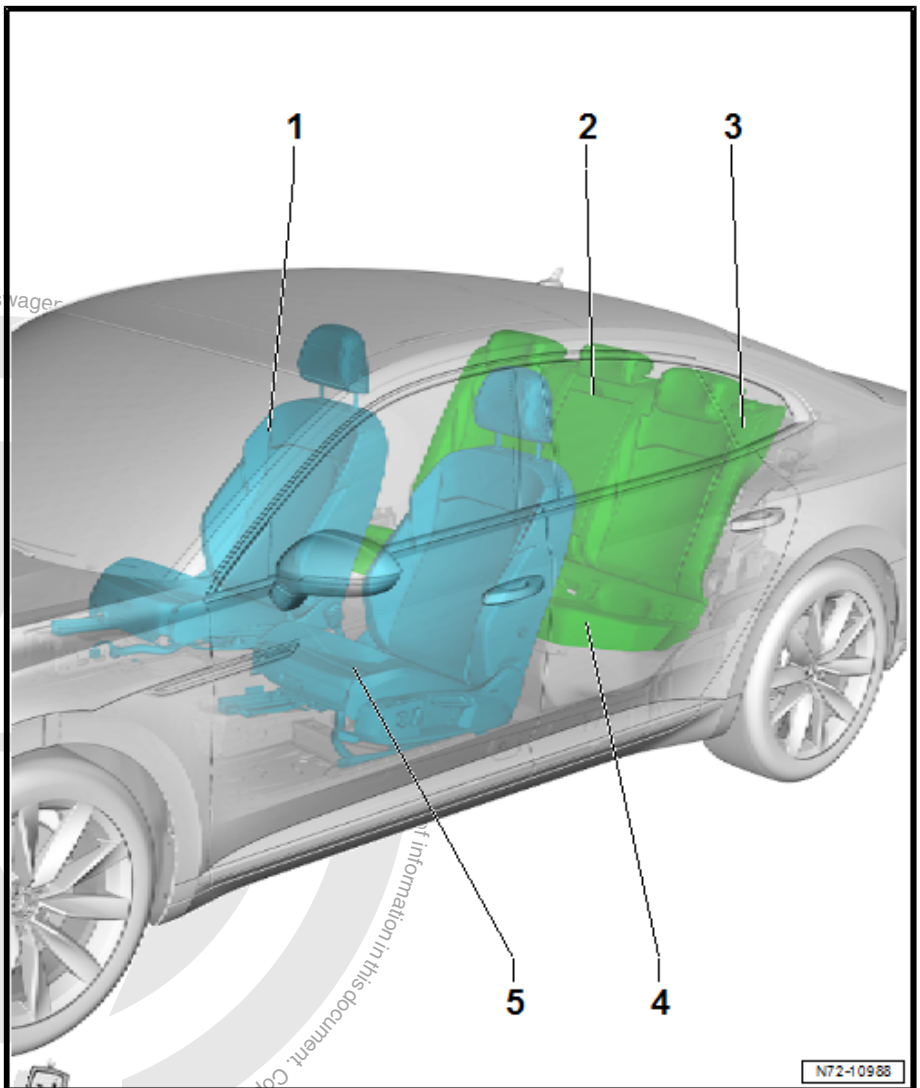
- ☐ The design depends on vehicle equipment
- ☐ Overview - Side Cushion. Refer to
⇒ [“3.5 Overview - Side Cushion”, page 296](#).

4 - Bench Seat / Single Seats

- ☐ The design depends on vehicle equipment
- ☐ Overview - Bench Seat/Single Seats. Refer to ⇒ [“3.1 Overview - Bench Seat/Single Seats”, page 291](#).

5 - Driver Side Front Seat

- ☐ The design depends on vehicle equipment
- ☐ Overview - Front Seat. Refer to ⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Front Seat”, page 246](#).
- ☐ Overview - Front Backrest. Refer to ⇒ [“2.3 Overview - Front Backrest”, page 250](#).
- ☐ Overview - Seat Pan. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4 Overview - Seat Pan”, page 253](#).





1.2 Front Seat, Mounting on Fixture for Seat Repair

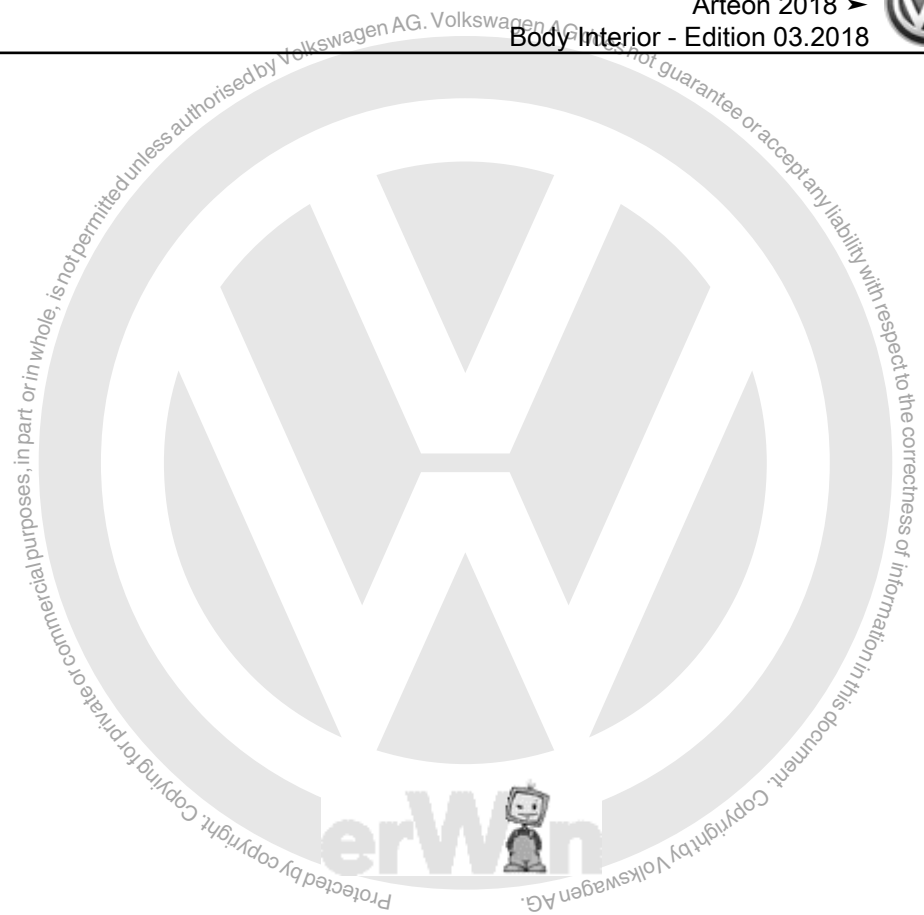
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Engine and Transmission Holder - VAS6095A-
- ◆ Engine/Transmission Holder - Seat Repair Fixture - VAS6136-

Procedure

- Seat removed from the vehicle.
- Attach the -VAS6136- onto the -VAS6095A- .
- Secure the seat to the -VAS6136- .







2 Front Seats

- ⇒ ["2.1 Component Location Overview - Electric and Electronic Components", page 241](#)
- ⇒ ["2.2 Overview - Front Seat", page 246](#)
- ⇒ ["2.3 Overview - Front Backrest", page 250](#)
- ⇒ ["2.4 Overview - Seat Pan", page 253](#)
- ⇒ ["2.5 Overview - Seat Height Adjustment", page 259](#)
- ⇒ ["2.6 Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster", page 261](#)
- ⇒ ["2.7 Overview - Seat Depth Adjuster", page 263](#)
- ⇒ ["2.8 Overview - Fire Extinguisher", page 264](#)
- ⇒ ["2.9 Front Seat, Removing and Installing", page 264](#)
- ⇒ ["2.10 Airbag Adapter, Connecting and Disconnecting", page 271](#)
- ⇒ ["2.11 Tunnel-Side Seat Trim, Removing and Installing", page 272](#)
- ⇒ ["2.12 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 273](#)
- ⇒ ["2.13 Seat Trim Panel Bracket, Removing and Installing", page 275](#)
- ⇒ ["2.14 Manual Lumbar Support, Removing and Installing", page 275](#)
- ⇒ ["2.15 Seat Depth Adjuster, Removing and Installing", page 277](#)
- ⇒ ["2.16 Seat Height Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing", page 280](#)
- ⇒ ["2.17 Seat Height Adjuster, Removing and Installing", page 281](#)
- ⇒ ["2.18 Seat Pan Lower Frame with Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V28 / V31 , Removing and Installing", page 282](#)
- ⇒ ["2.19 Lumbar Support Adjusting Mechanism, Removing and Installing", page 283](#)
- ⇒ ["2.20 Front Backrest, Removing and Installing", page 283](#)
- ⇒ ["2.21 Headrest, Removing and Installing", page 285](#)
- ⇒ ["2.22 Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing", page 286](#)
- ⇒ ["2.23 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E176 / E177 , Removing and Installing", page 287](#)
- ⇒ ["2.24 Lumbar Support Adjustment Motors V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 , Removing and Installing", page 288](#)
- ⇒ ["2.25 Driver/Front Passenger Seat Adjustment Control Head E470 / E471 , Removing and Installing", page 288](#)
- ⇒ ["2.26 Massage Function Control Module J740 , Removing and Installing", page 289](#)
- ⇒ ["2.27 Memory Seat/Steering Column Adjustment Control Module J136 , Removing and Installing", page 289](#)
- ⇒ ["2.28 Backrest Kick and Puncture Protection, Removing and Installing", page 289](#)



⇒ [“2.29 Backrest Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 290](#)

2.1 Component Location Overview - Electric and Electronic Components

⇒ [“2.1.1 Component Locations Overview - Electric and Electronic Components, Standard Seat, Ergo Comfort Seat”, page 241](#)

⇒ [“2.1.2 Component Locations Overview - Electric and Electronic Components, Power Seat”, page 242](#)

⇒ [“2.1.3 Component Location Overview - Electric and Electronic Components, Power Seat with Seat Ventilation”, page 244](#)

2.1.1 Component Locations Overview - Electric and Electronic Components, Standard Seat, Ergo Comfort Seat

1 - Massage Function Control Module - J740-

- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.26 Massage Function Control Module J740, Removing and Installing”, page 289](#).

2 - Seat Heating Element

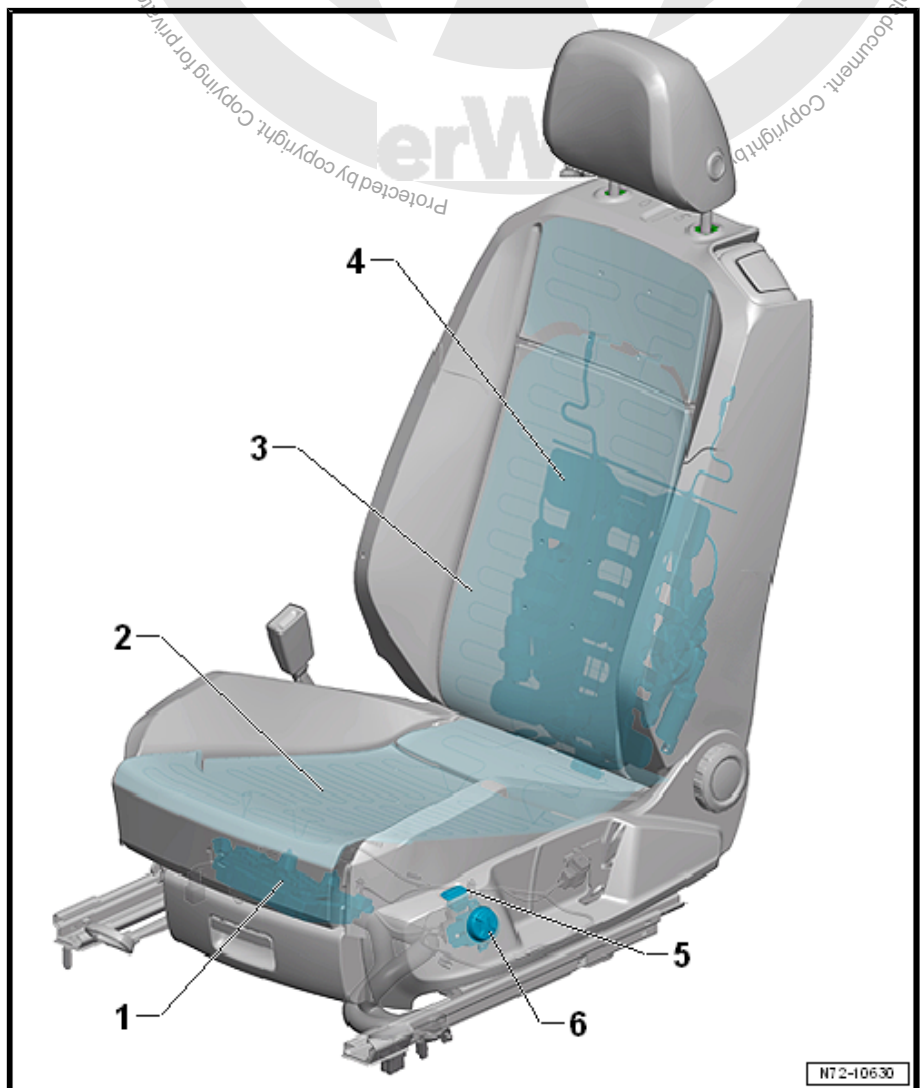
- ☐ Driver Seat Heating Element - Z6-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Heating Element - Z8-
- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.8 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Heating Element Z6 / Z8, Removing and Installing”, page 324](#).

3 - Backrest Heating Element

- ☐ Driver Backrest Heating Element - Z7-
- ☐ Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element - Z9-
- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.9 Driver/Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element Z7 / Z9, Removing and Installing”, page 325](#).

4 - Lumbar Support

- ☐ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor - V125-
- ☐ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor - V129-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor - V126-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor - V130-



N72-10630

- ❑ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“2.3.3 Overview - Front Backrest, Power Lumbar Support”, page 252](#) .
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“2.24 Lumbar Support Adjustment Motors V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 , Removing and Installing”, page 288](#) .

5 - Massage Button

- ☐ Driver Side Massage Function Button - E670-
- ☐ Front Passenger Massage Function Button - E671-
- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment

6 - Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch

- ❑ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E176-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E177-
- ❑ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "2.23 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E176 / E177 , Removing and Installing", page 287 .

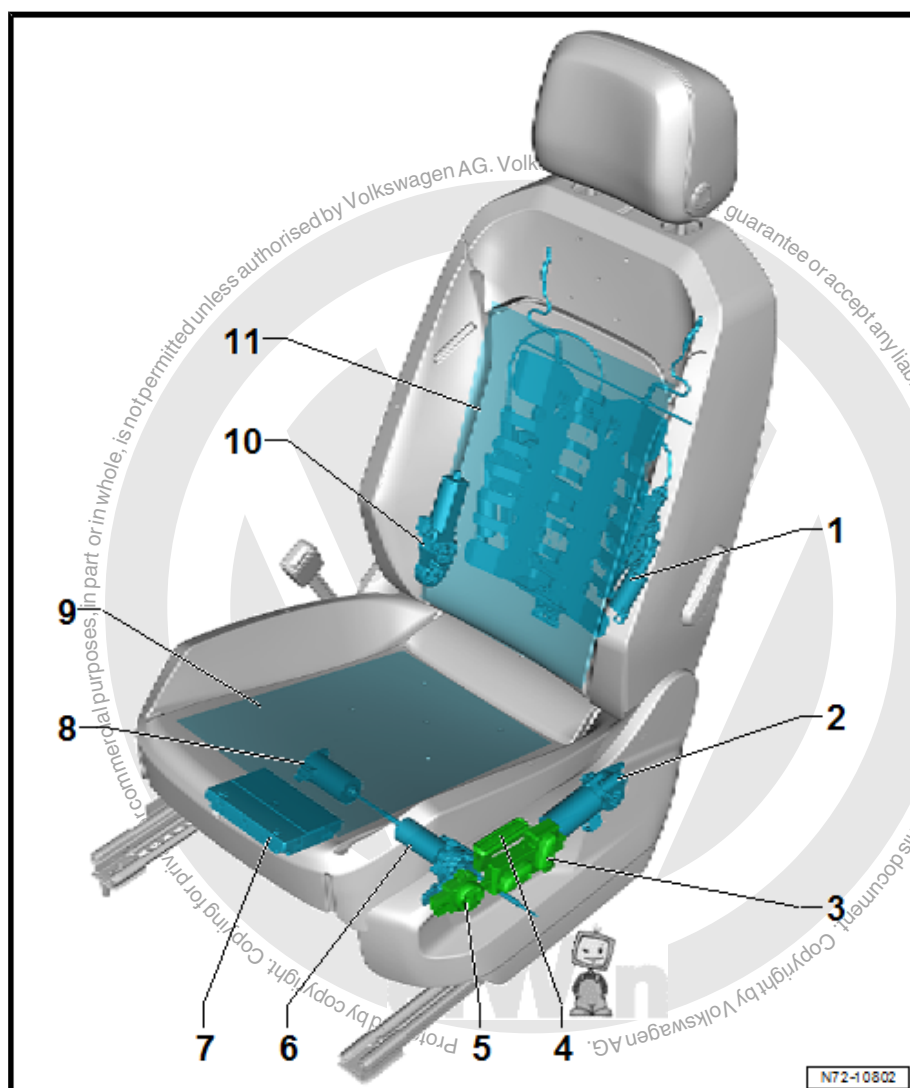
2.1.2 Component Locations Overview - Electric and Electronic Components, Power Seat

1 - Lumbar Support

- ❑ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor - V125-
- ❑ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor - V129-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor - V126-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor - V130-
- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“2.3.3 Overview - Front Backrest, Power Lumbar Support”, page 252](#) .
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.24 Lumbar Support Adjustment Motors V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 , Removing and Installing”, page 288](#) .

2 - Seat Height Adjustment

- ❑ Driver Seat Height Adjustment Motor - V138-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Height Adjustment Motor - V246-
- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ "2.5.2 Overview - Seat Height Adjustment."





Power Seat Height Adjustment", page 260 .

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "2.17.2 Seat Height Adjustment, Removing and Installing, Power Seat Height Adjustment", page 281 .

3 - Seat Adjustment Control Head

- ❑ Driver Seat Adjustment Control Head - E470-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Adjustment Control Head - E471-
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "2.25 Driver/Front Passenger Seat Adjustment Control Head E470 / E471 , Removing and Installing", page 288 .

4 - Massage Button

- ❑ Driver Side Massage Function Button - E670-
- ❑ Front Passenger Massage Function Button - E671-
- ❑ Depending on the vehicle equipment

5 - Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch

- ❑ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E176-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "2.23 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E176 / E177 , Removing and Installing", page 287 .

6 - Seat Angle Adjuster

- ❑ Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor - V243-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Angle Adjustment Motor - V244-
- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ "2.6.2 Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster, Power Adjustment", page 262 .

7 - Control Module

- ❑ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ❑ Massage Function Control Module - J740-
- ❑ Memory Seat/Steering Column Adjustment Control Module - J136-
- ❑ Massage Function Control Module - J740- , Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "2.26 Massage Function Control Module J740 , Removing and Installing", page 289 .
- ❑ Memory Seat/Steering Column Adjustment Control Module - J136- , Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "2.27 Memory Seat/Steering Column Adjustment Control Module J136 , Removing and Installing", page 289 .

8 - Seat Forward/Back Adjuster

- ❑ Driver Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor - V28-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor - V31-
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "2.18 Seat Pan Lower Frame with Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V28 / V31 , Removing and Installing", page 282 .

9 - Seat Heating Element

- ❑ Driver Seat Heating Element - Z6-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Heating Element - Z8-
- ❑ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "1.8 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Heating Element Z6 / Z8 , Removing and Installing", page 324 .

10 - Backrest Adjuster

- ❑ Driver Backrest Adjustment Motor - V45-
- ❑ Front Passenger Backrest Adjustment Motor - V46-
- ❑ The Driver Backrest Adjustment Motor - V45- / Front Passenger Backrest Adjustment Motor - V46- cannot be replaced separately. If the backrest adjuster is faulty, the backrest frame must be replaced.

11 - Backrest Heating Element

- ☐ Driver Backrest Heating Element - Z7-
- ☐ Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element - Z9-
- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.9 Driver/Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element Z7 / Z9 , Removing and Installing", page 325](#) .

2.1.3 Component Location Overview - Electric and Electronic Components, Power Seat with Seat Ventilation

1 - Backrest Heating Element

- ☐ Driver Backrest Heating Element - Z7-
- ☐ Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element - Z9-
- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.9 Driver/Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element Z7 / Z9 , Removing and Installing", page 325](#) .

2 - Backrest Blower Fan

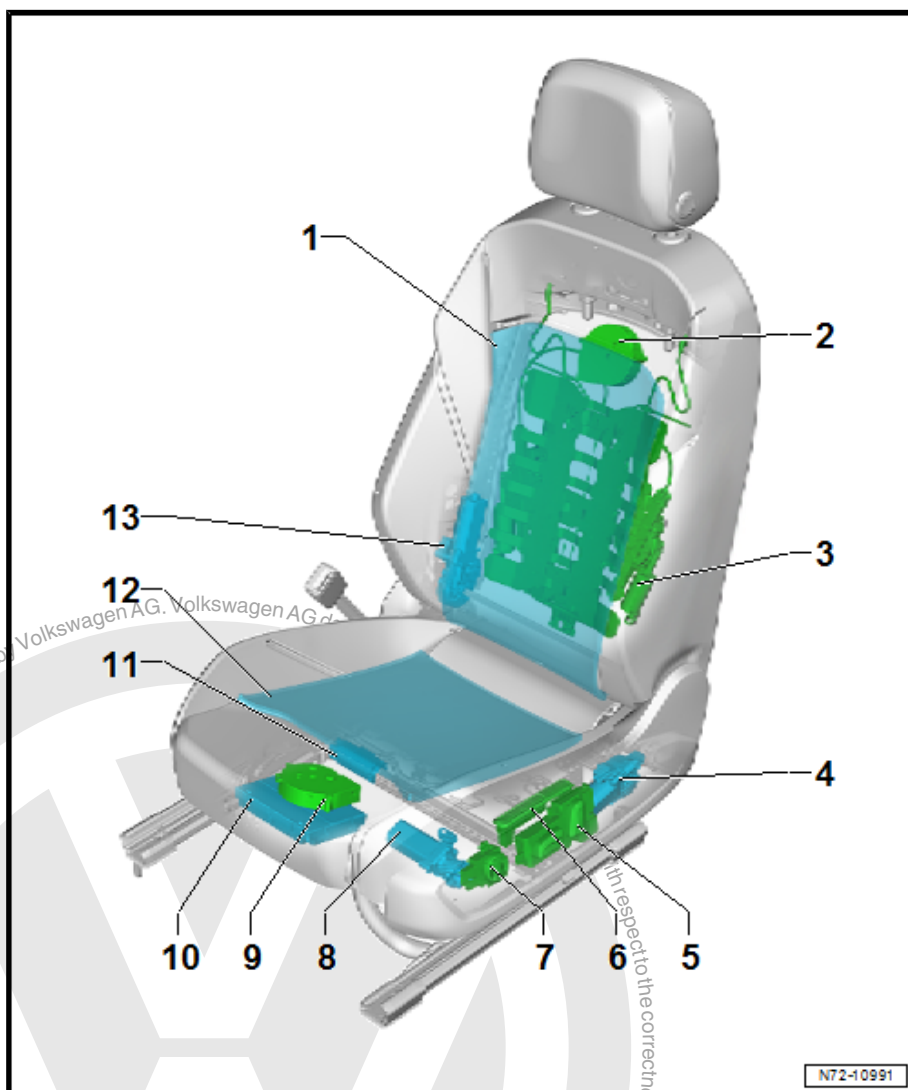
- ☐ Left Front Seat Backrest Fan 1 - V512-
- ☐ Right Front Seat Backrest Fan 1 - V516-

3 - Lumbar Support

- ☐ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor - V125-
- ☐ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor - V129-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor - V126-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor - V130-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to
⇒ ["2.3.3 Overview - Front Backrest, Power Lumbar Support", page 252](#) .
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.24 Lumbar Support Adjustment Motors V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 , Removing and Installing", page 288](#) .

4 - Seat Height Adjustment

- ☐ Driver Seat Height Adjustment Motor - V138-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Height Adjustment Motor - V246-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to
⇒ ["2.5.2 Overview - Seat Height Adjustment, Power Seat Height Adjustment", page 260](#) .





- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.17.2 Seat Height Adjustment, Removing and Installing, Power Seat Height Adjustment”, page 281](#).

5 - Seat Adjustment Control Head

- ☐ Driver Seat Adjustment Control Head - E470-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Adjustment Control Head - E471-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.25 Driver/Front Passenger Seat Adjustment Control Head E470 / E471 , Removing and Installing”, page 288](#).

6 - Massage Button

- ☐ Driver Side Massage Function Button - E670-
- ☐ Front Passenger Massage Function Button - E671-
- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment

7 - Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch

- ☐ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E176-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E177-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.23 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E176 / E177 , Removing and Installing”, page 287](#).

8 - Seat Angle Adjuster

- ☐ Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor - V243-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Angle Adjustment Motor - V244-
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“2.6.2 Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster, Power Adjustment”, page 262](#).

9 - Seat Cushion Blower Fan

- ☐ Left Front Seat Cushion Fan 1 - V514-
- ☐ Right Front Seat Cushion Fan 1 - V518-

10 - Control Module

- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Massage Function Control Module - J740-
- ☐ Memory Seat/Steering Column Adjustment Control Module - J136-
- ☐ Massage Function Control Module - J740- , Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.26 Massage Function Control Module J740 , Removing and Installing”, page 289](#).
- ☐ Memory Seat/Steering Column Adjustment Control Module - J136- , Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.27 Memory Seat/Steering Column Adjustment Control Module J136 , Removing and Installing”, page 289](#).

11 - Seat Forward/Back Adjuster

- ☐ Driver Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor - V28-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor - V31-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.18 Seat Pan Lower Frame with Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V28 / V31 , Removing and Installing”, page 282](#).

12 - Seat Heating Element

- ☐ Driver Seat Heating Element - Z6-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Heating Element - Z8-
- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.8 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Heating Element Z6 / Z8 , Removing and Installing”, page 324](#).

13 - Backrest Adjuster

- ☐ Driver Backrest Adjustment Motor - V45-
- ☐ Front Passenger Backrest Adjustment Motor - V46-



- ❑ The Driver Backrest Adjustment Motor - V45- / Front Passenger Backrest Adjustment Motor - V46- cannot be replaced separately. If the backrest adjuster is faulty, the backrest frame must be replaced.

2.2 Overview - Front Seat

⇒ [“2.2.1 Overview - Front Seat, Standard Seat, Ergo Comfort Seat”, page 246](#)

⇒ [“2.2.2 Overview - Front Seat, Power Seat”, page 248](#)

2.2.1 Overview - Front Seat, Standard Seat, Ergo Comfort Seat



Note

The illustration shows the driver side front seat. The front seat on the front passenger side is similar.

1 - Backrest

- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“2.3 Overview - Front Backrest”, page 250](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.20 Front Backrest, Removing and Installing”, page 283](#).

2 - Headrest

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.21 Headrest, Removing and Installing”, page 285](#).

3 - Hand Wheel

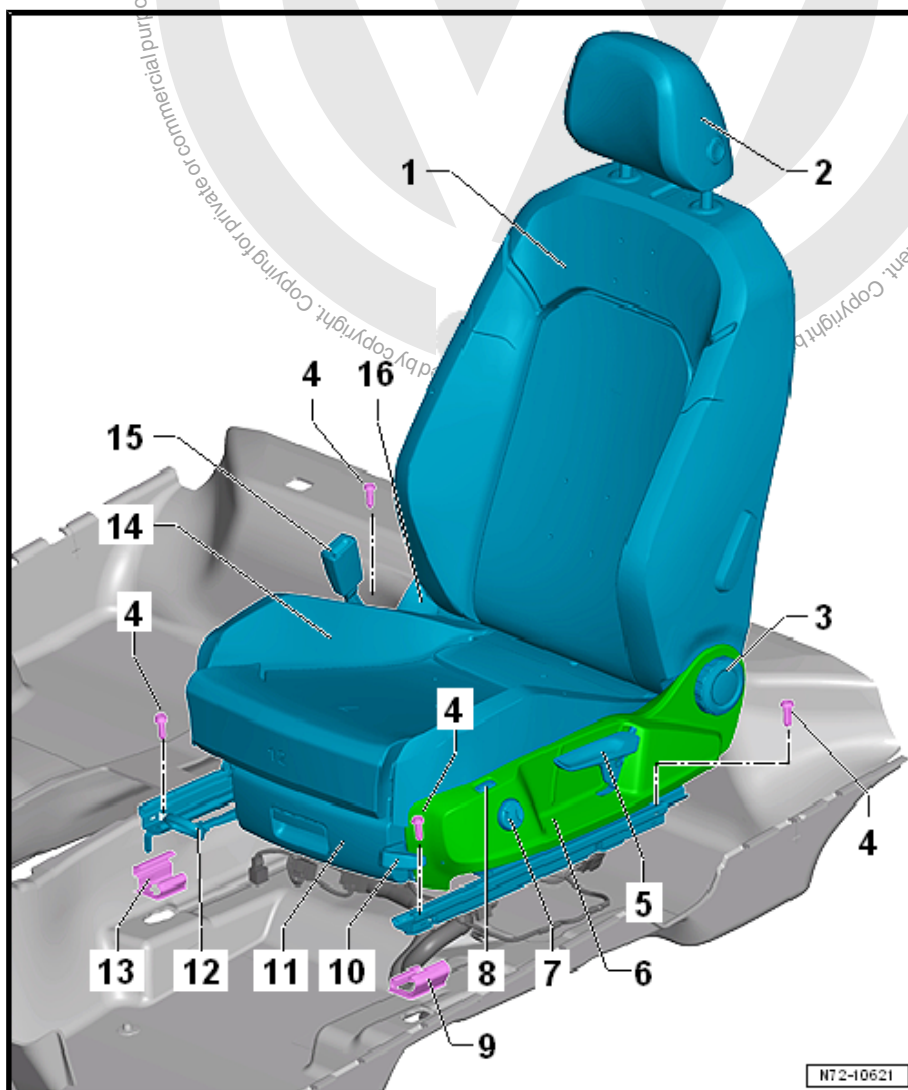
- ❑ For the manual backrest adjustment
- ❑ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.29 Backrest Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 290](#).

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 4

5 - Seat Height Adjustment

- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“2.5.1 Overview - Seat Height Adjustment; Manual Seat Height Adjustment”, page 259](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.17.1 Seat Height Adjustment, Removing and Installing, Manual Seat Height Adjustment”, page 281](#).
- ❑ Seat Height Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.16 Seat Height Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 280](#).





6 - Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.12 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 273](#) .

7 - Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch

- ☐ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E176
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E177-
- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.23 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E176 / E177 , Removing and Installing”, page 287](#) .
- ☐ Lumbar support, removing and installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.24 Lumbar Support Adjustment Motors V125 / V126 / V129 / V130 , Removing and Installing”, page 288](#) .

8 - Massage Button

- ☐ Driver Side Massage Function Button - E670-
- ☐ Front Passenger Massage Function Button - E671-
- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment

9 - Cover

- ☐ For sill-side seat rail
- ☐ Installed in rear and front
- ☐ Quantity: 2
- ☐ Loosen and remove from the seat rail by carefully releasing the retaining tabs without breaking them using a screwdriver.
- ☐ Carefully push onto the seat rail until it engages audibly

10 - Seat Angle Adjuster

- ☐ Depending on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“2.6.1 Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster, Manual Adjustment”, page 261](#) .

11 - Storage Compartment

- ☐ Not equipped on this model

12 - Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Handle

- ☐ Remove by hand or separate from the handle mount using a rubber or plastic mallet.
- ☐ Hit the seat forward/back adjustment handle all the way back on using a rubber mallet. Do not damage the surface while doing so.

13 - Cover

- ☐ For tunnel side seat rail
- ☐ Quantity: 2
- ☐ Installed in rear and front
- ☐ Loosen and remove from the seat rail by carefully releasing the retaining tabs without breaking them using a screwdriver.
- ☐ Carefully push onto the seat rail until it engages audibly

14 - Seat Pan

- ☐ Dependent on vehicle equipment with seat depth adjuster. Refer to ⇒ [page 263](#) .
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4 Overview - Seat Pan”, page 253](#) .

15 - Seat Belt Latch

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“1.14 Front Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 84](#) .

16 - Tunnel-Side Seat Trim Panel

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.11 Tunnel-Side Seat Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 272](#) .



2.2.2 Overview - Front Seat, Power Seat



Note

The illustration shows the driver side front seat. The front seat on the front passenger side is similar.

1 - Backrest

- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ ["2.3 Overview - Front Backrest", page 250](#).
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.20 Front Backrest, Removing and Installing", page 283](#).

2 - Headrest

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.21 Headrest, Removing and Installing", page 285](#).

3 - Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.42 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 273](#).

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 4

5 - Seat Adjustment Control Head

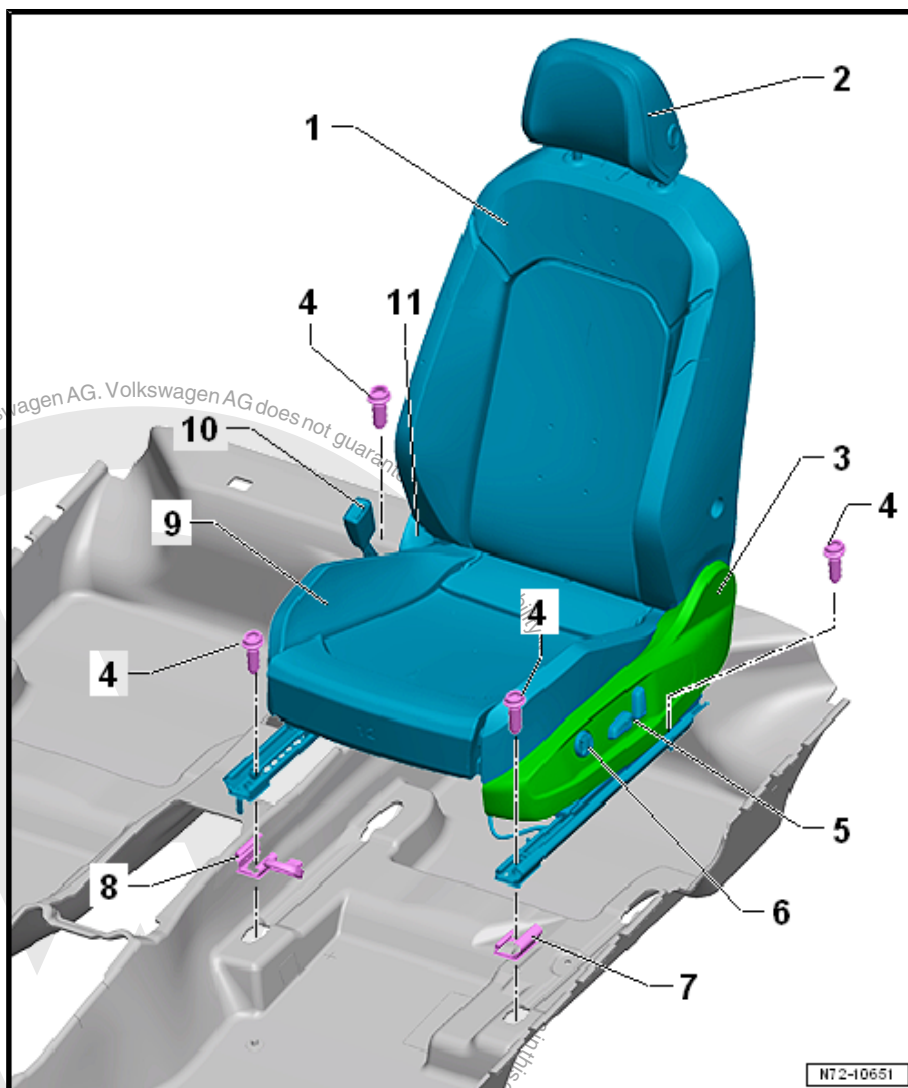
- ❑ Driver Seat Adjustment Control Head - E470-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Adjustment Control Head - E471-
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.25 Driver/Front Passenger Seat Adjustment Control Head E470 / E471, Removing and Installing", page 288](#).

6 - Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch

- ❑ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E176-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch - E177-
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.23 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch E176 / E177, Removing and Installing", page 287](#).

7 - Cover

- ❑ For sill-side seat rail
- ❑ Installed in rear and front
- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Loosen and remove from the seat rail by carefully releasing the retaining tabs without breaking them using a screwdriver.
- ❑ Carefully push onto the seat rail until it engages audibly





8 - Cover

- ☐ For tunnel side seat rail
- ☐ Quantity: 2
- ☐ Installed in rear and front
- ☐ Loosen and remove from the seat rail by carefully releasing the retaining tabs without breaking them using a screwdriver.
- ☐ Carefully push onto the seat rail until it engages audibly

9 - Seat Pan

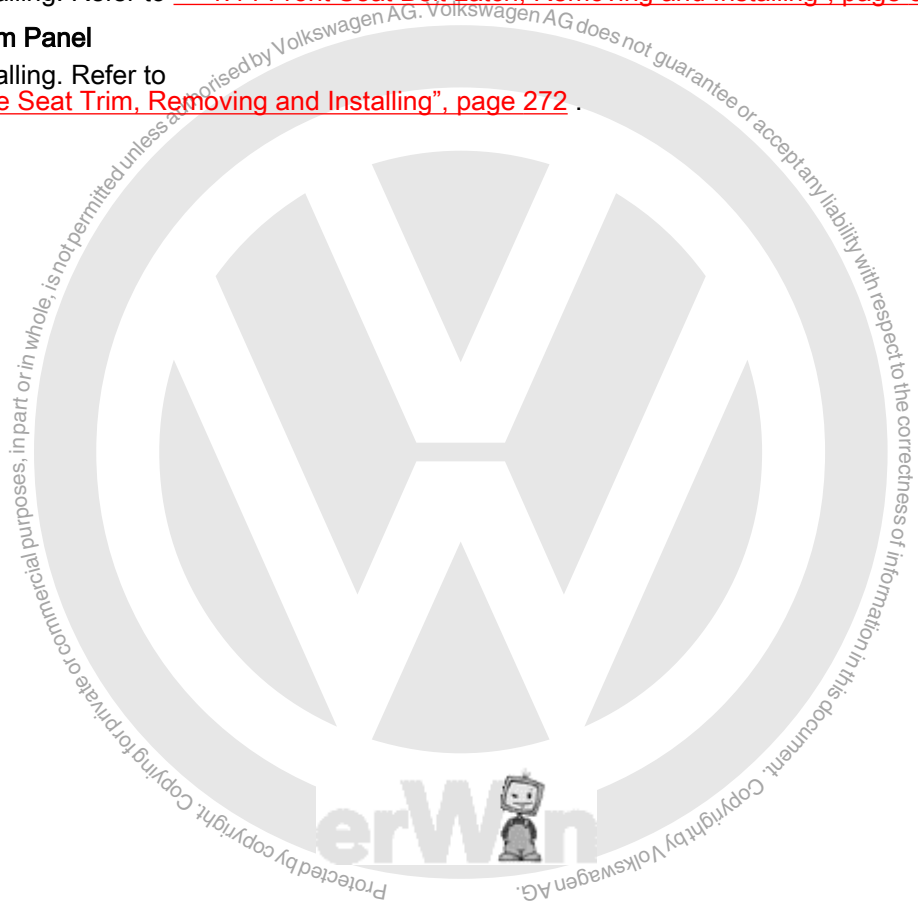
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4 Overview - Seat Pan”, page 253](#) .

10 - Seat Belt Latch

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“1.14 Front Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 84](#) .

11 - Tunnel-Side Seat Trim Panel

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.11 Tunnel-Side Seat Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 272](#) .





2.3 Overview - Front Backrest

⇒ [“2.3.1 Overview - Front Backrest, Standard Seat, Ergo Comfort”, page 250](#)

⇒ [“2.3.2 Overview - Front Backrest, with Seat Ventilation”, page 251](#)

⇒ [“2.3.3 Overview - Front Backrest, Power Lumbar Support”, page 252](#)

2.3.1 Overview - Front Backrest, Standard Seat, Ergo Comfort

1 - Headrest Guide

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.22 Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 286](#).

2 - Lever

- ❑ Only for vehicles with manual lumbar support adjustment
- ❑ Only for the front passenger side
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.19 Lumbar Support Adjusting Mechanism, Removing and Installing”, page 283](#).

3 - Hand Wheel

- ❑ Only for vehicles with manual backrest adjustment
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.29 Backrest Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 290](#).

4 - Bolts

- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Replace after removing.
- ❑ Tightening specification and sequence. Refer to
⇒ [page 285](#).

5 - Screws

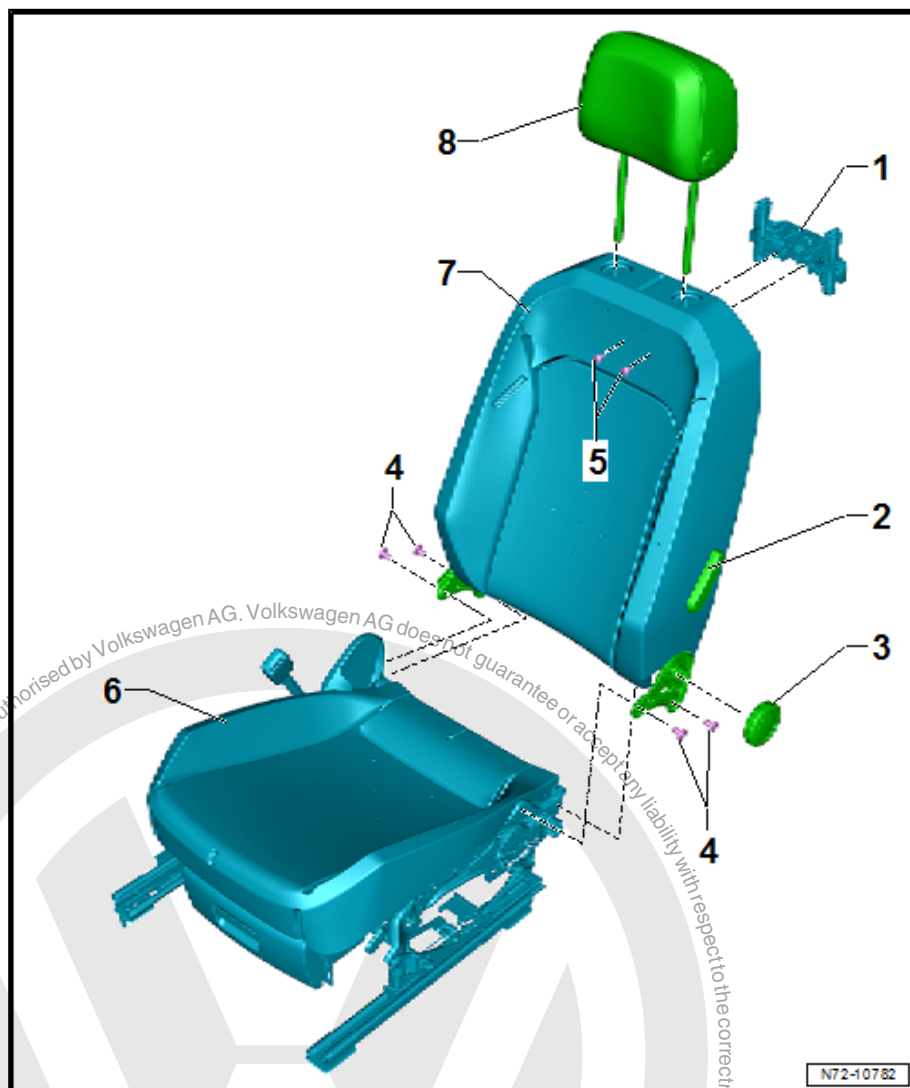
- ❑ 2 Nm
- ❑ For headrest guide

6 - Seat Pan

- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4 Overview - Seat Pan”, page 253](#).

7 - Backrest

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“2.20 Front Backrest, Removing and Installing”, page 283](#).
- ❑ Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 313](#).
- ❑ Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating. Refer to
⇒ [“1.7 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 320](#).





6 - Screws

- ☐ Self-locking
- ☐ Replace after removing.
- ☐ Tightening specification and sequence. Refer to ⇒ [page 285](#) .

7 - Seat Pan

- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["2.4 Overview - Seat Pan", page 253](#) .

2.3.3 Overview - Front Backrest, Power Lumbar Support

1 - Washer

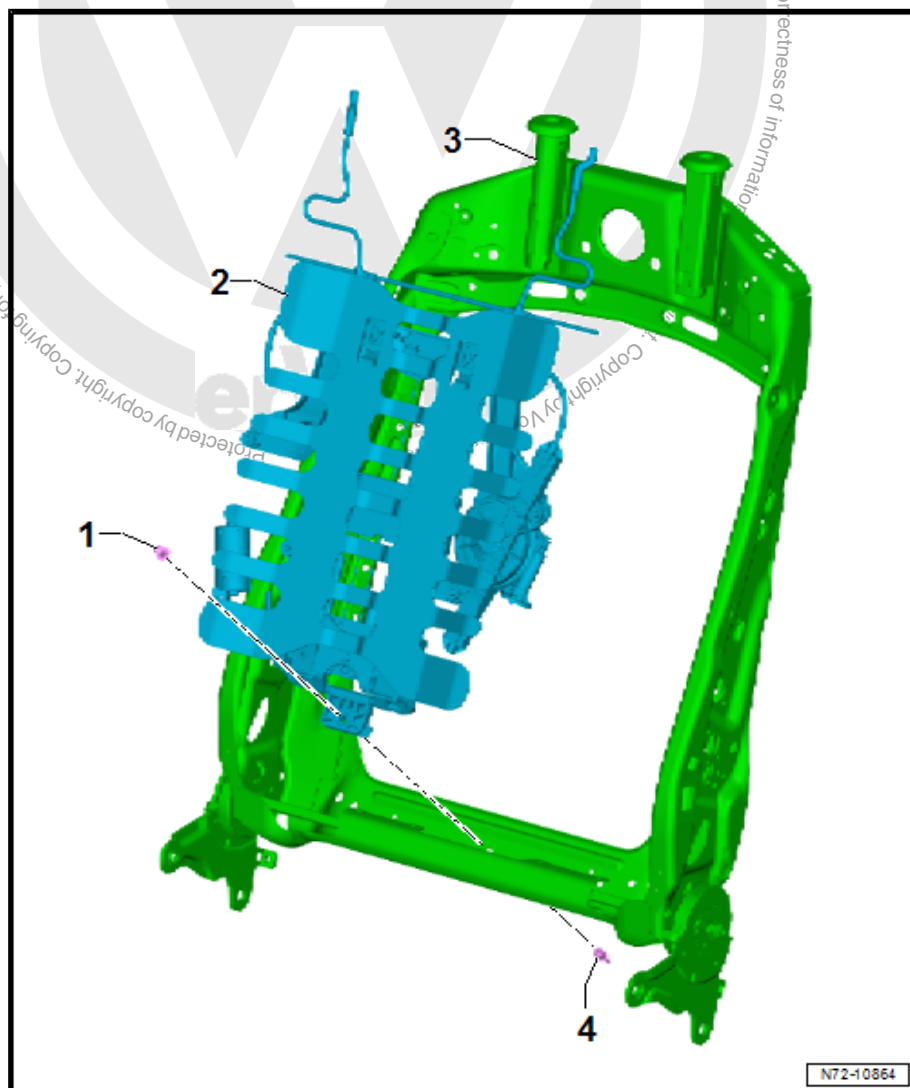
- ☐ No replacement part
- ☐ Fused in the lumbar support

2 - Lumbar Support

- ☐ Driver Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor - V125- / Driver Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor - V129-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Curvature Adjustment Motor - V126- / Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Height Adjustment Motor - V130-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["2.24 Lumbar Support Adjustment Motors V125 / V126 / V129 / V130, Removing and Installing", page 288](#) .

3 - Backrest Frame

4 - Rivet





2.4 Overview - Seat Pan

⇒ [“2.4.1 Overview - Seat Pan, Standard Seat, Ergo Comfort Seat”, page 253](#)

⇒ [“2.4.2 Overview - Seat Pan, Power Seat”, page 255](#)

⇒ [“2.4.3 Overview - Seat Pan, with Seat Ventilation”, page 256](#)

⇒ [“2.4.4 Overview - Seat Pan, Torsion Bar”, page 258](#)

2.4.1 Overview - Seat Pan, Standard Seat, Ergo Comfort Seat



Note

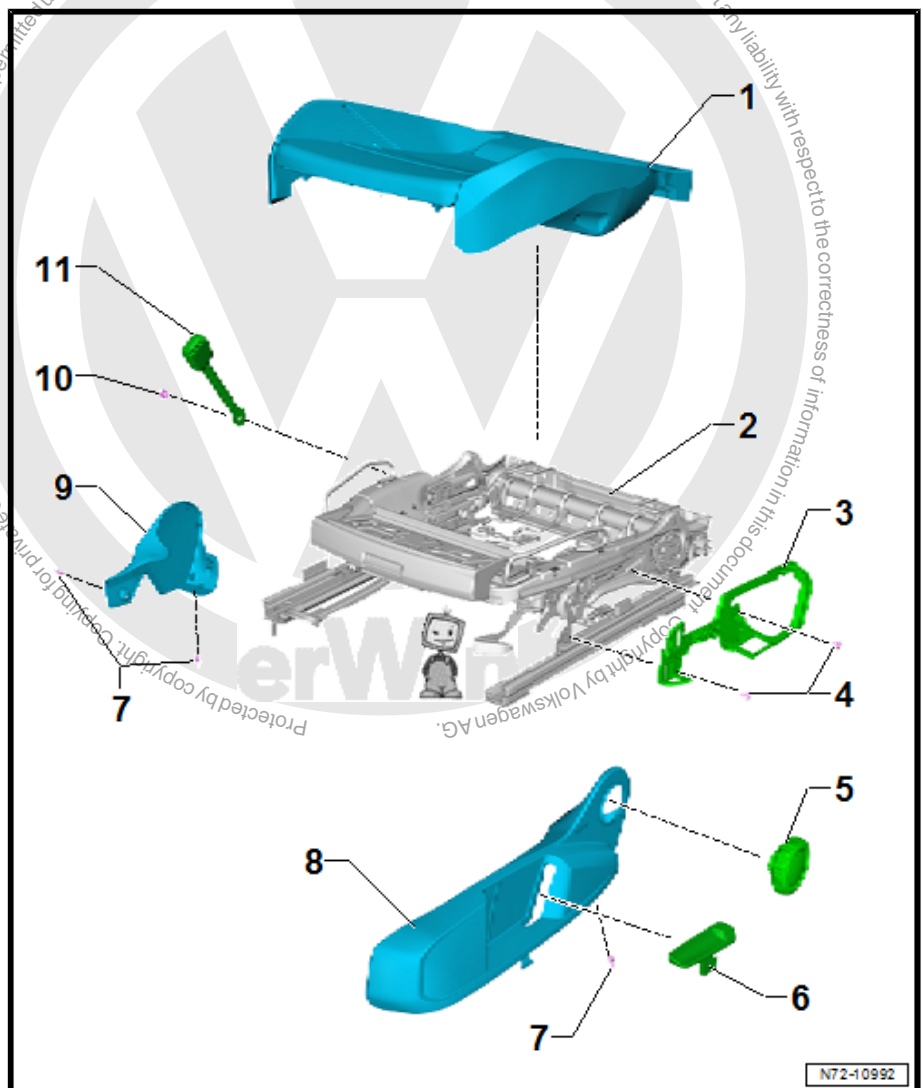
The illustration shows the driver side seat pan. The seat pan on the front passenger side is the same.

1 - Seat Cushion

- ❑ Seat Pan Cover and Padding, Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 311](#).
- ❑ Seat pan cover and cushion, separating. Refer to
⇒ [“1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 318](#).

2 - Seat Pan

- ❑ Depending on the vehicle equipment:
- ◆ Seat angle adjuster. Refer to
⇒ [“2.6.1 Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster, Manual Adjustment”, page 261](#).
- ◆ Seat depth adjuster. Refer to
⇒ [“2.7 Overview - Seat Depth Adjuster”, page 263](#).
- ◆ Seat height adjustment. Refer to
⇒ [“2.5.1 Overview - Seat Height Adjustment; Manual Seat Height Adjustment”, page 259](#).
- ❑ When using the seat frame for a Standard seat, remove the Sport bracket.



3 - Bracket

- ❑ For the sill-side seat trim panel
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.13 Seat Trim Panel Bracket, Removing and Installing”, page 275](#).

4 - Bolts

- ❑ 8 Nm



5 - Hand Wheel

- ☐ For the manual backrest adjustment
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.29 Backrest Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 290](#) .

6 - Handle

- ☐ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“2.5.1 Overview - Seat Height Adjustment; Manual Seat Height Adjustment”, page 259](#) .
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.16 Seat Height Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 280](#) .

7 - Expanding Rivet

8 - Seat Trim Panel

- ☐ Sill-side
- ☐ The design depends on the vehicle equipment
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.12 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 273](#) .

9 - Seat Trim Panel

- ☐ Tunnel-side
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.11 Tunnel-Side Seat Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 272](#) .

10 - Bolt

- ☐ 40 Nm
- ☐ Replace every time it is loosened

11 - Seat Belt Latch

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“1.14 Front Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 84](#) .





2.4.2 Overview - Seat Pan, Power Seat



Note

The illustration shows the driver side seat pan. The seat pan on the front passenger side is the same.

1 - Seat Cushion

- ☐ Seat Pan Cover and Padding, Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 311](#).
- ☐ Seat pan cover and cushion, separating. Refer to
⇒ ["1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 318](#).

2 - Seat Pan

- ☐ When using the seat frame for a Standard seat, remove the Sport bracket.

3 - Bolt

- ☐ 22 Nm
- ☐ Quantity: 4
- ☐ Self-locking
- ☐ Replace after removing.
- ☐ Threaded holes for the bolts must be cleaned with a thread tap, for example

4 - Bracket

- ☐ For the sill-side seat trim panel
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.13 Seat Trim Panel Bracket, Removing and Installing", page 275](#).

5 - Bolt

- ☐ 8 Nm

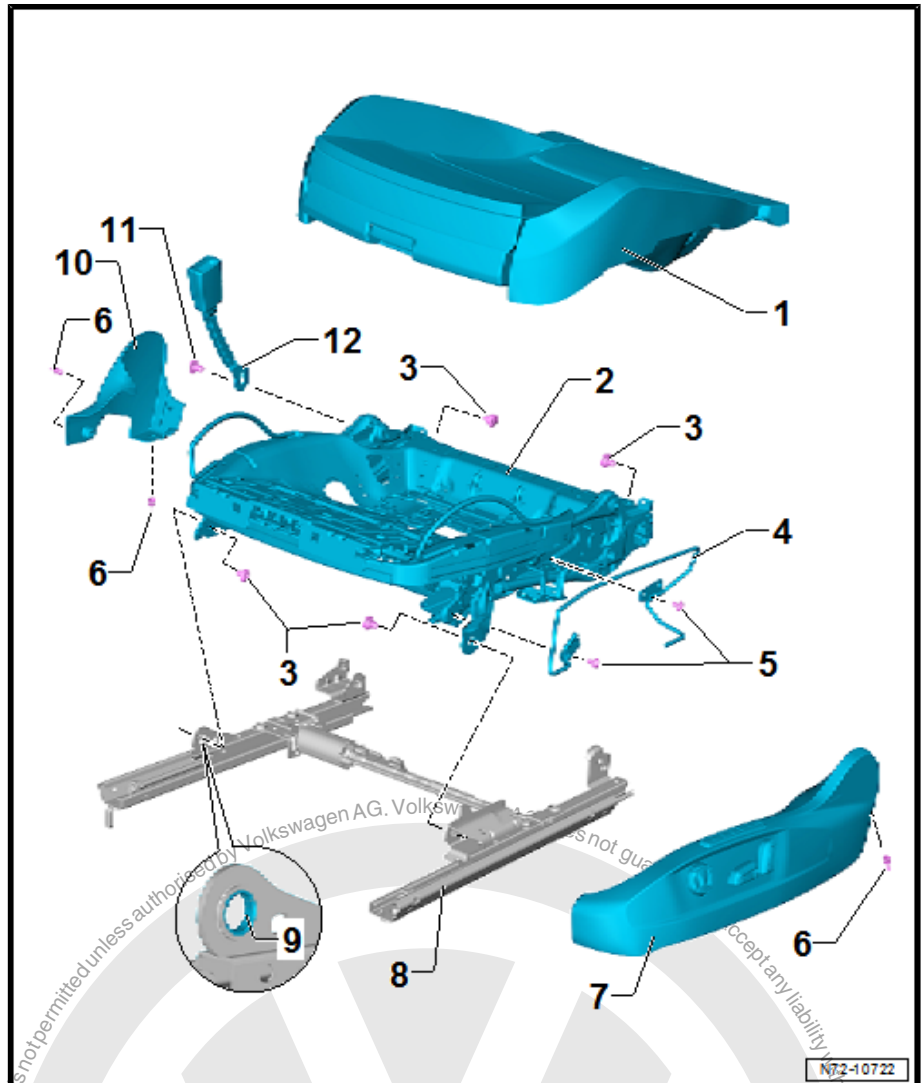
6 - Expanding Rivet

7 - Seat Trim Panel

- ☐ Sill-side
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.12 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 273](#).

8 - Seat Pan Lower Frame

- ☐ Driver Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor - V28-
- ☐ Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor - V31-
- ☐ Cannot be disassembled
- ☐ To replace the seat belt latch install in the new lower frame





- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.18 Seat Pan Lower Frame with Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V28 / V31 , Removing and Installing”, page 282](#) .

9 - Bushing

- ❑ Inserted in all bearing locations
- ❑ Cannot be replaced with service equipment
- ❑ If the bushing is damaged, the seat pan lower frame must be replaced

10 - Seat Trim Panel

- ❑ Tunnel-side
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ [“2.11 Tunnel-Side Seat Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 272](#) .

11 - Bolt

- ❑ 40 Nm
- ❑ Replace every time it is loosened

12 - Seat Belt Latch

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ [“1.14 Front Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 84](#) .

2.4.3 Overview - Seat Pan, with Seat Ventilation



Note

The illustration shows the driver side seat pan. The seat pan on the front passenger side is the same.



1 - Seat Cushion

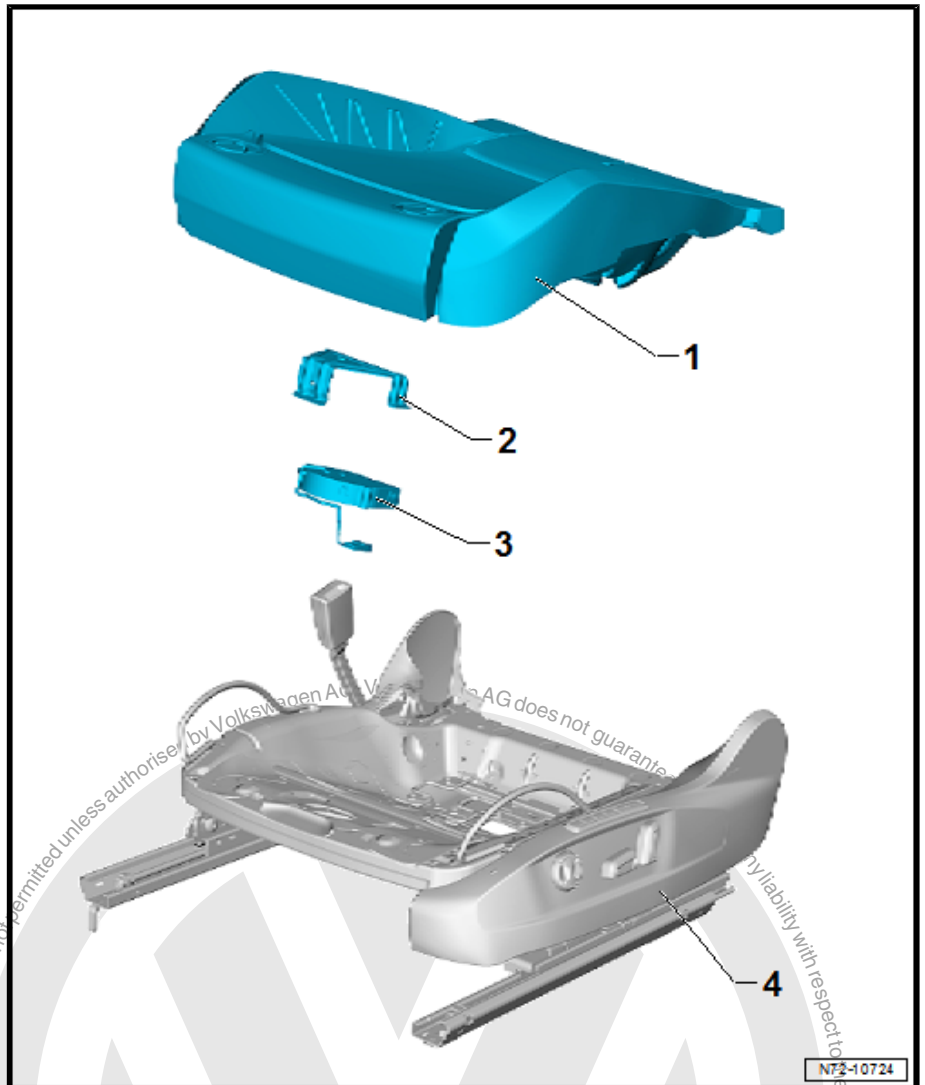
- ❑ Seat Pan Cover and Padding, Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing"](#),
[page 311](#) .
- ❑ Seat pan cover and cushion, separating. Refer to
⇒ ["1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating"](#),
[page 318](#) .

2 - Seat Blower Fan Reinforcement

3 - Seat Cushion Blower Fan

- ❑ Left Front Seat Cushion Fan 1 - V514-
- ❑ Right Front Seat Cushion Fan 1 - V518-

4 - Seat Pan





2.4.4 Overview - Seat Pan, Torsion Bar

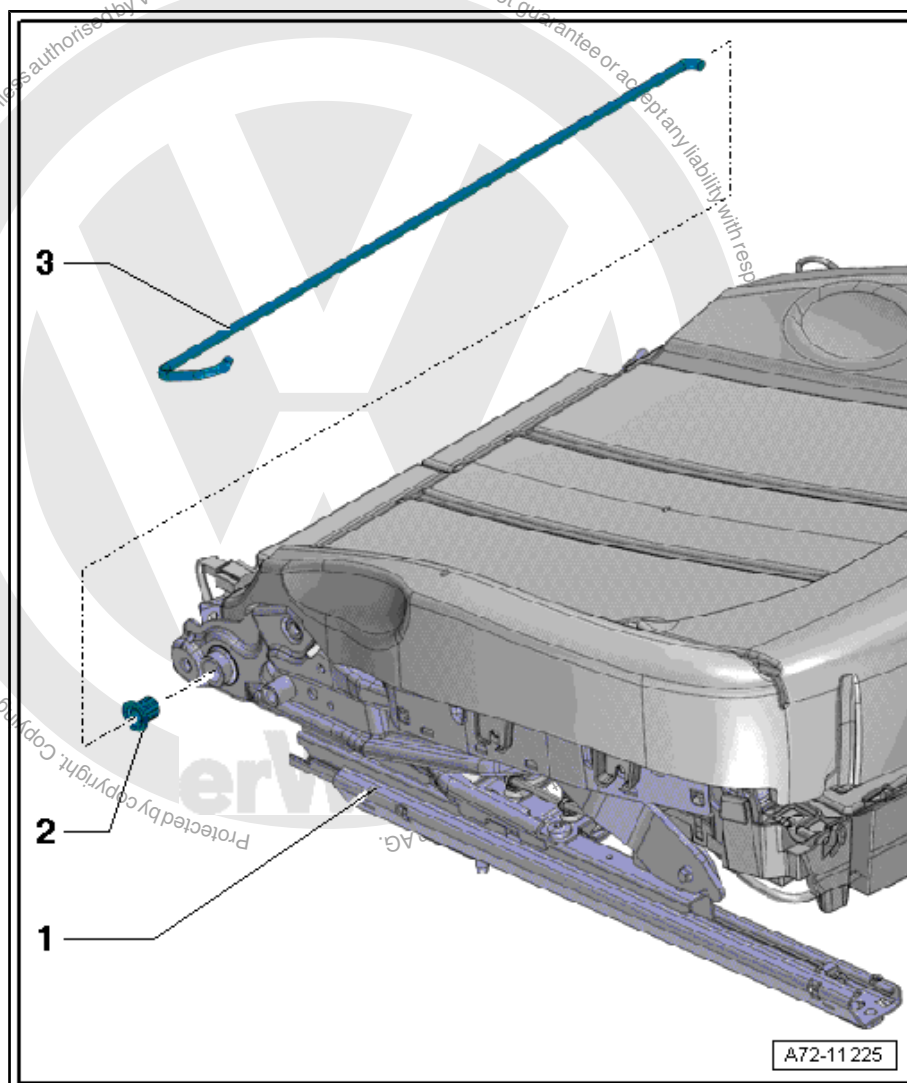
1 - Seat Pan

2 - Bearing

- ☐ For the torsion bar
- ☐ Slide into the guide

3 - Torsion Bar

- ☐ Lubricated. Refer to the Parts Catalog for the grease.



⇒ “2.5.1 Overview - Seat Height Adjustment; Manual Seat Height Adjustment”, page 259

⇒ "2.5.2 Overview - Seat Height Adjustment, Power Seat Height Adjustment", page 260

1 - Screws

- 2 - Lock Washer**

- ☐ Replace after removing.

3 - Seat Height Adjustment

- Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ "2.17.1 Seat Height Adjustment, Removing and Installing, Manual Seat Height Adjustment", page 281.

4 - Bolts

- 8 Nm

5 - Lever for Seat Height Adjustment

- Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ "2.17.1 Seat Height Adjustment, Removing and Installing, Manual Seat Height Adjustment", page 281.

6 - Clip

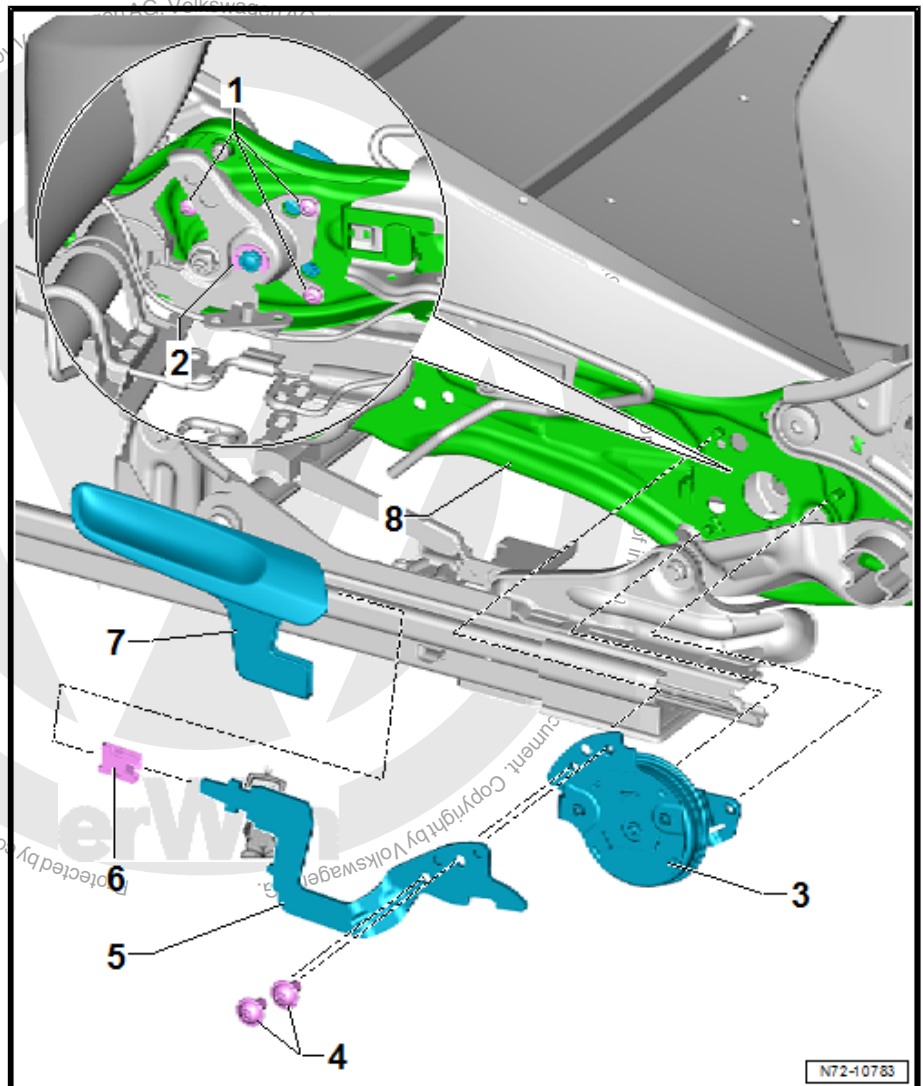
- ☐ Check for secure fit

7 - Seat Height Adjustment Handle

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ “2.16 Seat Height Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 280.

8 - Seat Pan

- ❑ Overview. Refer to ⇒ [“2.4 Overview - Seat Pan”, page 253](#).





2.5.2 Overview - Seat Height Adjustment, Power Seat Height Adjustment

1 - Bolts

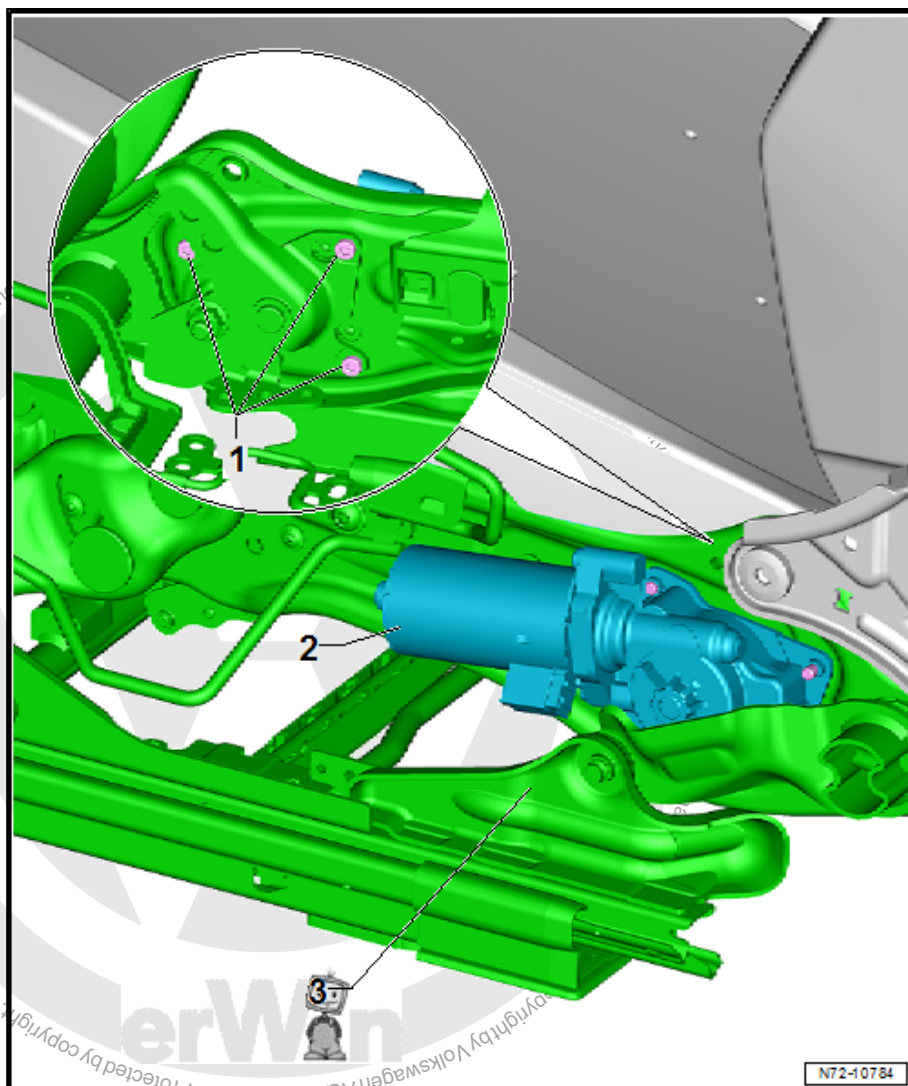
- 10 Nm

2 - Seat Height Adjustment Motor

- Driver Seat Height Adjustment Motor - V138-
- Front Passenger Seat Height Adjustment Motor - V246-
- Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.17.2 Seat Height Adjustment, Removing and Installing, Power Seat Height Adjustment", page 281](#).

3 - Seat Pan

- Overview. Refer to
⇒ ["2.4.2 Overview - Seat Pan, Power Seat", page 255](#).





2.6 Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster

⇒ ["2.6.1 Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster, Manual Adjustment", page 261](#)

⇒ ["2.6.2 Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster, Power Adjustment", page 262](#)

2.6.1 Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster, Manual Adjustment

1 - Handle

- ☐ For seat angle adjuster

2 - Seat Angle Adjuster

- ☐ The seat angle adjuster cannot be replaced separately. The seat frame must be replaced if the seat angle adjuster is faulty.

3 - Bolts

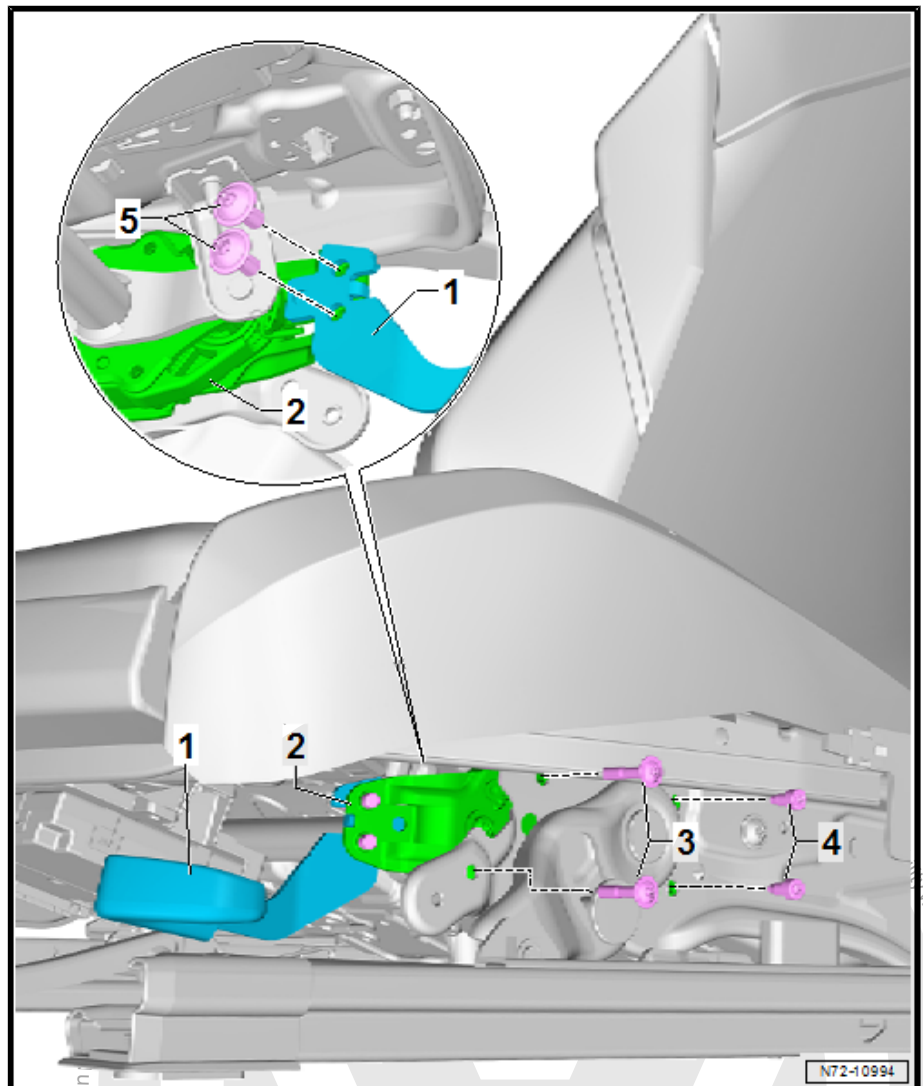
- ☐ 10 Nm

4 - Bolts

- ☐ 10 Nm

5 - Bolts

- ☐ 8 Nm





2.6.2 Overview - Seat Angle Adjuster, Power Adjustment

1 - Bracket

- ❑ Welded to the seat pan

2 - Seat Angle Adjustment Motor

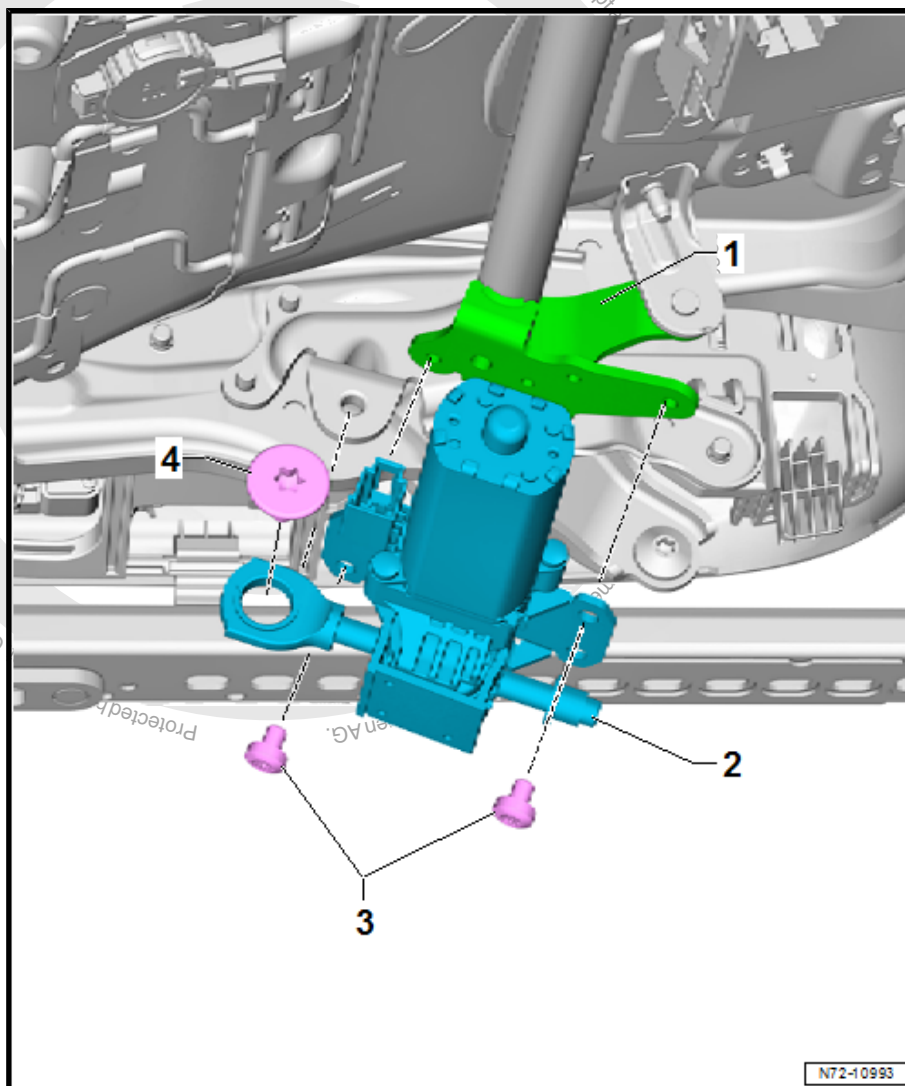
- ❑ Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor - V243-
- ❑ Front Passenger Seat Angle Adjustment Motor - V244-
- ❑ The seat angle adjuster with the Driver Seat Angle Adjustment Motor - V243- / Front Passenger Seat Angle Adjustment Motor - V244- cannot be replaced separately. The seat frame must be replaced if the power seat angle adjuster is faulty.

3 - Bolts

- ❑ 10 Nm

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 20 Nm
- ❑ Self-locking
- ❑ Replace after removing.
- ❑ Clean the threaded hole for the bolt with a thread tap, for example





2.7 Overview - Seat Depth Adjuster

1 - Nut

- ☐ Quantity: 4
- ☐ Replace after removing.

2 - Seat Pan

3 - Trim

- ☐ For the seat depth adjustment
- ☐ Press on until it engages audibly
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "2.15 Seat Depth Adjuster, Removing and Installing", page 277](#).

4 - Seat Depth Adjuster

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ "2.15 Seat Depth Adjuster, Removing and Installing", page 277](#).

5 - Bushing

6 - Screw

- ☐ 4 Nm
- ☐ Replace after removing.
- ☐ Use locking fluid when installing the bolt. Refer to Parts Catalog for the locking fluid.

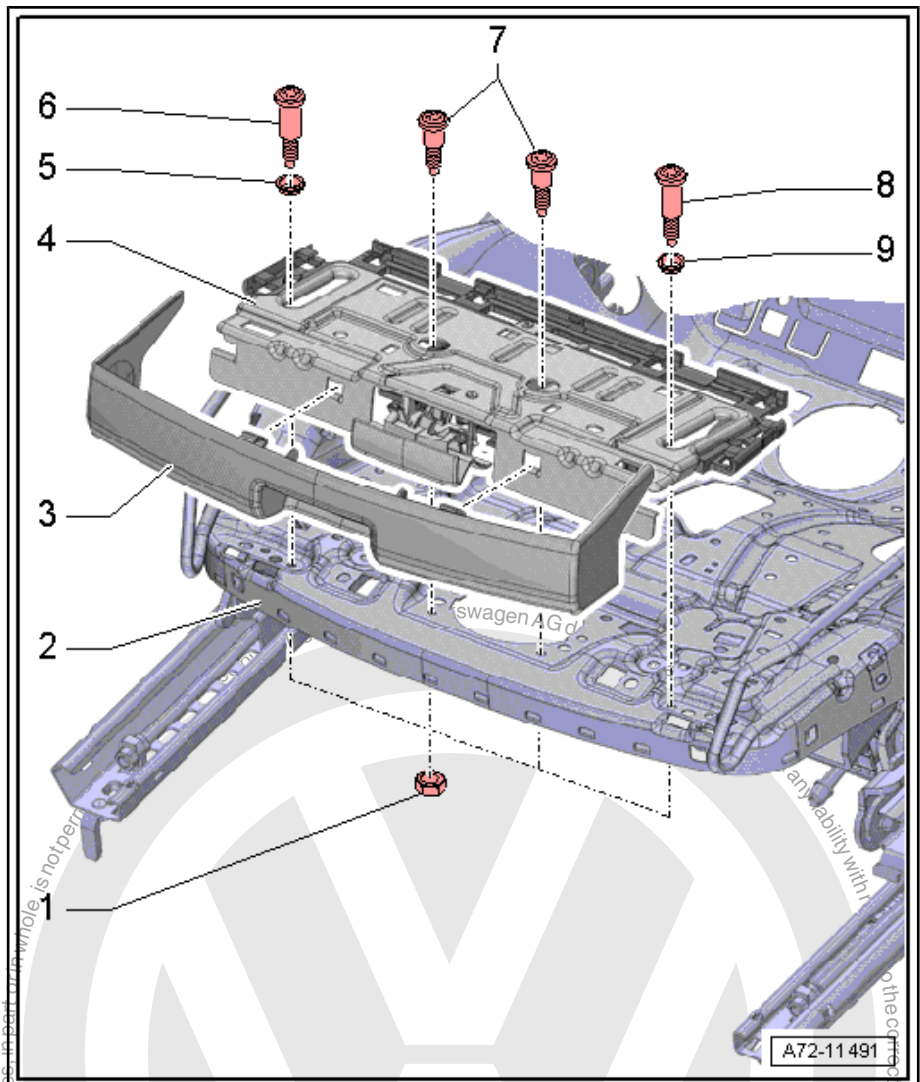
7 - Bolts

- ☐ 4 Nm
- ☐ Replace after removing.
- ☐ Use locking fluid when installing the bolt. Refer to Parts Catalog for the locking fluid.

8 - Screw

- ☐ 4 Nm
- ☐ Replace after removing.
- ☐ Use locking fluid when installing the bolt. Refer to Parts Catalog for the locking fluid.

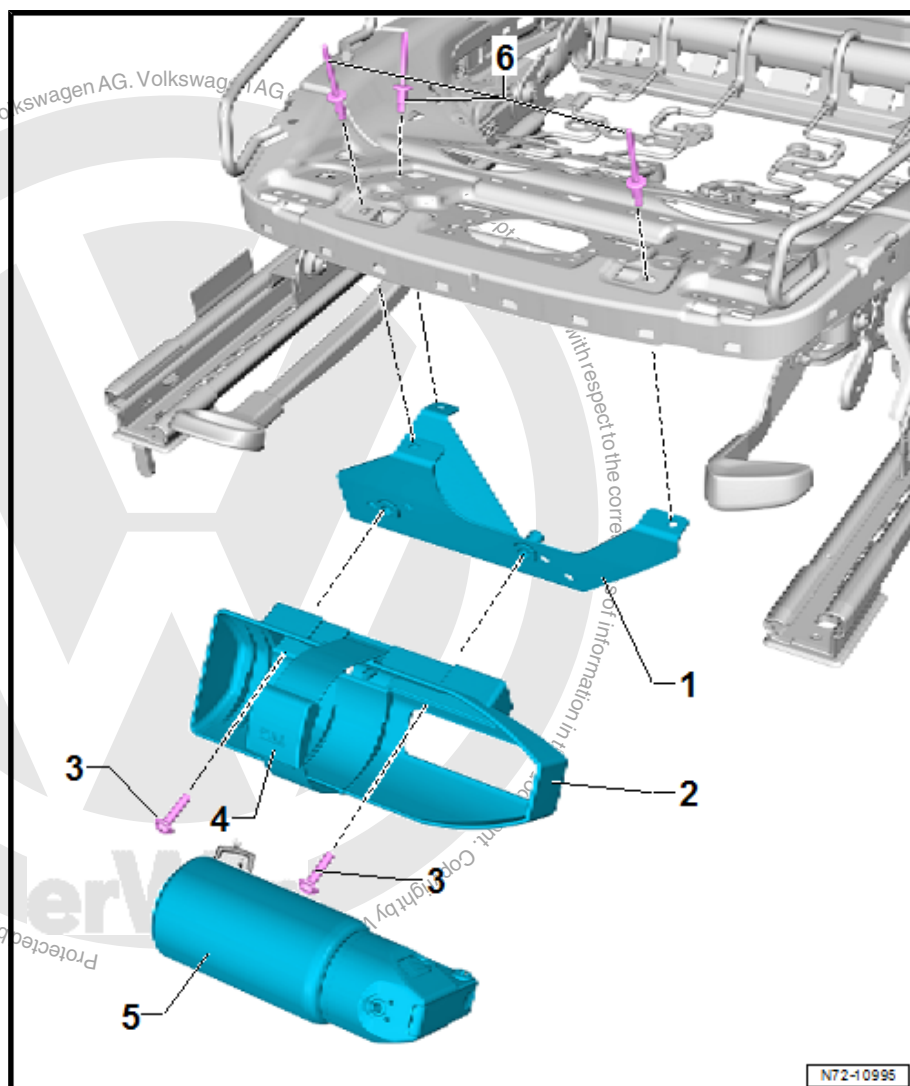
9 - Bushing





2.8 Overview - Fire Extinguisher

- 1 - Bracket
 - On the seat pan
- 2 - Bracket
- 3 - Bolts
 - 8 Nm
- 4 - Mounting Strap
- 5 - Fire Extinguisher
- 6 - Rivet



2.9 Front Seat, Removing and Installing

⇒ ["2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing", page 264](#)

⇒ ["2.9.2 Front Seat, Removing and Installing, with Faulty Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V28 / V31", page 267](#)

2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- ◆ Airbag Lockout Adapter - VAS6282-



Note

The following describes removing and installing the left seat. Removing and installing the right seat is similar.



Removing



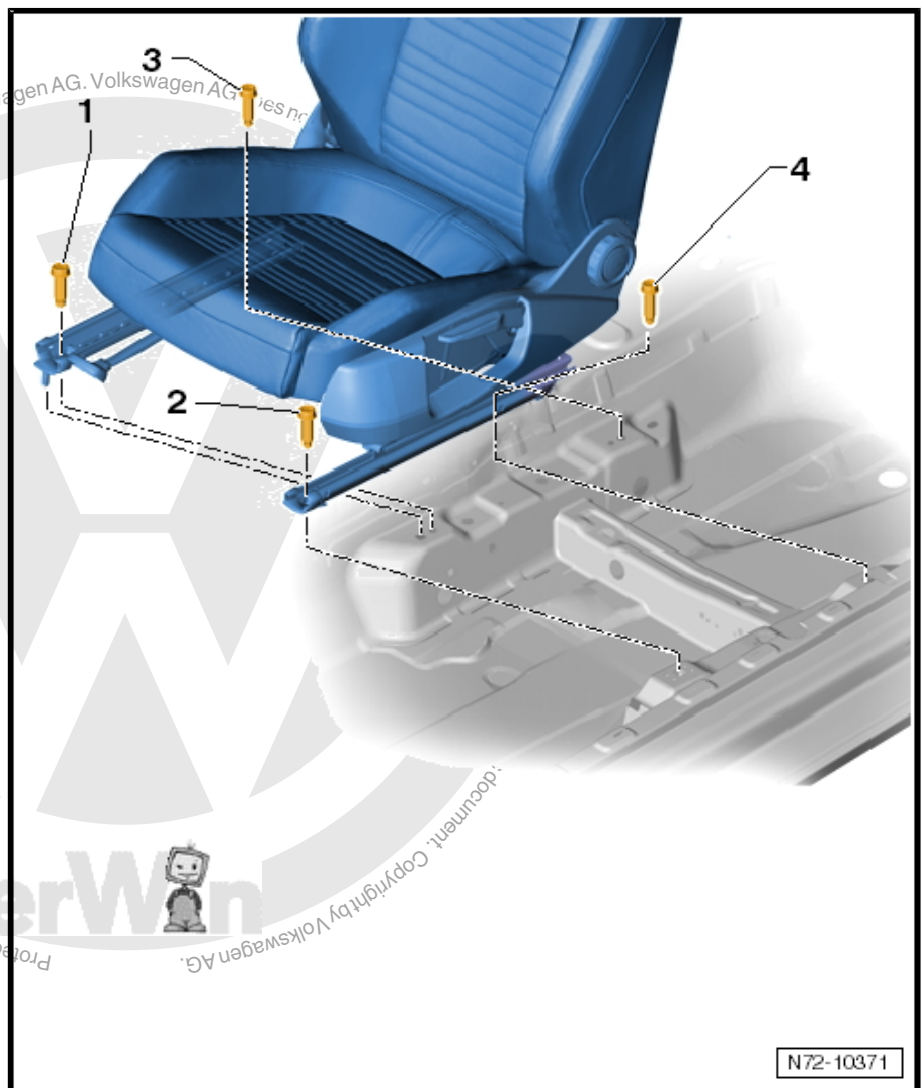
WARNING

*Follow the General Safety Precautions when working with air-bags, belt tensioners and battery cut-out units (pyrotechnic components). Refer to ⇒ **"1 Safety Precautions", page 1** .*

- Position the seat as far forward as possible using the forward/back adjustment.

If the Driver Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor - V28- / Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor - V31- is faulty, it is not possible to adjust a power front seat using the Driver Seat Adjustment Control Head - E470- / Front Passenger Seat Adjustment Control Head - E471- . In this case, perform the appropriate procedure. Refer to

⇒ **"2.9.2 Front Seat, Removing and Installing, with Faulty Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V28 / V31", page 267** .



- Remove the bolts -3 and 4-.
- Position the seat as far back as possible using the forward/back adjustment.



- Remove the bolts -1 and 2-.
- Disconnect the battery. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .
- Tilt the seat back.
- Open the cover in the carpet.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment level, release and remove the wiring harnesses from the seat at the connector station.
- Connect the airbag adapter. Refer to ⇒ [“2.10 Airbag Adapter, Connecting and Disconnecting”, page 271](#) .



Caution

If the seat is to be lifted out or transported out of the vehicle, it must not be grasped at the attachments, such as the seat belt latch, lever for seat forward/back adjustment, lever for seat height adjustment or seat trim panels in order to prevent damage.

- Protect the attachments from damage using suitable materials.
- Grasp with a right hand between the backrest and seat cushion and with the left hand on the front end of the seat cushion.
- Pry the seat out of the vehicle.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Lift the seat through the front door and into the vehicle.
- First position the front seat.
- Guide the seat into the centering pins.



WARNING

If the threads in the seat crossmember mounting plate are damaged when installing the seat, repairing the damaged threads is not permitted. In this case, the seat crossmember mounting plate must be replaced.



If there is damage to threads in the seat crossmember mounting plate:

- Replace the affected seat crossmember mounting plate. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 51 .
- Remove the -VAS6282- .
- Attach the thorax airbag wiring harness to the connector station.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment level, engage the wiring harnesses in the coupling station.
- Close the cover in the carpet.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Connect the battery. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after installing, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.



WARNING

Make sure that no persons are in the vehicle.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Front Seat”, page 246](#)

2.9.2 Front Seat, Removing and Installing, with Faulty Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor -V28- / -V31-

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-
- ◆ Airbag Lockout Adapter - VAS6282-



Note

The following describes removing and installing the left seat. Removing and installing the right seat is similar.

Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor - V28- / -V31- , Checking

- Move the front seat into its highest position.



Note

To avoid unnecessary repair costs, check the Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor -V28- / -V31- before removing the front seat.

- Check the Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor -V28- / -V31- using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.



Removing with faulty Driver and Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor -V28- / -V31-

- Disconnect the battery. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



Caution

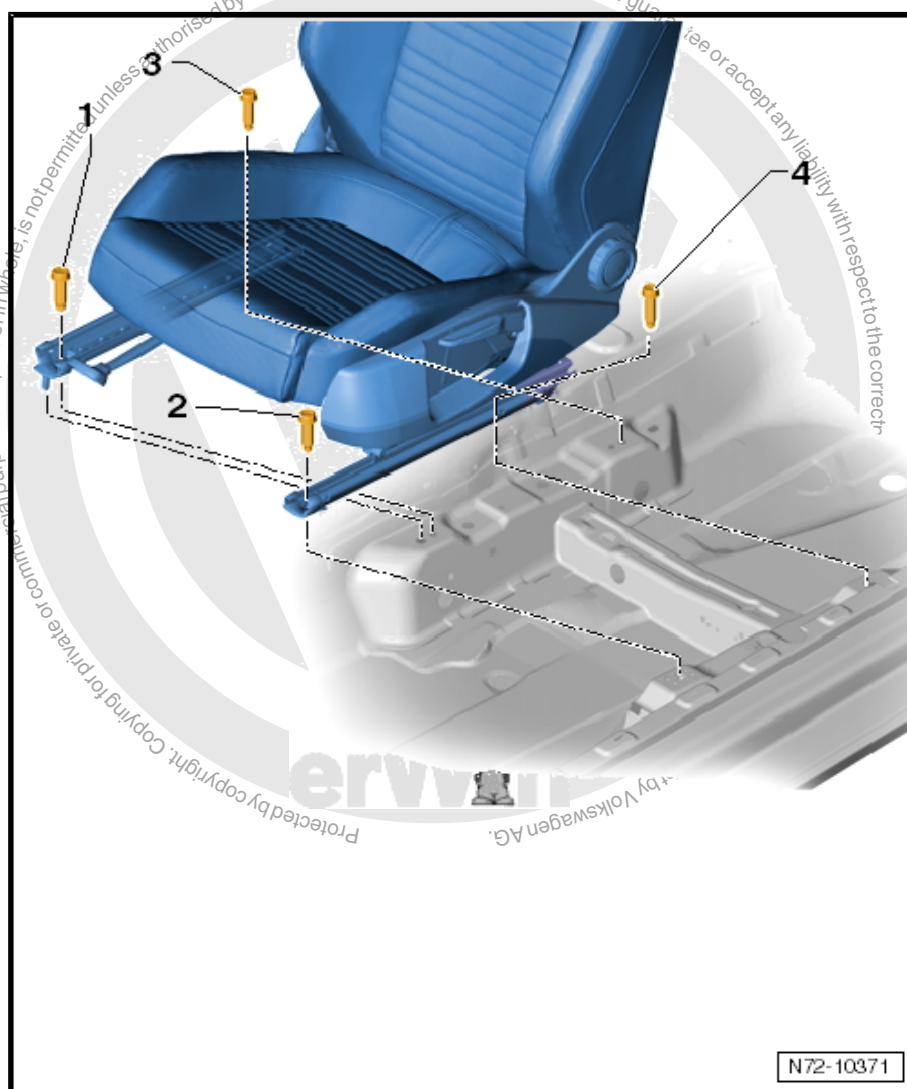
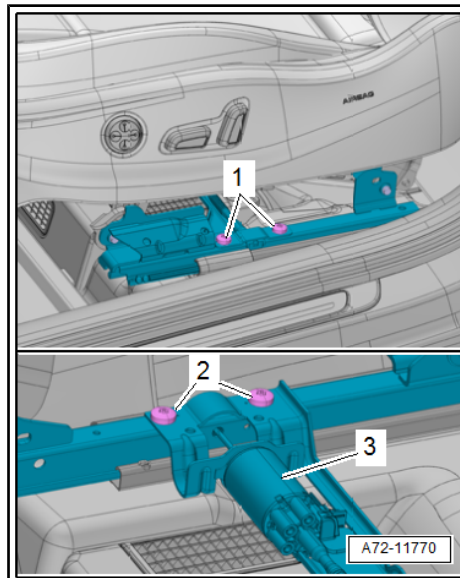
- ◆ *Loosen the bolts -1 and 2- only after checking the Driver Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor -V28- /Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor -V31- .*
- ◆ *After loosening the bolts, the seat pan lower frame must be replaced, along with the seat forward/back adjustment motor -3-.*

- Remove the bolts -1 and 2-.



Note

To remove the tunnel-side bolts, reach under the seat from the front.





- Move the seat forward as far as possible.
- Remove the bolts -3 and 4-.
- Move the seat as far back as possible.
- Remove the bolts -1 and 2-.
- Tilt the seat back.
- Open the cover in the carpet.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment level, release and remove the wiring harnesses from the seat at the connector station.
- Connect the airbag adapter. Refer to
⇒ [“2.10 Airbag Adapter, Connecting and Disconnecting”, page 271](#).



Caution

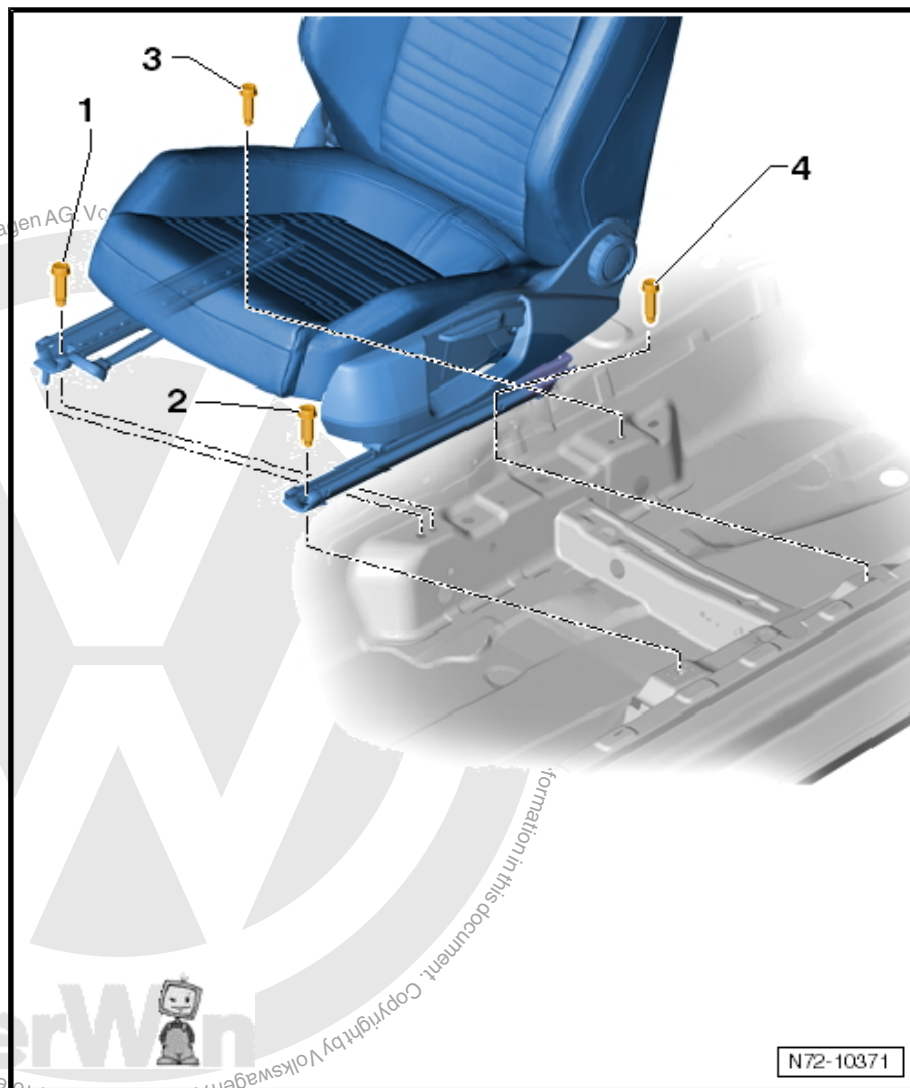
If the seat is to be lifted out or transported out of the vehicle, it must not be grasped at the attachments, such as the seat belt latch, lever for seat forward/back adjustment, lever for seat height adjustment or seat trim panels in order to prevent damage.

- Protect the attachments from damage using suitable materials.
- Grasp with a right hand between the backrest and seat cushion and with the left hand on the front end of the seat cushion.
- Pry the seat out of the vehicle.
- Separate the seat pan lower frame from the seat pan. Refer to
⇒ [“2.18 Seat Pan Lower Frame with Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V28 / V31, Removing and Installing”, page 282](#).

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Attach the seat pan lower frame to the seat pan. Refer to
⇒ [“2.18 Seat Pan Lower Frame with Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor V28 / V31, Removing and Installing”, page 282](#).



- Lift the seat through the front door and into the vehicle.
- First position the front seat.
- Guide the seat into the centering pins.



WARNING

If the threads in the seat crossmember mounting plate are damaged when installing the seat, repairing the damaged threads is not permitted. In this case, the seat crossmember mounting plate must be replaced.

If There is Damage to Threads in the Seat Crossmember Mounting Plate:

- Replace the affected seat crossmember mounting plate. Refer to ⇒ Body Repair; Rep. Gr. 51 .
- Remove the -VAS6282- .
- Attach the thorax airbag wiring harness to the connector station.
- Depending on the vehicle equipment level, engage the wiring harnesses in the coupling station.



- Close the cover in the carpet.
- Switch the ignition on.



WARNING

Make sure that no persons are in the vehicle.

- Connect the battery. Refer to ⇒ Electrical Equipment; Rep. Gr. 27 ; Battery; Battery, Disconnecting and Connecting .



Note

If the Airbag Indicator Lamp - K75- indicates a fault after installing, check the DTC memory, erase it and check it again using the Vehicle Diagnostic Tester.

Tightening Specifications

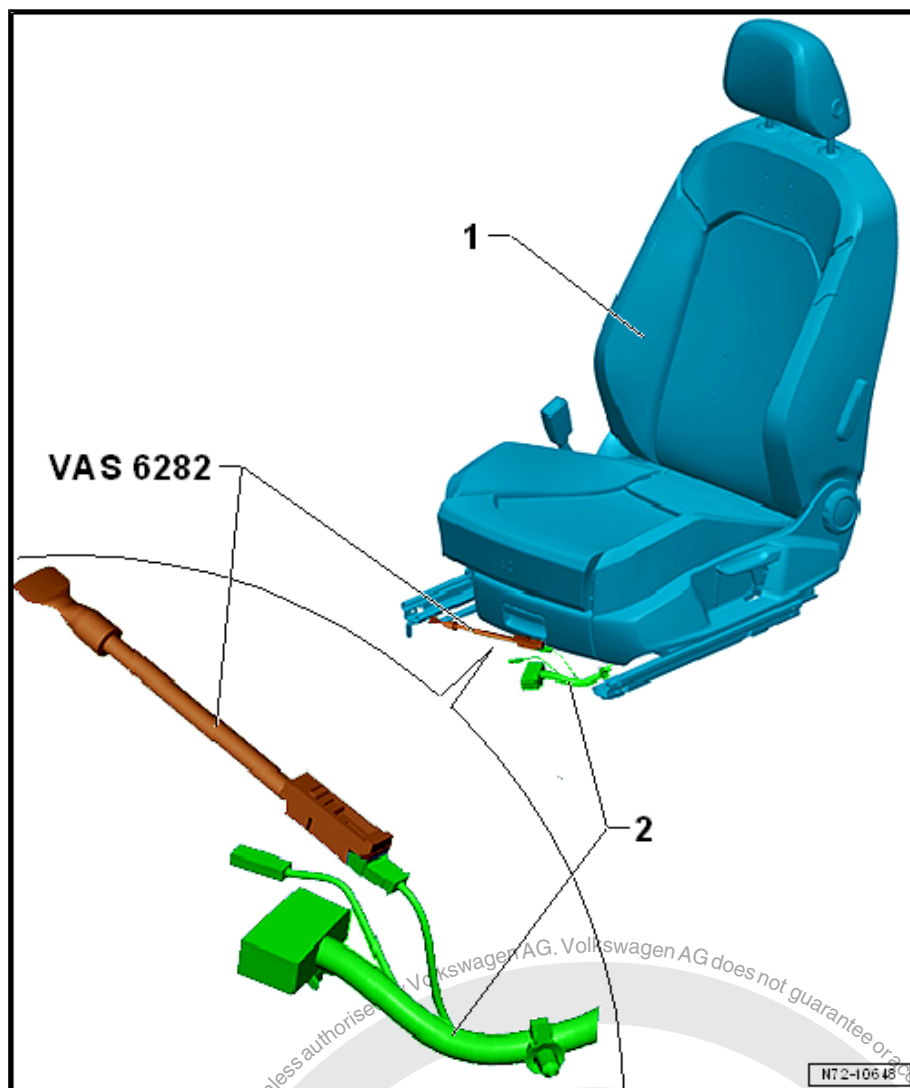
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Front Seat”, page 246](#)

2.10 Airbag Adapter, Connecting and Disconnecting

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Airbag Lockout Adapter - VAS6282-





- Connect the -VAS6282- to the thorax airbag wiring harness -1-.



Caution

The -VAS6282- must stay connected to seat until the seat is installed again.

2.11 Tunnel-Side Seat Trim, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-



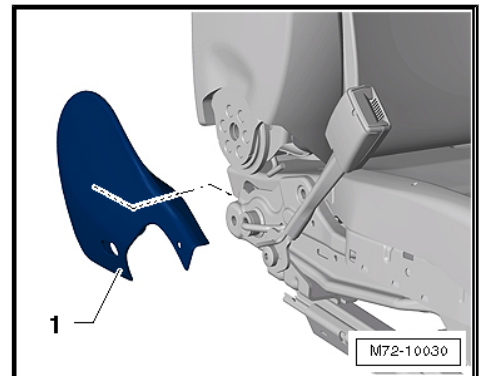
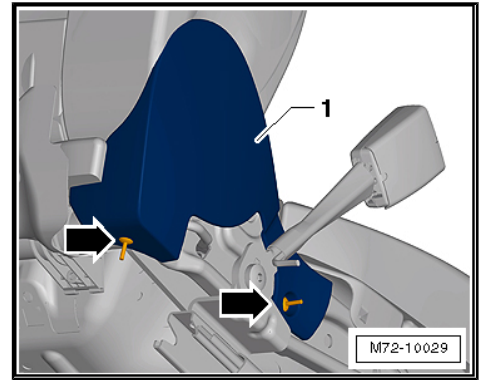
Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.



Removing

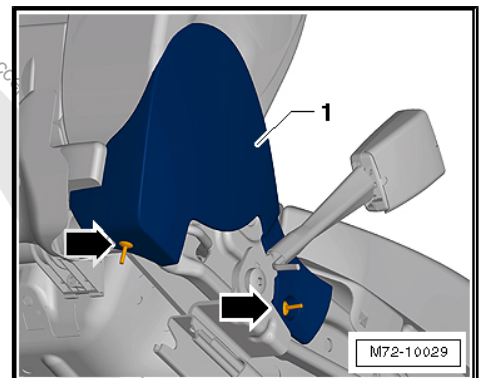
- Remove the front seat. Refer to
⇒ [“2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing”, page 264](#) .
- Remove the expanding rivets -arrows- from the trim panel -1-.
- To do so, press the clamping pins in the expanding rivets -arrows- toward the inside.
- Pry out the expanding rivets using the -3409- .
- Remove the trim panel -1- from the mounts in the seat frame.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Insert the expanding rivets -arrows- and push the pins in.



2.12 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-



Note

- ◆ *The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.*
- ◆ *Removal and installation on a standard seat is the same.*

Removing

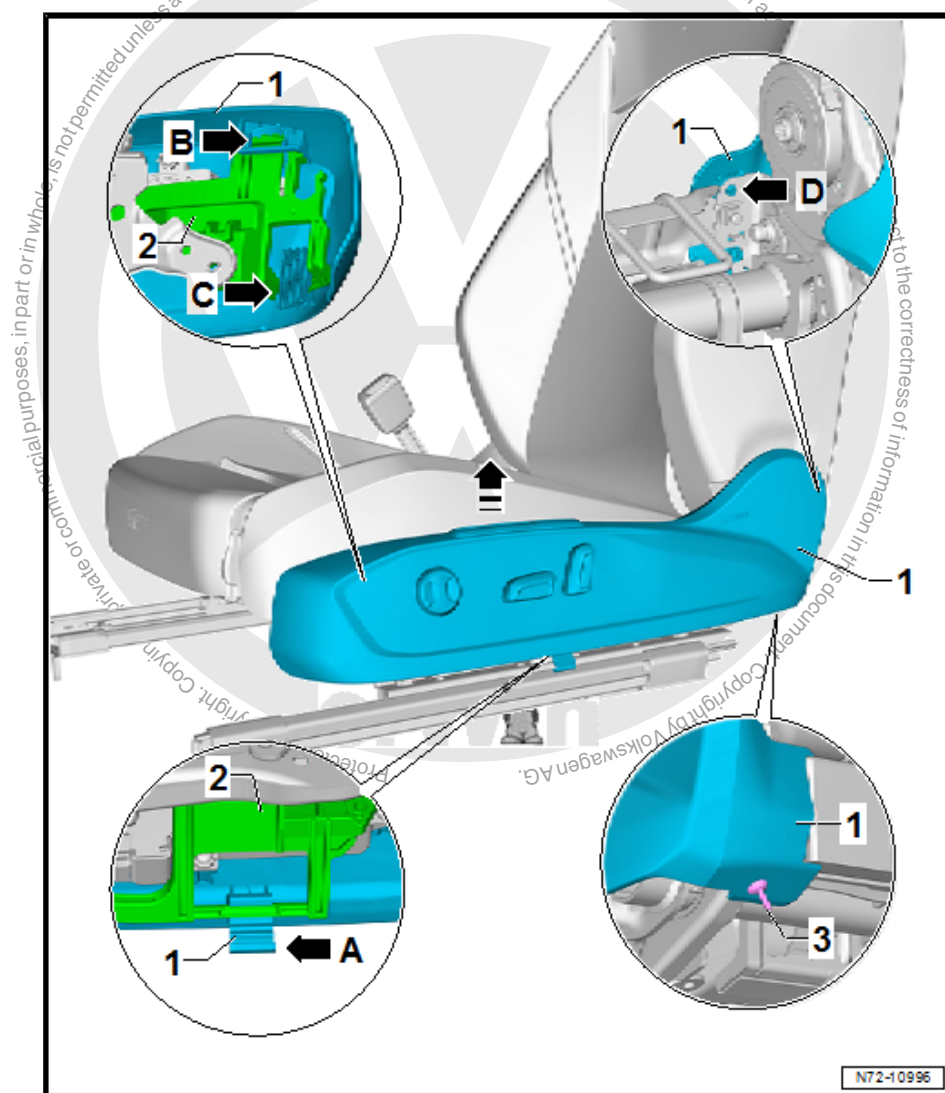
- Position the seat into its highest position.



Vehicles with Manual Seats

- Remove the backrest adjustment wheel handle. Refer to
⇒ [“2.29 Backrest Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 290](#) .
- Remove the seat height adjustment handle. Refer to
⇒ [“2.16 Seat Height Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 280](#) .

Continuation for All Vehicles



- Open the locking mechanism -arrow A-.
- Release the trim panel -1- on the bracket -2- -arrow B-.
- Pry off the expanding rivet -3- with the -3409- .
- Remove the trim panel forward off the bracket -2- while paying attention to the locking tab -arrow D- and the guide -arrow C-.

Vehicles with Power Seats

- Unclip the wiring harness from the trim panel -1-.
- Release and remove the connectors at the switches.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

2.13 Seat Trim Panel Bracket, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Note

- ◆ *The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.*
- ◆ *Removal and installation on a standard seat is the same.*

Removing

- Position the seat into its highest position.
- Remove the sill-side seat trim panel. Refer to ["2.12 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 273](#).
- Remove the bolts -2-.
- Guide the retaining bracket -1- out of the seat pan -arrow-.
- Remove the retaining bracket -1- from the front seat.

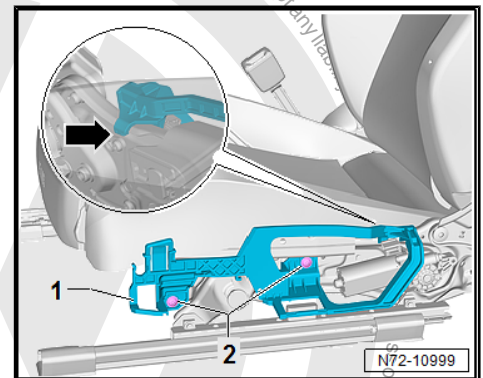
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Make sure the retaining bracket is seated correctly in the seat pan -arrow-.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ["2.4 Overview - Seat Pan", page 253](#)



2.14 Manual Lumbar Support, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-

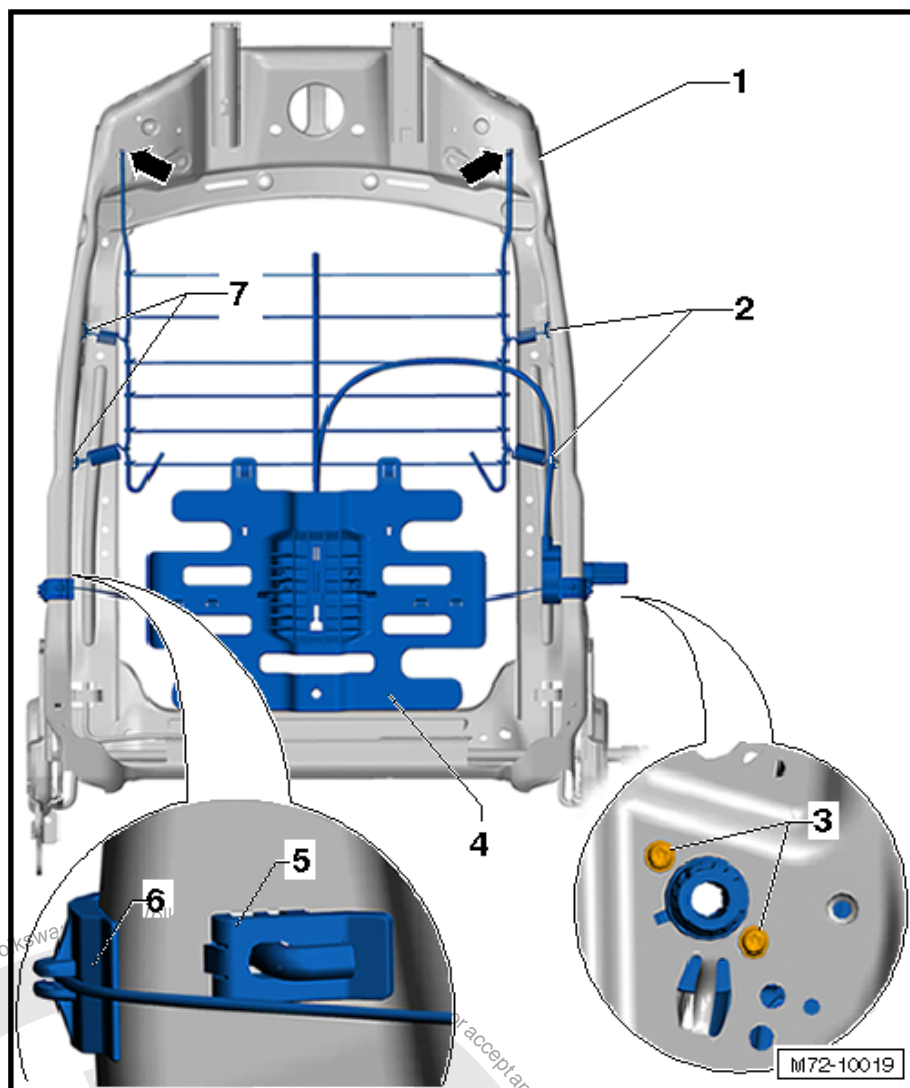


Note

The following describes removing and installing the left seat. Removing and installing the right seat is similar.

Removing

- Remove the front seat. Refer to ["2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing", page 264](#).
- Remove the cover and the cushion from the front seat backrest. Refer to ["1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 313](#).



- Remove the screws -3- and detach the lumbar support adjustment from the backrest frame -1-.
- Disengage both side retainers -6 and 5- from the backrest frame -1-.
- Disengage the side springs -2 and 7- from the backrest frame -1-.
- Disengage the lumbar support -4- from the upper mounts -arrows-.
- Remove the lumbar support frame -4- from the backrest frame -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specifications
Screws for lumbar support adjustment	2 Nm

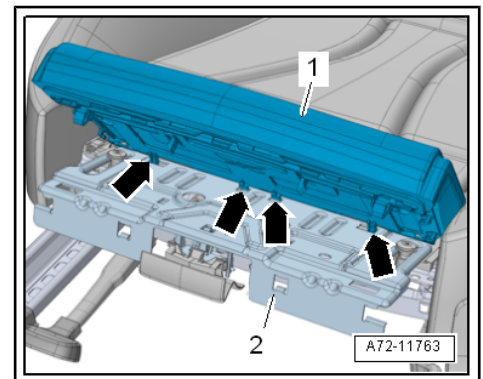
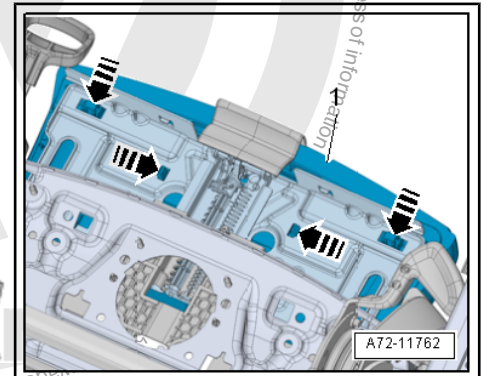
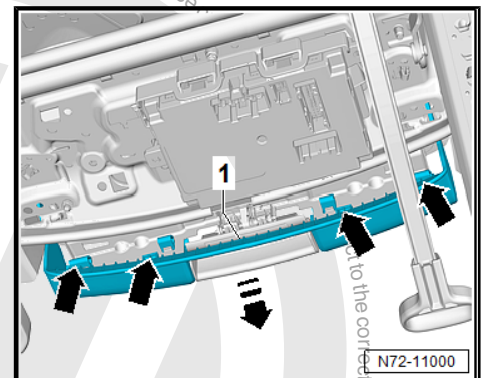
2.15 Seat Depth Adjuster, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

Removing

- Remove the front seat. Refer to
⇒ [“2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing”, page 264](#).
- Move the seat depth adjuster all the way forward.
- Release the tabs -arrows- on the trim -1- using a -3409-.
- Remove the trim -1- from the seat depth adjuster.
- Release the retaining tabs -arrow- on the support from the seat depth adjuster using the -3409-.
- Remove the support -1- with the seat cushion and seat cover for the seat depth adjuster upward and toward the front.
- Disengage the tabs -arrows- at the seat depth adjuster -2-.
- Move the support with the seat cushion and seat cover upward.
- To do so, remove the support -1- with seat cushion and seat cover for the seat depth adjuster upward and forward at the same time.





- Lay the support -2- with the seat cushion and seat cover on the front seat.



Note

For better illustration the seat pan lower frame is not shown.

- Disengage the seat cover retaining strips -1 and 4-.
- Remove the seat cover molding strip -3- from the seat depth adjuster.
- Pull the molding strip forward.

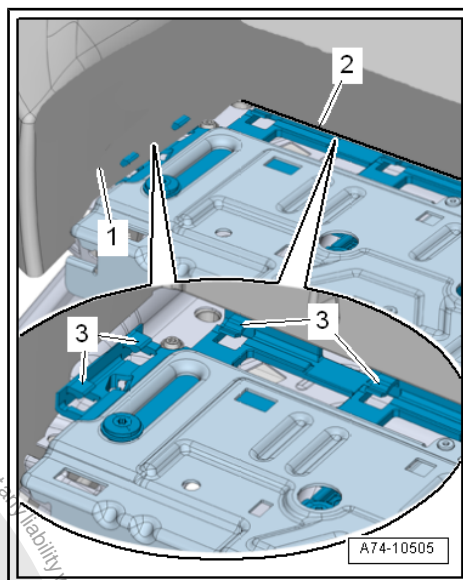
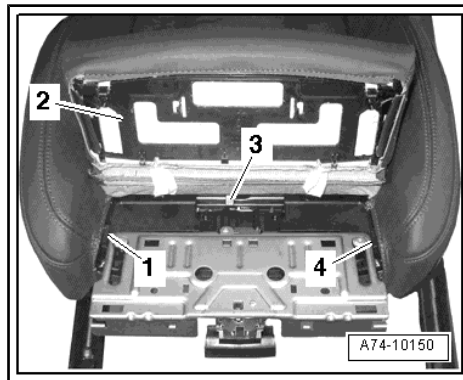


Caution

There is a risk of damaging the locking tabs.

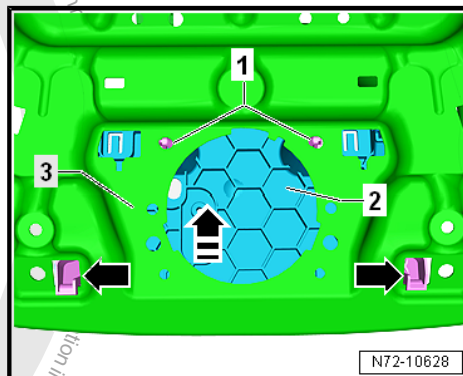
◆ *Proceed very carefully when clipping and unclipping.*

- To do so, unclip the seat cover -1- from the retaining tabs -3-.



Vehicles with Massage Function Control Module - J740-

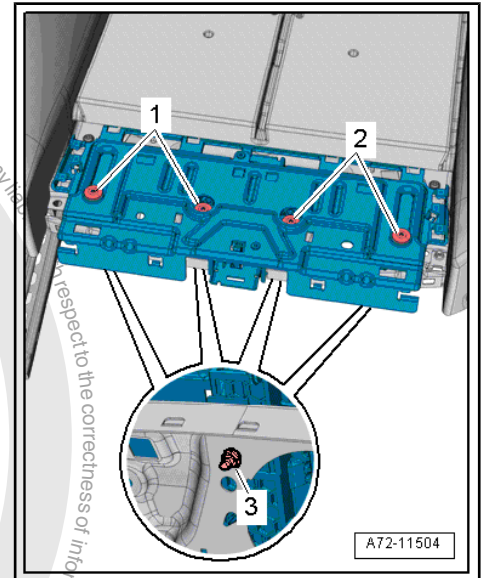
- Remove the Massage Function Control Module - J740-. Refer to ["2.26 Massage Function Control Module J740, Removing and Installing", page 289](#).
- Remove the seat depth adjuster.
- Unclip the retaining tabs -1-.
- Lower the bracket for the Massage Function Control Module - J740- -2- near the retaining tabs -1-.
- Slide the bracket for the Massage Function Control Module - J740- -2- in the direction of the -arrow-.
- Guide the bracket for the Massage Function Control Module - J740- -2- out of the mounts -arrows-.



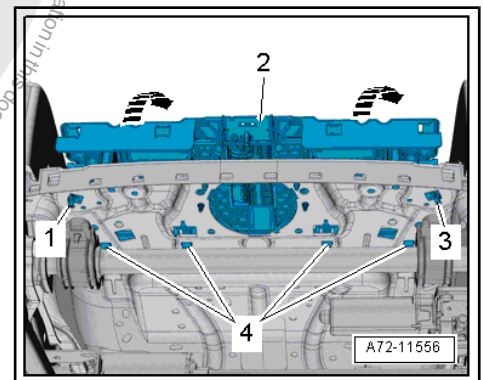


Continuation for All Vehicles

- Slide the seat depth adjuster toward the rear.
- Remove the bolts -1- and 2-.
- To do so, counterhold at the nuts -3- on the seat depth adjuster.



- Unclip the locking tabs -1- and 3- using the -3409-.
- Remove the seat depth adjuster -2- from the seat pan upward and forward -arrows-.
- Disengage the tabs -4- from the seat pan while doing this.
- Remove the seat depth adjuster from the front seat.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

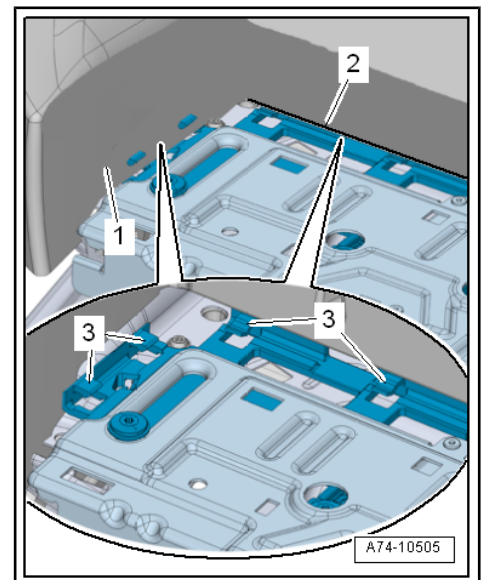
- Engage the seat cover -1- in the tabs -3-.
- Engage the molding strip -2- in the rear retaining tabs -3-.
- Make sure the retainer is seated correctly.



Caution

There is a risk of damaging the locking tabs.

◆ *Proceed very carefully when clipping and unclipping.*



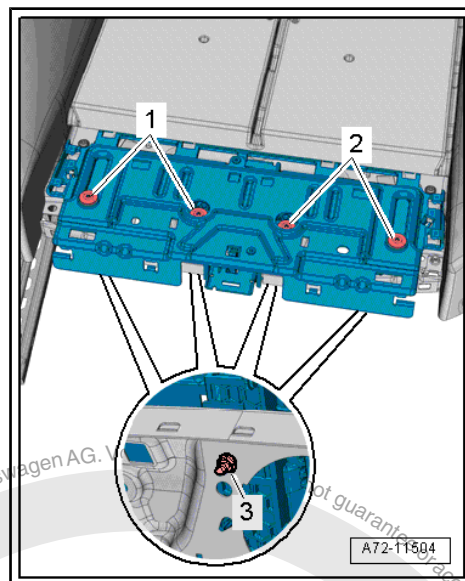


Note

- ◆ Both outer bolts have a plastic guide. Refer to ⇒ [page 263](#).
- ◆ Ensure the correct allocation.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Front Seat”, page 246](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.4 Overview - Seat Pan”, page 253](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.7 Overview - Seat Depth Adjuster”, page 263](#)



2.16 Seat Height Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing



Note

The seat height adjustment handle can only be replaced with the front seat installed.

Removing



Note

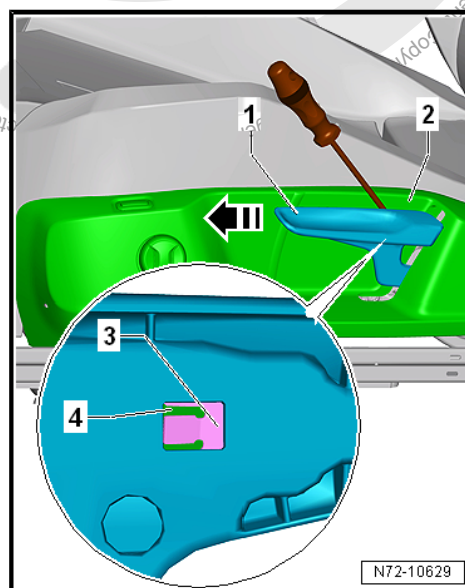
- ◆ Remove the seat height adjustment handle as described. Never drive the seat height adjustment handle off the lever.
- ◆ If the tab gets damaged when removing the handle, it is not possible to install it again. The handle must be replaced.

- Pull the seat height adjustment handle -1- as far upward as possible and hold it in that position.
- Guide a small screwdriver up to the retainer -3- between the seat height adjustment handle -1- and the trim -2-.
- Press the retaining tab -3- inward using the screwdriver.
- At the same time, remove the seat height adjustment handle -1- from the lever -4- in the direction of the -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Check for damage and proper seating of the retainer -3- on the lever -4-.
- Slide the seat height adjustment handle -1- onto the lever -4- until it engages.
- After installing, make sure the retainer -4- is properly engaged.
- Check for secure fit by pulling on it.





2.17 Seat Height Adjuster, Removing and Installing

⇒ [“2.17.1 Seat Height Adjustment, Removing and Installing, Manual Seat Height Adjustment”, page 281](#)

⇒ [“2.17.2 Seat Height Adjustment, Removing and Installing, Power Seat Height Adjustment”, page 281](#)

2.17.1 Seat Height Adjustment, Removing and Installing, Manual Seat Height Adjustment

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.

Removing

- Move the front seat into its highest position.
- Remove the cover and cushion from the seat pan. Refer to [⇒ “1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 311](#).
- Remove the bolts -2-.
- Remove the lever -1-.

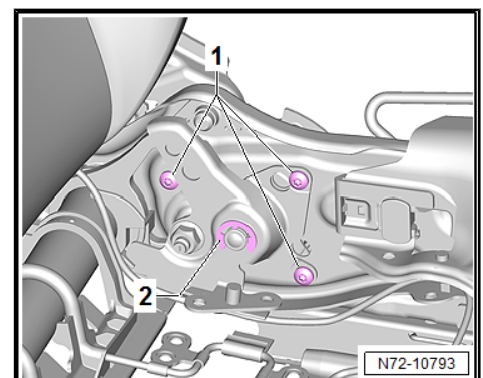
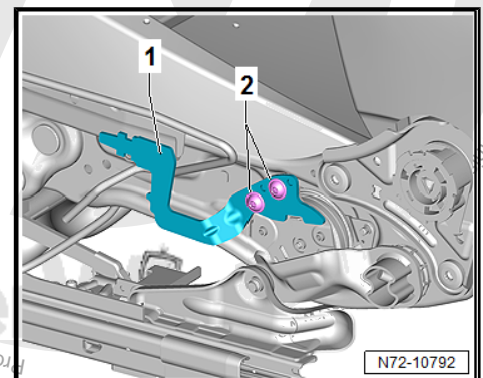
- Remove the lock washer -2-.
- Remove the bolts -1-.
- Remove the seat height adjustment.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to [⇒ “2.5.1 Overview - Seat Height Adjustment; Manual Seat Height Adjustment”, page 259](#)



2.17.2 Seat Height Adjustment, Removing and Installing, Power Seat Height Adjustment

The seat height adjustment with the Driver Seat Height Adjustment Motor - V245- / Front Passenger Seat Height Adjustment



Motor - V246- cannot be replaced separately. The seat frame must be replaced if the power seat height adjustment is faulty.

2.18 Seat Pan Lower Frame with Driver/Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor -V28- / -V31- , Removing and Installing

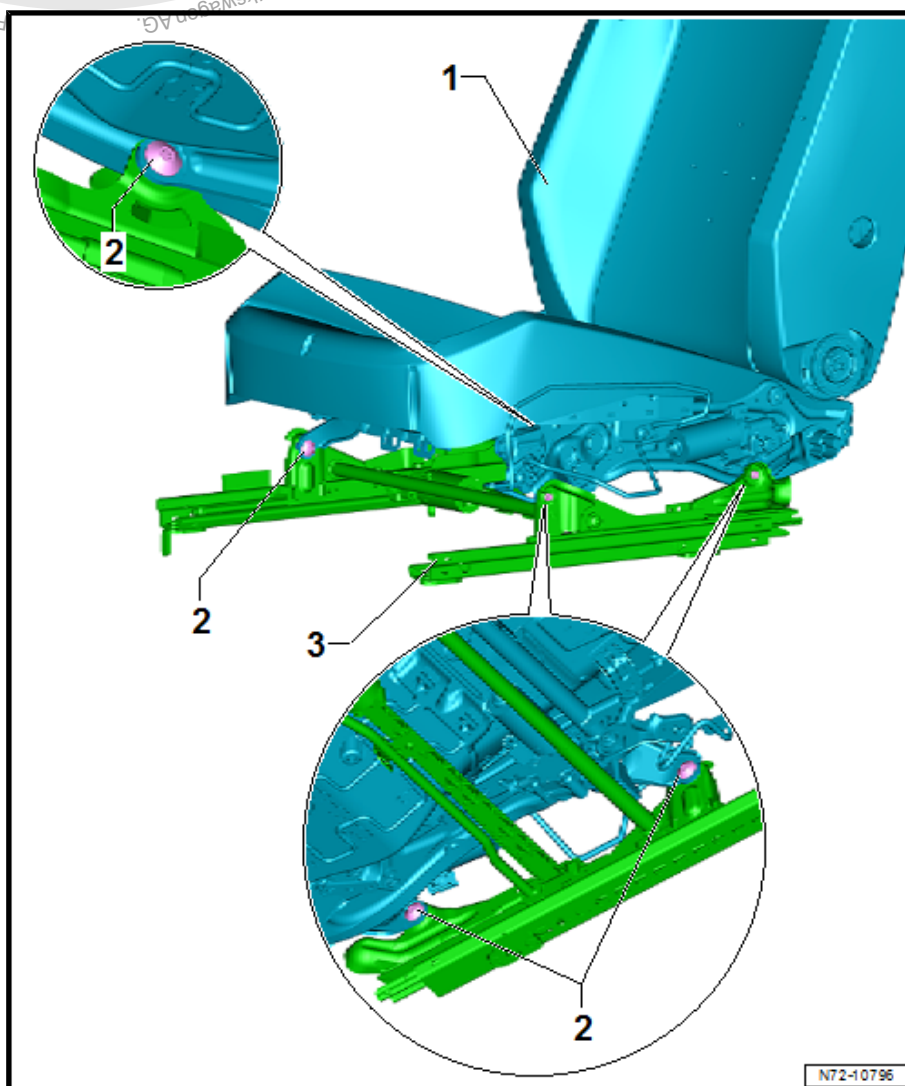
Removing

Move the front seat to the highest position possible to keep the torsion bar tension as low as possible.

Remove the front seat. Refer to

⇒ ["2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing", page 264](#) .

- Disconnect the connectors to the Driver Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor - V28- / Front Passenger Seat Forward/Back Adjustment Motor -V31- .
- Unclip the wire from the seat pan and move to the side.
- Remove the front seat belt latch. Refer to
⇒ ["1.14 Front Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing", page 84](#) .





- Remove the bolts -2-.
- Remove the seat pan -1- from the lower frame -3-.

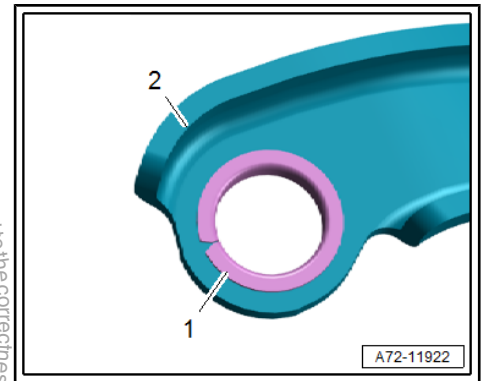
If the bushings -1- are damaged, the seat pan lower frame -2- must be replaced.



Caution

Risk of damaging the bushings -1- in the bearing points -2- (upper/lower frame bolted connection).

- ◆ **The bushings cannot be replaced with workshop materials.**
- ◆ **If the bushings are damaged, the corresponding parts must be replaced.**



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

Clean the threaded holes for the bolts for example with a thread tap.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ ["2.4.2 Overview - Seat Pan, Power Seat", page 255](#)

2.19 Lumbar Support Adjusting Mechanism, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Door Trim Pliers - 3392-

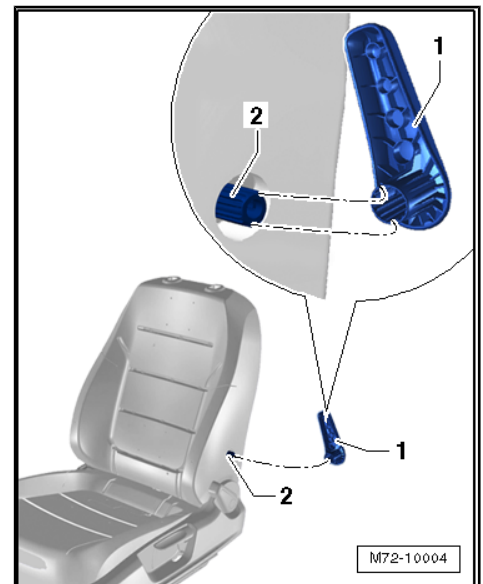
Removing

- Pry off the lumbar support adjusting lever -1- from the shaft -2- using the -3392-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Make sure the splines on the lumbar support adjusting lever -1- align with the splines on the shaft -2-.
- Check the lever for secure fit by pulling on it.
- If the adjusting lever sits too loosely after assembly, then the adjusting lever must be replaced.



2.20 Front Backrest, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Removing

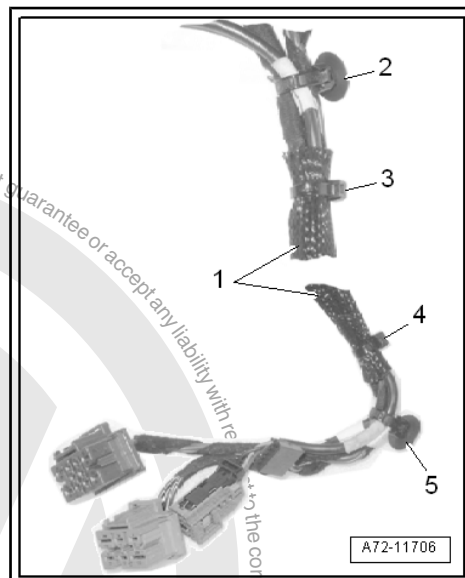
- Remove the front seat. Refer to
⇒ ["2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing", page 264](#).



- Remove the tunnel-side seat trim panel. Refer to
⇒ [“2.11 Tunnel-Side Seat Trim, Removing and Installing”](#),
[page 272](#) .
- Remove the sill-side seat trim panel. Refer to
⇒ [“2.12 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”](#),
[page 273](#) .
- Disconnect the connectors from the backrest wiring harness.
- Unclip the clips -2 and 5- from the wiring harness -1- on the
seat pan.
- Loosen the wiring harness -1- with the mesh hose from the
seat pan.
- To do so, loosen all cable ties -3 and 4-.

The wiring harness between the connector station and the thorax
airbag is continuous.

- Guide the wiring harness to the thorax airbag out of the mesh
hose.



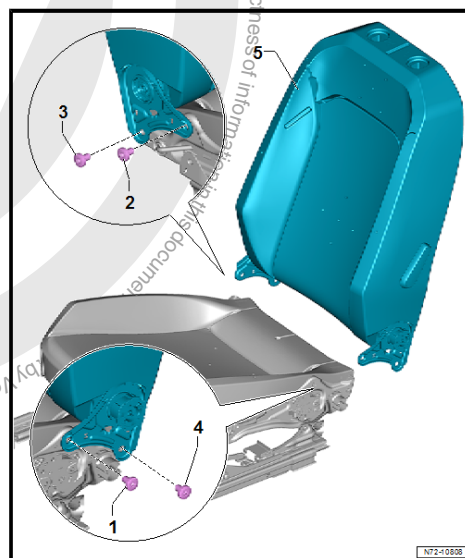
- Remove the bolts -1 through 4-.
- Tilt the backrest -5- forward on the seat pan.
- Move the seat pan cushion to the side.
- Carefully remove the wiring harness for the thorax airbag from
the seat pan.
- Remove the backrest.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Replace the damaged cable ties and clips.
- Route the wires in their original locations.

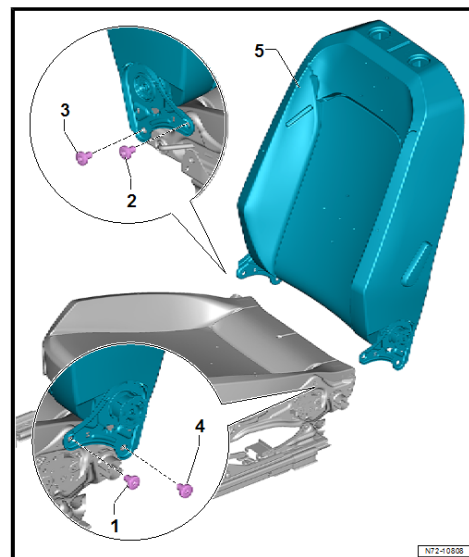
Clean the threaded holes for the bolts for example with a thread
tap.





Backrest Tightening Specification and Sequence

Step	Bolt	Tightening Specification
1	-1 through 4-	Install by hand all the way
2	-1-	35 Nm
3	-2-	35 Nm
4	-3-	35 Nm
5	-4-	35 Nm



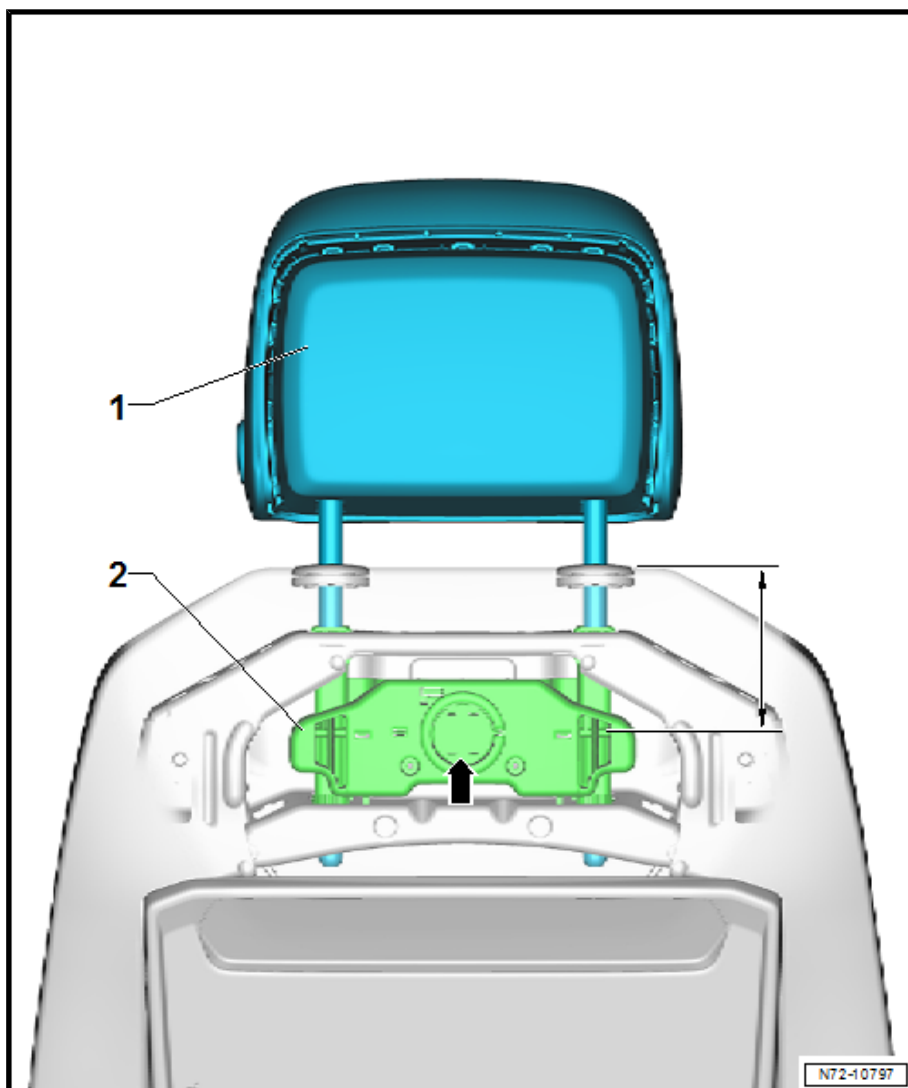
2.21 Headrest, Removing and Installing



Note

- ◆ The headrests can be removed with the front seats installed.
- ◆ The release (release button) is located on the back of the seat under the seat cover.

Removing



- Move the front seat forward into the lowest position and tilt backrests approximately 45°.

The release button -arrow- is located approximately “9 cm” under the upper edge of the backrest on the headrest guide -2-.

- Press the release button -arrow- and remove the headrest -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Engage the headrest in the headrest guide and make sure they are securely engaged.

2.22 Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing

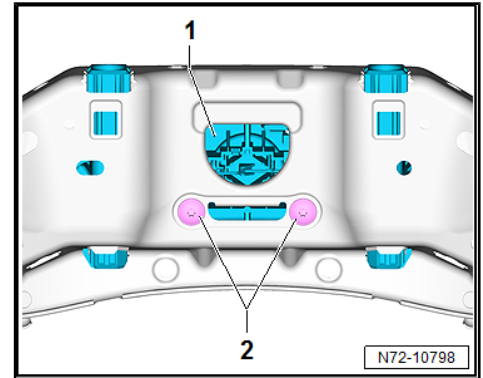
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Removing

- Remove the backrest cover with the backrest cushion. Refer to ["1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 313](#).
- Remove the bolts -2- for the headrest guide -1-.
- Push the retainers of the headrest guide -1- inward.



- Push the headrest guide -1- upward as far as possible and remove toward the rear downward out of the backrest frame.

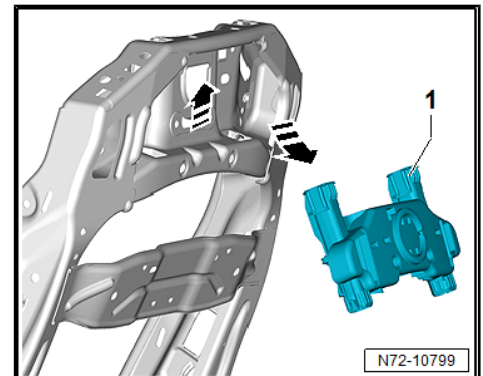
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- The tabs of headrest guide must engage in the cut-out of the mount on the backrest frame.
- The tabs must engage correctly in backrest frame.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ["2.3 Overview - Front Backrest", page 250](#)



2.23 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch -E176- / -E177- , Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.

Removing

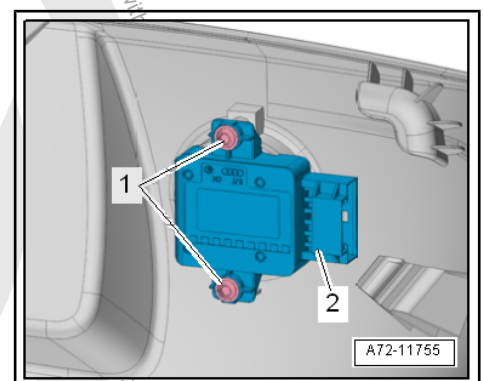
- Remove the sill-side seat trim panel. Refer to ["2.12 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 273](#).
- Remove the bolts -1-.
- Remove the switch -2-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Driver Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch -E176- / Front Passenger Seat Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch -E177-	1 Nm





2.24 Lumbar Support Adjustment Motors - V125- / -V126- / -V129- / -V130- , Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Pop Rivet Pliers - VAG1753B-
- ◆ Drill
- ◆ Protective Eyewear

Removing

- Remove the front seat. Refer to [⇒ "2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing", page 264](#).
- Remove the backrest cover with the backrest cushion. Refer to [⇒ "1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 313](#).
- Release and remove the connectors -1- and -2- from the motors.



WARNING

Risk of eye injury.

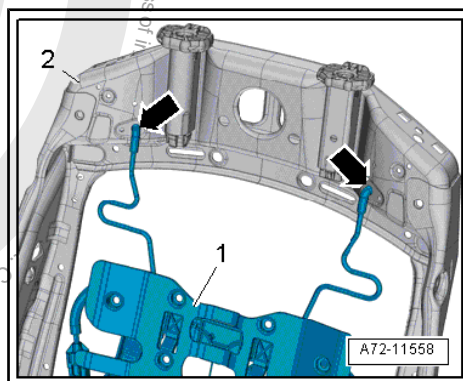
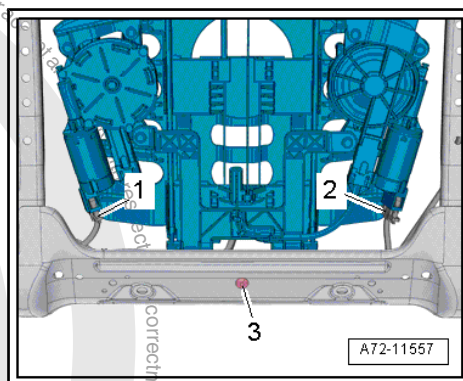
- ◆ **Wear protective eyewear!**

- Drill out the rivet -3-.
- Pivot the lumbar support -1- forward.
- Disengage the upper lumbar support -1- at the backrest frame -2- -arrows- and remove.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Attach the upper lumbar support -1- in the backrest frame -2- -arrows- and move it down and to the rear.
- Rivet the lumbar support to the backrest frame



2.25 Driver/Front Passenger Seat Adjustment Control Head -E470- / -E471- , Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Window Release Tool - T10236-
- ◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.



Removing

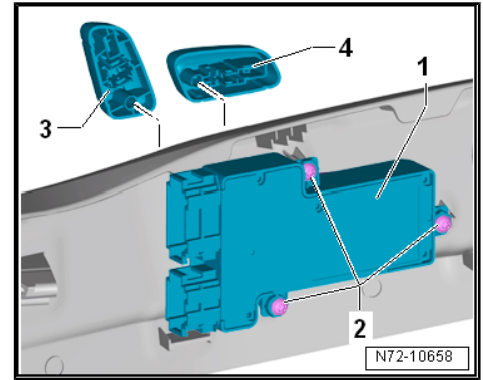
- Remove the sill-side seat trim panel. Refer to ["2.12 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing", page 273](#).
- Carefully pry off the buttons -3 and 4- from the retainers for the seat adjustment control head using the -T10236-.
- Remove the bolts -2-.
- Remove the seat adjustment control head -1-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

Component	Tightening Specification
Screws for seat adjustment control head	1 Nm



2.26 Massage Function Control Module - J740- , Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

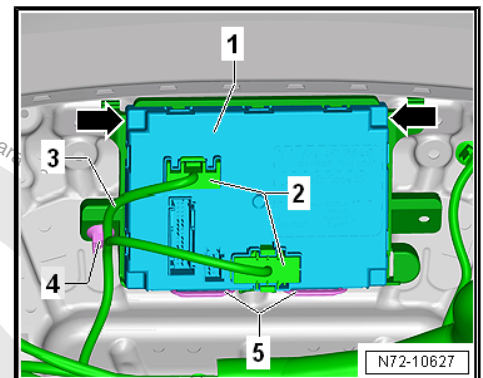
Removing

- Unclip the wiring harness -3- from the bracket.
- To do so, pry out the wiring bracket -4- using the -3409-.
- Release and disconnect the connectors -2-.
- Release the Massage Function Control Module - J740- -1- from the mounting tabs -5-.
- Pull the Massage Function Control Module - J740- -1- out of the mounts -arrows-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Replace the damaged cable ties and clips.
- Route the wires in their original locations.



2.27 Memory Seat/Steering Column Adjustment Control Module - J136- , Removing and Installing

Removing and installing the Memory Seat/Steering Column Adjustment Control Module - J136- is the same as removing and installing the Massage Function Control Module - J740-.

- Remove and install the Massage Function Control Module - J740-. Refer to ["2.26 Massage Function Control Module J740, Removing and Installing", page 289](#).

2.28 Backrest Kick and Puncture Protection, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Window Release Tool - T10236-



Note

The backrest kick and puncture protection is only installed in taxi and government vehicles.

Removing

- Remove the backrest cover with the backrest cushion. Refer to
⇒ ["1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 313](#).
- At the top of the kick protection -1-, remove both surfaces bonded at the sides from the backrest frame -3-.
- Unclip the two push buttons -2- from the backrest frame -3- using the -T10236-.
- Remove the kick protection -1- from the backrest frame -3-.

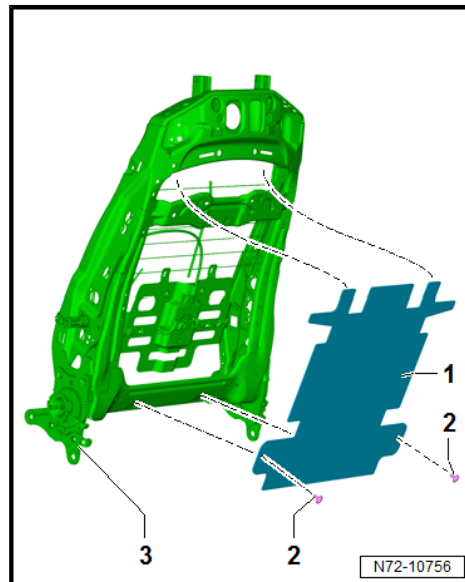
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Before installing, check all the fasteners for damage and replace if necessary.



2.29 Backrest Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Assembly Tool - 3399-



Note

The following describes the removing and installing on the left side of the vehicle. Removing and installing on the right side is similar.

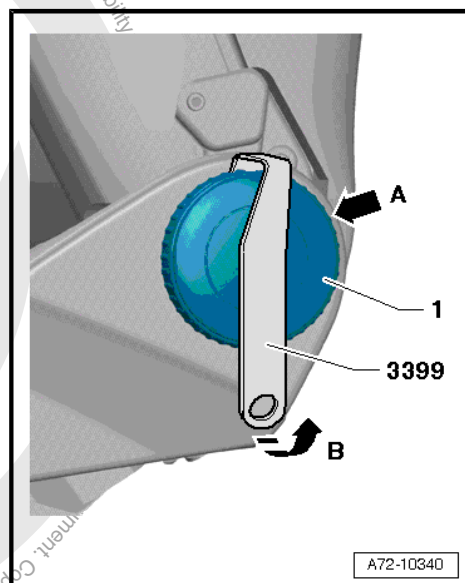
Removing

- Turn the backrest adjuster -1- until the retainer can be seen from the rear -arrow A-. Use a flashlight if necessary.
- Insert the -3399- and lift it in the direction of -arrow B-.
- Turn the backrest adjuster 120° farther.
- Insert the -3399- and lift it in the direction of -arrow B-.
- Remove the backrest adjuster.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Note the correct installation position of the backrest adjuster.
- Pull on the backrest adjuster to make sure it is secure.
- If the backrest adjuster rests too loosely after installation, replace it.





3 Rear Seats

- ⇒ [“3.1 Overview - Bench Seat/Single Seats”, page 291](#)
- ⇒ [“3.2 Overview - Locking Mechanism”, page 292](#)
- ⇒ [“3.3 Overview - Rear Seat Backrest”, page 294](#)
- ⇒ [“3.4 Overview - Center Armrest”, page 295](#)
- ⇒ [“3.5 Overview - Side Cushion”, page 296](#)
- ⇒ [“3.6 Bench Seat/Single Seat, Removing and Installing”, page 296](#)
- ⇒ [“3.7 Headrest, Removing and Installing”, page 298](#)
- ⇒ [“3.8 Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing”, page 298](#)
- ⇒ [“3.9 Rear Seat Backrest, Removing and Installing”, page 299](#)
- ⇒ [“3.10 Locking Mechanism Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 300](#)
- ⇒ [“3.11 Rear Seat Backrest Locking Mechanism, Removing and Installing”, page 301](#)
- ⇒ [“3.12 Pass-Through Cover Frame, Removing and Installing”, page 301](#)
- ⇒ [“3.13 Pass-Through Door, Removing and Installing”, page 302](#)
- ⇒ [“3.14 Center Armrest, Removing and Installing”, page 303](#)
- ⇒ [“3.15 Side Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 303](#)

3.1 Overview - Bench Seat/Single Seats





1 - Rear Bench Seat

- ❑ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["3.6 Bench Seat/Single Seat, Removing and Installing", page 296](#) .

2 - "LATCH Trims"

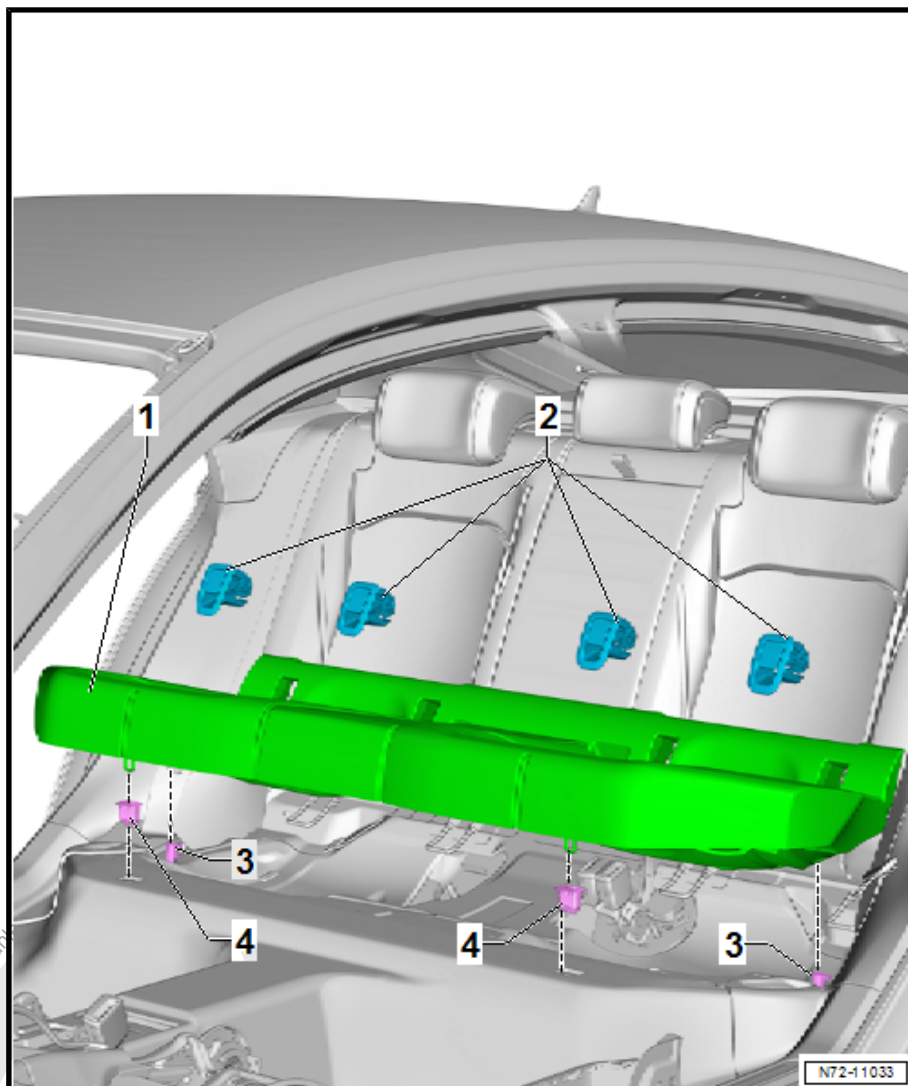
- ❑ For the child seat anchor
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.2 Rear Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing", page 87](#) .

3 - Hook

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ Engages in the rear bench seat wire frame

4 - Retainers

- ❑ Quantity: 2
- ❑ For securing the rear bench seat
- ❑ Replace if damaged



3.2 Overview - Locking Mechanism



Note

The overview shows the locking mechanism on the left 1/3 rear seat backrest. The locking mechanism on the right 2/3 rear seat backrest is similar.



1 - Backrest Frame

2 - Locking Mechanism Trim

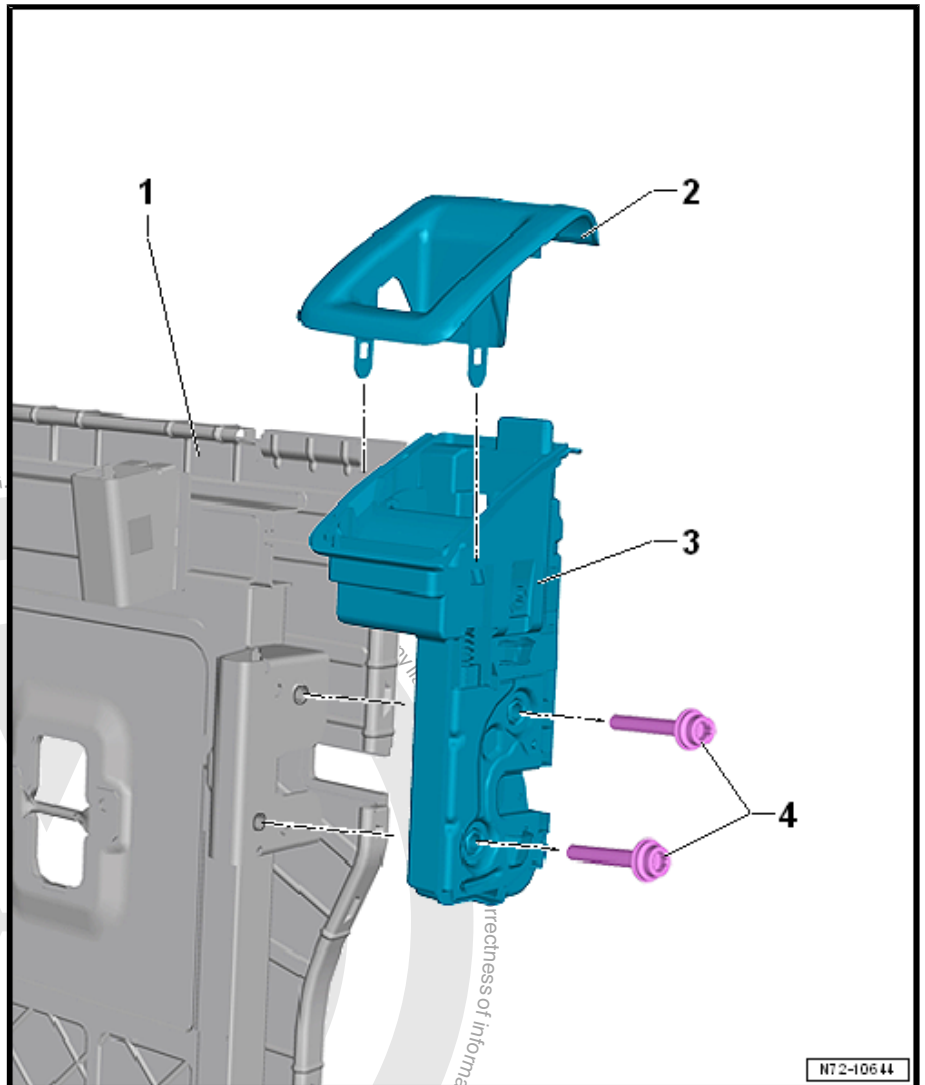
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["3.10 Locking Mechanism Trim, Removing and Installing"](#),
[page 300](#).

3 - Rear Seat Backrest Locking Mechanism

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["3.11 Rear Seat Backrest Locking Mechanism, Removing and Installing"](#), [page 301](#)

4 - Bolt

- ❑ 23 Nm
- ❑ Quantity: 2





3.3 Overview - Rear Seat Backrest

1 - Rear Seat Backrest

- ❑ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.9 Rear Seat Backrest, Removing and Installing", page 299](#).

2 - Outer Headrests

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.7 Headrest, Removing and Installing", page 298](#).

3 - Headrest in the Center

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.7 Headrest, Removing and Installing", page 298](#).

4 - Headrest Guide

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.8 Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing", page 298](#).

5 - Pass-Through Door

- ❑ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.13 Pass-Through Door, Removing and Installing", page 302](#).

6 - Inner Mounting Pin

- ❑ For the rear seat backrest

7 - Bolt

- ❑ 8 Nm

8 - Locking Bracket

- ❑ for the center bracket
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.9 Rear Seat Backrest, Removing and Installing", page 299](#).

9 - Center Bracket

- ❑ Welded to the underbody

10 - Cover

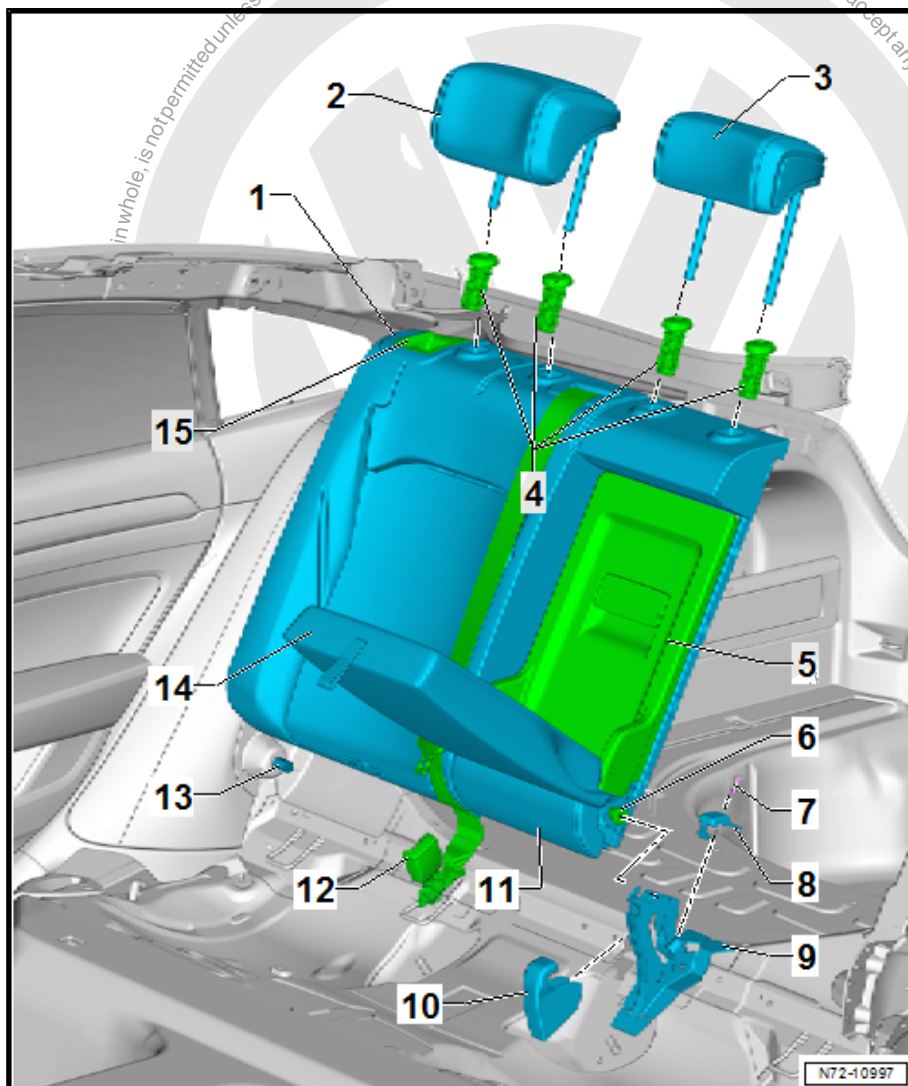
- ❑ for the center bracket
- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.9 Rear Seat Backrest, Removing and Installing", page 299](#).

11 - Center Cushion

- ❑ Center Cushion, Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["2.6 Center Cushion, Removing and Installing, Backrest with Pass-Through", page 332](#).

12 - Rear Three-Point Seat Belt

- ❑ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["1.8.2 Rear Three Point Seat Belt in Center, Removing and Installing", page 79](#).





13 - Outer Pivot Pin

- ☐ Welded to the body

14 - Center Armrest

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["3.4 Overview - Center Armrest", page 295](#).
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.14 Center Armrest, Removing and Installing", page 303](#).

15 - Locking Mechanism

- ☐ For the rear seat backrest
- ☐ Overview. Refer to ⇒ ["3.2 Overview - Locking Mechanism", page 292](#).

3.4 Overview - Center Armrest

1 - Center Cushion

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["2.6 Center Cushion, Removing and Installing, Backrest with Pass-Through", page 332](#).

2 - Center Armrest

- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.14 Center Armrest, Removing and Installing", page 303](#).

3 - Lid

- ☐ For pass-through
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.13 Pass-Through Door, Removing and Installing", page 302](#).

4 - Trim

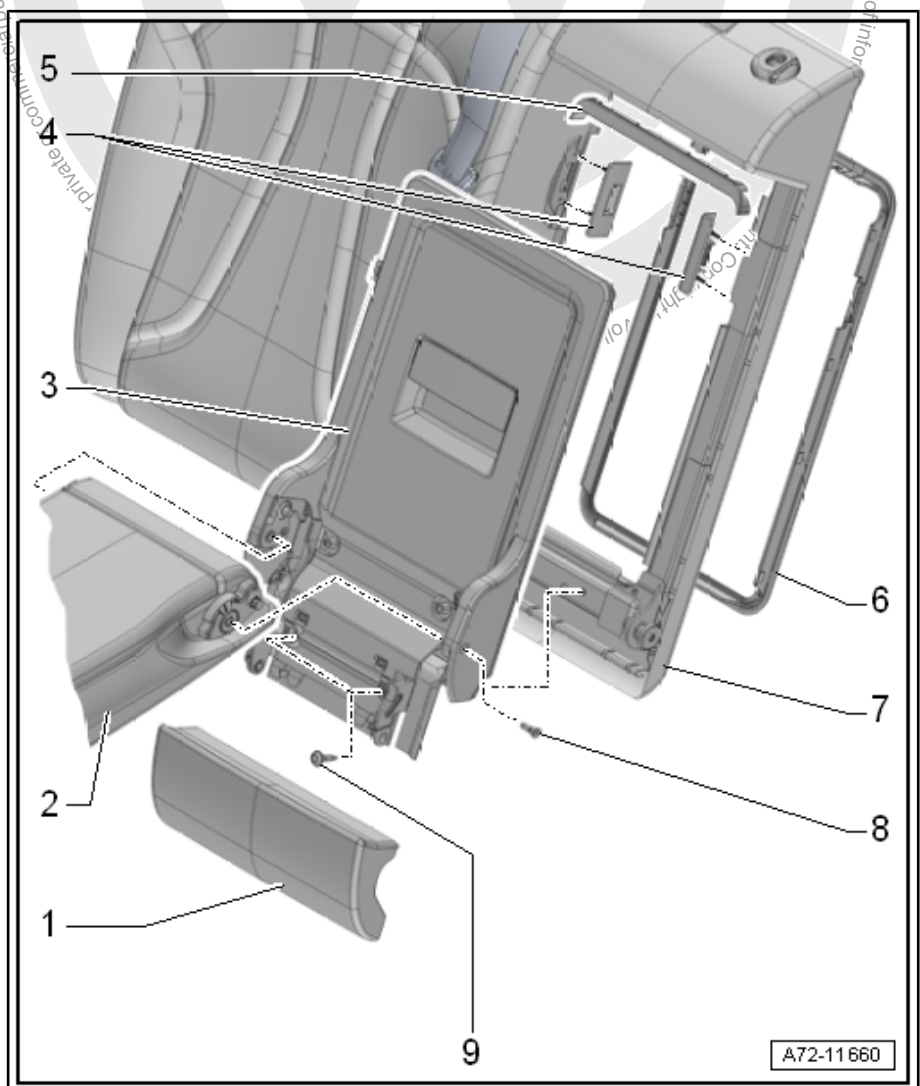
- ☐ For the rear lid locking mechanism
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.12 Pass-Through Cover Frame, Removing and Installing", page 301](#).

5 - Stop Strip

- ☐ Clipped into the rear seat backrest
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.12 Pass-Through Cover Frame, Removing and Installing", page 301](#).

6 - Cover Frame

- ☐ For pass-through
- ☐ Clipped into the rear seat backrest
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to ⇒ ["3.12 Pass-Through Cover Frame, Removing and Installing", page 301](#).





7 - Right 2/3 Rear Seat Backrest

- ☐ With pass-through
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

8 - Bolt

- ☐ 12 Nm
- ☐ Quantity: 2
- ☐ Self-tapping
- ☐ Replace after removing.

9 - Bolt

- ☐ 8 Nm
- ☐ Quantity: 2

3.5 Overview - Side Cushion

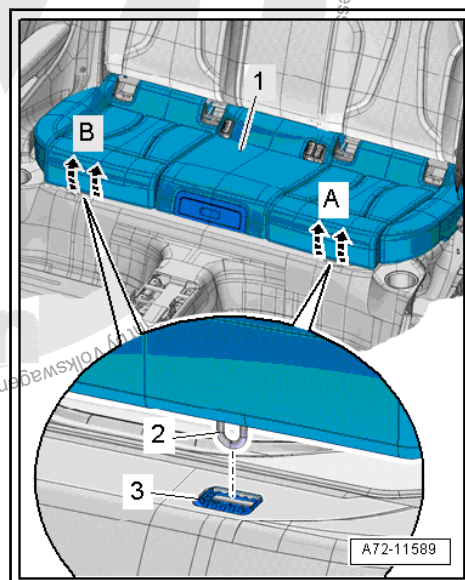
The side cushion is integrated in the wheel housing trim panel.
The side cushion and wheel housing trim panel are a shared component and cannot be separated.

Overview - Wheel Housing Trim Panel. Refer to
⇒ ["5.6 Overview - Wheel Housing Trim Panel", page 196](#).

3.6 Bench Seat/Single Seat, Removing and Installing

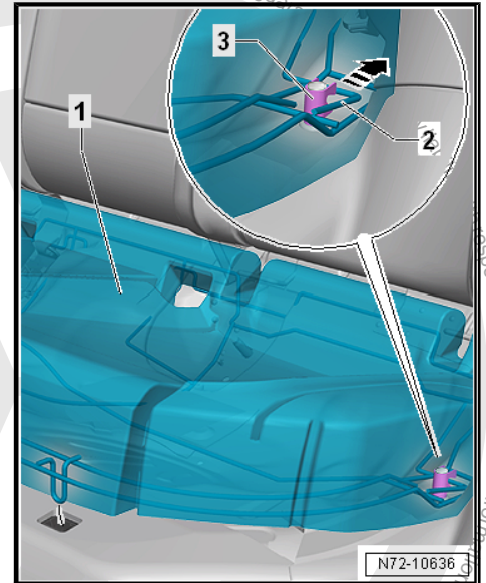
Removing

- Move the front seats all the way forward.
- Remove the "LATCH trim" for the child seat anchors. Refer to
⇒ ["2.2.1 LATCH Child Seat Anchor, Removing and Installing", page 87](#).
- With both hands, grasp the rear bench seat under the seat frame.
- Pull the rear bench seat -1- up forcefully with both hands -A arrows- so the wire hooks -2- on the rear bench seat release from the mounting grommet -3-.
- Repeat the procedure on the other side of the rear bench seat -B arrows-.





- Gently lift the rear bench seat -1- at the front and slide the wire frame -2- out of the hook -3- toward the rear -arrow-.
- In vehicles equipped with seat heating, disconnect the seat heating connector.
- Remove the rear bench seat from the vehicle.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

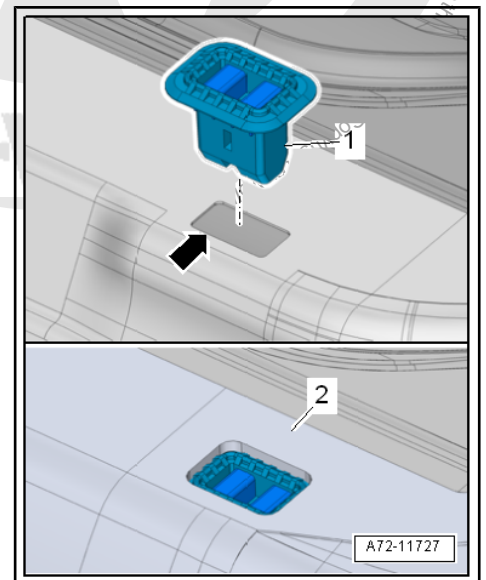
- Check the body openings -arrow- for deformations.
- In the case of deformation, readjust the panel with a plastic hammer.



Note

Remaining minor deformation is permissible.

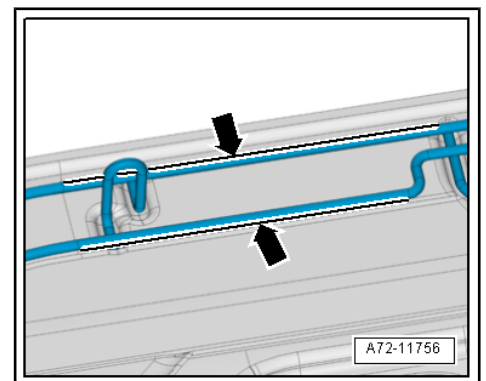
- Lift the carpet -2-.
- Push the new mounting grommets -1- into the opening in the body -arrow- until they engage audibly.
- Place the carpet around the grommet as shown.



Note

The carpet must not cover the grommet.

- Check if the wire frame is aligned in the marked area -arrows- before installing the rear bench seat.
- If the wire frame is bent, bend it back far enough until it is re-aligned.
- In vehicles equipped with seat heating, connect the seat heating connector.
- Install the rear bench seat and push the wire hooks into the mounting grommets.
- Make sure the wire hooks are engaged correctly in the grommets.

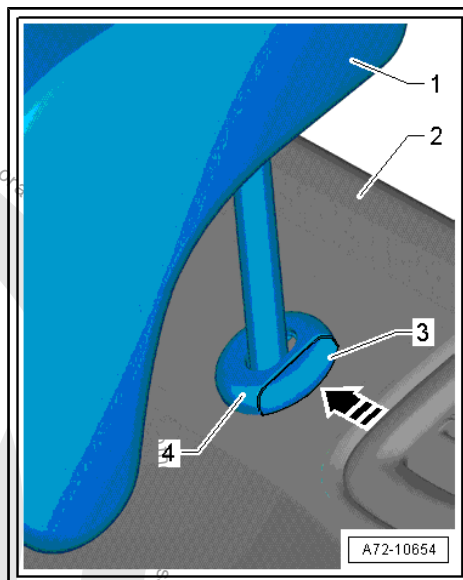




3.7 Headrest, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Press the height adjustment release button -3- on the headrest guide -4- in the direction of the -arrow-.
- At the same time, remove the headrest -1- all the way from the rear seat backrest -2-.



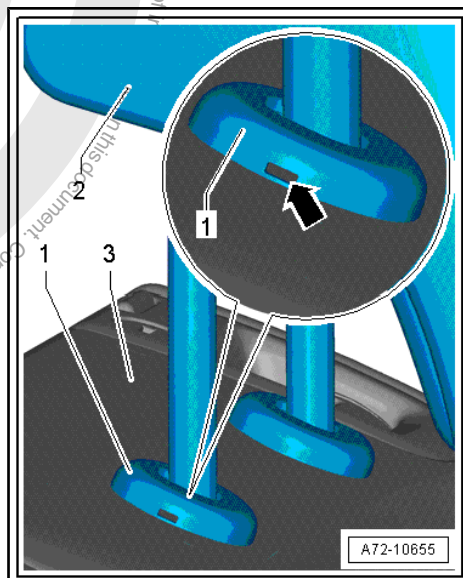
- Using a small flat-head screwdriver, press the locking spring as until it stops through the opening -arrow- in the headrest guide -1-.



Note

The position of the opening in the headrest guide -arrow- can either be in direction of travel »on the right« or »on the left side«.

- At the same time, remove the headrest -2- from the rear seat backrest -3-.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

Slide in the headrest and check that it is secure by pulling it.

3.8 Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing



Note

Two commercially available screwdrivers with blade height = 0.4 mm and blade width = 8 mm are required for removal.



Removing

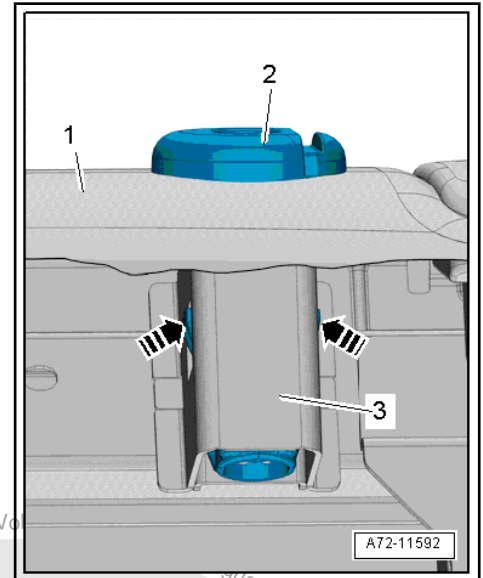
- Remove the rear headrest. Refer to
⇒ [“3.7 Headrest, Removing and Installing”, page 298](#).
- Press the backrest cover with backrest cushion -1- slightly downward at the outer sides.
- Insert a screwdriver on each side of the headrest tube -3- up to the height of the tabs -arrows- in the backrest.



Note

Place the two screwdrivers next to the retaining tabs so that the flat side of the screwdriver blade contacts the retaining tab.

- Turn both screwdrivers 90°, which releases the headrest guide retaining tabs.
- Carefully pry the headrest guide -2- out of the backrest using a third screwdriver.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:



Note

- ♦ *The locking tabs -arrows- must lock with the backrest frames -3-.*
- ♦ *Pull on the headrest guide to check for secure fit.*

3.9 Rear Seat Backrest, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ♦ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Removing



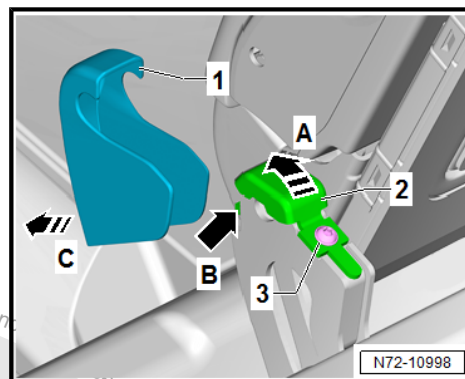
Note

To improve clarity, the left rear seat backrest 1/3 is not shown.

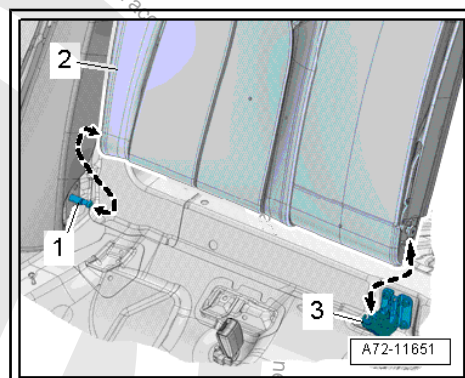
- Remove the bench seat. Refer to
⇒ [“3.6 Bench Seat/Single Seat, Removing and Installing”, page 296](#).
- Remove the seat belt latch with the right rear belt end fitting. Refer to
⇒ [“1.15 Rear Seat Belt Latch, Removing and Installing”, page 85](#).
- For versions with a pass-through, open the pass-through door and fold it forward.



- Remove the trim for the center bearing -1- forward -arrow C-.
- Remove the bolt -3-.
- Fold up the locking bracket -2- at the rear -arrow A-, disengage it at the front from the center bearing -arrow B- and remove.



- Lift the rear seat backrest -2- out of the center support -3- and pull it out toward the center of the vehicle out of its outer mounts -1- -arrows-.
- In vehicles equipped with seat heating, disconnect the backrest heating connector.
- Remove the rear seat backrest from the vehicle.



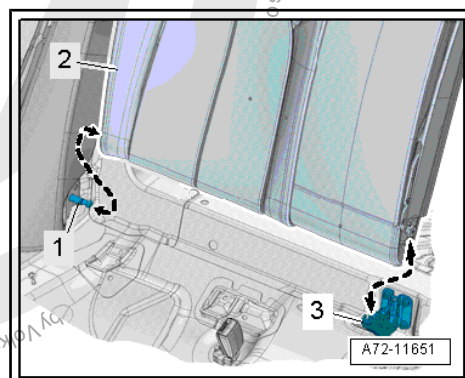
Installing

- Slide the rear seat backrest -2- onto the outer bearing pin -1-.
- Place the rear seat backrest -2- in the center support -3-.
- In vehicles equipped with seat heating, connect the backrest heating connector.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“3.3 Overview - Rear Seat Backrest”, page 294](#)



3.10 Locking Mechanism Trim, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Hook - T10538-

Removing



Note

Due to the limited amount of space near the “locking mechanism trim”, it is helpful to work with a second technician.

- Remove the respective rear headrest. Refer to ⇒ [“3.7 Headrest, Removing and Installing”, page 298](#) .
- Use a screwdriver to open the side and upper molding strip on the backrest cover near the trim.

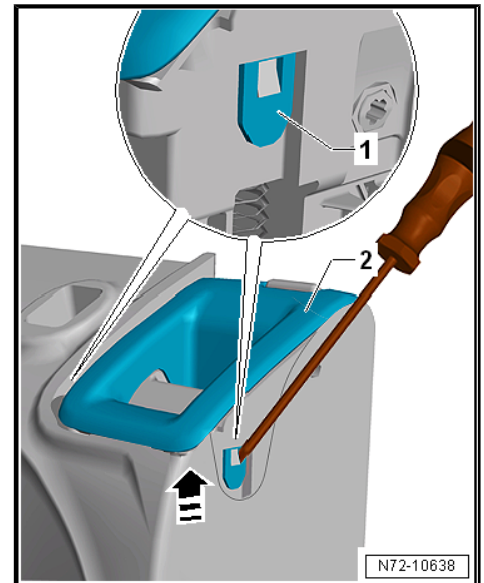


- Using the -3409-, carefully push the cover outward at the side of the trim -2-.
- Using a light, determine the position of the respective release tab -1-.
- Carefully bend the respective release tab -1- outward using the -T10538-.
- After both locking tabs -1- have been bent outward, pull the trim upward and remove it -arrow-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- After installing the trim, the rear seat backrest locking mechanism must function easily.



3.11 Rear Seat Backrest Locking Mechanism, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

Removing

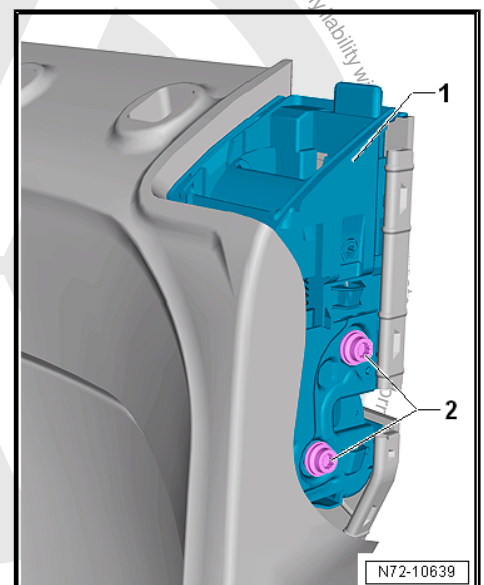
- Remove the locking mechanism trim. Refer to ["3.10 Locking Mechanism Trim, Removing and Installing", page 300](#).
- Only loosen the cover in the locking mechanism area. Refer to ["2.5 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 330](#).
- Remove the bolts -2-.
- Remove the locking mechanism -1- from the backrest frame.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ["3.2 Overview - Locking Mechanism", page 292](#)



3.12 Pass-Through Cover Frame, Removing and Installing

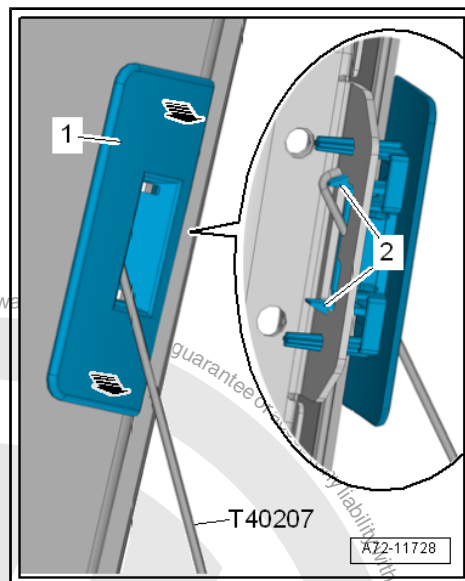
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Trim Release Lever - T10039-
- ◆ Hook Tool - T40207-

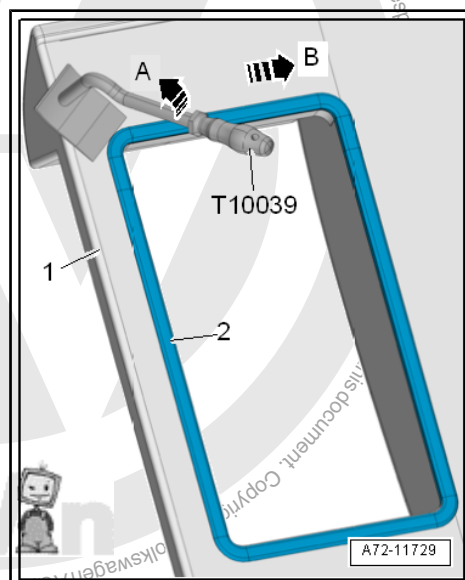


Removing

- Fold down the center armrest and open the pass-through door.
- Unclip the trim -1- from the rear seat backrest using the -3409- -arrows-.
- Use the -T40207- to remove the retaining tabs -2- alternating between the sides.



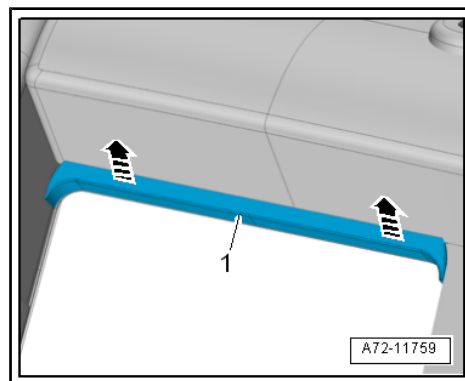
- Pry off the cover frame -2- using the -T10039- from the rear seat backrest -1- -arrow A-.
- Start in the upper left corner and continue in the -direction of arrow B-.
- Remove the pass-through cover frame.



- Push the backrest cushion with backrest cover slightly aside, and unclip the pass-through door stop strip -1- from the rear seat backrest -arrows-.
- Remove the stop strip for the pass-through door.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



3.13 Pass-Through Door, Removing and Installing

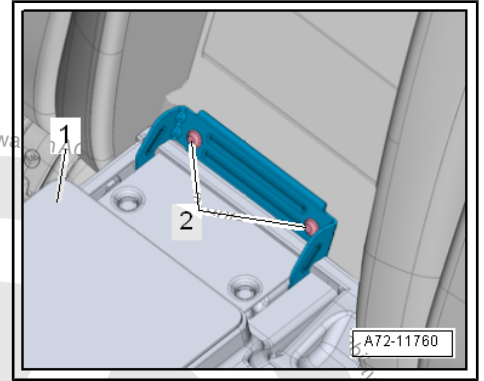
Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench - VAG1410-



Removing

- Fold down the center armrest and open the pass-through door.
- Remove the bolts -2-.
- Remove the center armrest with the cover -1- for the pass-through.
- Remove the center armrest. Refer to [⇒ “3.14 Center Armrest, Removing and Installing”, page 303](#).
- Remove the lower center cushion. Refer to [⇒ “2.6 Center Cushion, Removing and Installing, Backrest with Pass-Through”, page 332](#).



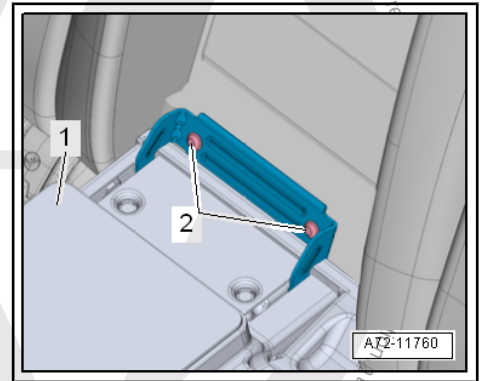
Installing

- Install the pass-through door -1- with the center armrest and tighten the bolts -2- hand-tight.
- Close the pass-through door -1- and align it.
- Tighten the bolts -2- on the rear seat backrest.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to [⇒ “3.4 Overview - Center Armrest”, page 295](#)



3.14 Center Armrest, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Torque Wrench - VAG1410-

Removing

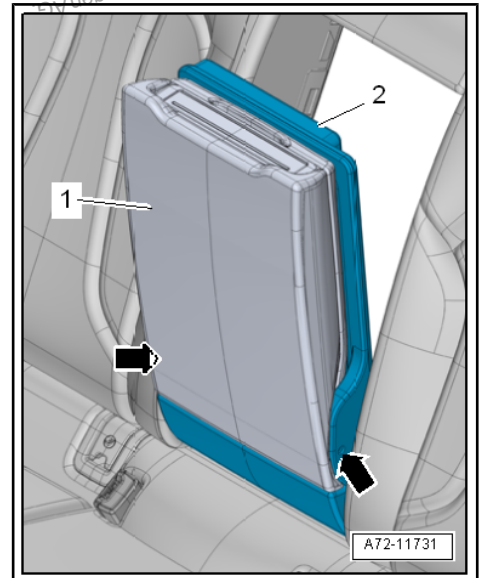
- Open the pass through door -2- with the center armrest approximately $\frac{1}{3}$.
- Remove the bolts -arrows-.
- Remove the center armrest -1- from the pass-through door.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to [⇒ “3.4 Overview - Center Armrest”, page 295](#)



3.15 Side Cushion, Removing and Installing

The side cushion is integrated in the wheel housing trim panel. The side cushion and wheel housing trim panel are a shared component and cannot be separated.

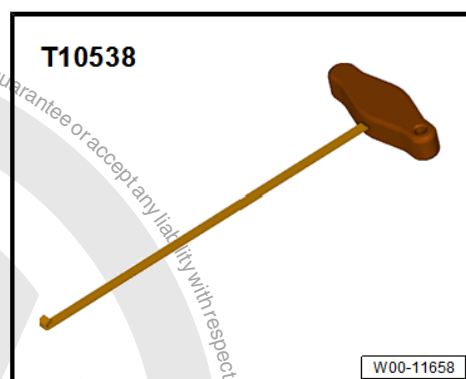
- Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing. Refer to [⇒ “5.13 Wheel Housing Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 210](#).



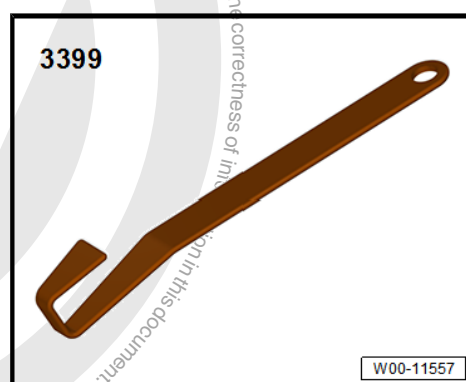
4 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

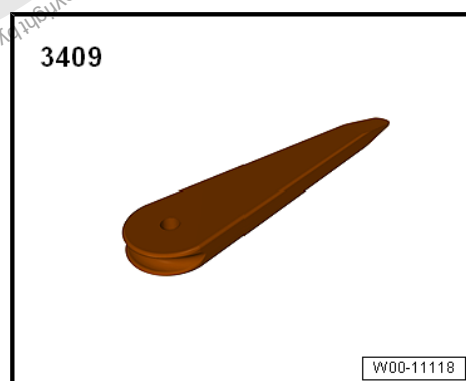
- ◆ Hook - T10538-



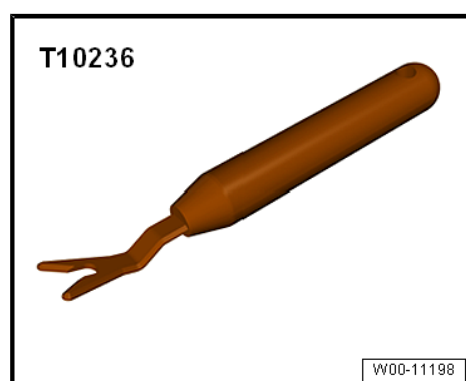
- ◆ Assembly Tool - 3399-



- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-

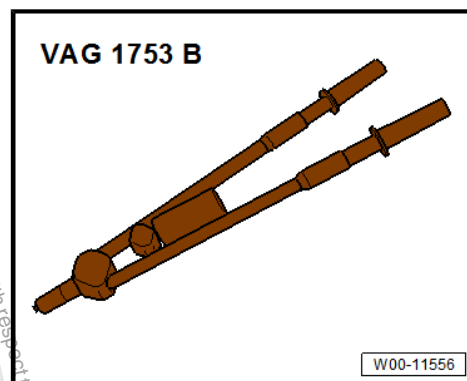


- ◆ Window Release Tool - T10236-

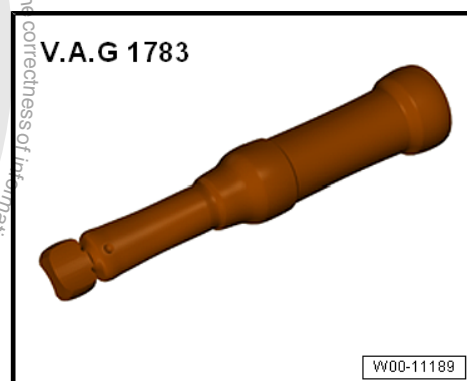




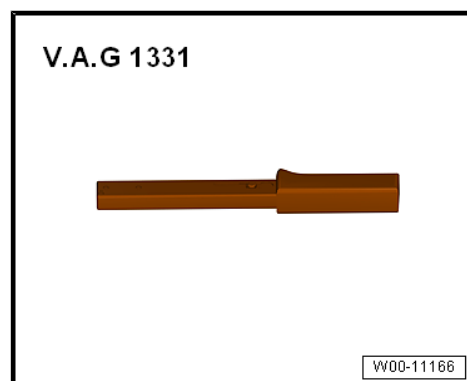
◆ Pop Rivet Pliers - VAG1753B



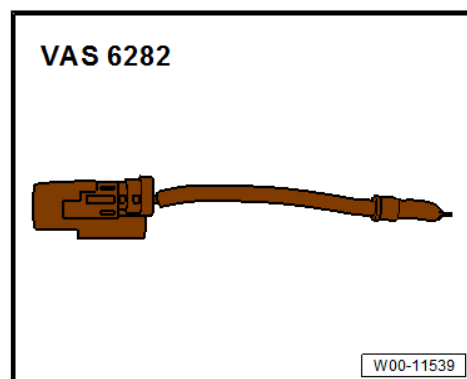
◆ Torque Wrench 1783 - 2-10Nm - VAG1783-



◆ Torque Wrench 1331 5-50Nm - VAG1331-

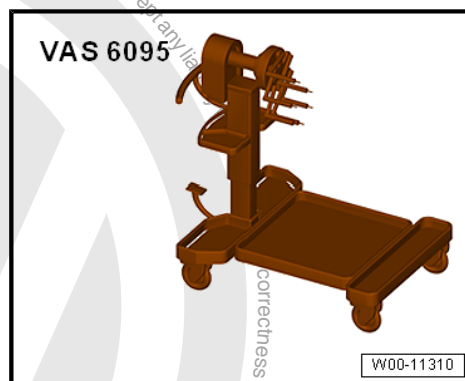


◆ Airbag Lockout Adapter - VAS6282-





◆ Engine and Transmission Holder - VAS6095A-



◆ Engine/Transmission Holder - Seat Repair Fixture - VAS6136-





74 – Seat Upholstery, Covers

1 Front Seat Covers and Cushions

⇒ [“1.1 Overview - Seat Pan Cover and Cushion”, page 307](#)

⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Backrest Cover and Cushion”, page 310](#)

⇒ [“1.3 Overview - Seat Heating Element”, page 311](#)

⇒ [“1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 311](#)

⇒ [“1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 313](#)

⇒ [“1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 318](#)

⇒ [“1.7 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 320](#)

⇒ [“1.8 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Heating Element Z6 / Z8, Removing and Installing”, page 324](#)

⇒ [“1.9 Driver/Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element Z7 / Z9, Removing and Installing”, page 325](#)

1.1 Overview - Seat Pan Cover and Cushion

⇒ [“1.1.1 Overview - Seat Pan Cover and Cushion”, page 307](#)

⇒ [“1.1.2 Overview - Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Seat Depth Adjuster”, page 309](#)

1.1.1 Overview - Seat Pan Cover and Cushion



1 - Seat Pan

- ❑ Overview. Refer to
⇒ ["2.4 Overview - Seat Pan", page 253](#).

2 - Seat Cushion

- ❑ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ❑ Seat cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 311](#).
- ❑ Separate the seat cover from the seat cushion. Refer to
⇒ ["1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 318](#).

3 - Upholstery Clip

- ❑ For attachment of the seat cover to the seat cushion
- ❑ Replace after removing.

4 - Seat Cover

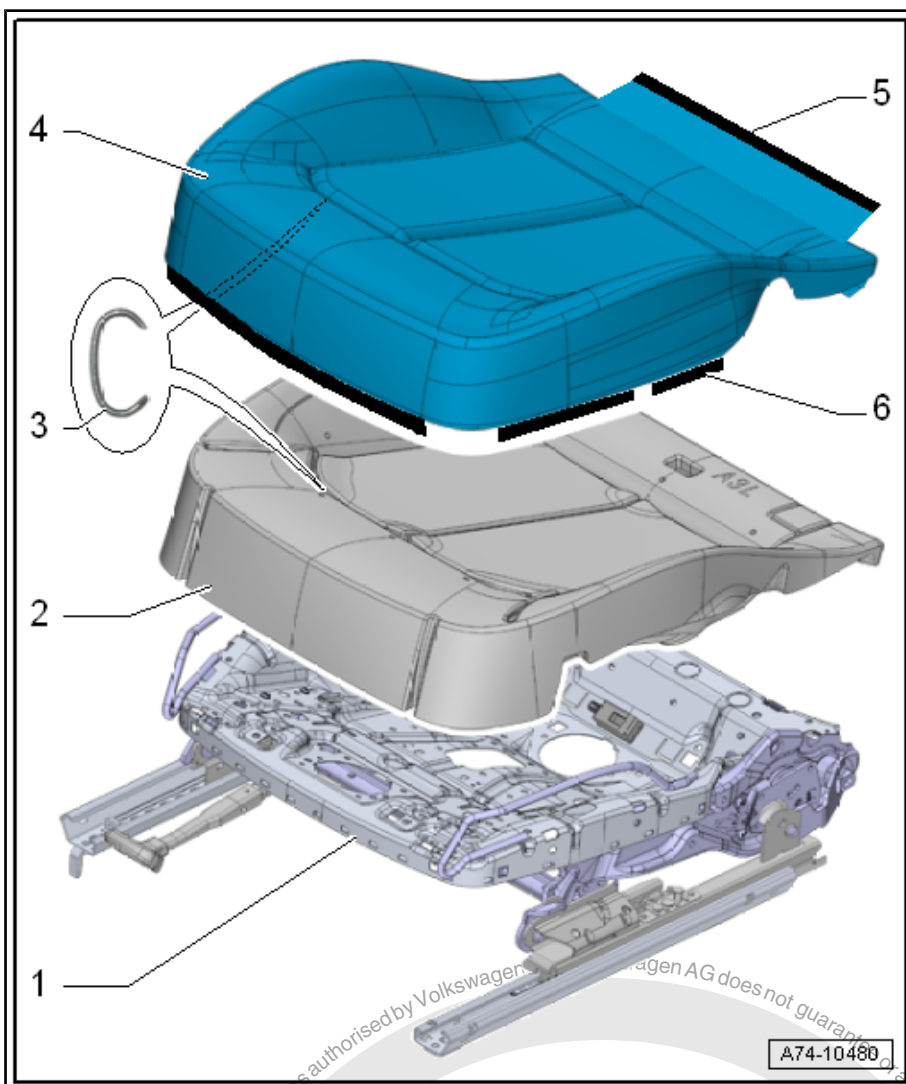
- ❑ Different equipment levels
- ❑ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ❑ Seat cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 311](#).
- ❑ Separate the seat cover from the seat cushion. Refer to
⇒ ["1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 318](#).

5 - Molding

- ❑ Sewn into seat cover
- ❑ For engaging the seat cover on seat pan upper frame

6 - Molding

- ❑ Sewn into seat cover
- ❑ For engaging the seat cover on seat pan upper frame





1.1.2 Overview - Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Seat Depth Adjuster

1 - Seat Pan

- ☐ Overview. Refer to
⇒ [“2.4 Overview - Seat Pan”, page 253](#).

2 - Seat Cushion

- ☐ For the seat depth adjustment
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Seat cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 311](#).
- ☐ Separate the seat cover from the seat cushion. Refer to
⇒ [“1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 318](#).

3 - Upholstery Clip

- ☐ For attachment of the seat cover to the seat cushion
- ☐ Replace after removing.

4 - Seat Cover

- ☐ Different equipment levels
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Seat cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 311](#).
- ☐ Separate the seat cover from the seat cushion. Refer to
⇒ [“1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 318](#).

5 - Molding

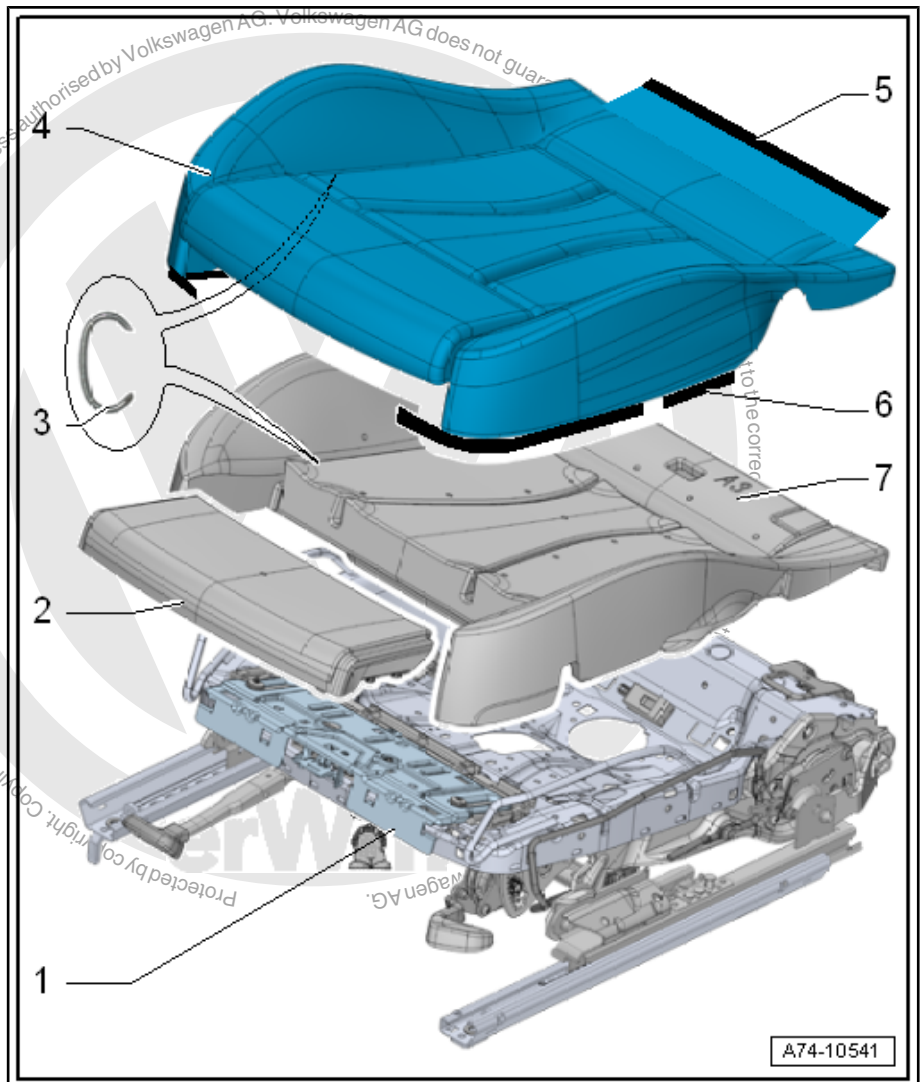
- ☐ sewn into seat cover
- ☐ For engaging the seat cover on seat pan upper frame

6 - Molding

- ☐ sewn into seat cover
- ☐ For engaging the seat cover on seat pan upper frame

7 - Seat Cushion

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Seat cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to
⇒ [“1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 311](#).
- ☐ Separate the seat cover from the seat cushion. Refer to
⇒ [“1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 318](#).





1.2 Overview - Backrest Cover and Cushion

1 - Upholstery Clip

- ❑ For attaching the backrest cover to the backrest cushion
- ❑ Replace after removing.

2 - Molding Strip

- ❑ Sewn into backrest cover
- ❑ A zipper is installed instead of a molding strip on seats with a pass-through
- ❑ "Zipper" allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

3 - Backrest Cover

- ❑ Different equipment levels
- ❑ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ❑ Backrest cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to [⇒ "1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 313](#).
- ❑ Backrest cover and backrest cushion, separating. Refer to [⇒ "1.7 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 320](#).

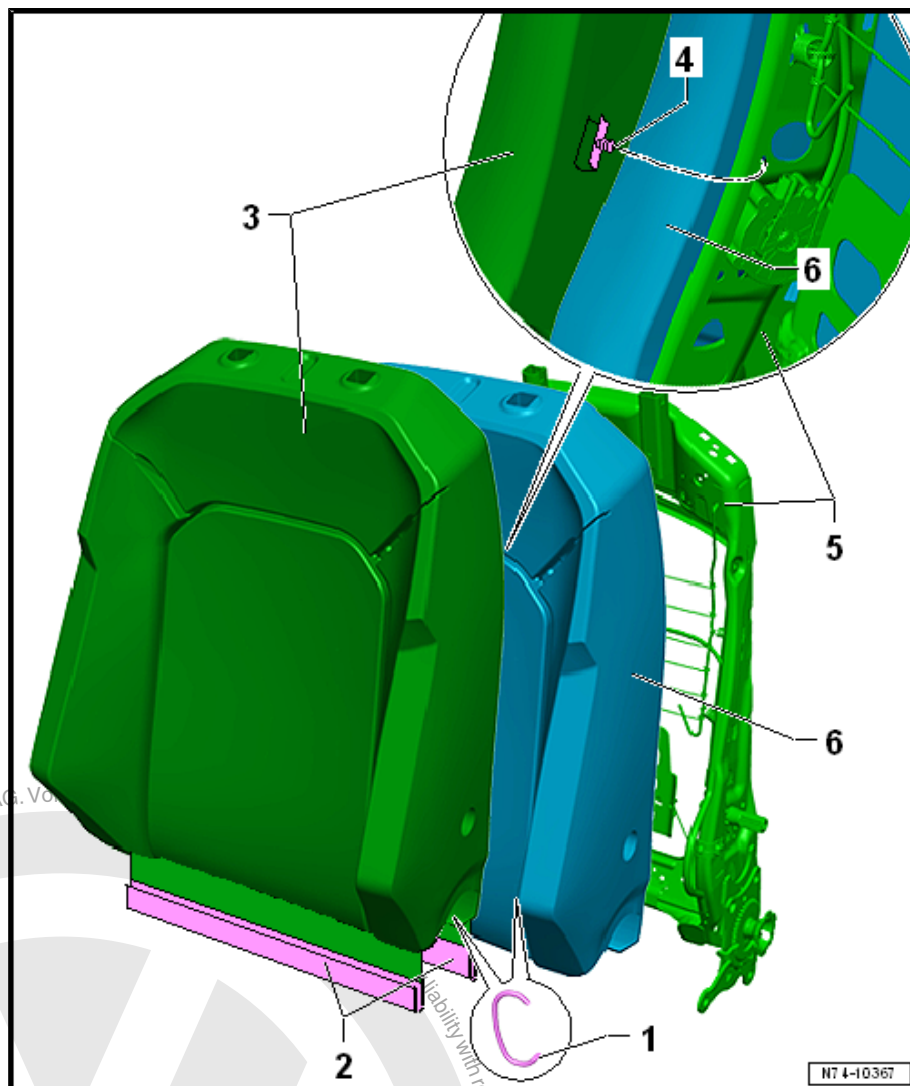
4 - Clip

- ❑ For securing the backrest cover on the rear frame
- ❑ Right and left
- ❑ Not on all versions

5 - Backrest Frame

6 - Backrest Cushion

- ❑ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ❑ Backrest cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to [⇒ "1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 313](#).
- ❑ Backrest cover and backrest cushion, separating. Refer to [⇒ "1.7 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 320](#).





1.3 Overview - Seat Heating Element

1 - Seat Cushion

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

2 - Heating Element

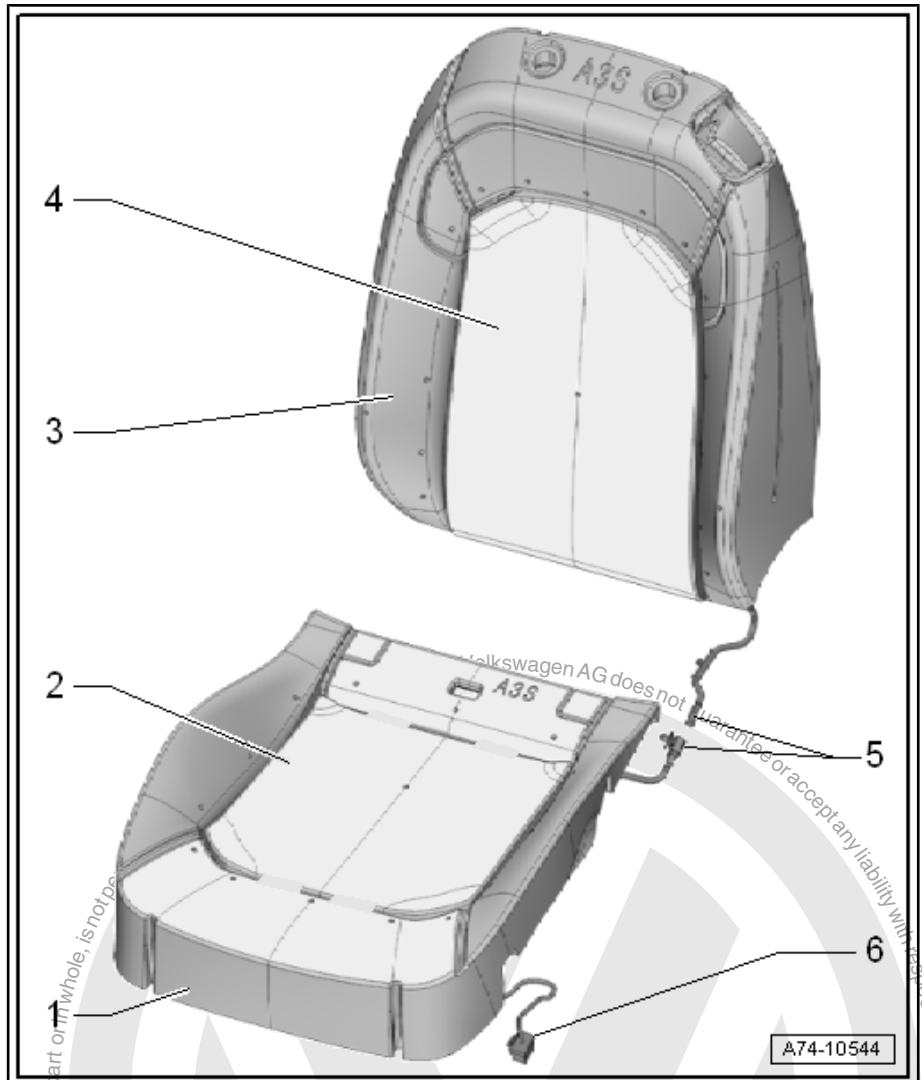
- ☐ Driver seat Driver Seat Heating Element - Z6-
- ☐ Passenger seat Front Passenger Seat Heating Element - Z8-
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.8 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Heating Element Z6 / Z8, Removing and Installing", page 324](#).

3 - Backrest Cushion

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

4 - Heating Element

- ☐ Driver seat Driver Backrest Heating Element - Z7-
- ☐ Passenger seat Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element - Z9-
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["1.9 Driver/Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element Z7 / Z9, Removing and Installing", page 325](#).



5 - Wire

6 - Wire

1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ T-Handle Hook - 3438-



Note

The following describes removing and installing components on the left seat. Removing and installing components on the right seat is similar.

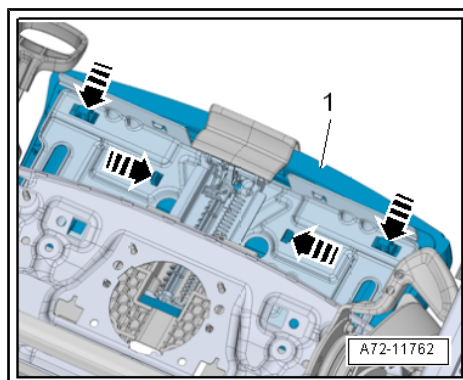
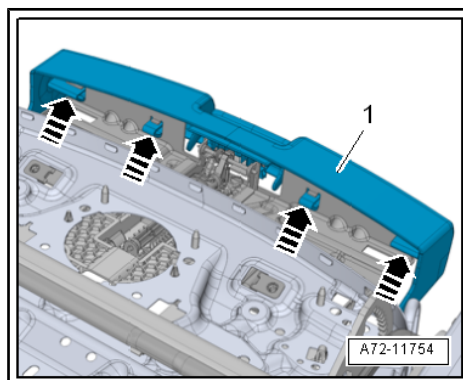


Removing

- Remove the front seat. Refer to
⇒ [“2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing”, page 264](#) .
- Remove the tunnel-side seat trim panel. Refer to
⇒ [“2.11 Tunnel-Side Seat Trim, Removing and Installing”, page 272](#) .
- Remove the backrest adjuster. Refer to
⇒ [“2.29 Backrest Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 290](#) .
- Remove the seat height adjustment handle. Refer to
⇒ [“2.16 Seat Height Adjustment Handle, Removing and Installing”, page 280](#) .
- Remove the sill-side seat trim panel. Refer to
⇒ [“2.12 Sill-Side Seat Trim Panel, Removing and Installing”, page 273](#) .
- Remove the sill-side seat trim bracket. Refer to
⇒ [“2.13 Seat Trim Panel Bracket, Removing and Installing”, page 275](#) .
- Remove the backrest. Refer to
⇒ [“2.20 Front Backrest, Removing and Installing”, page 283](#) .
- Release and disconnect the connector.
- Free up the wiring harnesses.

Vehicles with Seat Depth Adjuster

- Move the seat depth adjuster all the way forward.
 - Release the tabs -arrows- on the trim -1- using a -3409- .
 - Remove the trim from the seat depth adjuster.
-
- Release the retaining tabs -arrow- on the support from the seat depth adjuster using the -3409- .
 - Remove the support -1- with the seat cushion and seat cover for the seat depth adjuster upward and toward the front.





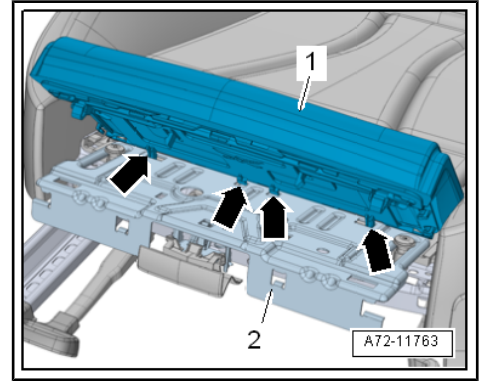
- Disengage the tabs -arrows- at the seat depth adjuster -2-.
- Move the support with the seat cushion and seat cover upward.
- To do so, remove the support -1- with seat cushion and seat cover for the seat depth adjuster upward and forward at the same time.



Caution

Risk of damaging the locking tabs when removing and installing.

◆ **Proceed very carefully when clipping and unclipping.**



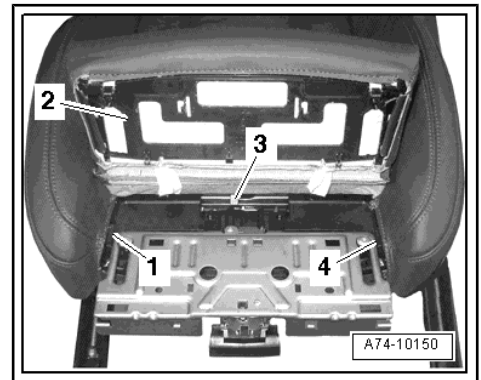
- Lay the support -2- with the seat cushion and seat cover on the front seat.



Note

For better illustration the seat pan lower frame is not shown.

- Disengage the seat cover retaining strips -1 and 4-.
- Remove the seat cover molding strip -3- from the seat depth adjuster.
- To do so, pull the molding strip forward.



Continuation for All Vehicles

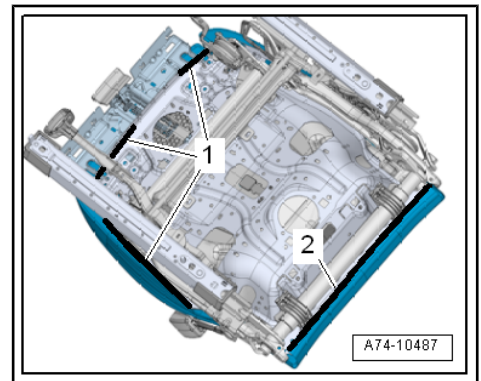
- Disengage the molding strip -1- and -2- using the -3438- .



Note

Higher force is required, to disengage the front and side molding strips.

- Remove the cover with the cushion from the seat pan.
- Separate the cover from the cushion. Refer to ["1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 318](#) .



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ["2.2 Overview - Front Seat", page 246](#)

1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Upholstery Clip Pliers - VAG1634-
- ◆ Backrest Panel Tool - 3370-



Note

The following describes removing and installing components on the left seat. Removing and installing components on the right seat is similar.

Cloth Backrest Cover, Removing



WARNING

Follow the General Safety Precautions when working with air-bags, belt tensioners and battery cut-out units (pyrotechnic components). Refer to ⇒ ["1 Safety Precautions", page 1](#) .

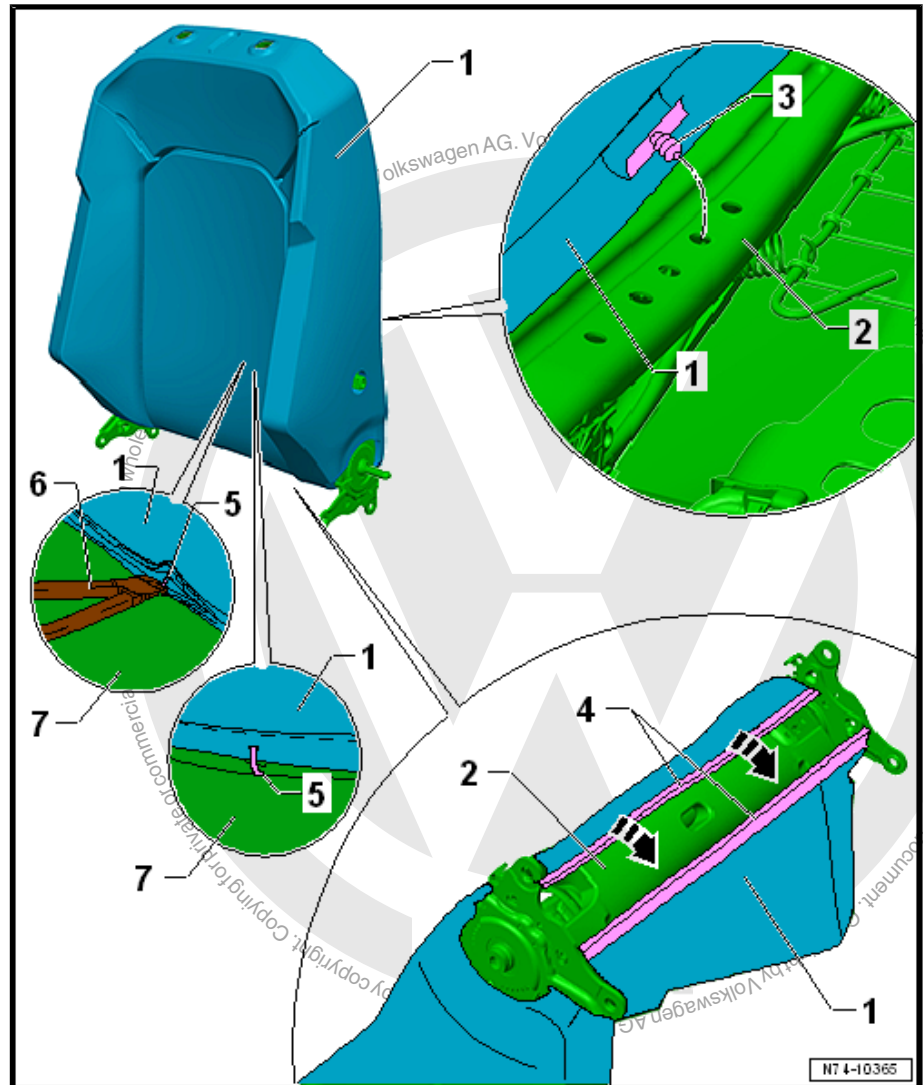


Note

It is not necessary to remove the front seat on vehicles with cloth seats.

- Remove the headrest. Refer to
⇒ ["2.21 Headrest, Removing and Installing", page 285](#) .
- If equipped, remove the lumbar support adjusting lever. Refer to
⇒ ["2.19 Lumbar Support Adjusting Mechanism, Removing and Installing", page 283](#) .





Driver Seat and Front Passenger Seat without Completely Foldable Backrest

- Open the molding strip -4- using the Backrest Panel Tool - 3370- .

Front Passenger Seat with Completely Foldable Backrest

Instead of the molding strip -4-, a zipper is installed.

“Zipper” allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

- Open the zipper.

Continuation for all seats

- Roll the front and rear backrest cover -1- upward.
- Pull up the backrest cover -1- in order to reach the right and left upholstery clips -5-.
- Open the upholstery clips -5- using pliers -6-.
- Pull the backrest cover -1- on the cushion -7- upward.
- Continue pulling the backrest cover -1- up in order to reach the next upholstery clips -5-.
- Loosen the clip -3- from both sides of the back of the backrest frame -2-.



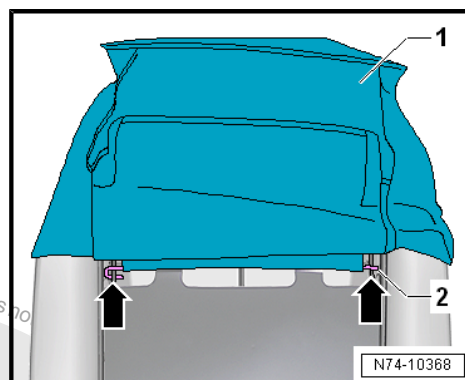
- To do so, use the -3409- .
- Open the upholstery clips -5- on the backside.
- Continue pulling the backrest cover -1- up in order to reach the next upholstery clips -5-.



Note

The topmost clips do not have to be removed.

- Pull the backrest cover on the backside upward up to the crossbrace -2-.
- Disengage the crossbrace on the left and right sides from the seat frame -arrows-.
- For headed front seats disconnect the wiring harness under the seat frame and guide out.
- Guide out the backrest cover and cushion at the headrest locking mechanism.
- Remove the backrest cover and cushion from the backrest.



Cloth Backrest Cover, Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- If necessary, install the backrest heating element. Refer to [⇒ "1.9 Driver/Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element Z7 / Z9, Removing and Installing", page 325](#) .
- Attach the backrest cover on the cushion. Refer to [⇒ "1.7 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 320](#) .

Leather or Partial-Leather Backrest Cover, Removing



WARNING

Follow the General Safety Precautions when working with airbags, belt tensioners and battery cut-out units (pyrotechnic components). Refer to [⇒ "1 Safety Precautions", page 1](#) .

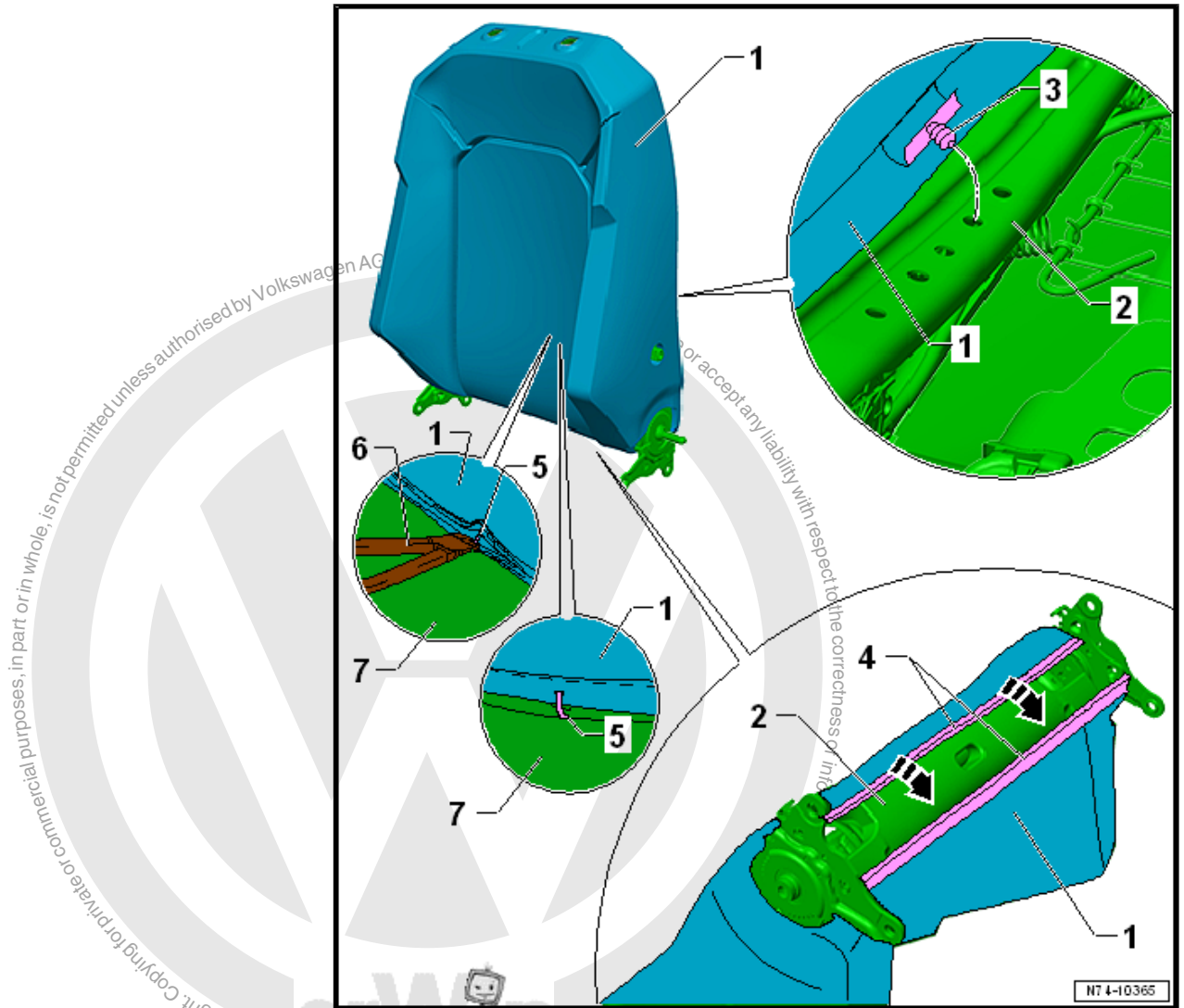
- Remove the front seat. Refer to [⇒ "2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing", page 264](#) .



Note

The following backrest removal procedure is not necessary on a front passenger seat with a backrest that folds all the way down.

- Remove the backrest. Refer to [⇒ "2.20 Front Backrest, Removing and Installing", page 283](#) .
- Remove the headrest. Refer to [⇒ "2.21 Headrest, Removing and Installing", page 285](#) .
- If equipped, remove the lumbar support adjusting lever. Refer to [⇒ "2.19 Lumbar Support Adjusting Mechanism, Removing and Installing", page 283](#) .



Driver Seat and Front Passenger Seat without Completely Foldable Backrest

- Open the molding strip -4- using the -3370- .

Front Passenger Seat with Completely Foldable Backrest

Instead of the molding strip -4-, a zipper is installed.

- Open the zipper.

Continuation for all seats

- Roll the front and rear backrest cover -1- upward.
- Pull up the backrest cover -1- in order to reach the right and left upholstery clips -5-.
- Open the upholstery clips -5- using pliers -6-.
- Pull the backrest cover -1- on the cushion -7- upward.
- Continue pulling the backrest cover -1- up in order to reach the next upholstery clips -5-.
- Loosen the clip -3- from both sides of the back of the backrest frame -2-.
- To do so, use the Trim Removal Wedge - 3409- .
- Open the upholstery clips -5- on the backside.



- Continue pulling the backrest cover -1- up in order to reach the next upholstery clips -5-.



Note

The topmost clips do not have to be removed.

- Pull the backrest cover on the backside upward up to the crossbrace -2-.
- Disengage the crossbrace on the left and right sides from the seat frame -arrows-.
- Guide out the backrest cover and cushion at the headrest locking mechanism.
- Remove the backrest cover and cushion from the backrest.
- At the same time, guide out the wiring harness.

Leather or Partial-Leather Backrest Cover, Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- If necessary, install the backrest heating element. Refer to ⇒ [“1.9 Driver/Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element Z7 / Z9, Removing and Installing”, page 325](#).
- Attach the backrest cover on the cushion. Refer to ⇒ [“1.7 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 320](#).

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Backrest Cover and Cushion”, page 310](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Front Seat”, page 246](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.3 Overview - Front Backrest”, page 250](#)

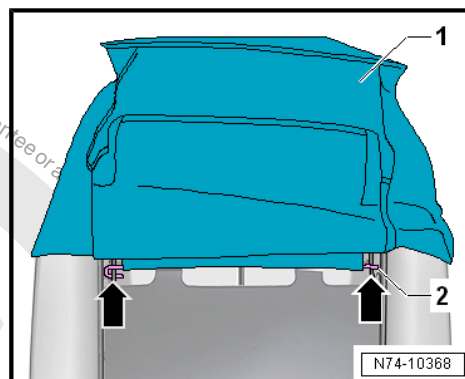
1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery Clip Pliers - VAG1634-
- ◆ Backrest Panel Tool - 3370-

Removing

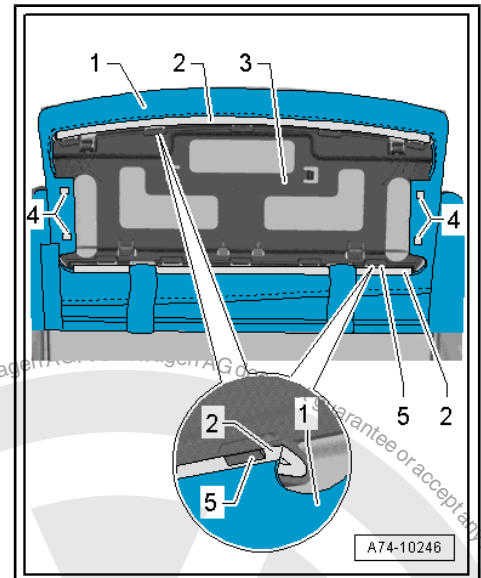
- Remove the cover with the cushion. Refer to ⇒ [“1.4 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 311](#).





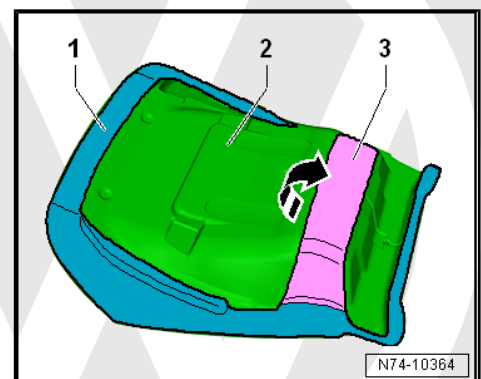
Vehicles with Seat Depth Adjuster

- Unclip the molding strips -2- from the tabs -5-.
- Disengage the seat cover from the tabs -4- on both sides using the -3370-.
- Remove the support -3- with the seat depth adjuster seat cushion from the seat cover -1-.



Continuation for All Vehicles

- Remove the mounting tab -3- of the seat cover -1- in direction of the -arrow- from the seat cushion -2-.

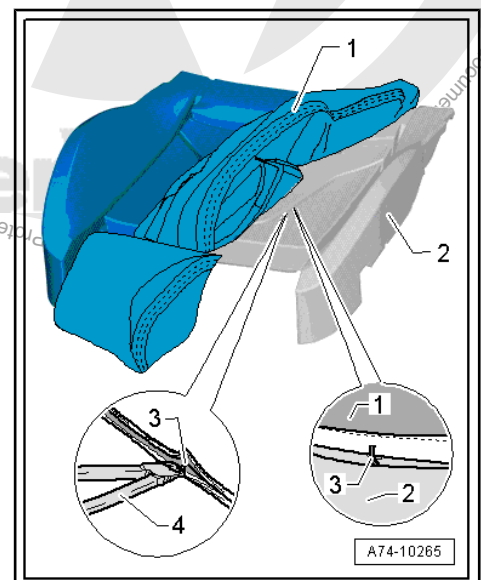


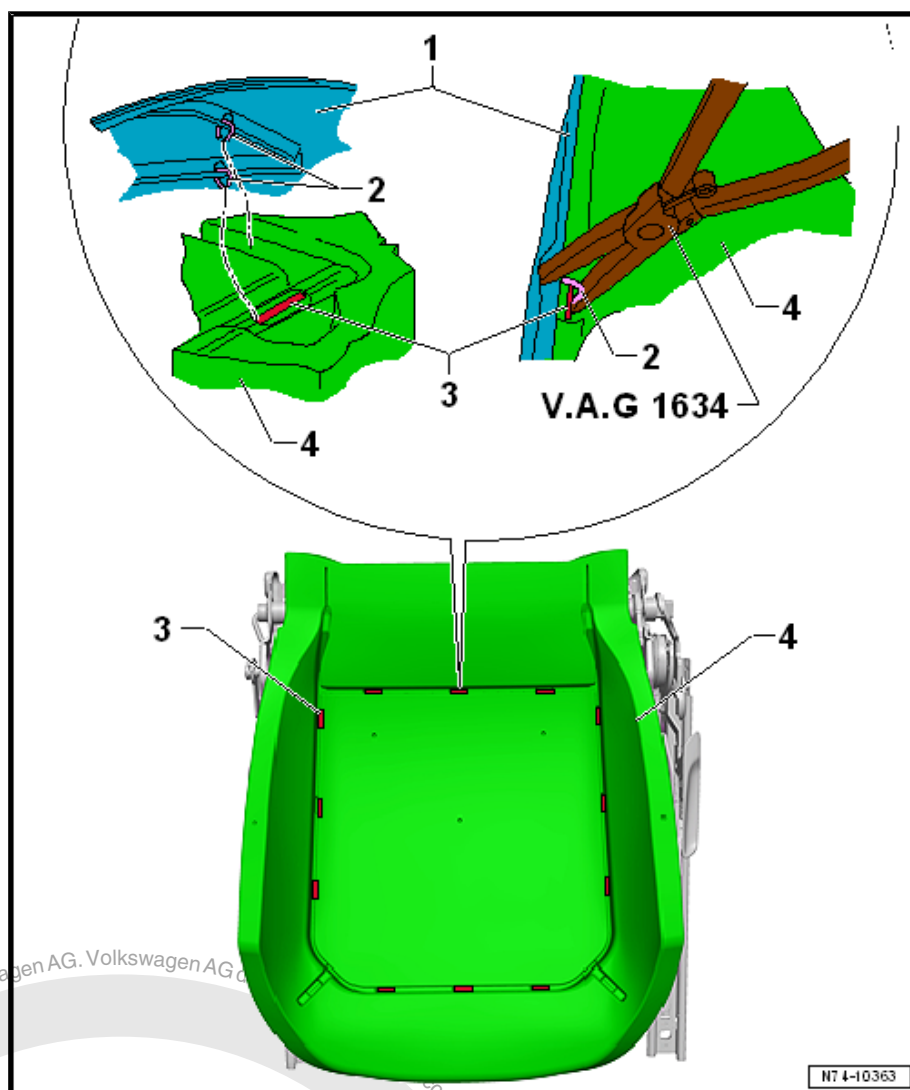
- Remove the seat cover -1- from the seat cushion -2-.
- Cut through the upholstery clips -3- with pliers -4-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Replace all opened clips -Item 1- ⇒ [Item 1 \(page 310\)](#) and mount again in the same location.





- Pull the seat cover -1- over the cushion -4-.
- Secure the seat cover -1- to the mounts -3- using the upholstery clips -2-.
- To do so, use the -VAG1634- .
- Make sure the seat cover -1- is free of folds.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ [“1.1 Overview - Seat Pan Cover and Cushion”, page 307](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.3 Overview - Front Backrest”, page 250](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Front Seat”, page 246](#)

1.7 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Upholstery Clip Pliers - VAG1634-
- ◆ Backrest Panel Tool - 3370-



Note

The following describes removing and installing components on the left seat. Removing and installing components on the right seat is similar.

Cloth Backrest Cover, Removing



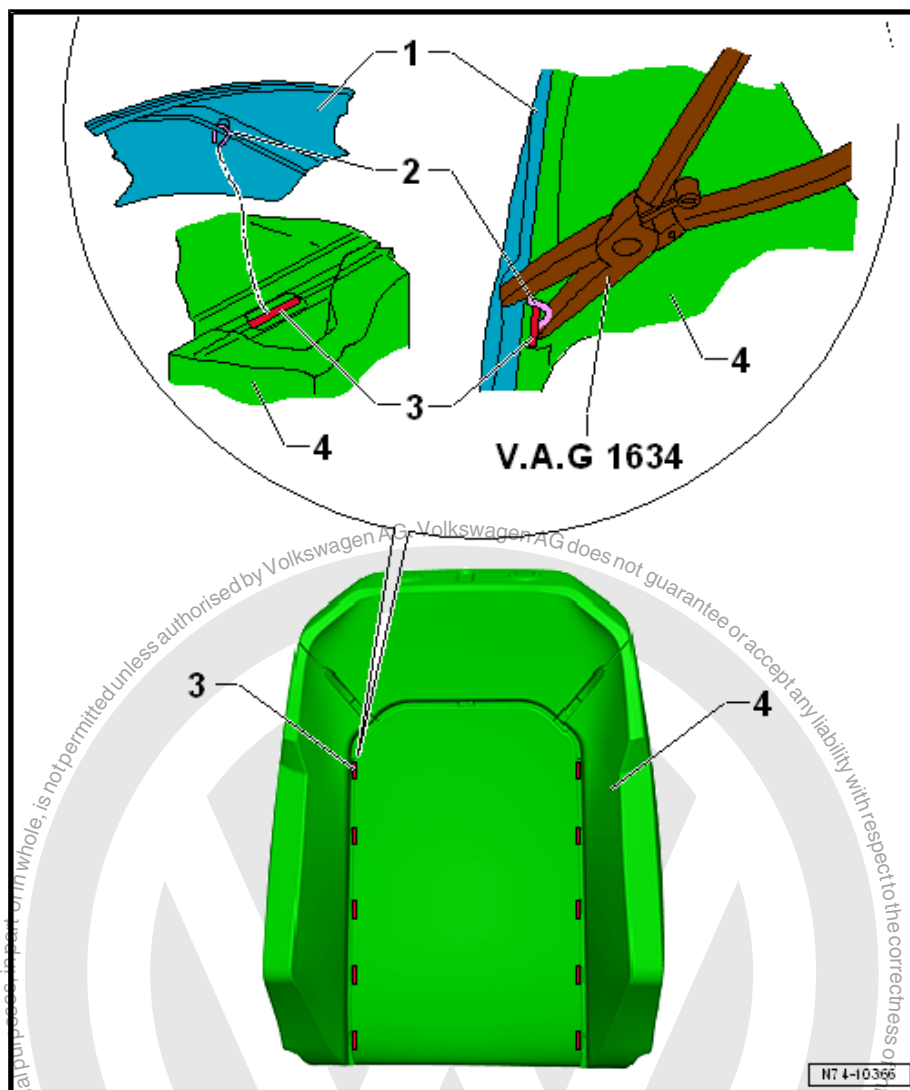
Note

- ◆ *It is not necessary to remove the front seat on vehicles with cloth seats.*
- ◆ *It is not necessary to separate the backrest from the seat frame on vehicles with cloth seats.*
- Remove the backrest seat cover and cushion. Refer to [⇒ "1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 313](#).
- Open and remove the top upholstery clip using pliers.
- Separate the backrest cover from the cushion.

Cloth Backrest Cover, Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Replace all opened clips -Item 1- [⇒ Item 1 \(page 310\)](#) and mount again in the same location.



- Pull the backrest cover -1- over the cushion -4-.
- Guide in the backrest cover -1- at the headrest guide -item 8- ⇒ [Item 8 \(page 251\)](#) .
- Secure the backrest cover -1- to the mounts -3- using the upholstery clips -2-.
- To do so, use the -VAG1634- .
- Make sure the seat backrest cover -1- is free of folds.

Leather or Partial-Leather Backrest Cover, Removing

- Remove the front seat. Refer to
⇒ [“2.9.1 Front Seat, Removing and Installing”, page 264](#) .



Note

The following backrest removal procedure is not necessary on a front passenger seat with a backrest that folds all the way down.

- Remove the backrest. Refer to
⇒ [“2.20 Front Backrest, Removing and Installing”, page 283](#) .

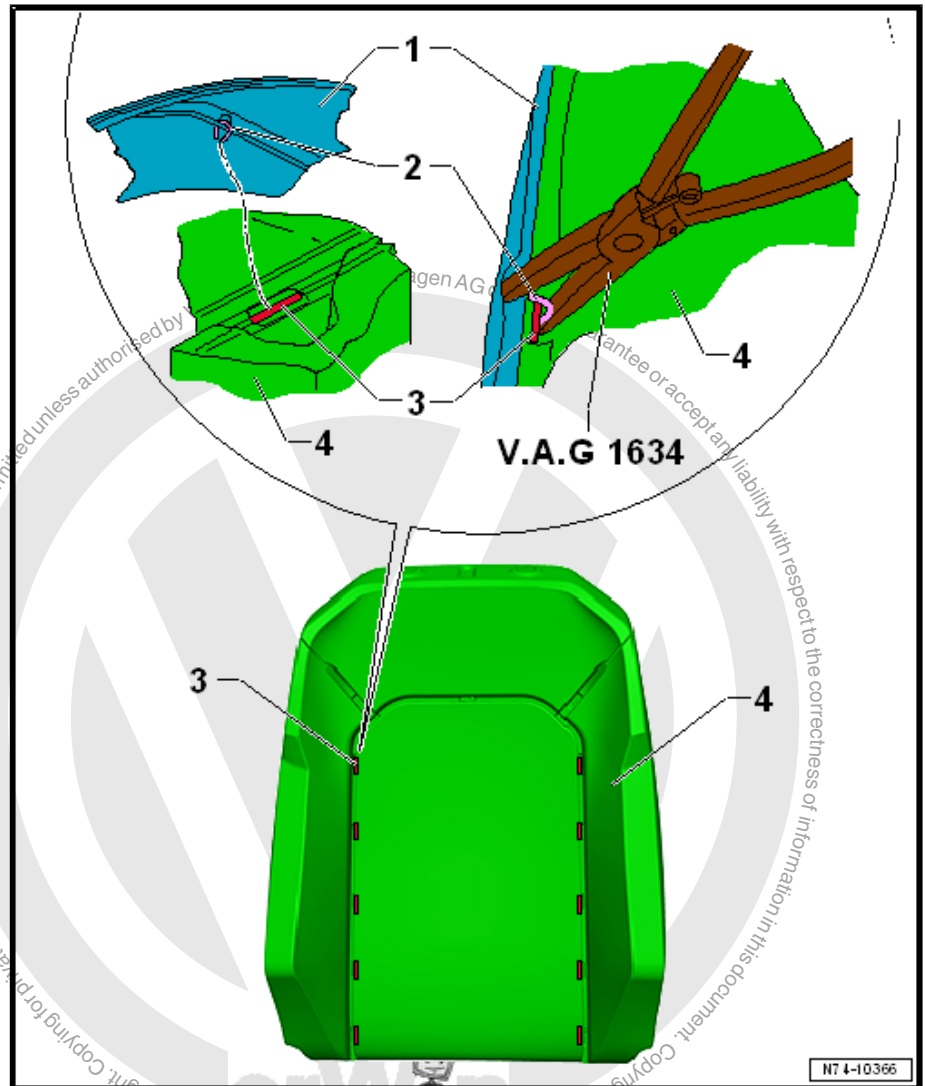


- Remove the backrest seat cover and cushion. Refer to [⇒ "1.5 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 313](#).
- Open and remove the top upholstery clip using pliers.
- Separate the backrest cover from the cushion.

Leather or Partial-Leather Backrest Cover, Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Replace all opened clips -item 1- [⇒ Item 1 \(page 310\)](#) and mount again in the same location.



- Pull the backrest cover -1- over the cushion -4-.
- Guide in the backrest cover -1- at the headrest guide -item 8- [⇒ Item 8 \(page 251\)](#).
- Secure the backrest cover -1- to the mounts -3- using the upholstery clips -2-.
- To do so, use the Upholstery Clip Pliers - VAG1634 -.
- Make sure the seat backrest cover -1- is free of folds.



Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Backrest Cover and Cushion”, page 310](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.3 Overview - Front Backrest”, page 250](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Front Seat”, page 246](#)

1.8 Driver and Front Passenger Seat Heating Element -Z6- / -Z8- , Removing and Installing

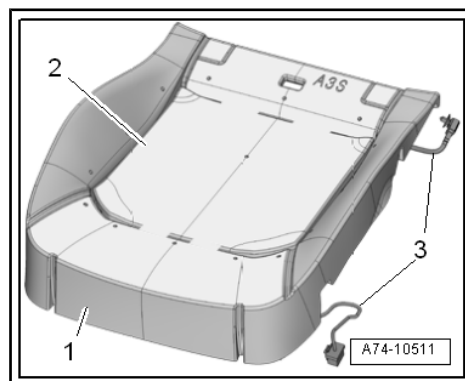
Removing

- Separate the seat cover from the seat cushion. Refer to
⇒ [“1.6 Seat Pan Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 318](#) .
- Disconnect the wire -3- directly from the old heating element -2-.



Note

The old heating elements remain on the cushion -1- and will be covered over by the new heating element.



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Guide the wire -3- through the cable guide.
- Align the new heating elements on the seat cushion while not pulling off the protective film.
- Remove the protective films from the heating elements in succession, taking care not to damage the heating elements.
- Glue the heating elements so that they align with the old heating elements and are free of wrinkles.
- Route the connections to the individual heating elements in the base of the gaps.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to
⇒ [“1.1 Overview - Seat Pan Cover and Cushion”, page 307](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“1.3 Overview - Seat Heating Element”, page 311](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.3 Overview - Front Backrest”, page 250](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Front Seat”, page 246](#)



1.9 Driver/Front Passenger Backrest Heating Element -Z7- / -Z9- , Removing and Installing

Removing

- Separate the backrest cover and backrest cushion. Refer to ⇒ [“1.7 Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 320](#) .
- Cut the wire -3- directly from the old heating element -2-.



Note

The old heating elements remain on the backrest cushion -1- and will be covered over by the new heating elements.

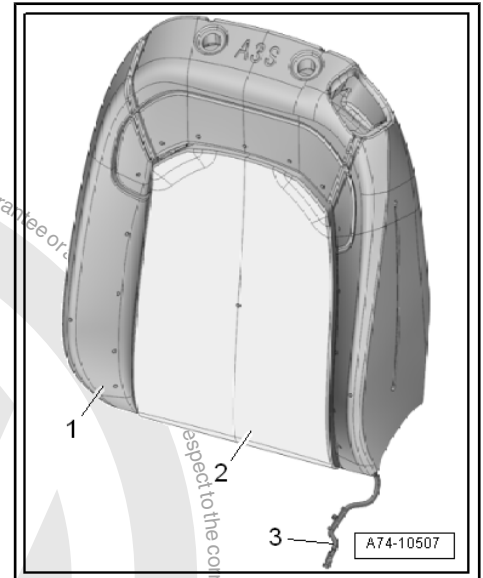
Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Guide the wire -3- through the cable guide.
- Align the new heating elements on the backrest cushion while not pulling off the protective film.
- Remove the protective films from the heating elements in succession, taking care not to damage the heating elements.
- Glue the heating elements so that they align with the old heating elements and are free of wrinkles.
- Route the connections to the individual heating elements in the base of the gaps.

Tightening Specifications

- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“1.2 Overview - Backrest Cover and Cushion”, page 310](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“1.3 Overview - Seat Heating Element”, page 311](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.3 Overview - Front Backrest”, page 250](#)
- ◆ Refer to ⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Front Seat”, page 246](#)





2 Rear Seat Covers and Cushions

- ⇒ [“2.1 Overview - Bench Seat Cover and Cushion”, page 326](#)
- ⇒ [“2.2 Overview - Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion”, page 328](#)
- ⇒ [“2.3 Overview - Seat Heating Element”, page 328](#)
- ⇒ [“2.4 Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 329](#)
- ⇒ [“2.5 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 330](#)
- ⇒ [“2.6 Center Cushion, Removing and Installing, Backrest with Pass-Through”, page 332](#)
- ⇒ [“2.7 Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 332](#)
- ⇒ [“2.8 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating”, page 333](#)
- ⇒ [“2.9 Seat Heating Element, Removing and Installing”, page 334](#)
- ⇒ [“2.10 Backrest Heating Element, Removing and Installing”, page 334](#)

2.1 Overview - Bench Seat Cover and Cushion



1 - Seat Frame

2 - Seat Cushion

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Seat cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.4 Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 329](#).
- ☐ Separate the seat cover from the seat cushion. Refer to
⇒ ["2.7 Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 332](#).

3 - Upholstery Clip

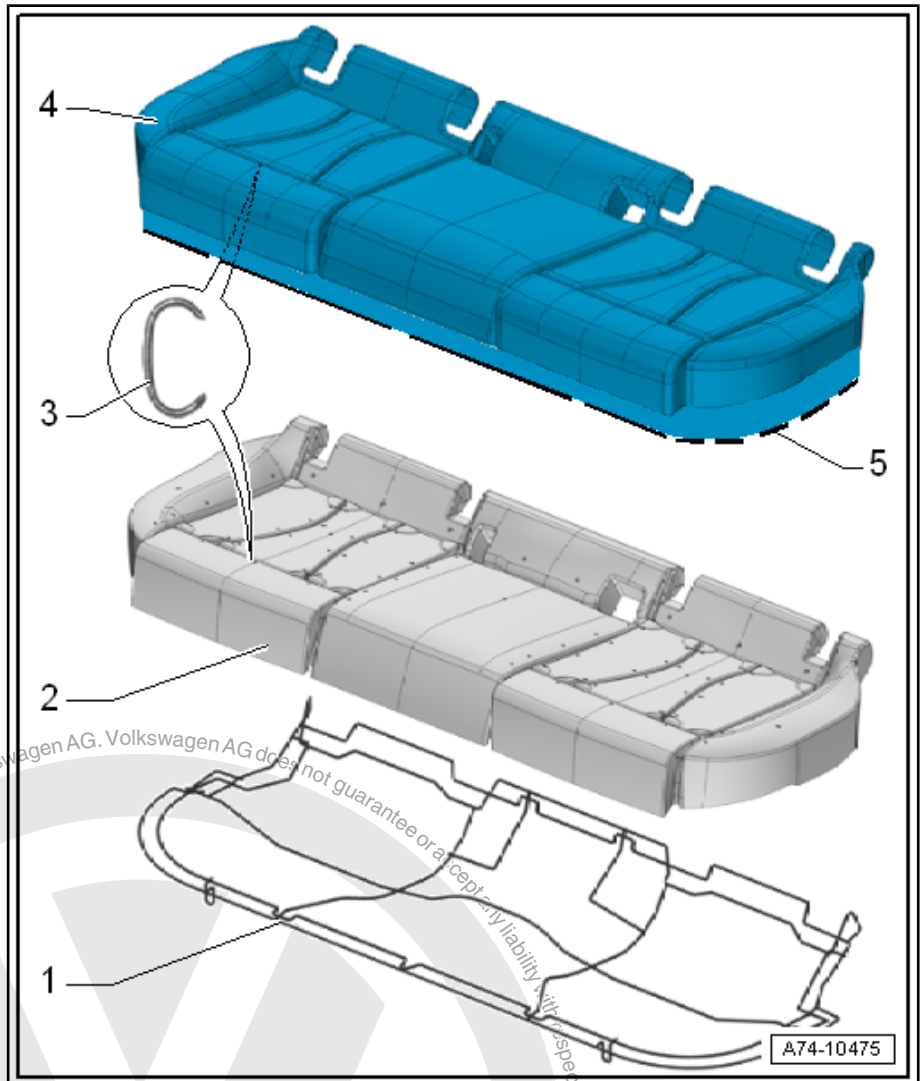
- ☐ For attachment of the seat cover to the seat cushion
- ☐ Replace after removing.

4 - Seat Cover

- ☐ Different equipment levels
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Seat cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.4 Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 329](#).
- ☐ Separate the seat cover from the seat cushion. Refer to ⇒ ["2.7 Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 332](#).

5 - Molding

- ☐ Sewn into seat cover
- ☐ For engaging the seat cover in the seat frame





2.2 Overview - Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion

1 - Backrest Cover

- ☐ Different equipment levels
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Backrest cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ ["2.5 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 330](#).
- ☐ Backrest cover and backrest cushion, separating. Refer to ⇒ ["2.8 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 333](#).

2 - Upholstery Clip

- ☐ For attaching the backrest cover to the backrest cushion
- ☐ Replace after removing.

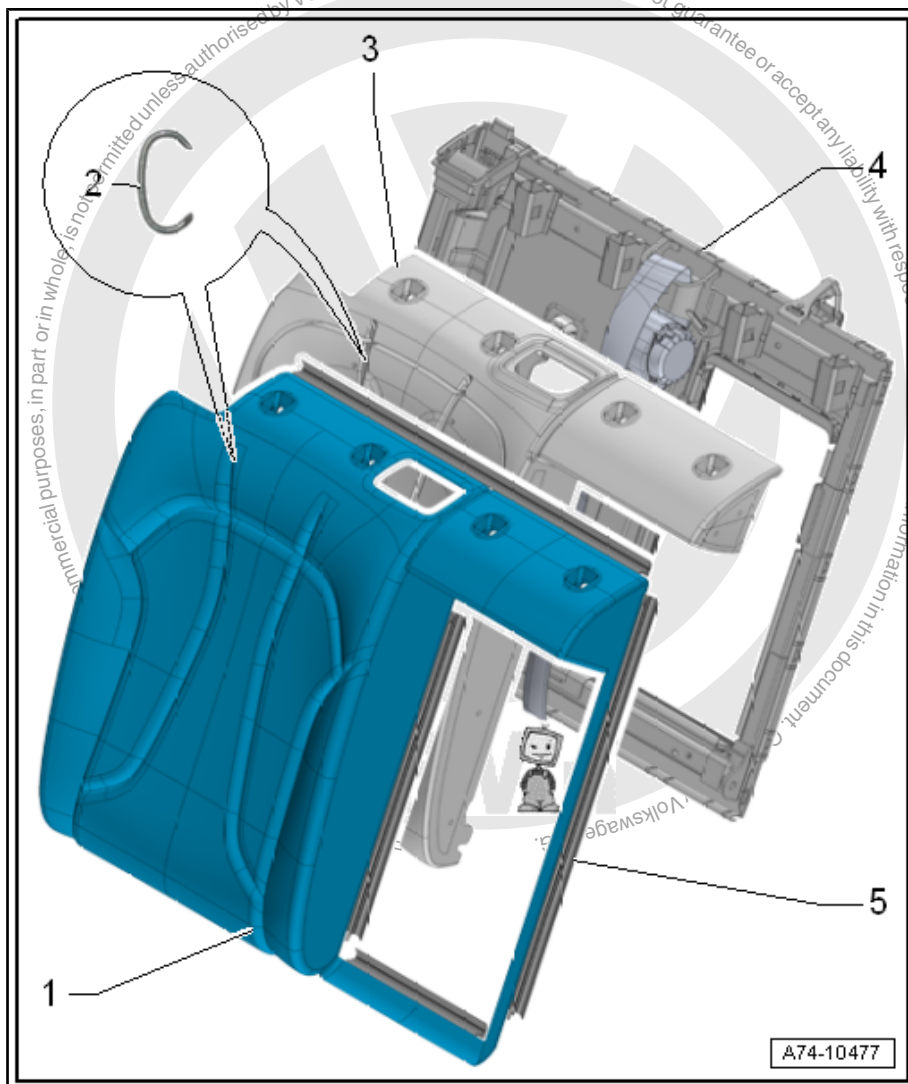
3 - Backrest Cushion

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.
- ☐ Backrest cover and cushion, removing and installing. Refer to ⇒ ["2.5 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing", page 330](#).
- ☐ Backrest cover and backrest cushion, separating. Refer to ⇒ ["2.8 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 333](#).

4 - Backrest Frame

5 - Weather Strips

- ☐ Sewn into backrest cover
- ☐ For attaching the backrest cover on the backrest frame



2.3 Overview - Seat Heating Element



Note

*The illustration shows the seat heating elements on the left side.
The seat heating elements on the right side are the same.*



1 - Heating Element

- ☐ For leg rest
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.9 Seat Heating Element, Removing and Installing", page 334](#).
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

2 - Bench Seat Heating Element

- ☐ Left Rear Bench Seat Heating Element - Z10-
- ☐ Right Rear Bench Seat Heating Element - Z12-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.9 Seat Heating Element, Removing and Installing", page 334](#).
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

3 - Backrest Cushion

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

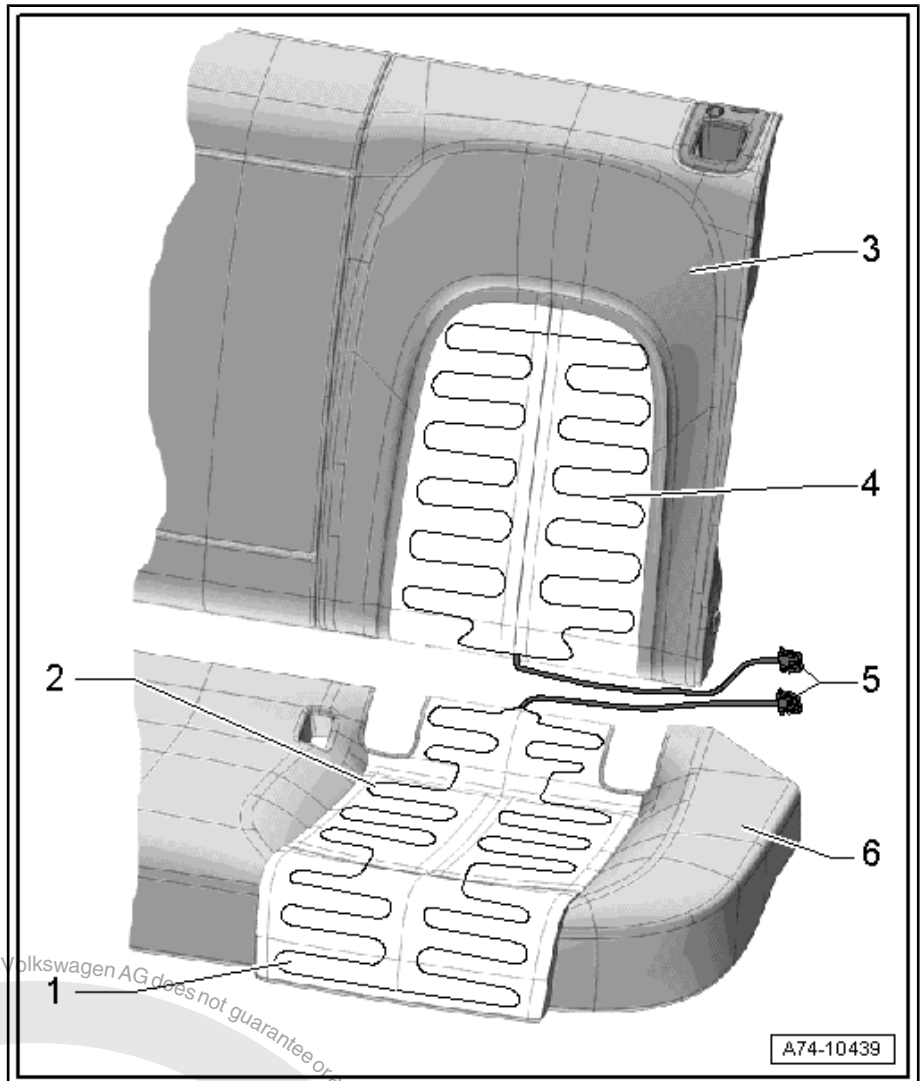
4 - Rear Seat Backrest Heating Element

- ☐ Left Rear Backrest Heating Element - Z11-
- ☐ Right Rear Backrest Heating Element - Z13-
- ☐ Removing and Installing. Refer to
⇒ ["2.10 Backrest Heating Element, Removing and Installing", page 334](#).
- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.

5 - Wire

6 - Seat Cushion

- ☐ Allocation. Refer to the Parts Catalog.



2.4 Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing

Removing

- Remove the rear bench seat. Refer to
⇒ ["3.6 Bench Seat/Single Seat, Removing and Installing", page 296](#).



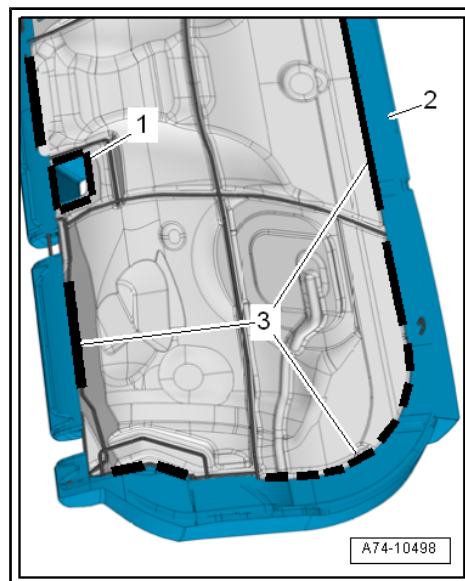
- Disengage the seat cover molding -3- around the seat frame.
- Disengage the seat cover molding -1- at the seat belt latch openings.
- Remove the seat cover -2- with the seat cushion from the seat frame.



Caution

Do not damage the seat cover.

- ◆ *Do not pull on the seat cover. The seat cover can rip.*



Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- After installing, make sure the seat cover is free of folds.

2.5 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing

Special tools and workshop equipment required

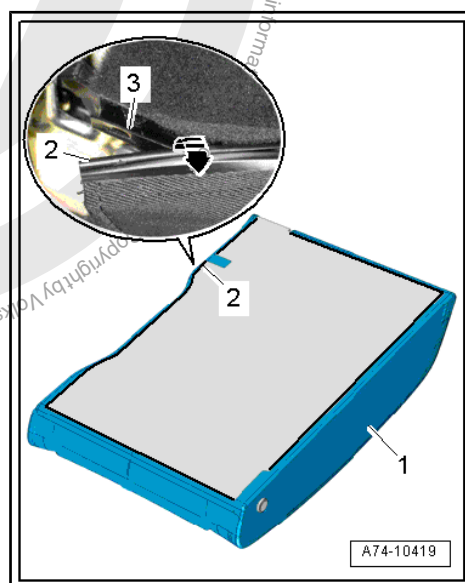
- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-
- ◆ Wedge Set - T10383-

Removing

- Remove the rear seat backrest. Refer to [⇒ "3.9 Rear Seat Backrest, Removing and Installing", page 299](#).
- Remove the rear headrest. Refer to [⇒ "3.7 Headrest, Removing and Installing", page 298](#).
- Remove the locking mechanism trim. Refer to [⇒ "3.10 Locking Mechanism Trim, Removing and Installing", page 300](#).

Left 1/3 Rear Seat Backrest

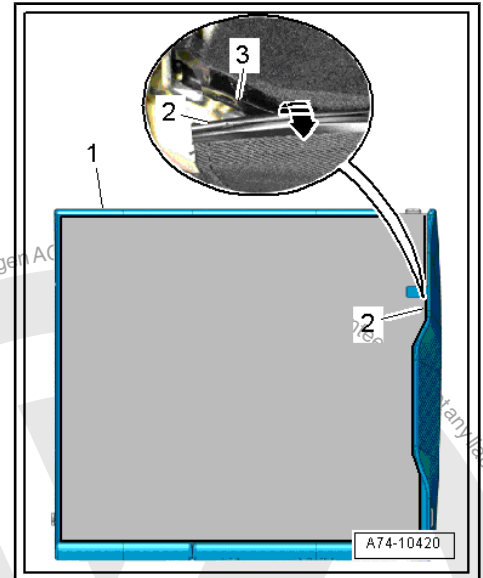
- Starting at the locking mechanism, pry off the molding strip -2- for the backrest cover using a screwdriver all around the backrest frame -3- arrow-.
- Remove the rear headrest guides. Refer to [⇒ "3.8 Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing", page 298](#).
- Remove the backrest cover -1- and backrest cushion from the backrest frame.





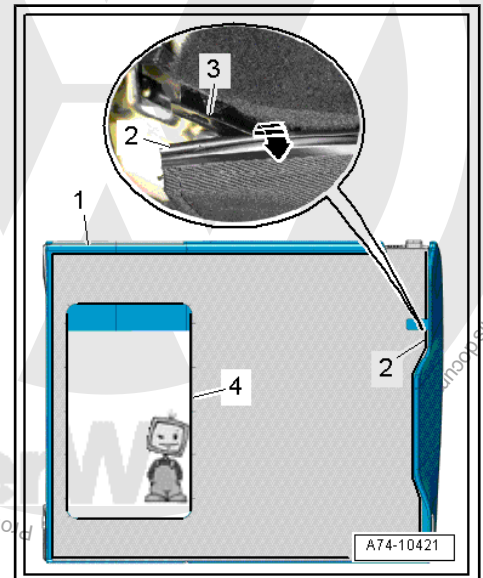
Right 2/3 Rear Seat Backrest without Pass-Through

- Remove the rear seat belt guide in the center. Refer to [⇒ "1.4 Overview - Rear Center Three-Point Seat Belt", page 72](#).
- Starting at the locking mechanism, pry off the molding strip -2- for the backrest cover using a screwdriver all around the backrest frame -3- -arrow-.
- Remove the rear headrest guides. Refer to [⇒ "3.8 Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing", page 298](#).
- Remove the backrest cover -1- and backrest cushion from the backrest frame.



Right 2/3 Rear Seat Backrest with Pass-Through

- Remove the rear seat belt guide in the center. Refer to [⇒ "1.4 Overview - Rear Center Three-Point Seat Belt", page 72](#).
- Remove the pass-through door with the rear center arm rest. Refer to [⇒ "3.13 Pass-Through Door, Removing and Installing", page 302](#).
- Remove the pass-through cover frame. Refer to [⇒ "3.12 Pass-Through Cover Frame, Removing and Installing", page 301](#).
- Starting at the locking mechanism, pry off the molding strip -2- for the backrest cover using a screwdriver all around the backrest frame -3- -arrow-.
- Pry off the molding strip -4- for the backrest cover all around the pass-through using a screwdriver.
- Remove the rear headrest guides. Refer to [⇒ "3.8 Headrest Guide, Removing and Installing", page 298](#).
- Remove the backrest cover -1- and backrest cushion from the backrest frame.

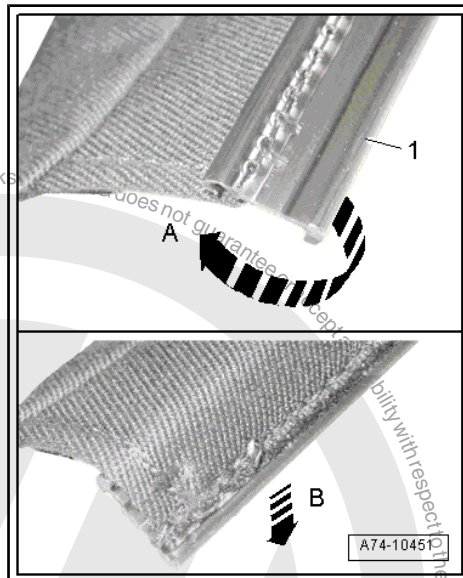




Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- Fold the molding strip -1- 90° inward -arrow A-.
- Engage the molding strips at the sides into the grooves on the backrest frame -arrow B-.
- Engage the frame on the backrest frame in the headrest area.



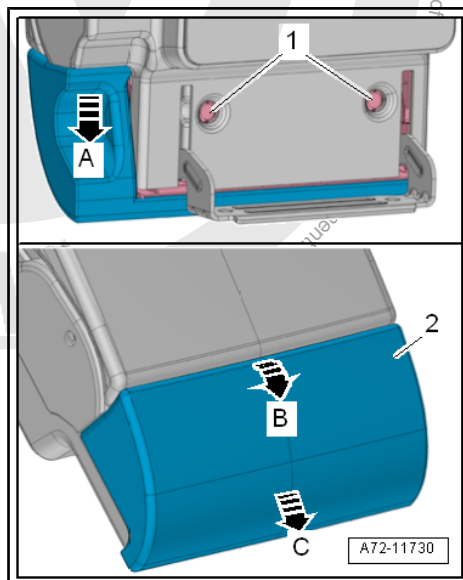
2.6 Center Cushion, Removing and Installing, Backrest with Pass-Through

Removing

- Fold the pass-through door forward.
- Release the tabs -1- with a screwdriver and push the center cushion -2- until stop downward at the same time -arrow A-.
- Slightly lift the upper center cushion -arrow B- and at the same time disengage downward from the pass-through door -arrow C-.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal.



2.7 Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Separating

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery Clip Pliers - VAG1634-



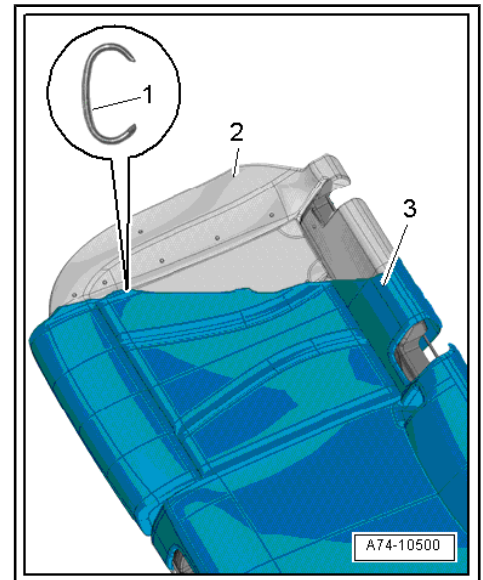
Removing

- Remove the bench seat cover and cushion. Refer to [⇒ “2.4 Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 329](#).
- Remove the seat cover -3- as far as possible from the seat cushion -2-.
- Cut through the upholstery clips -1- with pliers.
- Separate the seat cover and the seat cushion.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- After installing, make sure the seat cover is free of folds.



2.8 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating

Special tools and workshop equipment required

- ◆ Upholstery Clip Pliers - VAG1634-

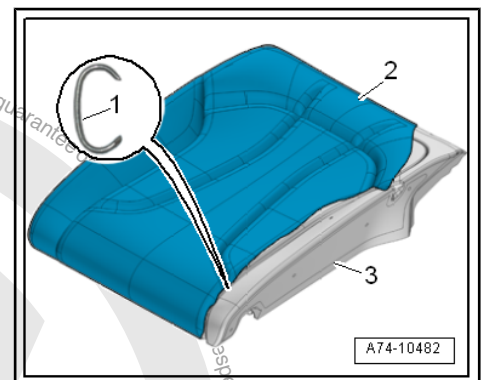
Removing

- Remove the backrest cover and backrest cushion from the rear seat backrest. Refer to [⇒ “2.5 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Removing and Installing”, page 330](#).
- Remove the backrest cover -2- as far as possible from the backrest cushion -3-.
- Cut through the upholstery clips -1- with pliers.

Installing

Install in reverse order of removal and note the following:

- After installing, make sure the seat cover is free of folds.





2.9 Seat Heating Element, Removing and Installing

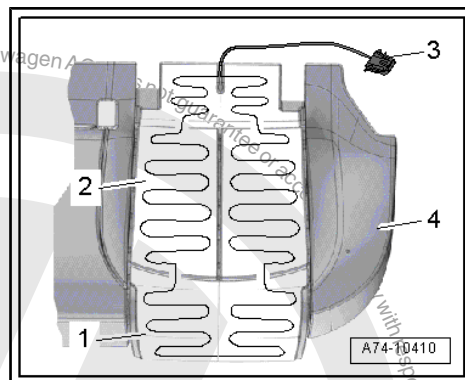
Removing

- Separate the cover and cushion for the bench seat. Refer to ["2.7 Bench Seat Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 332](#).
- Disconnect the wire -3- directly from the old heating element -2-.



Note

The old heating element remains on the seat cushion and will be covered by the new heating element.



Installing

- Align the new heating elements on the seat cushion.
- Peel the protective film off the heating element one after the other. Be careful not to damage the heating element.
- Bond the heating element in the sequence -2-, -1- so that it aligns with the old heating element and is wrinkle free.
- Route the connecting wire to the heating element along the bottom of the gaps.

Further installation is the reverse order of removal.

2.10 Backrest Heating Element, Removing and Installing

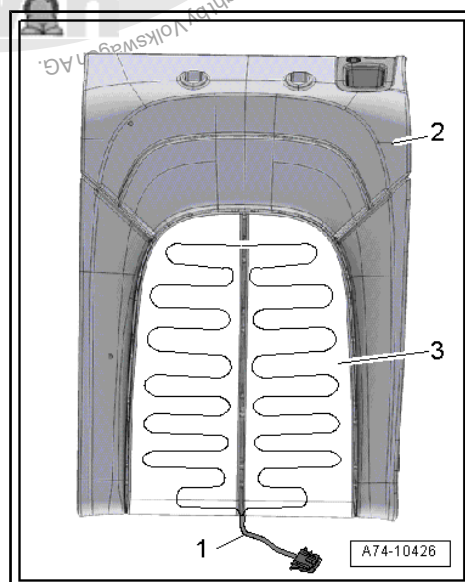
Removing

- Separate the cover and cushion for the rear seat backrest. Refer to ["2.8 Rear Seat Backrest Cover and Cushion, Separating", page 333](#).
- Cut the wire -1- directly at the old heating element -3-.



Note

The old heating element remains on the backrest cushion -2- and the new heating element is bonded over it.



Installing

- Align the new heating element on the backrest cushion.
- Peel the protective film off the heating element. Be careful not to damage the heating element.
- Glue the heating element so that they align with the old heating element and free of wrinkles.

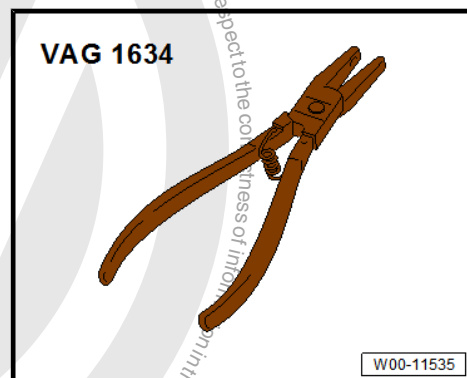
Further installation is the reverse order of removal.



3 Special Tools

Special tools and workshop equipment required

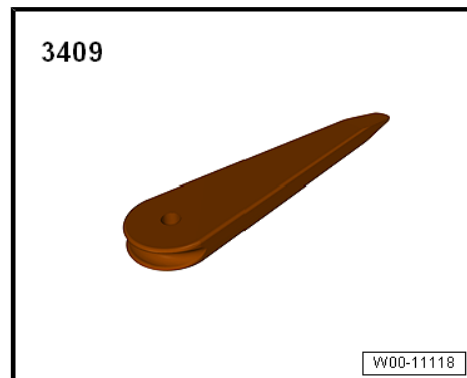
- ◆ Upholstery Clip Pliers - VAG1634-



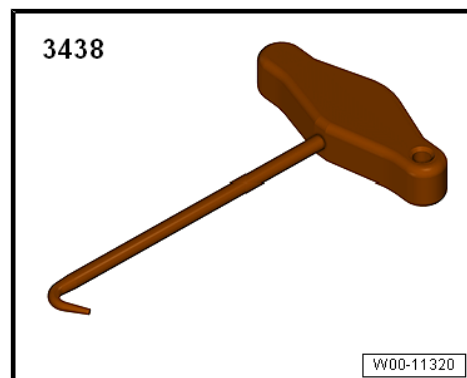
- ◆ Backrest Panel Tool - 3370-



- ◆ Trim Removal Wedge - 3409-



- ◆ T-Handle Hook - 3438-





4 Revision History

DRUCK NUMBER: K0059331021

Fac- tory Edi- tion	Edit Edi- tion	Job Type	Fe ed- ba ck	Notes	Quality Checke d By
03.2 018	06/0 1/20 18	Fac- tory New	N/ A		Joe Y



Cautions & Warnings

Please read these WARNINGS and CAUTIONS before proceeding with maintenance and repair work. You must answer that you have read and you understand these WARNINGS and CAUTIONS before you will be allowed to view this information.

- If you lack the skills, tools and equipment, or a suitable workshop for any procedure described in this manual, we suggest you leave such repairs to an authorized Volkswagen retailer or other qualified shop. We especially urge you to consult an authorized Volkswagen retailer before beginning repairs on any vehicle that may still be covered wholly or in part by any of the extensive warranties issued by Volkswagen.
- Disconnect the battery negative terminal (ground strap) whenever you work on the fuel system or the electrical system. Do not smoke or work near heaters or other fire hazards. Keep an approved fire extinguisher handy.
- Volkswagen is constantly improving its vehicles and sometimes these changes, both in parts and specifications, are made applicable to earlier models. Therefore, part numbers listed in this manual are for reference only. Always check with your authorized Volkswagen retailer parts department for the latest information.
- Any time the battery has been disconnected on an automatic transmission vehicle, it will be necessary to reestablish Transmission Control Module (TCM) basic settings using the VAG 1551 Scan Tool (ST).
- Never work under a lifted vehicle unless it is solidly supported on stands designed for the purpose. Do not support a vehicle on cinder blocks, hollow tiles or other props that may crumble under continuous load. Never work under a vehicle that is supported solely by a jack. Never work under the vehicle while the engine is running.
- For vehicles equipped with an anti-theft radio, be sure of the correct radio activation code before disconnecting the battery or removing the radio. If the wrong code is entered when the power is restored, the radio may lock up and become inoperable, even if the correct code is used in a later attempt.
- If you are going to work under a vehicle on the ground, make sure that the ground is level. Block the wheels to keep the vehicle from rolling. Disconnect the battery negative terminal (ground strap) to prevent others from starting the vehicle while you are under it.
- Do not attempt to work on your vehicle if you do not feel well. You increase the danger of injury to yourself and others if you are tired, upset or have taken medicine or any other substances that may impair you or keep you from being fully alert.
- Never run the engine unless the work area is well ventilated. Carbon monoxide (CO) kills.
- Always observe good workshop practices. Wear goggles when you operate machine tools or work with acid. Wear goggles, gloves and other protective clothing whenever the job requires working with harmful substances.
- Tie long hair behind your head. Do not wear a necktie, a scarf, loose clothing, or a necklace when you work near machine tools or running engines. If your hair, clothing, or jewelry were to get caught in the machinery, severe injury could result.
- Do not re-use any fasteners that are worn or deformed in normal use. Some fasteners are designed to be used only once and are unreliable and may fail if used a second time. This includes, but is not limited to, nuts, bolts, washers, circlips and cotter pins. Always follow the recommendations in this manual - replace these fasteners with new parts where indicated, and any other time it is deemed necessary by inspection.

Cautions & Warnings

- Illuminate the work area adequately but safely. Use a portable safety light for working inside or under the vehicle. Make sure the bulb is enclosed by a wire cage. The hot filament of an accidentally broken bulb can ignite spilled fuel or oil.
- Friction materials such as brake pads and clutch discs may contain asbestos fibers. Do not create dust by grinding, sanding, or by cleaning with compressed air. Avoid breathing asbestos fibers and asbestos dust. Breathing asbestos can cause serious diseases such as asbestosis or cancer, and may result in death.
- Finger rings should be removed so that they cannot cause electrical shorts, get caught in running machinery, or be crushed by heavy parts.
- Before starting a job, make certain that you have all the necessary tools and parts on hand. Read all the instructions thoroughly; do not attempt shortcuts. Use tools that are appropriate to the work and use only replacement parts meeting Volkswagen specifications. Makeshift tools, parts and procedures will not make good repairs.
- Catch draining fuel, oil or brake fluid in suitable containers. Do not use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them. Store flammable fluids away from fire hazards. Wipe up spills at once, but do not store the oily rags, which can ignite and burn spontaneously.
- Use pneumatic and electric tools only to loosen threaded parts and fasteners. Never use these tools to tighten fasteners, especially on light alloy parts. Always use a torque wrench to tighten fasteners to the tightening torque listed.
- Keep sparks, lighted matches, and open flame away from the top of the battery. If escaping hydrogen gas is ignited, it will ignite gas trapped in the cells and cause the battery to explode.
- Be mindful of the environment and ecology. Before you drain the crankcase, find out the proper way to dispose of the oil. Do not pour oil onto the ground, down a drain, or into a stream, pond, or lake. Consult local ordinances that govern the disposal of wastes.
- The air-conditioning (A/C) system is filled with a chemical refrigerant that is hazardous. The A/C system should be serviced only by trained automotive service technicians using approved refrigerant recovery/recycling equipment, trained in related safety precautions, and familiar with regulations governing the discharging and disposal of automotive chemical refrigerants.
- Before doing any electrical welding on vehicles equipped with anti-lock brakes (ABS), disconnect the battery negative terminal (ground strap) and the ABS control module connector.
- Do not expose any part of the A/C system to high temperatures such as open flame. Excessive heat will increase system pressure and may cause the system to burst.
- When boost-charging the battery, first remove the fuses for the Engine Control Module (ECM), the Transmission Control Module (TCM), the ABS control module, and the trip computer. In cases where one or more of these components is not separately fused, disconnect the control module connector(s).
- Some of the vehicles covered by this manual are equipped with a supplemental restraint system (SRS), that automatically deploys an airbag in the event of a frontal impact. The airbag is operated by an explosive device. Handled improperly or without adequate safeguards, it can be accidentally activated and cause serious personal injury. To guard against personal injury or airbag system failure, only trained Volkswagen Service technicians should test, disassemble or service the airbag system.

Cautions & Warnings

- Do not quick-charge the battery (for boost starting) for longer than one minute, and do not exceed 16.5 volts at the battery with the boosting cables attached. Wait at least one minute before boosting the battery a second time.
- Never use a test light to conduct electrical tests of the airbag system. The system must only be tested by trained Volkswagen Service technicians using the VAG 1551 Scan Tool (ST) or an approved equivalent. The airbag unit must never be electrically tested while it is not installed in the vehicle.
- Some aerosol tire inflators are highly flammable. Be extremely cautious when repairing a tire that may have been inflated using an aerosol tire inflator. Keep sparks, open flame or other sources of ignition away from the tire repair area. Inflate and deflate the tire at least four times before breaking the bead from the rim. Completely remove the tire from the rim before attempting any repair.
- When driving or riding in an airbag-equipped vehicle, never hold test equipment in your hands or lap while the vehicle is in motion. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident.

I have read and I understand these Cautions and Warnings.

